

Oxford Angol

Nyelvtan

Magyarázatok – Gyakorlatok

Norman Coe
Mark Harrison
Ken Paterson

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi

Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi

New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece

Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore

South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of
Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2006

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2006

2010 2009 2008 2007 2006

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any
means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University
Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the
appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning
reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the
ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover
and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain
and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for
information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility
for the content

ISBN-13: 978 0 19 470605 6

ISBN-10: 0 19 470605 2

Printed in China

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Oxford Angol Nyelvtan is based on the Grammar Spectrum series 1–3
by Ken Paterson, Mark Harrison and Norman Coe respectively

Contributors to the Hungarian edition: Siórétiné Gyepes Judit, Vadász György,
Elekes Katalin, Rézműves Zoltán and Jobbágy Ilona

Illustrations by: Ann Johns, Belinda Evans and Neil Gower

Bevezetés

Könyvünkben az angol nyelv szerkezetét és a különböző nyelvtani jelenségek használatát mutatjuk be sok példával és az egyes részekhez kapcsolódó gyakorlatok segítségével. A nyelvtani útmutató kezdőtől középhaladó (az Európa Tanács által meghatározott A1-B2) szintig teljes áttekintést nyújt a nyelvvizsgára vagy érettségi vizsgára készülők számára, és tartalmazza a *Cambridge Key English Test*, a *Cambridge Preliminary English Test* és a *Cambridge First Certificate in English* vizsgához szükséges tudnivalókat.

A könyv iskolában, tanfolyamokon és önálló tanulás során egyaránt használható. Minden fejezet egy nyelvtani jelenség részletes, magyar nyelvű leírásával kezdődik, amely tartalmazza a megértéshez szükséges példákat és azok magyar fordítását. A nyelvtani részben felhívjuk a figyelmet a magyar anyanyelvűek számára esetleg különös problémát jelentő szerkezetekre, és utalunk a két nyelv használatának különbségeire. Az útmutatót követő feladatok lehetőséget biztosítanak a bemutatott szerkezetek és kifejezések gyakorlására, melynek ellenőrzéséhez a könyv végén megoldási kulcs található. A gyakorlatok változatos összeállítása többféle készség – írás, olvasás, szövegértés, szóhasználat, nyelvtani átalakítás, fordítás – párhuzamos fejlesztését teszi lehetővé. Az egyes tematikai egységeket ismétlő, összefoglaló gyakorlatokat tartalmazó fejezetek választják el egymástól.

Tartalomjegyzék

A jelen idő

1	A létige (1) (I am... , I am not...)	8
2	A létige (2) (Am I...? , Are you...?)	10
3	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a létige használata (1–2. fejezet)	12
4	Az egyszerű jelen – Present Simple (1) (I know , I don't know)	16
5	Az egyszerű jelen – Present Simple (2) (Do you drive?)	18
6	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: Present Simple (4–5. fejezet)	20
7	A folyamatos jelen – Present Continuous (1) (I'm eating , I'm not eating)	24
8	A folyamatos jelen – Present Continuous (2) (Am I writing?)	26
9	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: Present Continuous (7–8. fejezet)	28
10	Present Simple (I work) vagy Present Continuous (I'm working)	32
11	A felszólító mód – Imperative (Go , Don't go)	36

A múlt idő

12	A létige egyszerű múlt ideje (I was , I wasn't , Was I ...?)	38
13	Az egyszerű múlt – Past Simple (I played , I didn't play , Did you play?)	40
14	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: Past Simple (12–13. fejezet)	42
15	A folyamatos múlt – Past Continuous (I was waiting , Was I waiting?)	46
16	Past Simple (I waited) vagy Past Continuous (I was waiting)	48
17	Present Perfect (1) (I have seen , I haven't seen)	52
18	Present Perfect (2) (ever , never , gone és been)	54
19	Present Perfect (3) (just , already , yet , still)	56
20	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: Present Perfect (17–19. fejezet)	58
21	Past Simple vagy Present Perfect (1) (I lived / I have lived)	62
22	Past Simple vagy Present Perfect (2) (for , since , ago)	66
23	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: Past Simple vagy Present Perfect (21–2. fejezet)	70
24	Present Perfect Continuous (I've been cooking)	74
25	Present Perfect Simple (I've done) és Present Perfect Continuous (I've been doing)	78
26	Past Perfect (I had finished)	80
27	Past Simple (I saw) vagy Past Perfect (I had seen)	82
28	Used to	86
29	Past Perfect Simple (I had eaten) vagy Past Perfect Continuous (I had been eating)	88
30	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: igeidők (12–29. fejezet)	90

A jövő idő

31	A jövőre vonatkozó szándék – be going to	94
32	Will / shall (I will do it , Shall we go?)	96
33	A jövő kifejezése – Present Continuous és Present Simple	98
34	Will vagy be going to , Present Continuous vagy be going to	100
35	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a jövő kifejezése (31–4. fejezet)	104
36	When , as soon as , until stb. és a jelen idő	108
37	A jövő kifejezése más szerkezetekkel	110
38	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a jövő kifejezése (31–7. fejezet)	112

Mondatszerkezet és kérdő alakok

39	Szófajok (ige, főnév, melléknév stb.)	116
40	Szórend (alany, állítmány, tárgy)	118
41	A kiegészítendő kérdés – kérdőszók	120
42	A kiegészítendő kérdés – How long? How far? How often? How many? How much? How old?	122
43	A kiegészítendő kérdés – alanyra és tárgyra vonatkozó kérdések	124
44	Milyen? – What ... like? (What's she like?)	126
45	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a kiegészítendő kérdés (41–4. fejezet)	128
46	Rövid válasz – short answers (Yes, I am; Yes, I do)	132
47	Utókérdés – question tags (It's cold, isn't it?)	134
48	Én is, én sem (so am I, I am too; neither am I, I'm not either)	136

Módbeli segédigék

49	Képesség és lehetőség kifejezése (can, can't, could, couldn't, be able to)	138
50	Kérés (Can I? Could I? May I? Can you? Could you?)	142
51	Utasítás, tanács, tiltás (must, mustn't)	144
52	Kell, nem kell (have to, don't have to)	146
53	Must vagy have to; mustn't vagy don't have to	148
54	Bizonyára, bizonyára nem, talán (must, can't, may, might, could)	152
55	Múltra utaló módbeli segédigék (must have seen, can't have done)	156
56	Kellene, nem kellene (should, shouldn't)	158
57	Kellene, jobban tennéd, ha... – should, ought to, had better	160
58	Szükséges, nem szükséges – need, needn't	162
59	Kellett, kellett volna – had to do, should have done	164
60	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: módbeli segédigék (49–59. fejezet)	166

Igék

61	A birtoklás kifejezése – have és have got	170
62	Make, do és get	172
63	Make és let	174
64	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: have, make, do, get, let (61–3. fejezet)	176
65	Speak és talk; borrow és lend; take és bring; carry és fetch	180
66	Állapotot jelentő, 'statikus' igék	182
67	Igei kifejezések – phrasal verbs (1) (go with, put on, get up)	184
68	Igei kifejezések – phrasal verbs (2) (get over, call off, grow up)	188

Névelők, főnevek, névmások stb.

69	A főnevek többes száma – plural nouns (cats, men); one / ones	192
70	Megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnevek – countable és uncountable nouns	194
71	A névelő (1) – articles (a, an, the)	196
72	A névelő (2) – articles (a, an, the)	198
73	A/an, some, any, no, none	200
74	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: névelők és főnevek (69–73. fejezet)	202
75	A személyes névmás alanyi és tárgyi alakja – I és me	206
76	A birtokos névmás – possessive pronouns (my, your; mine, yours)	208
77	A mutató névmás – demonstrative pronouns (this, that, these, those)	210
78	Much, many; how much? how many?; more	212
79	Határozatlan névmások – a lot of, a little, a few	214
80	All, most, some, none	216
81	Határozatlan névmások – something, anybody, nothing	218
82	Tárgy és részeshatározó – direct and indirect object (She gave him a book.)	220

83	A visszaható névmás – reflexive pronouns (myself, yourself stb.)	222
84	Van, vannak – there is, there are	224

Melléknévek és határozószók

85	A melléknév – adjectives (new, big, wonderful, American stb.)	226
86	A számnév – numbers (three, third)	230
87	Melléknévek és határozószók – adjectives and adverbs	232
88	A melléknév fokozása: közép fok – comparative adjectives (older, more famous)	234
89	A melléknév fokozása: felső fok – superlative adjectives (the oldest, the most famous)	236
90	Melléknévek és határozószók – adjectives and adverbs (quick, quickly); a határozószók fokozása (more carefully)	238
91	Összehasonlítás – comparison (as ... as)	240
92	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a melléknév fokozása (88–91. fejezet)	242
93	-ed vagy -ing végű melléknévek (frightened, frightening)	246
94	Túlságosan, eléggé – too, enough (too big, big enough)	248
95	Gyakoriságot kifejező határozószók – adverbs of frequency (always, never stb.)	250
96	Határozószók (hely, irány, sorrend stb.) – adverbs of place, direction, order etc.	252
97	A határozó helye a mondatban	254
98	Ilyen, olyan – so, such	256

Elöljárószók

99	Helyet jelölő elöljárószók – prepositions of place (in, on, under stb.)	258
100	Időt jelölő elöljárószók – prepositions of time (in, on, at stb.)	260
101	Mozgást és irányt jelölő elöljárószók – prepositions of motion and place (in, out of stb.)	262
102	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: elöljárószók (99–101. fejezet)	264
103	Elöljárószók – prepositions (in, with, by)	268
104	Ige + elöljárószó (wait for, listen to stb.)	272
105	Melléknév + elöljárószó – adjective + preposition (angry with, afraid of)	274
106	Kifejezések elöljárószókkal – phrases with prepositions (at first, by post stb.)	276
107	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: elöljárószók (99–106. fejezet)	278

A szenvedő szerkezet

108	A szenvedő szerkezet – the passive (1); Present Simple és Past Simple	282
109	A szenvedő szerkezet – the passive (2); igeidők	284
110	A szenvedő szerkezet – the passive (3); ige + két tárgy	288
111	A műveltető szerkezet – causative (have something done)	290
112	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a szenvedő és a műveltető szerkezet (108–11. fejezet)	292

A főnévi igenév és az -ing alak

113	Ige + -ing – verb + -ing (I like dancing)	296
114	A főnévi igenév – infinitive (I want to go, I can go)	298
115	Ige + to vagy -ing – verb + to or -ing (I love to dance, I love dancing)	300
116	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: ige + to vagy -ing (113–15. fejezet)	302
117	Mire való? (What's it for? ~ It's for making bread.)	306
118	Ige + tárgy + (to) + főnévi igenév (I asked her to come)	308

A feltételes mód

119	A feltételes mondat 1. típusa – first conditional (If I am...)	310
120	A feltételes mondat 2. típusa – second conditional (If he was...)	312
121	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a feltételes mondat 1. és 2. típusa (119–20. fejezet)	314
122	A feltételes mondat 3. típusa – third conditional (If he had been...)	318
123	Kívánság – wish (I wish he was... , I wish he had been...)	320
124	Ismétlő gyakorlatok – a feltételes mondat (119–23. fejezet)	322

A függő beszéd

125	A függő beszéd – reported speech (1) (say/said, tell/told)	326
126	A függő beszéd – reported speech (2) (névmások és határozószók)	328
127	A függő beszéd – reported speech (3) (kérés, utasítás stb.)	330
128	A függő kérdés – reported questions (She asked if ...)	332
129	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a függő beszéd (125–8. fejezet)	334

Szóképzés és mondat szerkesztés

130	(Both) ... and, but, however, although, so	338
131	Both (... and); either (... or); neither (... nor)	340
132	Since, for, ago; first, last	342
133	Because, in case, so, so that	344
134	A kijelölő jelzői mellékmondat – defining relative clauses (1)	346
135	A kijelölő jelzői mellékmondat – defining relative clauses (2)	348
136	Az értelmező jelzői mellékmondat – non-defining relative clauses	350
137	Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a jelzői mellékmondat (134–6. fejezet)	352
138	Előtagok – prefixes (im-, dis-, over-)	356
139	Képzők – suffixes (-able, -less, -ian)	358

Morfológiai táblázatok

A táblázat	A főnév többes száma	360
B táblázat	Megszámlálhatatlan főnevek	360
C táblázat	Present Simple (egyszerű jelen)	361
D táblázat	Az igék -ing -es alakja	361
E táblázat	Szabályos igék: múlt idejű alak és befejezett melléknévi igenév	362
F táblázat	Rendhagyó igék: múlt idejű alak és befejezett melléknévi igenév	363
G táblázat	A melléknév közép- és felsőfoka	364
H táblázat	Határozószók	364

Tárgymutató

365

Megoldókulcs

376



A létige (1) (I am..., I am not...)

1 A be (van) létige jelen idejű alakjai:

ÁLLÍTÁS		
	TELJES ALAK	ÖSSZEVONT ALAK
EGYES SZÁM	I am	I'm
	You are	You're
	He/she/it is	He's/she's/it's
TÖBBES SZÁM	We are	We're
	You are	You're
	They are	They're
TAGADÁS		
	TELJES ALAK	ÖSSZEVONT ALAK
EGYES SZÁM	I am not	I'm not
	You are not	You aren't
	He/she/it is not	He/she/it isn't
TÖBBES SZÁM	We are not	We aren't
	You are not	You aren't
	They are not	They aren't

2 Néhány példa a létige (be) egyszerű jelen idejű használatára:

This is my brother. He's ten years old.
I'm a student. These are my books.
They aren't at home. They're at the theatre.

3 A beszélt nyelvben általában az összevont alakot használjuk:

She's my sister. He's my brother.
I'm from Hungary. They're German.

4 A be létigét akkor használjuk, amikor azt mondjuk meg, hogy

- ▶ valaki kicsoda:
I'm Steve and this is my friend Bill. We're from Scotland.
I'm Janet and these are my sisters. This is Sandra and this is Patricia. Sandra and Patricia are doctors.
- ▶ milyen az idő:
It's cold today. It's a beautiful day.
It isn't very warm today.
- ▶ mennyi az idő:
It's ten o'clock. It's half past four.
You're late!
- ▶ valaki vagy valami hol van:
Milan is in the North of Italy.
John and Mary are in Yorkshire.
- ▶ valaki mennyi idős:
My sister is six (years old).

Figyelem: Az angol nyelvben a mondat állítmánya mindig ige.
 Főnév, melléknév stb. csak a **be** létigével együtt lehet a mondat állítmánya.
My father is a teacher. My sister is pretty.
 (= Apám tanár.) (= A nővérem csinos.)

Gyakorlatok

A Maria Braziliából jött. Saját magáról és a családjáról ír. Írjuk be a mondatokba a be ige megfelelő alakját.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 0 I <u>am</u> a student from Brazil. | 4 I twenty years old. |
| 0 My parents <u>are not</u> (not) rich. | 5 My little brother twelve. |
| 1 My father a teacher. | 6 My older brothers (not) students. |
| 2 My mother (not) Brazilian. | 7 They in the army. |
| 3 She from America. | 8 It often very hot in Brazil. |

B Írjuk be a hiányzó szavakat. Használjuk a be ige összevont alakjait.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 0 I <u>'m</u> a doctor. | 5 It (not) cold today. |
| 0 I <u>'m not</u> (not) a bank manager. | 6 It very hot. |
| 1 She (not) a teacher. | 7 We from Paris. |
| 2 He a student. | 8 We (not) from Bordeaux. |
| 3 They at home. | 9 You (not) twenty-one. |
| 4 They (not) in the park. | 10 I twenty-four. |

C Feri és Susie egy yorki nyelviskolában ismerkedett meg Linggel és Carlosszal. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott szavakkal. (Amikor bemutatnak valakinek, gyakran használjuk a 'Pleased to meet you' kifejezést.)



are aren't ~~I'm~~ I'm isn't isn't not not This We're You're

FERI: Hello, I'm Feri. ⁰ *I'm* from Eger. It's in the north of Hungary.
 CARLOS: Pleased to meet you. I'm Carlos.
 FERI: Oh, yes. ¹ from Spain.
 CARLOS: No, I'm ² Spanish. I'm from Mexico. This is my friend, Ling. She's from Harbin, near Beijing.
 LING: Harbin ³ very near Beijing, Carlos! China is a very big country.
 FERI: Pleased to meet you. ⁴ is my wife, Susie.
 SUSIE: Hi! I'm from London, but I live in Eger now.
 FERI: Susie and I ⁵ doctors.
 LING: Really? My brother is a doctor. But ⁶ a businesswoman. I have three restaurants in China.
 SUSIE: That's interesting. Carlos, I'm sure you ⁷ a doctor or a businessman. I think you're an artist!
 CARLOS: No, I'm ⁸ an artist. I'm a photographer.
 SUSIE: Photographers are artists! Anyway, it's a beautiful evening, and we're in the north of England and it ⁹ cold!
 LING: You're right. ¹⁰ lucky!

D Válasszuk ki a megadott szavak közül a megfelelőt, és írjuk be a hiányzó helyre.

He's She's ~~They're~~ It's (x 3) are is We isn't

- 0 My parents live in Scotland. *They're* teachers.
- 1 New York in England. in America.
- 2 Paul from Germany. German.
- 3 My sister is a doctor. thirty years old.
- 4 six o'clock! are late.
- 5 very cold today. Let's stay at home.
- 6 Look at the time! Chris and Mary late.

2

A létige (2) (Am I...?, Are you...?)

1. Kérdő szerkezet a **be** igével jelen időben:

EGYES SZÁM	Am	I	} late?
	Are	you	
	Is	he/she/it	
TÖBBES SZÁM	Are	we	} late?
	Are	you	
	Are	they	

2 A **be** igét akkor használjuk, amikor:

➤ arról beszélünk, hogy érezzük magunkat:

I'm happy. They're sad.

They're bored. She's tired.

We're hungry. I'm thirsty.

He isn't afraid. They're cold.

➤ üdvözléskor udvariasan megkérdezzük, hogy valaki hogy van:

BILL: *Hello. How are you?*

JANE: *I'm fine thanks. How are you?*

➤ elnézést kérünk:

MARY: *I'm sorry I'm late.*

CHRIS: *It doesn't matter.*

➤ elmondjuk, hogy valami milyen:

It isn't expensive.

It's an old film. It isn't very good.

These photos are bad.

(A **be** ige használatára vonatkozó egyéb tudnivalók az 1. fejezetben találhatók.)

3 Gyakran használjuk a **there + be** (pl. **there is**, **there are**) szerkezetet, amikor azt mondjuk meg, hogy valami hol van:

EGYES SZÁM	There's a supermarket in this street.
	There is a telephone in the flat.
TÖBBES SZÁM	There are some good cafés in the centre of the town.

A **there + be** szerkezetet akkor is használjuk, amikor azt mondjuk meg, hogy valami mikor történik:

There is a bus to London at six o'clock.

There are taxis, but *there aren't* any buses on Sunday.

There isn't another train to Manchester today.

4 A következő kérdésekben a **be** ige összes alakját megtalálhatjuk:

Am I late for the film?

Are you twenty years old?

Is he at home now?

Is she French or Italian?

Is it time to go home?

Are we ready to leave?

Are you both at university?

Are they in London today?

Gyakorlatok

A megadott szavak segítségével tegyünk fel kérdéseket a képen látható személyekkel kapcsolatban. Használjuk a **He/She/They** névmásokat és a **be** ige egyszerű jelen idejű (Present Simple) alakját.

tired sad afraid happy hungry bored thirsty cold



0 *Is she thirsty?*



1 He



2 They



3



4



5



6



7

B Használjuk a **there + be** szerkezetet, és írjuk le, mi található és mi nem található Smallwood városában.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 0 (a cinema: ✓) <i>There's</i> a cinema. | 4 (banks: 6) six banks. |
| 0 (a river: ✗) <i>There isn't</i> a river. | 5 (a luxury hotel: ✓) a luxury hotel. |
| 0 (restaurants: 10) <i>There are</i> ten restaurants. | 6 (a theatre: ✗) a theatre. |
| 0 (any museums: ✗) <i>There aren't</i> any museums. | 7 (newsagent's: 6) six newsagent's. |
| 1 (a castle: ✗) a castle. | 8 (a zoo: ✓) a zoo. |
| 2 (baker's shops: 2) two baker's shops. | |
| 3 (many tourists: ✗) many tourists. | |

C Írjunk kérdéseket a zárójelben megadott szavak megfelelő sorrendbe rendezésével.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 0 (thirsty/you/are) | <i>Are you thirsty?</i> |
| 1 (a teacher/you/are) | ..... |
| 2 (they/bored/are) | ..... |
| 3 (is/afraid/he) | ..... |
| 4 (she/tired/is) | ..... |
| 5 (are/you/how) | ..... |
| 6 (cold today/it/is) | ..... |
| 7 (she/Spanish/is) | ..... |
| 8 (they/from London/are) | ..... |

D A diákok megpróbálják kitalálni, milyen híres ember szerepébe bújtt Frank. Írjunk kérdéseket a zárójelben található szavak és a **be** ige megfelelő alakjainak felhasználásával.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 0 JO: (you/American) | <i>Are you American</i> | FRANK: Yes, I am. |
| 1 EVE: (you/a singer) | ..... | FRANK: No, I'm not. |
| 2 BILL: (your parents/famous) | ..... | FRANK: Yes, they are. |
| 3 JILL: (they/politicians) | ..... | FRANK: No, they aren't. |
| 4 SAM: (your father/a film star) | ..... | FRANK: Yes, he is. |
| 5 PAT: (your mother/a film star) | ..... | FRANK: No, she isn't. |
| 6 ANN: (she/a singer) | ..... | FRANK: No, she isn't. |
| 7 IAN: (your father/Kirk Douglas) | ..... | FRANK: Yes, he is. |
| 8 TOM: (you/Michael Douglas) | ..... | FRANK: Yes, I am. |

E Írjuk be a **be** ige megfelelő alakját az alábbi párbeszédbe.

- STEVE: This ⁰ *is* Ann, my sister.
- TOM: Hello, Ann. ¹ you a student?
- ANN: No, I ² a dentist. I work in Brighton.
- MIKE: How are you, Sally?
- SALLY: I ³ fine, thanks.
- MIKE: ⁴ you hungry?
- SALLY: Yes. ⁵ there a good restaurant near here?
- MIKE: Yes. There ⁶ a restaurant in Wellington Street.
- The food is good and it ⁷ very cheap.

Bence és Pierre Londonba érkeznek

A Mrs Lockwood a Victoria Pályaudvaron várja őket. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott szavak felhasználásával.

We're	's	'm	are	is	I'm	It's
're	're	are	are			

MRS LOCKWOOD: Hello, Bence. ⁰ *It's* good to see you again. How ¹ you?

BENCE: Hello, Mrs Lockwood. ² fine, thanks. And you?

MRS LOCKWOOD: Oh, I'm very well, thank you.

BENCE: This ³ my friend Pierre. His parents ⁴ French but they live and work in Budapest. ⁵ in the same class at school.

MRS LOCKWOOD: Hello, Pierre. Pleased to meet you.

PIERRE: I ⁶ glad to meet you too.

BENCE: We ⁷ sorry we're late.

MRS LOCKWOOD: No problem. It ⁸ not your fault.

I'm glad you ⁹ here.

PIERRE: So ¹⁰ we!



B Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a zárójelben található szavakból alkotott mondatokkal.

MRS LOCKWOOD: (you/hungry?/Are)
⁰ *Are you hungry?*

BENCE: (not/No,/hungry,/thirsty./but/I'm/I'm)
¹

PIERRE: (too./am/I)
²

MRS LOCKWOOD: Well, let's get something to drink. Look over there. (a/bar./There's/coffee)
³

I'm sure they sell soft drinks too. Let's go. (cold/It's/here.)
⁴

PIERRE: (it's/in Budapest/cold/Yes,/too./but/very)
⁵

MRS LOCKWOOD: Really?

PIERRE: (a cold month/is/Oh yes,/at home./January)
⁶

C Mrs Lockwood, Bence és Pierre egy pizzéria előtt áll az utcán. Egészítsük ki a beszélgetésüket a megadott szavakkal.

is it isn't we're there's ~~It's~~ are isn't Are I'm
There's It's there are are

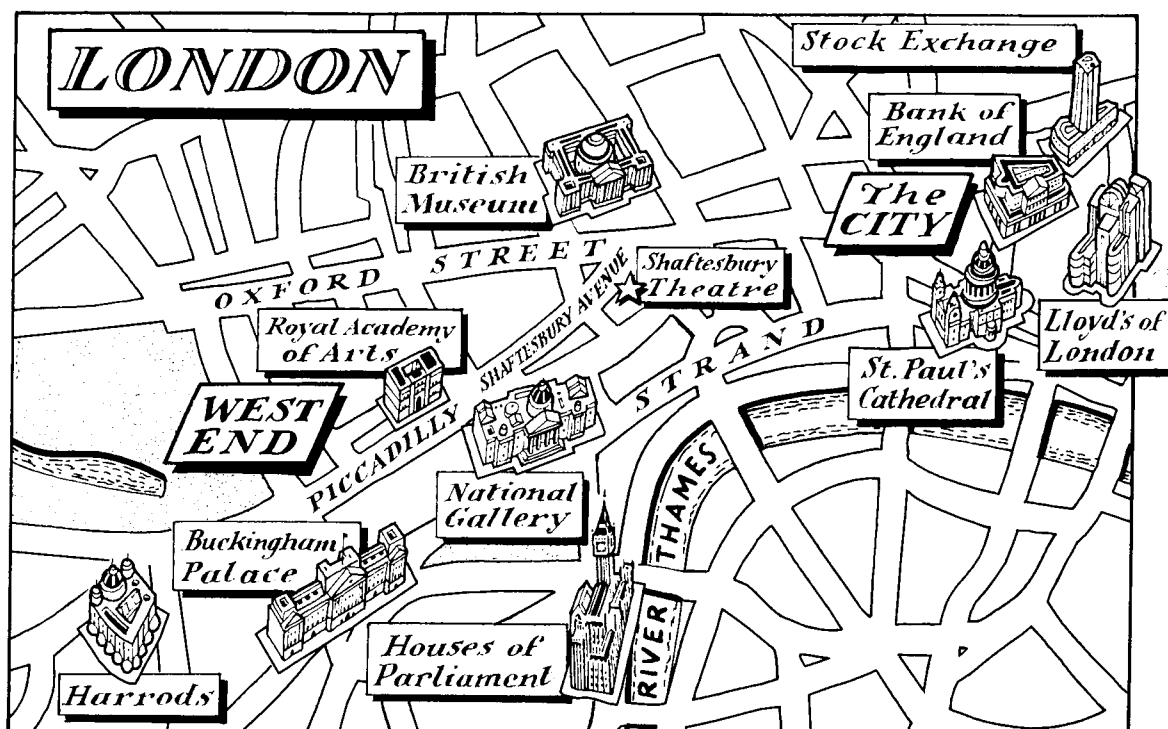
MRS LOCKWOOD: 0. *It's* nearly four o'clock. 1. you ready?
BENCE: 2. five to five.
PIERRE: No, 3. ! Five to five 4. Hungarian time.
BENCE AND PIERRE: Oh, of course. Yes, 5. ready. Thanks for the coke.
MRS LOCKWOOD: It's a pleasure. Now, 6. no bus or direct train from here. But 7. taxis outside the station. It isn't far, so it's not very expensive. 8. sure your bags 9. heavy.
BENCE: Look! 10. a taxi.
PIERRE: No, it 11. It isn't black!
MRS LOCKWOOD: Bence is right. Some London taxis 12. red or yellow or white these days.

D Mrs Lockwood, Bence és Pierre a taxiban ül, és a londoni látnivalókról beszélget. Egészítsük ki a beszélgetést a zárójelben található szavakból alkotott mondatokkal. Használjuk a **be** ige egyszerű jelen idejű alakjait.

PIERRE: (that/the River Thames)
0. *Is that the River Thames?*
MRS LOCKWOOD: Yes, that's right.
BENCE: (And/that/Tower Bridge)
1.
MRS LOCKWOOD: Yes.
BENCE: (it/an old bridge)
2.
MRS LOCKWOOD: It's a hundred years old.
PIERRE: (we/in the centre of London)
3.
MRS LOCKWOOD: Yes. This is Westminster.
BENCE: (we/near to your house)
4.
MRS LOCKWOOD: Not very far. About twenty minutes.
PIERRE: (easy/to travel/in London)
5.
MRS LOCKWOOD: Not always. Sometimes there are a lot of cars and buses.
BENCE: (cheap/to travel/by taxi)
6.
MRS LOCKWOOD: No! We normally travel by tube or bus.
PIERRE: (a tube station/near/your house)
7.
MRS LOCKWOOD: Yes. It's only about two minutes' walk.



E Fordítsuk le az alábbi mondatokat.



London két fontos része a City és a West End. A City a város üzleti központja. Ott található a legfontosabb bankok, a tőzsde, a biztosító társaságok, de a Szent Pál-székesegyház is. A City mindig nagyon forgalmas.

A West Enden sok-sok áruház van, például a Harrods, de vannak múzeumok, mozik, színházak, kiállítótermek és számos vendéglő, francia, olasz, japán és kínai is. A Buckingham Palace és a Parlament is a West Enden található.

De Anglia több, mint London! Sok szép régi város és gyönyörű táj van még Angliában, Skóciában, Walesben és Írországbán.

F Melyik város hol van? A térkép alapján válaszoljunk a feltett kérdésekre.



0 Where is Glasgow?

It's in the west of Scotland.

1 Where is Dublin?

2 Where are Winchester and Southampton?

3 Where are Boston and Lincoln?

4 Where is Thurso?

5 Where is Newcastle-upon-Tyne?

6 Where is Cardiff?

7 Where is Belfast?

8 Where are Leeds and Bradford?

- 1 Egyszerű jelenben a következő igealakokat használjuk:

EGYES SZÁM	I know . You know . He/she/it knows .
TÖBBES SZÁM	We know . You know . They know .

I **know** the answer.

She **starts** work at 9.30 a.m.

Egyes szám harmadik személyben, a **he/she/it** után az ige **-s** személyragot kap:

I start → he starts I live → she lives

Ha az ige utolsó betűje **-ch**, **-o**, **-sh**, **-x**, vagy **-ss**, a személyrag **-es**:

I watch → he watches they go → it goes
we finish → she finishes you do → he does
you fix → he fixes I miss → he misses

Ha az ige mássalhangzóra (**b**, **c**, **d** stb) + **y**-ra végződik (pl.: **study**), egyes szám harmadik személyben az **-ies** alakot használjuk:

I study → he studies I fly → it flies

(További példák a 361 oldalon, a táblázatban találhatók.)

- 2 Így tagadjuk az igét:

TAGADÁS	
TELJES ALAK	ÖSSZEVONT ALAK
I do not know	I don't know
You do not know	You don't know
He/she/it does not know	He doesn't know
We do not know	We don't know
You do not know	You don't know
They do not know	They don't know

I **don't like** that music.

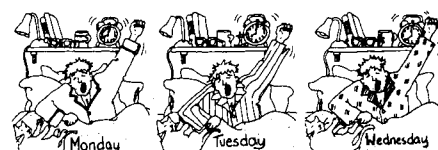
He **doesn't listen** to his teacher.

Figyelem: Egyes szám harmadik személyben a **does** alakot használjuk. Az ige ilyenkor nem kap **-s** ragot.

He does not know. (NEM: ~~He does not knows.~~)

- 3 Az egyszerű jelen akkor használjuk, amikor

- ▶ valamilyen tényt állapítunk meg:
She **comes** from France. (= She is French.)
Greengrocers **sell** vegetables.
I **don't speak** Chinese.
- ▶ olyasmiről beszélünk, ami rendszeresen történik:



He **gets up** at eight o'clock every day.

He **plays** golf every day.

- ▶ a mondatban gyakoriságot kifejező határozószó szerepel (pl. **twice a week**, **often**):

We **watch** TV every evening.

Tom **practises** the piano three times a week.

Figyeljük meg, hogy a gyakoriságot kifejező határozószó mindig a főige előtt (pl. **go**, **visit**), de a **be** létige után áll.

I **never** go to bed after midnight.

I **don't often** visit my grandparents.

He is **usually** late for school.

Gyakorlatok

- A A következő cikk a skót életvitelről szól. Pótoljuk az igék **-s** vagy **-es** végződését, ahol szükséges. A hibátlan mondatokat pipáljuk ki.

Sally and Mike Pitts ⁰ live in Edinburgh. Sally ⁰ work in a bank. Mike ¹ teach Spanish at a local school. They ² start work at 9 o'clock. Mike ³ go to work by bus, but Sally ⁴ walk to the bank. Mike ⁵ finish work at 4 o'clock, and he often ⁶ watch TV in the evening. After work, Sally sometimes ⁷ do yoga. They usually ⁸ play tennis together on Saturday.

B Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

do drink eat fly forget play live (x2) love try visit

Sally's mother ⁰ *lives* in Switzerland, and she ¹ to Edinburgh four times a year to visit Sally and Mike. Mike ² his parents twice a year. They ³ in Ireland. He ⁴ to phone his mum twice a week, but sometimes he ⁵

Sally says: 'I ⁶ chocolate! But I ⁷ a lot of fruit and vegetables too, and I ⁸ yoga every week. Mike often ⁹ beer, but we ¹⁰ sports together in the park three times a week.'

C Egészítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben lévő igék megfelelő tagadó alakjával.

Mike ⁰ *doesn't like* (like) films, so Sally goes to the cinema with her friend Gill. Sally ¹ (eat) meat, so Mike and Sally often have different meals. They ² (live) in a very big house, but they've got a nice garden. Sally ³ (speak) Spanish, but Mike's Spanish friends all speak English. Sally and Mike both work hard, so they ⁴ (get up) early on Sunday morning! Mike ⁵ (go) to bed before midnight.

D A táblázat segítségével egészítsük ki a diákok szabadidejéről szóló mondatokat.

	Steve	Jane	Carol	Emma	Alan	Tony
go to discos?	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓
play sports?	✗	✓	✗	✓	✓	✗
help in the house?	✓	✓	✗	✓	✗	✓
play computer games?	✗	✗	✓	✗	✓	✗
watch sports on TV?	✓	✓	✗	✗	✓	✓
go to church?	✗	✗	✓	✗	✓	✗
play a musical instrument?	✗	✓	✗	✓	✗	✓

- 0 Steve *doesn't play* sports but he *watches* sports on TV.
- 0 Jane and Emma *don't go* to church.
- 1 Emma sports but she sports on TV.
- 2 Steve and Alan to discos but they a musical instrument.
- 3 Alan computer games but he in the house.
- 4 Tony to church.
- 5 Carol and Alan to church but they in the house.
- 6 Jane a musical instrument but she to discos.
- 7 Carol a musical instrument.
- 8 Tony computer games but he sports on TV.
- 9 Emma and Tony computer games but they to discos.

1 Az egyszerű jelen (Present Simple) alakjai:

KÉRDÉS			
EGYES SZÁM	Do	I/you	} know?
	Does	he/she/it	
TÖBBES SZÁM	Do	we	} know?
	Do	you	
	Do	they	

Az **I/you/we/they** elé tesszük a **do** segédigét:

Do you speak Spanish? ~ Yes, I do.

Do they know the answer?

A **he/she/it** előtt a **does** alakot használjuk:

Does he walk to work?

Does Steve enjoy his job?

Does she play the piano?

Figyelem:

Does he walk? (NEM: ~~Does he walks?~~)

2 A kérdőszó (**when/where/why** stb.) megelőzi a **do/does** segédigét.

Where do you work?

A **How often** kérdőszót használjuk, ha azt szeretnénk megtudni, milyen gyakran történik valami.

How often do you play tennis?

3 Az egyszerű jelen akkor használjuk, ha:

- az érzéseinket, véleményünket fogalmazzuk meg:



I like pop music. I don't like classical music.

She loves football.

Philip wants a new car.

I don't want a cup of tea, thanks.

He feels sick.

- ha azt mondjuk meg, mit gondolunk:

I think he's angry.



I don't think she likes her new job.

Gyakorlatok

A Nyaralás közben bemegyünk az utazási irodába. Tegyük fel kérdéseket a megadott mondatok segítségével.

A	B	C
Do	you	stop at the railway station?
Does	the sports centre	finish before eleven p.m.?
	all the banks	start here?
	the number 38 bus	sell maps of the city?
	the restaurants	change tourists' money into pounds?
	the concert	sell souvenirs?
	the sightseeing tour	have a swimming pool?
	the museum	serve typical English food?

0 *Do you sell maps of the city?*

1 the sports centre

2

3

4

5

6

7

B A következő interjúban Mary Woods a férjére és saját magára vonatkozó kérdésekre válaszol. Fogalmazzuk meg a kérdéseket. Használjuk a megadott ötleteket.

like films	read books	listen to the radio	live in London	smoke	watch TV
play a musical instrument	play golf	like pop music	go to the theatre	drive a car	
drink coffee	like dogs	speaks any foreign languages			

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 0 <i>Do you live in London?</i> | ~ Yes, I live in north London. |
| 0 <i>Does John play golf?</i> | ~ No, but he plays tennis. |
| 1 | ~ Yes, I speak French. |
| 2 | ~ Yes, I like all the programmes on TV. |
| 3 | ~ Yes, he listens to the radio in the morning. |
| 4 | ~ No, but he loves cats. |
| 5 | ~ No, I don't like films. |
| 6 | ~ Yes, he has two cups in the morning. |
| 7 | ~ No, but I have a bicycle. |
| 8 | ~ Yes, he plays the piano. |
| 9 | ~ No, I prefer classical music. |
| 10 | ~ Yes, I love musicals. |
| 11 | ~ Yes, I read one book every week. |
| 12 | ~ No, he doesn't like cigarettes. |

C Írjunk mondatokat Johnról és Maryról. (✓ = szereti, ✓✓ = nagyon szereti, X = nem szereti, XX = utálja)

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 0 (tennis X) <i>He doesn't like tennis.</i> | 3 (reading books ✓✓) He |
| 0 (musicals ✓✓) <i>She loves musicals.</i> | 4 (dogs XX) She |
| 1 (coffee ✓) He | 5 (classical music ✓) He |
| 2 (films X) She | 6 (cigarettes X) She |

D Írjunk kérdéseket az alábbi szavak helyes sorrendbe rendezésével.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 0 (do/does/films/horror/like/you) | <i>Do you like horror films?</i> |
| 1 (cousin/do/does/live/where/your) | ..... |
| 2 (a/cup/do/does/of/tea/they/want) | ..... |
| 3 (do/does/Ellen/play/tennis/where) | ..... |
| 4 (cats/do/does/like/milk/why) | ..... |
| 5 (do/does/classical/music/play/she) | ..... |
| 6 (CD/do/does/he/his/like/new) | ..... |
| 7 (do/does/she/start/when/work) | ..... |
| 8 (do/does/English/how/Kate/often/practise) | ..... |

A Írjuk be a mondatokba a zárójelben lévő ige egyszerű jelen idejű állító vagy tagadó alakját. Használjuk a **don't**, **doesn't** alakokat.

- 0 Tom *catches* (catch) the bus to school at about nine o'clock.
- 1 It often (rain) at this time of the year.
- 2 I (not/drive) to work. I go by bus.
- 3 She usually (have) lunch at about one o'clock.
- 4 He (not/earn) much money in his job.
- 5 This problem (not/happen) very often.
- 6 My father (fly) to the USA regularly.
- 7 Trains to Oxford (leave) every hour in the morning.
- 8 You (not/do) your work carefully enough.
- 9 She (read) a newspaper every day.
- 10 We (not/listen) to the radio very often.
- 11 He often (arrive) at work late.
- 12 They (go) to a lot of concerts.

B Egészítsük ki az alábbi párbeszégeket. Használjuk az egyszerű jelen időt.

- 0 A: *Does Alan use* a computer?
B: Yes, Alan uses a computer.
- 1 A: in an office?
B: No, Carol works in a factory.
- 2 A: Where your games?
B: We play our games in the local park.
- 3 A: the bus to school?
B: Yes, I take the bus to school every morning.
- 4 A: When ?
B: The shops close at five o'clock in the afternoon.
- 5 A: abroad on holiday every year?
B: Yes, we go abroad every year.
- 6 A: What kind of car ?
B: He drives an old German car.

C Alkossunk kérdéseket és válaszokat az alábbi szavak felhasználásával.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 0 (you/TV/watch/every/do/evening) | <i>Do you watch TV every evening?</i> |
| (watch/every/TV/evening/we) | No, <i>we don't watch TV every evening.</i> |
| 1 (dinner/do/have/time/what/you) | ..... |
| (at/dinner/have/eight o'clock/we) | ..... |
| 2 (breakfast/do/have/where/you) | ..... |
| (breakfast/have/in/kitchen/the/we) | ..... |
| 3 (coffee/do/drink/in/morning/the/you) | ..... |
| (coffee/drink/we) | No, |

- 4 (does/bus/son/take/the/to/work/your)
 (work/he/the/takes/bus/to) No,
 5 (daughter/do/does/what/your)
 (at/she/the/university//teaches)
 6 (do/dogs/house/in/sleep/the/the)
 (house/in/sleep/the/they) No,

D Írjuk be a mondatokba a zárójelben található igék megfelelő egyszerű jelen idejű alakját.

- 0 Jane **reads** (read) the *Guardian* newspaper, but I **read** (read) *The Independent*.
 1 Fred (cycle) to work, but his wife (go) by car.
 2 Mark (say) he (do) a lot of fishing, but he never (catch) anything.
 3 Jeff (buy) his food in small shops, but Jane (do) all her shopping at the supermarket.
 4 Diana (like) physics, chemistry and biology; she always (get) good marks in her science exams.
 5 Susan (live) in Leeds, but she (work) in Bradford.
 6 I (leave) work at six o'clock, but John (finish) work at five o'clock.
 7 Mary (ride) her bike to school and her father (carry) her books.
 8 For breakfast, Ann (eat) cereal with milk.

E Fogalmazzuk meg a kérdéseket és a válaszokat a zárójelben található szavakból. Használjunk egyszerű jelen időt.

- 0 (the President of the USA/live/in New York?) ~ (No, he/live/in Washington.)
 **Does the President of the USA live in New York?** ~ **No, he lives in Washington.**.....
 1 (modern trains/use/coal?) ~ (No, they/use/electricity.)
 ~
 2 (the Queen/wear/a crown?) ~ (No, she/usually wear/a hat.)
 ~
 3 (wine/come/from oranges?) ~ (No, it/come/from grapes.)
 ~
 4 (Sri Lanka/export/coffee?) ~ (No, it/export/tea.)
 ~
 5 (potatoes/grow/on bushes?) ~ (No, they/grow/in the ground.)
 ~

F Alakítsuk át az E gyakorlat mondatait tagadó mondatokká.

- 0 **The President of the USA doesn't live in New York.**
 1
 2
 3
 4
 5

G Írjunk állító illetve tagadó mondatokat a zárójelben található szavak felhasználásával.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 0 (The sun/rise/in the east) | <i>The sun rises in the east.</i> |
| 0 (The sun/rise/in the west) | <i>The sun doesn't rise in the west.</i> |
| 1 (Ice/float/on water) | ..... |
| 2 (Lions/live/in the Arctic) | ..... |
| 3 (Winter/come/after spring) | ..... |
| 4 (Austrians/speak/German) | ..... |
| 5 (Cotton/come/from sheep) | ..... |

H Írjuk be a párbeszéd hiányzó szavait. Használjuk a megadott igéket, de mindegyiket csak egyszer.

leave	eat	start	have	arrive	like	get	drink	watch	go
work	brush	stop							

INTERVIEWER: How do you start the day, Jim?

JIM: Well, I ⁰. *get* up at six o'clock. I get washed and dressed, and I have breakfast at seven o'clock. I ¹ toast and marmalade. After breakfast, I ² my teeth. I ³ to work at eight.

INTERVIEWER: When do you get to work?

JIM: I usually ⁴ at my office at about half past eight. First I ⁵ a cup of coffee, and then I ⁶ work at a quarter to nine.

INTERVIEWER: Where do you work?

JIM: I ⁷ in a bank. I am a computer operator. I ⁸ my job. It's very interesting.

INTERVIEWER: When do you eat lunch?

JIM: I ⁹ work and I have lunch at one o'clock. I ¹⁰ tea at half past three.

INTERVIEWER: When do you finish work?

JIM: I ¹¹ the office at six o'clock. I eat dinner when I get home. Then I ¹² TV for an hour or two.

I Keressük meg a kérdésekhez a megfelelő választ.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 0 How often do you eat chocolate? | a As late as possible. |
| 1 When does Ben do his homework? | b Two or three times a day. |
| 2 Where does your mother work? | c Because I love it! |
| 3 When do you get up on Sundays? | d To her grandmother's house. |
| 4 How often do you brush your teeth? | e Because he always oversleeps. |
| 5 Where does Angela go after school? | f About once a week. |
| 6 Why do you play tennis every day? | g As soon as he gets home. |
| 7 Why does Tony always get to school late? | h In a bank. |
- 0 *f* 1 2 3 4 5 6 7

J Döntsük el, melyik mondat helyes és melyik nem. Ha helyes a mondat, tegyük pipát (✓) a kockába, ha helytelen a mondat, jelöljük X-szel, és írjuk le a mondatot helyesen.

- | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 0 I like not that music. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <i>I don't like that music</i> |
| 0 Mary knows the answer. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | |
| 1 Go they to bed after midnight? | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 2 We watch TV every evening. | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 3 Where your sister works? | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 4 She plays tennis every Saturday. | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 5 Carlos and Maria works in Mexico City. | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 6 What do elephants eat? | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 7 Philip doesn't want a cup of tea. | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 8 The shops closes at five o'clock. | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 9 She don't comes from France. | <input type="checkbox"/> | |

K A meghatározás alapján válasszuk ki a megfelelő foglalkozást, és mondatba foglalva írjuk a kipontozott vonalra.

dentist pop star artist doctor ~~footballer~~ photographer

- 0 We often see him on TV. When he scores a goal the crowd goes crazy.
He's a footballer.
- 1 He works at the hospital. He looks after sick children.

- 2 She takes pictures for one of the top fashion magazines.

- 3 She always says to her patients, 'Open your mouth, please!'

- 4 We sometimes go to see her band. She sings and plays lead guitar.

- 5 He paints wonderful pictures. I love the way he uses colour.

L Írjuk le, mit csinál Robert egy átlagos napon. Használjuk az egyszerű jelen időt.

Robert tizenhat éves. Norwich-ban él a szüleivel. Minden reggel fél nyolckor kel.

Megfürdik, felöltözik, utána reggelizik.

Reggelire (általában) tejet iszik és vajás, lekváros pirítóst eszik. Reggeli után fogat mos.

Fél kilenckor indul el az iskolába.

Az iskola előtt találkozik a barátaival. Egyenruhát nem kell viselniük, (általában) farmert hordanak és edzőcipőt. Kicsit beszélgetnek, aztán bemennek az iskolába.

A tanítás nyolc óra ötven perckor kezdődik. Minden nap hat órájuk van. Ma történelem, földrajz és francia órájuk van, matematika és fizika nincs. Fél egykor kezdődik az ebédszünet. Robert akkor eszi meg a szendvicset. A tanítás háromnegyed négyig tart.

Robert hazamegy, és készül a másnapi órákra.

A szülei hatig dolgoznak, és általában hét körül érnek haza. Este Robert tévét néz, vagy a számítógépén játszik. Gyakran találkozik a barátaival. Este tízre szokott hazaérni.



A folyamatos jelen – Present Continuous (1) (I'm eating, I'm not eating)

- 1 A folyamatos jelenben a következő szerkezetet használjuk:

	be +	-ing alak
I	am	eating

A folyamatos jelen idő alakjai:

ÁLLÍTÁS

TELJES ALAK

I **am eating**
You **are eating**
He/she/it **is eating**
We **are eating**
You **are eating**
They **are eating**

ÖSSZEVONT ALAK

I'm **eating**
You're **eating**
He/she/it's **eating**
We're **eating**
You're **eating**
They're **eating**

TAGADÁS

TELJES ALAK

I **am not eating**
You **are not eating**
He/she/it **is not eating**
We **are not eating**
You **are not eating**
They **are not eating**

ÖSSZEVONT ALAK

I'm **not eating**
You **aren't/re not eating**
He/she/it **isn't/s not eating**
We **aren't/re not eating**
You **aren't/re not eating**
They **aren't/re not eating**

- 2 Az -ing alakot úgy képezzük, hogy az ige főnévi igenévi alakjához hozzákapsoljuk az -ing végződést.

listen → listening
work → working

play → playing
read → reading

- 3 Figyeljük meg a következő -ing végződéssel ellátott igék helyesírását:

win → winning	get → getting
shop → shopping	sit → sitting
swim → swimming	travel → travelling
dance → dancing	write → writing

Az -ing végződéssel ellátott igék helyesírására vonatkozó magyarázatok a 361 oldalon találhatóak.

- 4 A folyamatos jelen időt akkor használjuk, amikor
▶ olyan cselekvésről beszélünk, amely éppen folyamatban van a beszélgetés idején:



- ▶ olyan cselekvésről beszélünk, amely mostanában történik, de nem feltétlenül a beszéd pillanatában:



- ▶ elmeséljük, mi történik egy képen vagy fényképen:
Look! In this photo John's *playing* volleyball.

Gyakorlatok

- A A megadott szavak felhasználásával írjuk le, mit csinálnak a képeken látható emberek. Használjunk folyamatos jelent.



- 0 *He's drinking* (He/drink) a cup of coffee.
1 (They/carry) their suitcases.
2 (She/take) a photograph.
3 (They/sit) on a bench.

B Sheila és Tommy régi barátok, hosszú ideje nem találkoztak. Egészítsük ki a szöveget folyamatos jelen használatával. (Három helyen tagadó alakot kell használnunk.)

SHEILA: Tommy! How are you? How's work?
 TOMMY: I'm fine thanks, but ⁰ I **'m not teaching**... (teach) at the moment. ⁰ I **'m taking**... (take) a two-year break. What about you?
 SHEILA: ¹ I (work) at the travel agent's as usual, but ² I (live) in my flat in Camden. ³ I (stay) with my mum. She's ill, and ⁴ I (look) after her. Anyway, what are you doing in your break?
 TOMMY: ⁵ I (study) Chinese, but ⁶ I (learn) very fast! I want to work in China next year.
 SHEILA: Great! And how are Maddy and the new baby?
 TOMMY: They're fine. Of course, ⁷ we (sleep) much at the moment. The baby wakes up every hour! She ⁸ (grow) fast, though.

C A következő beszélgetés egy londoni karneválról szól. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott igék és folyamatos jelen használatával.

enjoy talk ~~stand~~ stay eat play dance

Good morning. ⁰ **I'm standing**... in the street with hundreds of people. ¹ A steel band, and ² two girls to the music. At the moment, ³ I to Miranda and Martin.
 'Miranda, where are you from?'
 'I'm from Mexico. ⁴ I in London for two weeks.'
 'Is this your first visit to the Carnival?'
 'Yes. ⁵ I the music and the food. At the moment ⁶ I a lamb curry.'

take drink throw wear listen come

'Thank you, Miranda. So, Martin, are you enjoying the Carnival?'
 'Yes, ⁷ I to some really good new music and ⁸ I some fruit juice.'
 'And you've got a camera, so ⁹ you a lot of photographs.'
 'Of course. It's a very colourful day!'
 Now, ¹⁰ another float ¹¹ The people on the float sports clothes.
¹² They balls. I think they're from a basketball team.

D Egészítsük ki az alábbi képeslapot. Használjunk folyamatos jelen idejű teljes alakokat (pl.: **is sitting**).

Jenny and I ⁰ **are staying**... (stay) here for a week. The sun ¹ (shine) and it's very hot. We ² (sit) on the beach and I ³ (drink) an orange juice. We ⁴ (not swim) because we're both tired. We ⁵ (watch) the boats on the sea at the moment. They ⁶ (travel) fast, but I can see fifteen or sixteen. Jenny ⁷ (read) her book, and I ⁸ (write) all the postcards!

1 Kérdő szerkezet folyamatos jelenben:

KÉRDÉS				
EGYES SZÁM	Am	I	}	winning?
	Are	you		
	Is	she/he/it		
TÖBBES SZÁM	Are	we	}	winning?
	Are	you		
	Are	they		

Néhány példamondat:

Is he watching TV at the moment?

Are they working hard?

Are you listening to me? ~ Yes, I am.

(További példák a 46. fejezetben találhatók.)

2 Az alábbi, folyamatos jelen idejű kérdések mind ugyanazt jelentik: „Hogy vagy?”

How's it going?

How are you getting on?

How are you doing?



3 A folyamatos jelent akkor használjuk, ha

- ▶ valamilyen változásról vagy folyamatról beszélünk. Ilyenkor általában a **nowadays**, **these days** időhatározókat tesszük a mondatba.

The earth's climate is getting warmer.

(= A Föld éghajlata melegszik.)

These days, more and more people are going abroad for their holidays. (= Manapság egyre több ember megy külföldre nyaralni.)

- ▶ azt akarjuk kifejezni, hogy valami túl gyakran történő esemény zavar bennünket. Ilyenkor az **always** határozószót használjuk. Figyeljük meg az **always** helyét a mondatban!

Tom is always asking stupid questions.

(= Tamás állandóan butaságokat kérdez.)

They're always telephoning me at home.

(A folyamatos jelen használatára vonatkozó egyéb tudnivalók a 7. fejezetben találhatók.)

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk kérdéseket a zárójelben található szavak helyes sorrendbe állításával.

0 (enjoying/your work/you/are/?)

Are you enjoying your work?

1 (she/having lunch/is/?)

.....

2 (you/are/feeling sick/?)

.....

3 (playing football/are/they/?)

.....

4 (the cat/sleeping/is/?)

.....

5 (relaxing/are/you/?)

.....

6 (the sun/is/shining/?)

.....

7 (he/is/coming/to the cinema/?)

.....

8 (listening/are/they/?)

.....

9 (eating/at the moment/she/is/?)

.....

10 (it/raining hard/is/?)

.....

11 (I/getting better/at tennis/am/?)

.....

12 (are/winning the match/we/?)

.....

B Keressük meg a kérdésekhez tartozó helyes válaszokat, és írjuk a megfelelő betűt a kérdés száma mellé.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 0 Is she enjoying her new job? | a Yes, we're working hard. |
| 1 Is she working in Peru this year? | b No, they're playing CDs. |
| 2 Why are you cycling to school these days? | c Because she's trying to earn more money. |
| 3 Is Peter in the bathroom? | d Because I'm trying to get fit. |
| 4 Is David working in a bar this summer? | e Yes, they're learning Spanish. |
| 5 Are they listening to the radio? | f No, he's working in a restaurant. |
| 6 Are you studying English this year? | g Yes, she's always talking about it! |
| 7 Are they living in Madrid at the moment? | h Yes, he's having a bath. |
| 8 Why is Julie working so much at the moment? | i No, she's studying in Mexico. |
- 0 ... **g** ... 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

C Szabó úr az Európai Unióról beszél az alábbi interjúban. Egészítsük ki a válaszait a megadott igékkel. Használjuk a folyamatos jelent.

become breathe build drive get go have increase live smoke work

- REPORTER: What do you think are the good things and the bad things in Europe today?
- SZABÓ: Well, I think it is very positive that medical treatment ⁰ *is becoming* ... more effective and this means that, in Europe, people ¹ longer these days. But, of course, more and more women ² outside the home and so parents ³ smaller families. The effect of this is that, in general, the age of the population ⁴
- REPORTER: What are some of the negative things?
- SZABÓ: Well, one big problem is that young people ⁵ more, and this is bad for their health. Another negative point, especially in big towns, is that more and more people ⁶ to work, so although we ⁷ more roads, traffic is a big problem. Cars also affect the air, of course. Nowadays, we ⁸ air that ⁹ more and more polluted. Another thing is that many young people can't find a place to live. Governments cannot stop inflation and house prices ¹⁰ up all the time.

D A zárójelben található szavak felhasználásával válaszoljunk a kérdésekre. Mindegyik válaszban használjuk az **always** szót.

- 0 A: Why don't you like Adam?
B: (tell/stupid stories) *Because he's always telling stupid stories.*
- 1 A: Why are you annoyed with Mary?
B: (ask/me for money)
- 2 A: Why don't you like Pam and Paul?
B: (argue/in public)
- 3 A: Why are you annoyed with Susan?
B: (borrow/my CDs)
- 4 A: Why don't you like Mark?
B: (phone/me late at night)

A A megadott igék felhasználásával írjuk le, mi történik a képeken. A mondatok alanya **He/She/It/They** legyen, és használjunk folyamatos jelent.

0



1



2



3



4



5



paint
eat
walk
look
run
wash

- 0 *They're walking* over a bridge.
 1 after a ball.
 2 a picture.
 3 a baby.
 4 some fish.
 5 over a wall.

B Egészítsük ki a kérdéseket a megfelelő személyes névmással (**I/you/he** stb). Használjunk folyamatos jelent.

- 0 A: What *are you watching* (watch) on the TV?
 B: I'm watching a programme about wildlife in Africa.
 1 A: What (do) at the moment?
 B: He's reading a book.
 2 A: (listen) to me?
 B: Yes, of course I'm listening to you.
 3 A: Where (go)?
 B: I'm going to the shops.
 4 A: What (cook)?
 B: He's cooking an Italian meal.
 5 A: Where (stay)?
 B: She's staying with some friends.
 6 A: (wait) for the number 36 bus?
 B: No, I'm waiting for a different bus.
 7 A: (rain) at the moment?
 B: No, it's quite sunny now.
 8 A: What (read)?
 B: I'm reading a very interesting novel.

C Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet. Használjunk folyamatos jelent.

- PAUL: Hi, Steve! What are you doing?
- STEVE: 0. *I'm going*..... (I/go) to the bank. What are you doing?
- PAUL: 1..... (I/shop). 2..... (I/look) for a new tennis racket. 3..... (I/play) a lot of tennis at the moment, and I need a new racket.
- STEVE: Where is Jackie? Do you know?
- PAUL: Yes. She isn't in England at the moment. 4..... (She/work) in France for a month.
- STEVE: What 5..... (she/do) in France?
- PAUL: 6..... (She/sing) in a night-club.
- STEVE: Really? What about Fred and Sue? What 7..... (they/do)?
- PAUL: 8..... (They/study) for an exam. They're always in the library at the moment.
- STEVE: How is your sister? Is she all right?
- PAUL: Yes, she's fine, but she's tired. 9..... (We/paint) the living-room. It's hard work.
- STEVE: Can I help you?
- PAUL: No, it's OK. My father 10..... (help).
- STEVE: Well, I hope you find a good racket.

D Írjuk le, mit csinálnak (✓) és mit nem csinálnak (X) a képen látható személyek.



- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 0 (George/eat/breakfast) | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <i>George isn't eating breakfast.</i> |
| (George/sleep) | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <i>George is sleeping.</i> |
| 1 (They/work) | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| (They/sit/in the garden) | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 2 (I/study/music) | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| (I/learn/Japanese) | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 3 (He/play/tennis) | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| (He/win) | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 4 (We/spend/a day/at the seaside) | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| (The sun/shine) | <input type="checkbox"/> | |

E Fejezzük be a mondatokat a jobb oldali oszlopban található kifejezések valamelyikével.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| 0 More British people are changing their ... | a foreign languages. |
| 1 More women are becoming ... | b to university. |
| 2 More professional people are ... | c jobs regularly. |
| 3 More young people are going ... | d studying part-time. |
| 4 More people are working at ... | e home. |
| 5 More young people aren't ... | f Members of Parliament. |
| 6 More British people are learning ... | g eating meat. |
| 7 More small British companies are using ... | h computers. |

- 0 *More British people are changing their jobs regularly.*
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7

F Egészítsük ki a következő beszélgetést a megadott kifejezésekkel és folyamatos jelen használatával.

she/hold	you/help	I/learn	I/not drink	you/study	she/work for	Elaine/sell
he/smile	I/organize	we/decorate/the kitchen	I/stay	how/it/going		

- JULIA: Hello, 0 *how's it going?* You're Paul's son, aren't you?
- GREG: That's right.
- JULIA: I'm Julia, Elaine's niece. 1 at Elaine's house at the moment.
- GREG: 2 her house, isn't she?
- JULIA: That's right. I'm helping her. 3 and the dining room at the moment. It's a nice wedding, isn't it? 4 your dad?
- GREG: Yes. 5 the disco with my uncle Max. Can I get you some more wine?
- JULIA: No, thanks. 6 wine, actually. This is water.
- GREG: So 7 or working at the moment?
- JULIA: 8 Japanese. Elaine has got an old friend in Tokyo. I'm going to visit him in September.
- GREG: That's interesting. My sister speaks Japanese. 9 a Japanese bank in London at the moment. She's over there by the window.
- 10 my little nephew, John.
- JULIA: He's very sweet. Look, 11 at us!

G A megadott szavak felhasználásával egészítsük ki az alábbi párbeszédet.

we/learn/about opera

~~how/you/get on~~

what/you/do there?

where/you/work/at the moment

she/work/in a supermarket now

I/not work/at the moment

you/enjoy/the course?

I/wait/for my wife

JOHN: Hello, Steve.⁰ *How are you getting on?*

STEVE: I'm fine, thanks.

JOHN: 1

STEVE: I've got a job in that new office on Green Street.

JOHN: Really? ²

STEVE: I'm working in the advertising department. It's quite interesting. What about you?

JOHN: Well, ³

I'm studying music at college.

STEVE: Really? What kind of music?

JOHN: All kinds! But this year,⁴

STEVE: 5

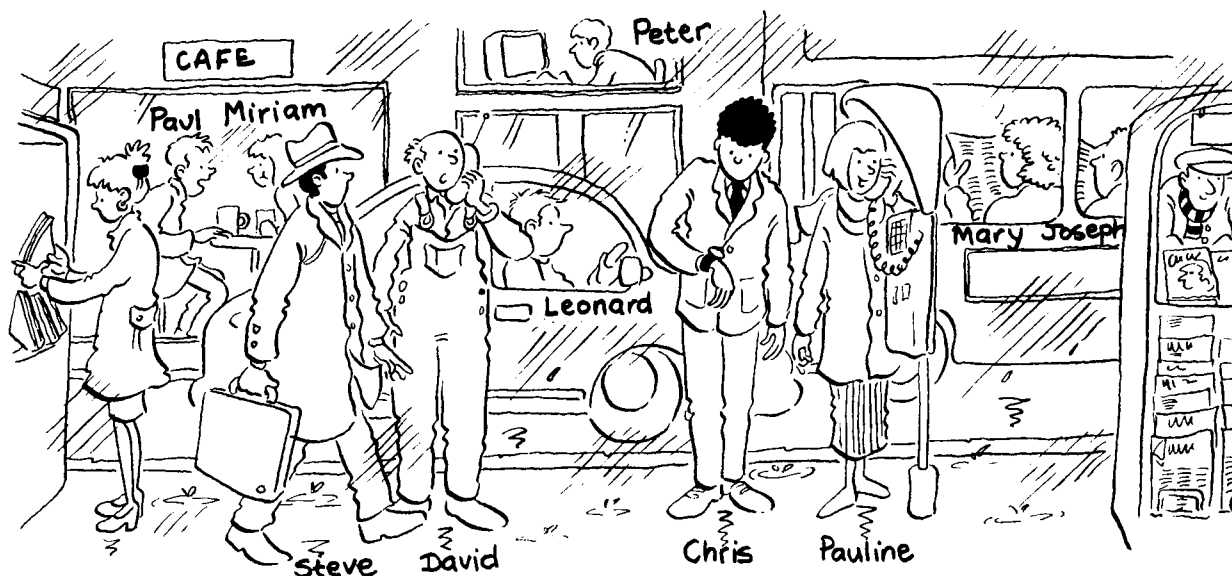
JOHN: Oh yes. But it's hard work. Listen, do you want to get a cup of coffee?

STEVE: I can't, I'm afraid. ⁶

JOHN: Oh, I see. How is she?

STEVE: Fine, thanks.⁷

H Fordítsuk le az alábbi mondatokat.



Mit csinálnak az emberek egy átlagos reggel Londonban?

Fél kilenc van, legtöbben munkába sietnek. Steve kabátot és kalapot visel. Mary és Joseph az autóbuszon ül. Mindketten újságot olvasnak. Leonard az új autóját vezeti. Paul és Miriam egy kávézóban reggelizik. Chris az óráját nézi. Egy férfi újságot árul.

Egy hölgy szendvicseket vásárol. Peter már dolgozik az irodájában. David és Pauline telefonál.

Hasonlítsuk össze az egyszerű és folyamatos jelen használatát:

Present Simple (egyszerű jelen)

Present Continuous (folyamatos jelen)

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1 Egyszerű jelent használunk, amikor valamilyen általános igazságot, tényt állapítunk meg:</p> <p><i>Anna speaks good Spanish.</i>
 <i>Journalists write newspaper articles.</i>
 <i>I come from Norway. (= Norvég vagyok.)</i></p> | <p>A folyamatos jelen azt fejezi ki, hogy a megnevezett cselekvés a beszéd pillanatában tart:</p> <p><i>Anna's busy. She's speaking on the phone.</i>
 <i>What are you writing? ~ A letter to Jane.</i>
 <i>Look! The bus is coming.</i></p> |
| <p>2 Egyszerű jelennel fejezünk ki hosszú ideig érvényes cselekvést vagy állapotot (pl. munkahely, iskola, lakóhely stb.):</p> <p><i>Mike works for an advertising company.</i>
 <i>He lives in Paris. (= Párizs az otthona.)</i>
 <i>Jane travels a lot in her job. I do a lot of sport.</i></p> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div> <p>Egyszerű jelent használunk a usually, often és every szavakkal:</p> <p><i>We usually go out to dinner at weekends.</i>
 <i>I often go to football matches on Sundays.</i>
 <i>The buses leave every hour.</i></p> | <p>Folyamatos jelent használunk, ha valamilyen átmeneti, csak egy meghatározott ideig tartó cselekvésről beszélünk (pl. nyaralás, látogatás, időszakos munka, tanfolyam stb.):</p> <p><i>John is working in the USA for six weeks.</i>
 <i>He's living in New York.</i>
 <i>Jane's travelling around Europe for a month.</i>
 <i>I'm doing a one-year course in tourism.</i></p> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div> <p>Folyamatos jelennel fejezzük ki, ha valami véleményünk szerint túl gyakran történik:</p> <p><i>Tom is always asking stupid questions.</i>
 <i>They're always complaining.</i></p> |
- 3** Az igék bizonyos csoportját általában csak egyszerű jelenben használjuk. Ezek a gondolkozással kapcsolatos igék, az érzelmeket és érzéseket vagy véleményt, illetve a birtoklást kifejező igék, pl. **know, remember, understand, like, want, hate, have**.
- Figyelem: Ezeket az igéket nem használjuk folyamatos jelenben!
- I know someone who lives in Venice. NEM: ~~I'm knowing~~ ...*
I have a house by the sea. NEM: ~~I'm having~~ ...
- A statikus igék használatára vonatkozó egyéb tudnivalók a 66. fejezetben találhatók.

Gyakorlatok

A Tegyük a zárójelben lévő igéket egyszerű vagy folyamatos jelenbe.

- 0 A: What **are you doing** (you/do)?
 B: I **'m finishing** (finish) my homework.
- 1 A: How (your sister/travel) to work every day?
 B: She (take) the bus.
- 2 A: What (you/eat)?
 B: An apple. It's delicious! I (love) apples.
- 3 A: Look! It (snow).
 B: It (snow) every year in my country.

B Ez Anna első angol nyelven írott levele Davidnek és ejtett benne néhány hibát. Javítsuk ki a hibásan használt igéket. Ha az igealak helyes, jelöljük pipával (✓).

Dear David,

I live⁰ ✓ in a large flat in Rome. I ~~am having~~⁰ have

two sisters. They are called Rosa and Maria. We are getting up

¹ at seven o'clock every morning, and we have

² coffee and a small breakfast. I leave

³ the flat at eight and walk to the university. I am finishing

⁴ classes at five every day, and I arrive⁵

home at six. This month I work⁶ very hard for my first exams.

At the moment, I eat⁷ breakfast in the kitchen of our flat;

my mother drinks⁸ coffee, and my sisters are reading

⁹ magazines.

On Saturday afternoons I am playing¹⁰ tennis with my

friends, or I go¹¹ to the cinema. Today, I'm going to see a

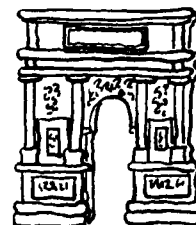
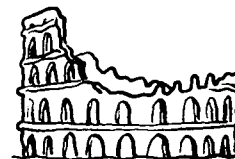
new English film! Sometimes I am watching¹² American

films on TV, but I am not understanding¹³ the words!

Are you liking¹⁴ films?

With best wishes,

Anna



C Írjunk mondatokat a zárójelben található szavak felhasználásával. Használjuk az egyszerű vagy a folyamatos jelent.

0 (Usually she/work/at the office, but this week she/work/at home)

Usually she works at the office, but this week she's working at home.

1 (You/not/eat/very much at the moment. Are you ill?)

2 (She/know/three words in Italian!)

3 (I/take/the bus to work this week, but usually I/walk)

4 (I/study/Japanese this year. It's very difficult.)

5 (you/watch/the television at the moment?)

6 (I/not/remember/the name of the hotel)

7 (She/speak/three languages)

8 (The sun/shine./It's a beautiful day!)

D Két fiatalember várakozik a vonatra. Egészítsük ki a beszélgetést a zárójelben található szavak segítségével. Használjunk egyszerű vagy folyamatos jelent.

- ROBERT: (Hello./you/ wait/for the same train as me?)
 0 *Hello. Are you waiting for the same train as me?*
- PAUL: (I/not/ know. I/ wait/for the 6.15 to Brussels. And you?)
 1
- ROBERT: (Yes, me too./you/live/ in Brussels?)
 2
- PAUL: (No. I come from Brussels, but I/ study/ at university in Paris at the moment.)
 3
- ROBERT: (Oh yes? What course/you/ do?)
 4
- PAUL: (I/ do/ a two-year course in business management.)
 5
- ROBERT: (So why/you/ go/ to Brussels?)
 6
- PAUL: (All my friends/ live/ there, and I/ often/ go/ there at weekends.)
 7
 (I/ not/ know/ many people in Paris. What about you?/ you/ often/ go/ to/ Brussels?)
 8
- ROBERT: (Yes, on business. I/ go/ to a meeting there today.)
 9
- PAUL: (Oh yes. What kind of job/you/ do?)
 10
- ROBERT: (I/ work/ in the Marketing Department of a small company, and I/ often/ travel/ to different towns and cities for meetings.)
 11
- PAUL: (What/ your company/ sell?)
 12
- ROBERT: (It/ make/ clocks.)
 13
- PAUL: (Oh look! The train/ come.)
 14

E Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az egyszerű vagy folyamatos jelen megfelelő alakjával.

- 0 I *leave* (leave) home at seven o'clock every morning.
- 1 She usually (work) in the Sales Department in London, but at the moment she (do) a training course in Bristol.
- 2 Linda (wash) her hair every day.
- 3 He (try) very hard in every game that he (play).
- 4 Excuse me. I think that you (sit) in my seat.
- 5 (you/ listen) to the radio very often?

- 6 Don't talk to me now. I (write) an important letter.
 7 Why (they/drive) on the left in Britain?
 8 It (not/get) dark at this time of year until about 10 o'clock.
 9 It (rain) here a lot, but it (not/rain) now.
 10 A: What are you doing?
 B: I (bake) a cake. Why (you/smile)?
 (I/do) something wrong?

F Egészítsük ki a következő rádióinterjút a zárójelben megadott igékkel. Használjunk egyszerű vagy folyamatos jelent.

- PENNY: Good morning, Lincoln. This is Penny Stanton with the morning interview programme. Today I ⁰ *have* (have) a visitor from Italy. Her name is Cecilia and she ⁰ *is sitting* (sit) here in the studio with me. Good morning, Cecilia.
¹ (you/sit) comfortably?
- CECILIA: Yes, thank you. I'm fine.
- PENNY: I ² (know) you are Italian, but where ³ (you/live) in Italy?
- CECILIA: I ⁴ (live) in Pisa.
- PENNY: Ah, in England everybody ⁵ (remember) that Pisa ⁶ (have) a famous leaning tower.
- CECILIA: Yes, here in Lincoln everybody ⁷ (want) to ask me about it.
- PENNY: And when people ⁸ (ask) you about the tower, what ⁹ (you/say)?
- CECILIA: I ¹⁰ (tell) them that I ¹¹ (see) it every day.
- PENNY: And now you ¹² (stay) in Lincoln – my home town. ¹³ (you/like) Lincoln?
- CECILIA: ¹⁴ (you/want) my honest opinion?
- PENNY: Of course.
- CECILIA: Well, I ¹⁵ (stay) with a wonderful family and everybody is very kind to me, so I ¹⁶ (love) the people. But I ¹⁷ (not/like) the weather. It ¹⁸ (always/rain).
- PENNY: Well, just now the sun ¹⁹ (shine).
- CECILIA: Yes, but it ²⁰ (not/shine) very often. I ²¹ (not/want) to talk about the weather.
- PENNY: All right. Why are you in Lincoln? What ²² (you/do) here?
- CECILIA: I'm here with my brother, Giovanni. We ²³ (study) English.
- PENNY: But your English is very good! You ²⁴ (speak) English very well, and you ²⁵ (understand) everything. ²⁶ (your brother/speak) very good English?
- CECILIA: No, he ²⁷ (not/speak) English very well.
- PENNY: And where is Giovanni now? What ²⁸ (he/do)? ²⁹ (you/know)?
- CECILIA: Yes, he ³⁰ (sit) with the family. They ³¹ (listen) to this interview.



A felszólító mód – Imperative (Go, Don't go)

- 1 Felszólító módban minden személyben az ige **to** nélküli főnévi igenévi alakja áll. Az egyes és többes számú, illetve a tegező és magázó alakok között nincs különbség.

Go. Help. Come. Wait.

Így használjuk a felszólító módot:

Come in. Have a cup of tea. (= Gyere be! Igyál egy csésze teát!)

Turn left at the post office.

Don't touch! It's hot. (= Ne érintsd meg! Forró.)

Maga a felszólító mód egyetlen szóból áll, de a mondatot gyakran egészítjük ki még egy-két szóval:

Help!

Help me! (= Segíts nekem!)

Help me with my suitcase.

Ha udvariasabban akarjuk kifejezni magunkat, a **please** (= légy szíves/legyen szíves) szót tesszük a mondat végére:

Help me with my suitcase, please.

Hurry up, please. We're late.

Come here, please.

Listen to me, please.

- 2 Tiltáskor a **Do not** vagy **Don't** (= Ne) kerül az ige elé:

Do not forget your books!

Don't be late!

Don't wait for me!

Rendszerint az összevont alakot használjuk:

A: *Is it all right if I take a sandwich?*

B: *No, don't!*

- 3 A felszólító módot akkor használjuk, ha:

- ▶ útbaigazítást vagy utasítást adunk:

Turn right at the corner.

Don't forget your passport.

- ▶ figyelmeztetünk valakit valamire:

Look out! There's a car coming.

Be careful! That box is very heavy.

- ▶ tanácsot adunk:

Have a rest. You look tired.

Take a coat. It's cold today.

Don't see that film. It's terrible!

- ▶ kérünk valakit valamire:

Come in, please, and sit down.

Listen to this song. It's wonderful.

Pass the butter, please.

- ▶ kínálunk vagy ajánlunk valamit:

Have another orange juice.

Make yourself a cup of coffee.

- ▶ jókívánságunkat fejezzük ki:

Have a good trip!

Have a nice holiday!

Gyakorlatok

- A Fordítsuk le a felszólító mondatokat a megadott igék használatával.

close	come	put	forget	listen	open	sit
stop	take	touch	wait	write		

- 0 Jöjjön be, kérem!
- 0 Ne várj rám!
- 1 Ne nyúlj a lámpához!
- 2 Vigyetek magatokkal esernyőt!
- 3 Üljön le egy percre!
- 4 Most ne állj meg!
- 5 Kérem, ne felejtsek el a könyveket!
- 6 Hallgasd meg ezt az új CD-t!
- 7 Nyisd ki az ablakot, légy szíves!
- 8 Tegye a táskát az asztalra, kérem!
- 9 Írd ide a neved!
- 10 Ne csukjátok be az ajtót!

Come in, please......

Don't wait for me......

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

B Steven levelet ír a barátjának. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megfelelő igékkel.

open turn be have ~~come~~ make (not) forget (not) wait bring

Dear Paul,

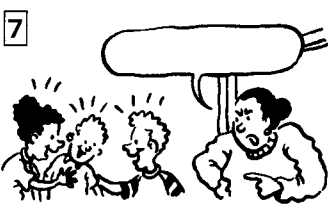
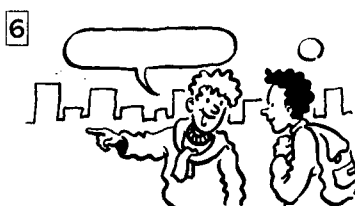
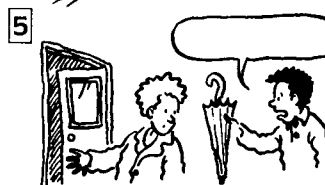
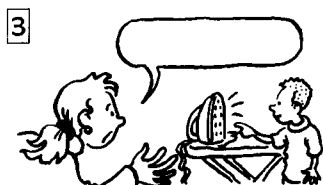
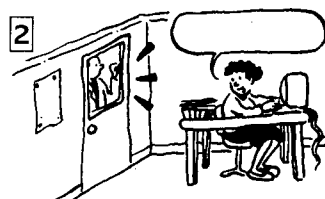
0. *Come*..... and see me next weekend. I'm staying in a house by the sea.

1..... to bring your swimming costume with you! It isn't difficult to find the house. When you get to the crossroads in the town, 2..... right and drive to the end of the road. 3..... careful because it's a dangerous road! 4..... some warm clothes with you because it is cold in the evenings here. If I'm not at home when you arrive, 5..... for me. The key to the house is under the big white stone in the garden. 6..... the front door and 7..... yourself a cup of tea in the kitchen. 8..... a good journey!

Best wishes,

Steven

C Mit mondanánk a képeken látható helyzetekben? Alkossunk felszólító mondatokat.



Come	right.
Have	out!
Pass	me!
Turn	an orange juice.
Help	your umbrella.
Don't touch	in.
Don't forget	to me!
Listen	the milk, please.
Look	it!

0 *Help me!*

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

1 A létige egyszerű múlt idejű alakjai:

ÁLLÍTÁS			
EGYES SZÁM	I	was	
	You	were	
	He/she/it	was	
TÖBBES SZÁM	We/you/they	were	
<hr/>			
TAGADÁS			
	TELJES ALAK		ÖSSZEVONT ALAK
EGYES SZÁM	I	was not	wasn't
	You	were not	weren't
	He/she/it	was not	wasn't
TÖBBES SZÁM	We/you/they	were not	weren't
<hr/>			
KÉRDÉS			
EGYES SZÁM	Was	I	} right?
	Were	you	
	Was	he/she/it	
TÖBBES SZÁM	Were	we/you/they	right?

(A rövid válaszokat lásd a 46. fejezetben.)

2 Néhány példa a **was** és **were** használatára:

I was in New York last week.
We weren't at home yesterday evening.
Was it a good film? ~ Yes, it was.
Last year there was a pop festival here.
There were four runners in the race.

3 A **was/were** alakot akkor használjuk, ha olyan tényt vagy eseményt közlünk, amely a múltban volt igaz, illetve akkor történt:*John F. Kennedy was an American president.**Our first house was in the centre of town.**A: Were your answers correct?**B: No, they were all wrong!**Paula wasn't the first person at the party.*

(= Nem Paula érkezett elsőként a buliba)

A was/were + born jelentése:*I was born in 1975.* (= 1975-ben születtem.)► A **was/were** után gyakran megmondjuk, hogy valami hol és mikor történt:

	HELY	+	IDŐ
<i>We were</i>	<i>in Spain</i>		<i>in June.</i>
<i>She wasn't</i>	<i>at home</i>		<i>last night.</i>

*George and Joanna weren't in London at the weekend. They were in Brighton.**Steve and Mary were here at six o'clock.*► Gyakori a **was/were + melléknév** szerkezet:*It was cold yesterday.**They were tired after the journey.**The train was late again this morning.**Were your exams easy? ~ The first exam was easy, but the second one wasn't.*

Gyakorlatok

A Anthony a szülővárosától beszél egy dokumentumfilmben. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a hiányzó személyes névmással (**it, they**) vagy a **there** névmással és a létige megfelelő alakjával (**was/were**).

These days there are houses on the hills outside town, but thirty years ago ⁰ *there were* trees. Now, many people in town are managers and travel agents and teachers, I suppose, but when I was young, ¹ farmers. Today the town centre is full on Sunday morning, but when I was a boy ² empty, because all the shops were shut. I don't like the change. I think Sunday should be a quiet day. There are cars everywhere nowadays - of course, ³ cars when I was young, too, but not so many. Today it's difficult to cross the road, but thirty years ago ⁴ easy, because there was no traffic. And of course, this is my house. It's very expensive now, but ⁵ cheap when my parents bought it. I was born in this house. Nowadays, of course, people are born in hospitals, but in the past ⁶ born at home. Finally, there's no snow in winter these days! When I was a boy ⁷ snow every year in February.

B Mary a múlt hét végén Madridban járt. Tegyük fel neki kérdéseket a létére megfelelő múlt idejű alakjaival (**was/were**).

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 0 (your hotel good?) | <i>Was your hotel good?</i> |
| 1 (your room comfortable?) | ..... |
| 2 (the weather nice?) | ..... |
| 3 (the streets full of people?) | ..... |
| 4 (the shops expensive?) | ..... |
| 5 (the city exciting at night?) | ..... |
| 6 (the museums interesting?) | ..... |
| 7 (the people friendly?) | ..... |
| 8 (your flight OK?) | ..... |

C George és Sally ötven éve házasság; most az első lakásukról beszélgetnek. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott szavakkal, valamint a **was** vagy **were** használatával.

new	Italian	big	green	cheap	old	bad
-----	---------	-----	-------	-------	----------------	-----

- 0 GEORGE: The house was warm.
SALLY: *No, it wasn't warm, it was cold.*
- 1 GEORGE: The garden was small.
SALLY: No, it
- 2 GEORGE: The neighbours were French.
SALLY: No, they
- 3 GEORGE: The living-room was red.
SALLY: No, it
- 4 GEORGE: Our first chairs were expensive.
SALLY: No, they
- 5 GEORGE: The kitchen was old.
SALLY: No, it
- 6 GEORGE: The local shops were good.
SALLY: No, they

D Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a **was/wasn't/were/weren't** használatával.

- PETER: 0 *Was* Paul at work today?
- JULIE: No, he 1 in the office. I think he's sick.
- HENRY: 2 you in South America last year?
- STEVE: Yes, I 3 in Bolivia on business, and then my wife and I
4 in Brazil for a holiday.
- PAULA: Philip and I 5 at home in London last week. We 6
at Mike's house in Cornwall. It was lovely there. Do you know Mike?
- JANE: Yes, I 7 at his party in Oxford in the summer.
8 you there?
- PAULA: No, we weren't there. Philip and I 9 in Portugal in the summer.

Az egyszerű múlt – Past Simple (I played, I didn't play, Did you play?)

- 1 A következő mondatokban az igék egyszerű múlt idejű alakjai szerepelnek:

*We **worked** hard last week.*

*I **didn't watch** TV last night.*

*Where **did you go** at the weekend?*

- 2 Az egyszerű múlt alakjai:

ÁLLÍTÁS

I/you	}	walked
He/she/it		
We/you/they		

TAGADÁS

	TELJES ALAK	ÖSSZEVONT ALAK
I/you	}	did not walk didn't walk
He/she/it		
We/you/they		

KÉRDÉS

I/you	}	walk?
Did he/she/it		
we/you/they		

(A rövid válaszokat lásd a 46. fejezetben.)

- 3 A szabályos igék múlt idejű alakja **-ed**-re végződik:

walk → walked play → played

Ha az ige mássalhangzó + **y**-ra végződik, múlt időben az **y** **i**-re változik. Ha az ige rövid magánhangzó + egy mássalhangzóra végződik, múlt időben a szóvégi mássalhangzó megkettőződik:

cry → cried stop → stopped

(További információ a 362. oldalon található.)

Bizonyos igék múlt idejű alakját nem a szabályos **-ed** végződéssel képezzük, ezek a rendhagyó igék:

come → came do → did
have → had go → went

(A rendhagyó igék a 363. oldalon találhatók.)

- 4 Az egyszerű múlt időt akkor használjuk, ha:

- ▶ olyan cselekvésről vagy eseményről beszélünk, ami a múltban történt és már befejeződött. Az ilyen mondatokban gyakran használunk múltra utaló időhatározót, pl.: **two years ago, last month, yesterday, at four o'clock, when?**

*I **went** to Spain **two years ago**.*

*She **left** her job **last year**.*



A: When **did you win** the cup?

B: We **won** the cup in 1993.

- ▶ valami a múltban egy bizonyos ideig tartott:

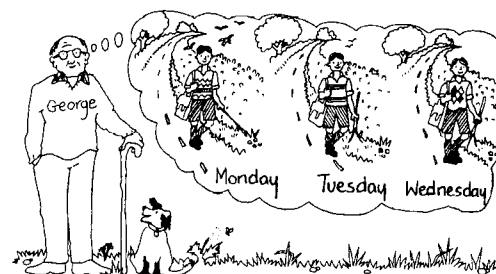
*I **lived** in Rome for two years. (= Két évig éltem Rómában.) Then I **went** to work in Japan.*

A: How long **did the Second World War last**?

(Mennyi ideig tartott a II. világháború?)

B: It **lasted** for six years.

- ▶ valami a múltban rendszeresen fordult elő:



*When George was young, he **always walked** to school. (= Amikor George kicsi volt, mindig gyalog ment iskolába.)*

- ▶ múltban játszódó történetet mondunk el. Ilyenkor egy újabb mondatot vagy bekezdést gyakran vezetünk be az **after that, then** vagy **next** szavakkal:

*We **left** home early on Saturday morning.*

*Then we **drove** without stopping to the Scottish border. We **crossed** the border. **After that**, we **stopped** in a little village and **had** something to eat. **Next** we **put** the second part of our plan into action.*

Gyakorlatok

A Olvassuk el a Robert Louis Stevensonról szóló szöveget. Pipáljuk ki a helyesen használt múlt idejű igéket, a hibás alakokat pedig húzzuk át, és írjuk le a helyes megoldást.

The Scottish writer Robert Louis Stevenson was ⁰ ~~borne~~ **born** in 1850 in Edinburgh, and he ¹ became one of Scotland's most famous writers. He ² studied law at Edinburgh University, but he never ³ worked as a lawyer. He ⁴ meeted an American woman, Fanny Osbourne, and ⁵ married her in 1880. A few years later, he ⁶ wrote his first famous book, 'The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde', about a doctor who ⁷ discovered a special drink that ⁸ changed a normal man into a monster. Stevenson ⁹ traveled to Samoa for the first time in 1888. He ¹⁰ lived the last five years of his short life on Samoa with his wife. He ¹¹ died in 1894.

B Egészítsük ki a következő levelet a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjának használatával.

Dear Jenny,

Dave, Joe and I ⁰ **went** (go) to Scotland last week for a short holiday. We ¹ (arrive) home yesterday. Dave and I ² (drive), but Joe ³ (decide) not to drive because he ⁴ (not like) the narrow roads. We ⁵ (visit) Edinburgh, of course, and we ⁶ (see) the castle, and some of the Edinburgh Festival. We ⁷ (go) to see a play, and ⁸ (listen) to a lot of world music. After Edinburgh, we ⁹ (take) the road north to Loch Ness. We ¹⁰ (meet) hundreds of other tourists, but not 'Nessie' the monster.

Pete

C Sonia vidéki nyaralása alkalmával kísérteties hangot hallott az egyik éjszaka. Egészítsük ki a beszélgetést a megadott igék múlt idejű alakjával. Három esetben használjunk tagadó szerkezetet.

eat	arrive	have	stay	go	drive	open	sleep	find	hear	see
-----	--------	-----------------	------	----	-------	------	-------	------	------	-----

SONIA: After a long walk on the beach, I ⁰ **had** an ice cream by the sea and then ¹ back to the cottage in my car. I ² at the house at about nine o'clock. I ³ the front door and went into the kitchen, because I was hungry.

MAX: ⁴ you anything to eat?

SONIA: Yes, there was some soup in a cupboard. But I ⁵ it, because I ⁶ the voice of a little girl upstairs.

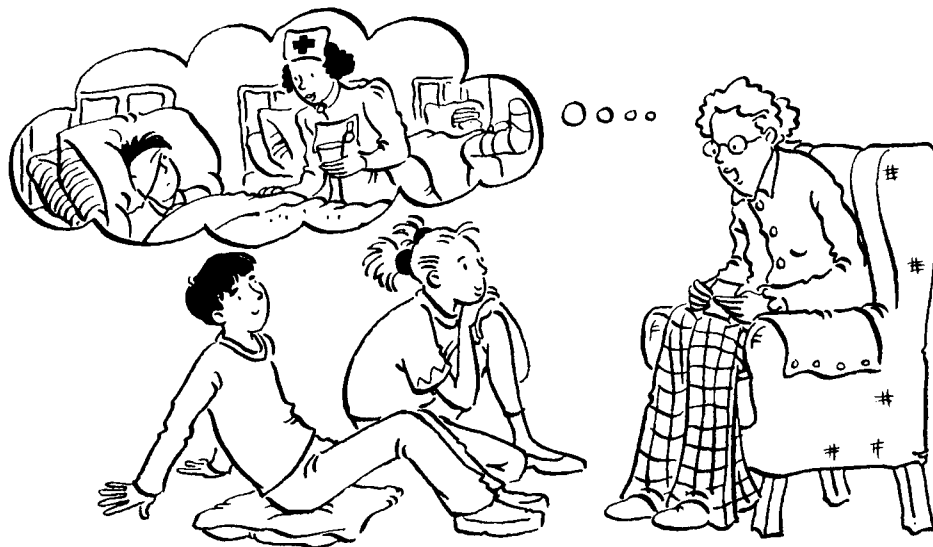
MAX: Wow! ⁷ you upstairs?

SONIA: Yes. I looked in all the bedrooms, but I ⁸ anything. I went to bed, but I ⁹ at all! I heard the voice again, and in the same room as me!

MAX: Oh dear. ¹⁰ you in the house after that?

SONIA: No, I left immediately and drove home.

A A következő párbeszédben a nagymama két unokájával beszélget a múltból. Tegyük az igéket múlt időbe.



PENNY: Granny, tell us what things ⁰ *were* (be) like when you were young.
Where ⁰ *did you live* (you/live)?

GRANNY: Well, I ¹ (not/live) here in those days. I ² (live) near Birmingham.

PENNY: And when ³ (you/be) born?

GRANNY: I ⁴ (be) born before the Second World War. It ⁵ (start) in 1939 and ⁶ (not/end) until 1945, so it ⁷ (last) for six years, you see. I ⁸ (not/understand) what the war was about and I ⁹ (not/know) any foreign people.

PAUL: What ¹⁰ (you/do) during the war?

GRANNY: Well, Uncle Sam, who ¹¹ (be) older than me, and your grandad ¹² (be) in the army. They ¹³ (fight) in Europe and Japan, but at the time we ¹⁴ (not/know) where they ¹⁵ (be) because the army ¹⁶ (not/allow) them to write letters.

PENNY: Yes, but what ¹⁷ (you/do)?

GRANNY: Well, a lot of women ¹⁸ (work) in the factories because, of course, there ¹⁹ (not/be) many men at home. But I ²⁰ (choose) to work for the Red Cross. We ²¹ (look) after British soldiers when they ²² (come) home, but sometimes we ²³ (care) for prisoners of war, who ²⁴ (be) in camps, you see.

PAUL: And ²⁵ (there/be) food in the shops?

GRANNY: No, there ²⁶ (not/be) much food. There ²⁷ (not/be) much meat, for example, and there ²⁸ (not/be) any bananas or foreign things.

PENNY: If there ²⁹ (not/be) much food, then you ³⁰ (not/get) fat!

GRANNY: Oh, no. Nobody ³¹ (get) fat in those days. Everybody ³² (stay) slim.

B A tanév kezdetén két diák beszélget a nyári szünetről. Használjuk az igék múlt idejű alakját.

- NICK: What ⁰ *did you do* (you/do) in the summer?
- ERIC: I ¹..... (go) around Europe by train.
- NICK: ²..... (it/be) expensive?
- ERIC: No, I ³..... (buy) a railcard, and it ⁴..... (be) quite cheap.
- NICK: ⁵..... (you/go) on your own, or with some friends?
- ERIC: A couple of friends ⁶..... (come) with me.
- NICK: How many countries ⁷..... (you/visit)?
- ERIC: I ⁸..... (go) to six or seven countries. I ⁹..... (have) a great time, and I really ¹⁰..... (love) all of them.
- NICK: Which one ¹¹..... (you/like) most?
- ERIC: Sweden, I think. The countryside ¹²..... (be) marvellous, and I ¹³..... (take) lots of photographs.
- NICK: When ¹⁴..... (you/arrive) back home?
- ERIC: Last week. I'm still rather tired.

C A következő listában egy egyetemista napi programja olvasható. Írjunk múlt idejű mondatokat arról, hogy melyik pontot teljesítette (✓), melyiket nem (X).

<u>Things to do</u>	
09.00 get up	✓
09.15 – 10.00 finish my essay	X
10.00 drink a cup of coffee	✓
10.30 – 11.00 cycle to the university	✓
11.00 go to the morning lecture	X
12.00 – 15.00 work in the library	✓
13.00 meet my friends	X
14.00 – 15.30 watch the football match	X
16.00 go to the afternoon lecture	✓
17.00 – 19.00 return to the library	X

- 0 *He got up.*.....
- 0 *He didn't finish his essay.*.....
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

D Az évszámok utáni tőmondatokból alkossunk múlt idejű, összetett mondatokat a példa alapján.

- 0 (It is 1984.) Sally is at school. She plays in a football team.
When Sally was at school, she played in a football team......
- 1 (It is 1987.) Bob's sister is at university. She writes a lot of poetry.
 When
- 2 (It is 1990.) Fred is in the army. He goes to many different countries.
 When
- 3 (It is 1992.) Jane and Michael are at school. They don't do much homework.
 When
- 4 (It is 1985.) Anna is a teenager. She wears very long skirts.
 When

E A zárójelben megadott információ segítségével írjunk kérdéseket és válaszokat múlt időben.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 0 (When/Kennedy/die?) | ~ (He/in 1963) |
| <i>When did Kennedy die?</i> | <i>He died in 1963.</i> |
| 1 (What/Marie Curie/discover/in 1898?) | ~ (She/radium.) |
| | ~ |
| 2 (Where/Michelangelo/live?) | ~ (He/in Florence.) |
| | ~ |
| 3 (When/Thatcher/become/Prime Minister?). | ~ (She/Prime Minister in 1979.) |
| | ~ |
| 4 (What/Alexander Bell/invent?) | ~ (He/the telephone.) |
| | ~ |
| 5 (How many books/Agatha Christie/write?) | ~ (She/over a hundred books.) |
| | ~ |
| 6 (When/Neil Armstrong/walk/on the Moon?) | ~ (He/on the Moon in 1969.) |
| | ~ |

F Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott igékkel. (Minden igét csak egyszer használjunk.) Írjuk le a mondatokat olyan sorrendben, hogy összefüggő történetet kapjunk.

be believe decide eat enjoy get go last leave make see take talk tell

After I *left* school, I *took* a job on the railways.

We by train, of course.

In particular, we some mushrooms that as big as plates.

We everyone about the size of the mushrooms when we back home.

But nobody us.

Of course, we all the famous buildings in Sopron. They were fascinating.

We to go together to Sopron.

I friends with a man called István.

But most of all, we the delicious Hungarian food.

Sometimes, we about our ideas for a holiday.

The journey over 12 hours.

- | | |
|----|---|
| 0 | <i>After I left school, I took a job on the railways.</i> |
| 1 | ..... |
| 2 | ..... |
| 3 | ..... |
| 4 | ..... |
| 5 | ..... |
| 6 | ..... |
| 7 | ..... |
| 8 | ..... |
| 9 | ..... |
| 10 | ..... |

G A következő mondatokban az amerikai történelem fontosabb eseményeiről olvashatunk. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az igék múlt idejű alakjával.

win	abolish	become	sail	declare
be (x3)	say	live	go	

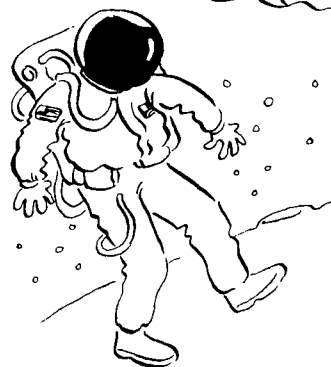
The Native American Indians ⁰..... *were* the original inhabitants of America.

In 1620 a group of English people ¹..... to America on a ship called *Mayflower* and ²..... in an area they called New England.

On 4 July 1776, America ³..... independence and ⁴..... an independent country, the United States of America.

In 1861 there ⁵..... a war between the northern and southern states of America. The northern states ⁶....., and they ⁷..... slavery.

In 1969 the Americans ⁸..... to the Moon. Neil Armstrong ⁹..... the first man on the Moon. He ¹⁰..... 'One small step for man, one giant leap for mankind.'



H Egészítsük ki a Winston Churchillről szóló enciklopédia-részletet a megadott szavak megfelelő alakjával és egyszerű múlt használatával.

fight	work	join	be (x2)	lose	send	become
-------	------	------	---------	------	------	--------

Winston Churchill ⁰..... *was* a soldier, writer and politician. He ¹..... born in 1874. When he was a young man he ²..... the Army, and ³ he in India and the Sudan. But he ⁴..... a journalist as well. He was a reporter for the Daily Graphic and for the Morning Post. In 1899, the Post ⁵..... him to South Africa, where he wrote about the Boer War. Churchill entered Parliament in 1900. Between 1908 and 1929, he ⁶..... for three British Prime Ministers: Asquith, Lloyd George and Baldwin. But he ⁷..... his Government job in 1929.

die	become	lose	win	want	become
-----	--------	------	-----	------	--------

In 1939 Churchill returned to Parliament. Between 1939 and 1945 - the period of the Second World War - Churchill ⁸..... one of Britain's most popular and successful Prime Ministers. But at the end of the war, in 1945, the British people ⁹..... a change, and Churchill ¹⁰..... his job again. Winston Churchill ¹¹..... Prime Minister one more time, from 1951 until 1955. In 1953 he ¹²..... the Nobel Prize. He ¹³..... in 1965 at the age of 91.

A folyamatos múlt – Past Continuous (I was waiting, Was I waiting?)

1 A folyamatos múlt idő alakjai:

ÁLLÍTÁS		
I/he/she/it	was	} waiting
You/we/they	were	
<hr/>		
TAGADÁS		
I/he/she/it	was not/wasn't	} waiting
You/we/they	were not/weren't	
<hr/>		
KÉRDÉS		
Was	I/he/she/it	} waiting?
Were	you/we/they	

(A rövid válaszokat lásd a 46. fejezetben.)

Az **-ing** végződés helyesírására vonatkozó tudnivalók a 361. oldalon a C táblázatban találhatók.

2 A folyamatos múlt idővel olyan cselekvést fejezünk ki, amely a múltnak egy adott időpontjában folyamatban volt (pl. **at seven o'clock, in 1991**):

A: *What were you **doing** at seven o'clock last night?*

B: *I **was driving** home from work.*



6.30

driving



7.00



7.15

*I **was living** in Japan in 1991. (I lived there from 1990 to 1993.)*

3 Figyeljük meg a következő mondatot:



*When I **walked** into the room, Ann **was writing** postcards and Keith **was reading**.*

(= Amikor bementem a szobába, Anna képeslapokat írt, Keith pedig olvasott.)

Az egyszerű múlt befejezett cselekvést fejez ki (**walked in** = bementem), a folyamatos (**was writing, was reading**) pedig olyat, ami az egyszerű múlttal kifejezett cselekvés időpontjában éppen folyamatban volt. (Anna előbb kezdett írni, és Keith előbb kezdett olvasni, mint ahogy én beléptem.)

4 A folyamatos múlt idejű alak előtt használhatjuk a **when** vagy **while** szavakat:

*I met her **when/while** we **were working** for the same company. (**when/while** = amikor, miközben/mialatt)*

Figyelem: Az egyszerű múlt mellett nem használjuk a **while** kötőszót:

***When** I met her, we **were working** for the same company. (**when** = akkor, abban az időpontban)*

Gyakorlatok

A Ann, egy kis cég vezetője, arra kérte Steve-et, a fiatal menedzsert, hogy járja körbe az irodát, aztán jelentse, mit csinálnak éppen az alkalmazottak. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a zárójelben lévő igék folyamatos múlt idejű alakjával.

STEVE: First I went to reception. The receptionist ⁰ **was answering** (answer) the phone. Then I went through the Sales Department. Penny ¹ (write) a report.

ANN: And what ² (Jack/do)?

STEVE: ³ (he/type) something – a letter, I think. Then I walked past Joan and Derek in the Accounts Department.

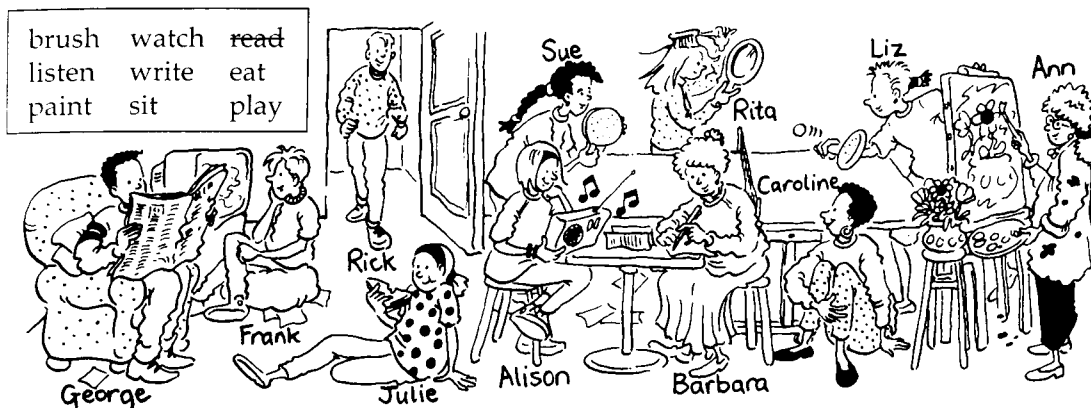
ANN: What ⁴ (they/do)?

STEVE: They ⁵ (use) their computers. Derek ⁶ (do) something with numbers and Joan ⁷ (prepare) one of those coloured graphs.

ANN: So they ⁸ (not/play) computer games. Good! And in the Packing Department, ⁹ (John/work) hard?

STEVE: No, he ¹⁰ (have) a cup of tea. He always has a cup of tea at ten o'clock.

B Írjuk le, hogy a képen látható személyek mit csináltak, amikor Rick belépett a helyiségbe. Használjuk a megadott igék folyamatos múlt idejű alakját.



- 0 George was reading a newspaper.
- 1 Julie a sandwich.
- 2 Sue and Liz table tennis.
- 3 Frank television.
- 4 Caroline on the floor.
- 5 Barbara a letter.
- 6 Rita her hair.
- 7 Alison to some music.
- 8 Ann a picture.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a táblázatban megadott információ alapján. Használjunk folyamatos vagy egyszerű múltat.

Shirley		Kevin	
1970–76	lived in New York	1972–80	lived in Washington
1973–76	studied at university	1973–75	did a course in Computing
1976	left university	1975–80	worked as a computer operator
1976–80	worked as a translator	1979	met Shirley
1979	met Kevin	1980–85	ran his own company
1982	married Kevin	1982	married Shirley

- 0 In 1972 Shirley was living ... in New York.
- 1 In 1974 Kevin in Washington.
- 2 In 1974 Shirley at university.
- 3 In 1974 Kevin a course in computing.
- 4 When Shirley university in 1976, Kevin as a computer operator.
- 5 When Kevin Shirley, she as a translator.
- 6 While Shirley as a translator, she Kevin.
- 7 In 1982 Kevin his own company.
- 8 While he his own company, Kevin Shirley.

Past Simple (I waited) vagy Past Continuous (I was waiting)

Hasonlítsuk össze az egyszerű múlt és a folyamatos múlt alakjait:

Egyszerű múlt (Past Simple)

Folyamatos múlt (Past Continuous)

1	I/you/he/she/it/we/they { talked didn't talk	I/he/she/it was/wasn't You/we/they were/weren't } talking
	Did I/you/he/she/it/we/they talk?	Was I/he/she/it Were you/we/they } talking?

2	<p>Az egyszerű múltat akkor használjuk, amikor olyan cselekvésről vagy eseményről beszélünk, amely a múltnak egy adott időpontjában történt és be is fejeződött:</p> <p><i>Last Saturday morning, Paul played football in the park.</i></p> <p>múlt Paul played football. most</p> <p>További példák: <i>On Sunday I made a cake.</i> <i>It rained a lot on Saturday morning.</i></p>	<p>A folyamatos múltat akkor használjuk, amikor egy cselekvés folyamatban volt, miközben egy másik cselekvés megkezdődött és be is fejeződött:</p> <p><i>Last Saturday, Paul was playing football in the park when he saw Jane. (= Múlt szombaton Paul éppen futballozott a parkban, amikor meglátta Jane-t.)</i></p> <p>múlt Paul was playing football. most</p> <p>He saw Jane.</p> <p>További példák: <i>The phone rang while I was making a cake. (A telefon megszólalása rövidebb ideig tart, mint a sütemény elkészítése.)</i> <i>It was raining when we left home.</i></p>
---	--	--

3	<p>Gyakran használjuk az egyszerű múltat akkor is, amikor egymást követő eseményeket mondunk el:</p> <p><i>When Ann James left university, she went to work for a bank. She left the bank after five years, and wrote a book which ...</i></p>	<p>A múltban történtek leírásakor a folyamatos múltat akkor használjuk, ha azt mondjuk el, mi zajlott a háttérben, miközben egy másik esemény bekövetkezett:</p> <p><i>The sun was shining. People were sitting under the trees. Suddenly a car drove into the park ...</i></p>
---	--	--

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk összetett mondatokat egyszerű és folyamatos múlt használatával.

0 (The police/arrive/while/I/have/breakfast)

The police arrived while I was having breakfast.

1 (The storm/start/while/they/drive/home)

2 (I/see/an accident/while/I/wait/for the bus)

3 (Mary/go/to several concerts/while/she/stay/in London)

0 (I/have/breakfast/when/the police/arrive)

I was having breakfast when the police arrived.

4 (My father/cook/the dinner/when/he/burn/his fingers)

5 (The soldiers/prepare/to leave/when/the bomb/explode)

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék egyszerű és folyamatos múlt idejű alakjával.

- 0 Beethoven *wrote* (write) nine symphonies; he *was writing* (write) another symphony when he died.
- 1 Last Saturday Tom wanted to make two salads. He (make) the first one in five minutes. He (make) the second one when his guests (arrive), and they (help) him to finish it.
- 2 The architect Gaudi (design) several houses in Barcelona, Spain. Later he (start) work on a cathedral. He (work) on the cathedral when he (die).
- 3 Last month a bank robber (escape) while the police (take) him to prison. Later they (catch) him again, and this time they (lock) him up without any problem.
- 4 Philip's football team were lucky last Saturday. After 20 minutes they (lose), but in the end they (win) the game by 4 goals to 2.
- 5 John Lennon (sing) and (play) on many records with the Beatles. After that he (record) several songs without the Beatles. He (prepare) a new record when Mark Chapman (shoot) him.
- 6 The evening was getting darker; the street lights (come) on. People (hurry) home after work. I (stand) in a queue at the bus stop. Suddenly somebody (grab) my bag.

C Mary Croftot a rendőrségen arról kérdezik, hogy mit csinált péntek este. Nézzük meg a képeket, és a zárójelben lévő igékkel egészítsük ki a párbeszédet. Használjunk egyszerű vagy folyamatos múltat.



POLICEWOMAN: What time ⁰ *did you get* (you/get) home from work?

MARY: At about six o'clock.

POLICEWOMAN: And what ¹ (you/do) after you got home?

MARY: I read the newspaper.

POLICEWOMAN: Did anything happen while ² (you/read) the paper?

MARY: Yes, the phone ³ (ring).

POLICEWOMAN: What ⁴ (you/do) when your husband came home?

MARY: I was watching TV, and I ⁵ (drink) a cup of coffee.

POLICEWOMAN: Did you and your husband stay at home?

MARY: No, I ⁶ (drink) my coffee. Then I put on my raincoat, and we ⁷ (go) out at seven o'clock.

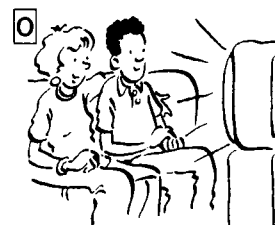
POLICEWOMAN: Why ⁸ (you/put) your raincoat on?

MARY: Because it ⁹ (rain), of course.

- D** 1963-ban John F. Kennedy dallasi látogatása során halálos merényletet követtek el az amerikai elnök ellen. Írjuk le, hogy a képen látható személyek hogyan emlékeznek, mit csináltak, amikor meghallották a merénylet hírért.

eat	play	have	watch	paint	sit	drive	cook	the living-room
TV	tennis	in the garden	spaghetti	a bath	my car	dinner		

0 *I was having a bath when I heard the news.*



0 *We were watching TV when we heard the news.*

1

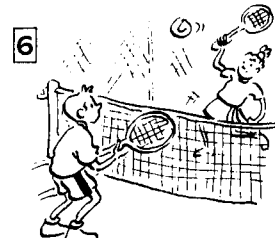
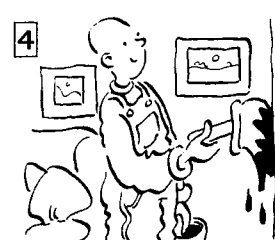
2

3

4

5

6



- E** Olvassuk el a következő történetet, és döntsük el, hogy az igék helyes alakját használták-e. Ha igen, pipáljuk ki, ha nem, húzzuk át a hibás alakot és írjuk be helyesen.

I was in my last year at school. While I waited⁰ *was waiting*..... for my exam results, I decided⁰ ✓ to find a job for the summer. I finished¹..... the exams at the beginning of June and then I was phoning²..... several different companies to ask if they had³..... any work. In the end I found⁴..... a job on the railways. On the first day, an inspector told⁵..... me that there was⁶..... other students like me who worked⁷..... temporarily at the station.

I was a porter. When passengers were coming⁸..... to the station with a lot of bags, I offered⁹..... to help them. Usually they were saying¹⁰.....

'yes', so I carried ¹¹..... their bags to the train. Sometimes, before the train was arriving ¹²..... at the station, the passengers asked ¹³..... me questions: 'Do you work here all the time?', 'Are you a student?', and so on. I explained ¹⁴..... that I was a student and that I was working ¹⁵..... on the railways just for the summer. When the train was stopping ¹⁶..... at the platform, I put ¹⁷..... the bags in the compartment.

While I was working ¹⁸..... at the station, I was meeting ¹⁹..... another student called Tony. I thought ²⁰..... he was very pleasant, and he was liking ²¹..... me. One day, when we talked ²²..... about holidays, Tony said ²³..... that Italy was a wonderful place and that he wanted ²⁴..... to go there again. We were deciding ²⁵..... to go together at the end of the summer so we bought ²⁶..... tickets to go to Rome.



The thing that I remember best was the day that we visited ²⁷..... the Sistine Chapel. When we arrived ²⁸....., it rained ²⁹..... and inside there were ³⁰..... not very much light.

Suddenly, while we were looking ³¹..... at the paintings, the rain stopped ³²..... and sunlight came ³³..... into the Chapel through the high windows. This was making ³⁴..... a fantastic difference and we saw ³⁵..... Michelangelo's work in all its glory.

F Fordítsuk le a következő szöveget. Ügyeljünk az egyszerű és folyamatos múlt megfelelő használatára.

Tegnap reggel tízkor elhagytam az irodámat, és Mary Harlow szállodájához mentem. Amíg a szálloda közelében várakoztam, ittam egy csésze kávé és vettem egy újságot. Tizenegykor megláttam Maryt. Kijött a szállodából és jobbra fordult. Gyorsan lépkedett és cigarettázott. Tíz percen át követtem. Éppen belépett a Central Parkba, amikor meglátott. Egy pillanatig nézett, de nem állt meg. Vett egy csésze kávé és leült. Gyönyörű nap volt. Néhányan hamburgert ettek a fák alatt, mások zenét hallgattak. Tíz perccel később egy férfi ült Mary mellé, és beszélgetni kezdett vele. Amíg beszélgettek, Mary három cigarettát szívott el. A férfi nem a férje volt.

A Present Perfect igeidőnek sem jelentésben, sem használatban nincs pontos magyar megfelelője. Nyelvtani szempontból jelen időnek tekintjük, bár nagyon gyakran múlt idővel fordítjuk magyarra.

1 A Present Perfect alakjai:

have	+ BEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV (az ige ún. harmadik alakja)
<i>She</i>	<i>has finished</i>

ÁLLÍTÁS

TELJES ALAK

I/you **have arrived**

He/she/it **has arrived**

We/you/they **have arrived**

ÖSSZEVONT ALAK

I've

He's

We've

} **arrived**

TAGADÁS

TELJES ALAK

I/you **have not arrived**

He/she/it **has not arrived**

We/you/they **have not arrived**

ÖSSZEVONT ALAK

haven't

hasn't

haven't

} **arrived**

KÉRDÉS

EGYES SZÁM

Have

I/you

Has

he/she/it

} **finished?**

TÖBBES SZÁM

Have

we/you/they

finished?

A következő mondatokban Present Perfectet használunk:

Has the train left? (= Elment már a vonat?)

Have Paul and Mary seen your photos? (= Paul és Mary látta már a fényképeidet?)

Have you read that book?

(= Olvastad már azt a könyvet?)

A befejezett melléknévi igenév lehet szabályos vagy rendhagyó:

BEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV

SZABÁLYOS (+ **-ed**)

play

I have **played**

travel

I have **travelled**

RENDAHGYÓ

meet

I have **met**

go

I have **gone**

(A szabályos befejezett melléknévi igenevek a 362. oldalon, a rendhagyók a 363. oldalon találhatók.)

2 A Present Perfectet akkor használjuk, ha:

- ▶ valamilyen múltban történt cselekvésről vagy eseményről beszélünk az időpont megjelölése nélkül (a lényeg az, hogy a cselekvés vagy esemény valamikor megtörtént, de nem fontos, hogy mikor):

I've seen this film. (= Láttam ezt a filmet. = Ismerem a történetet.)

- ▶ életünk különböző eseményeiről beszélünk, arról, hogy mit tettünk eddig és mit nem. Itt sem az a lényeges, hogy mikor történt az említett dolog.



I've sailed across the Atlantic.

(= Már áthajóztam az Atlanti-óceánon.)

I've seen gorillas in Africa.

I haven't danced the Flamenco.

(= Még eddig soha nem táncoltam flamencót.)

- ▶ olyan múltban történt cselekvésről vagy eseményről van szó, amely nemrég ért véget, és számunkra fontos eredménye van:

I've got a surprise for you. Look, here it is.

She's left the company. (She doesn't work here any more.)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott kifejezésekkel. Használjuk a Present Perfect szerkezetet.

arrive break the camera close the doors do their homework
 drink all the Coca-Cola eat some sandwiches give me some money
~~have a shower~~ pass his driving test repair her bike start to rain

- 0 *Anne has had a shower* so she feels clean and fresh.
- 1 We so we're not hungry now.
- 2 Sally so she can ride it now.
- 3 Mum so I can go to the cinema.
- 4 The children so now they can watch TV.
- 5 My brother so we can't take any photos.
- 6 It so we must take an umbrella.
- 7 Bill so now he can buy a car.
- 8 The musicians so the concert can start.
- 9 They so we can't go in now.
- 10 We so we'll have to buy some more.

B A zárójelben megadott igékből képezzünk befejezett melléknévi igeneveket a következő szövegben, amelyben James saját magáról beszél.

I've ⁰ *seen* (see) a lot of beautiful places in my life, and I've ¹ (do) a lot of interesting things. I've ² (travel) in North and South America, for example. I've ³ (visit) all the big American cities. I've ⁴ (drive) across Mexico. I haven't ⁵ (fly) over the Andes, but I've ⁶ (work) in Peru and Bolivia. I've ⁷ (stay) in expensive hotels and in very cheap hotels! I've ⁸ (swim) in the Pacific Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean and the Mediterranean Sea. I've ⁹ (write) thousands of postcards to my friends! I've ¹⁰ (eat) in the best restaurants in Paris, and I've ¹¹ (sing) Italian songs in Rome. I've ¹² (have) seven or eight holidays in Spain, and I've ¹³ (live) in Portugal.

I haven't ¹⁴ (make) much money, but I've ¹⁵ (meet) a lot of interesting people and I've ¹⁶ (take) a lot of wonderful photographs!

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a fenti szöveg alapján: mit csinált és mit nem csinált James eddigi életében?

- 0 James *has seen* (see) the Statue of Liberty.
- 1 James (fly) over the Andes.
- 2 James (stay) in cheap hotels.
- 3 James (swim) in the Indian Ocean.
- 4 James (eat) in French restaurants.
- 5 James (make) much money.
- 6 James (have) a Mexican meal.



- 1 Az előző fejezetben láttuk már, hogy a Present Perfect olyan cselekvést vagy történést fejez ki, amely röviddel a róla való említés előtt történt. Az ilyen mondatokban nincs időhatározó, azaz nem mondjuk meg, pontosan mikor történt az, amiről beszélünk.

A: *Have you had a bath?*

B: *No, I haven't had a bath; I've had a shower.*

Akkor is a Present Perfect szerkezetet használjuk, amikor olyan eseményről vagy cselekvésről beszélünk, amely a múlt adott időpontjától számítva mostanáig – akár többször is – megtörtént. Az, hogy pontosan mikor történt, nem lényeges.

A: *Has Kim interviewed many film stars?*

B: *No, she hasn't interviewed many film stars, but she has interviewed a lot of pop stars.*

London has experienced many changes of fortune.

Amikor azt akarjuk megtudni, hogy valami egyáltalán megtörtént-e valaha, akkor az **ever** (= valaha) határozót és a Present Perfectet használjuk:

Has Kim ever interviewed Madonna?

Has there ever been an earthquake in Britain?

Have you ever had a jacuzzi?

Ha valami eddig még egyáltalán nem történt meg, a **never** (= soha) határozót és a Present Perfect állító alakját használjuk.

Figyelem: Ezekben a mondatokban a **never** fejezi ki a tagadást, az ígét nem tagadjuk!

Kim has never interviewed Madonna. (Kim eddig még soha nem interjúvolta meg Madonnát.)

There has never been an earthquake in Britain.

I have never had a jacuzzi.

Have you ever seen a tiger? ~ No, I haven't. I have never seen a tiger.

(Az ilyen kérdésekre adandó rövid válaszok a 46. fejezetben találhatóak.)

- 2 Ha megmondjuk, hogy valami a beszéd pillanatáig hányszor történt, soha nem használjuk az **ever** (valaha) szót.

London has hosted the Olympic Games twice.

A: *How many times have you skied in Austria?*

B: *I've skied in Austria three times.*

A Present Perfect szerkezettel fejezzük ki azt is, ha valamit életünkben először teszünk, vagy valami először történik velünk.

It's the first time (that) I've (ever) eaten octopus.

(= Most eszem életemben először polipot.)

Vigyázat! Az ilyen mondatokban magyarul jelen időt használunk, de az angolban ez helytelen!

- 3 Az olyan időhatározók mellett, amelyek a beszédet megelőző időszakot és a beszéd idejét is magukba foglalják, Present Perfectet használunk. Ilyen kifejezések: **recently** (= mostanában), **today** (= ma – ezt csak aznap mondhatjuk), **this morning** (= ma délelőtt – ezt csak aznap déli 12-ig mondhatjuk), **this month** (= ebben a hónapban), **in the last few days** (= az elmúlt néhány napban), **so far** (= mostanáig):

I've eaten pizza three times this week.

I've worked really hard this morning.

(= Ma délelőtt igazán keményen dolgoztam. – Ezt délben mondhatom.)

Amikor az adott időtartam már elmúlt, múlt időt használunk: *I worked really hard this morning.* (= Ma délelőtt igazán keményen dolgoztam. – Ezt azon a napon bármikor mondhatom déli tizenkettő után.)

4 Gone és been

A létige befejezett melléknévi igenévi alakja: **been**.

Have you ever been seriously ill?

(= Voltál valaha súlyos beteg?)

A go ige befejezett melléknévi igenévi alakja: **gone**.

Figyeljük meg a különbséget:

He's gone to Paris. (= Elment Párizsba. – Még most is ott van.)

He's been to Paris. (= Már járt Párizsban. – Most már nincs ott.)

Gyakorlatok

Abby Mills interjút készít Michael Reed íróval az otthonában reggel kilenc órakor. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az **ever** vagy **never** határozószóval, ahol lehetséges.

- MICHAEL Good morning, Abby. I've just made some coffee. Have you ⁰..... had breakfast? Would you like some coffee?
- ABBY No, I haven't. I didn't have time. I've ⁰ **never**..... interviewed anyone this early in the morning before! So, yes, I'd love a cup of coffee. Thanks.
- MICHAEL I know that you've interviewed a lot of famous people, but have you ¹..... interviewed a writer?
- ABBY Yes, I have. I always read some of their books first. I've ²..... read lots of yours. They were all sad. Have you ³..... written a happy book?
- MICHAEL No, I don't think I have!
- ABBY You've travelled all over the world, and you've ⁴..... found a happy story to tell! I'm surprised. How many countries have you ⁵..... been to?
- MICHAEL I don't know. Lots! But I've ⁶..... been to China. I'd like to go there.
- ABBY But one of your books is set in China, isn't it? I've ⁷..... seen the film and it's good!
- MICHAEL Is it? I've ⁸..... seen that film, so I don't know. The story I wrote happened in Korea.
- ABBY I've ⁹..... heard that you never see the films of your books. Is that true?
- MICHAEL Yes, that's right. I've ¹⁰..... seen any of them.

A táblázat és a példa alapján alkossunk kérdéseket és válaszokat azzal kapcsolatban, hogy melyik diák hányszor játszott az iskolai csapatban.

	Hockey	Tennis	Cricket	Football
Melanie Thomas	16	12		
Tim Jones			11	16
Connie Laker	18		8	

- 0 (Melanie, hockey) *How many times has Melanie played for the hockey team?*.....
- 0 *She's played sixteen times for the hockey team.*.....
- 0 (Tim, hockey) *How many times has Tim played for the hockey team?*.....
- 0 *He's never played for the hockey team.*.....
- 1 (Tim, cricket)
.....
- 2 (Connie, hockey)
.....
- 3 (Melanie, tennis)
.....
- 4 (Connie, tennis)
.....

- 1 A **just** (= éppen) határozószót akkor használjuk, amikor azt mondjuk, hogy valami röviddel ezelőtt történt:

have	+ just +	BEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV
It has	just	finished.

*Could I speak to Jane, please? ~ I'm afraid she **has just left**. (= Sajnos éppen az előbb ment el.)*

*Is that a good book? ~ I don't know. I've **just started** it. (= Éppen csak hogy elkezdtem.)*

- 2 Figyeljük meg az **already** (= már) használatát a következő példában:

*Do you want something to eat? ~ No, thanks. I've **already eaten**. (= Már ettem.)*

Az **already** azt nyomatékosítja, hogy valami már megtörtént, esetleg a vártnál hamarabb.

Így használjuk az **already** szót:

have	+ already +	BEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV
I've	already	heard that story.

Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

NICOLA: *Is Sarah going to phone you later?*

ROBERT: *No. She's **already phoned** me.*

(= Sarah előbb hívta fel Robertet, mint ahogy azt Nicola várta.)

- 3 A **yet** (= még) határozót akkor használjuk, amikor azt akarjuk kifejezni, hogy valami még nem történt meg, de be fog következni.

*The post **hasn't arrived yet**. (= Eddig még nem jött meg a posta. – De meg fog jönni.)*

*I **haven't finished** this work **yet**. (= Még nem fejeztem be a munkát. – De be fogom fejezni.)*

*They **haven't replied** to my letter **yet**.*

Kérdő mondatban a **yet** azt fejezi ki, hogy amire rákérdezzünk, annak a bekövetkezésére számítunk.

*Have you **paid** the bill **yet**? (= Kifizetted már a számlát?)*

*Has it **stopped** raining **yet**?*

*Have you **found** a job **yet**?*

Figyelem: a **yet** rendszerint a mondat végére kerül.

A **still** (=még) azt jelöli, hogy valami még mindig nem történt meg, illetve még mindig tart.

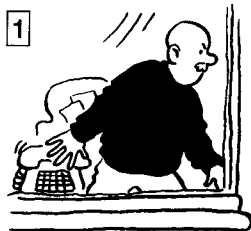
*The post **still hasn't** arrived.*

Figyeljük meg a **still** helyét a mondatban.

*I **still haven't** finished this work.*

Gyakorlatok

- A Nézzük meg a képeket, és képzeljük magunkat a rendőrnnyomozó helyébe, aki rádión jelenti feletteseinek, hogy éppen mi történt. Alkossunk mondatokat a megadott kifejezések, a Present Perfect szerkezet és a **just** határozószó használatával.



He/make/a phone call	They/see/me!	He/enter/the/house	He/meet/a friend
He/leave/the house	They/enter/the wood	They/look/at a map	They/find/the money

- 0 *He's just entered the house.* 4
- 1 5
- 2 6
- 3 7

Alkossunk mondatokat az **already**, **still** vagy **yet** határozószókkal.

- 0 (I don't know what happened yesterday. I/not/read/the newspaper) **yet**
I don't know what happened yesterday. I haven't read the newspaper yet.
- 1 (When are you going on holiday? you/decide?) **yet**

- 2 (Don't you understand? I/explain/this to you three times) **already**

- 3 (The children can't go out. They/not/clean/their rooms) **still**

- 4 (Is Jane coming? you/phone/her?) **yet**

- 5 (I don't know who won. The game/not/finish) **yet**

- 6 (No, I'm not hungry. I/have/lunch) **already**

- 7 (He was paid yesterday, but he/not/give/me the money) **still**

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott kifejezések és az **already**, **just** vagy **yet** határozószók használatával.

JUDY: Are you having a good time here?

ANN: Yes, I haven't been here long, and 0. *I've already visited* (I/visit) a lot of interesting places.

JUDY: 1..... (you/visit/the Art Gallery/?)

ANN: No, 2..... (I/not/do/that), but I'm going to do it.

JUDY: What about the theatre? 3..... (you/see/a play/?)

ANN: No, but 4..... (I/book/a ticket) for one. It's called The Friends. I rang the theatre five minutes ago. Would you like to come with me?

JUDY: Thanks, but 5..... (I/see/that play). I saw it last month.

ANN: 6..... (I/read) in the newspaper that The Adventurers are giving a concert next week. Do you think it will be good?

JUDY: Yes. 7..... (they/make) a really good new CD. It came out a couple of days ago.

ANN: Will I be able to get a ticket?

JUDY: Yes. 8..... (they/not/sell/all the tickets). But be quick! They're a very popular group.

A Egészítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben megadott kifejezések, a **just** határozószó és a Present Perfect szerkezet használatával.

- 0 A: What's happening in this programme?
B: I don't know. *It's just started.* (It/start).
- 1 A: (I/come) back from my holiday.
B: Did you have a good time?
- 2 A: Could I have a copy of Sports World, please?
B: Sorry. (I/sell) the last copy.
- 3 A: How's Lucy?
B: She's very happy. (She/finish) her exams.
- 4 A: (I/have) a letter from Mike.
B: Oh yes? What did he say?
- 5 A: Have you heard from Alison and Frank recently?
B: Yes, (they/move) to another town.
- 6 A: Have you still got the same car?
B: No, (I/buy) a new one.
- 7 A: Would you like something to eat?
B: No, thanks. (I/have) breakfast.

B Egészítsük ki a szöveget a **gone** vagy **been** melléknévi igenévvel.

- 0 You're so tanned! Where have you *been*?
- 1 A: Where's Helen?
B: She's just out to buy a newspaper. She won't be long.
- 2 John's to London for a business meeting. He won't be back in the office until tomorrow.
- 3 A: Have you to that new French restaurant?
B: Yes, I have – but I didn't think it was very good.
- 4 A: I'm going to Australia next week on holiday.
B: Australia! You're so lucky. I've never there, but I'd love to go.
- 5 A: You look exhausted.
B: Yes, I am. I've just to the gym. I did a two-hour aerobics class!
- 6 A: Is Kevin there, please?
B: I'm sorry, he's not here and I'm afraid I don't know where he's

C A zárójelben megadott kifejezések és a Present Perfect szerkezet használatával fűzzünk megjegyzést az egyes állításokhoz a példa alapján.

- 0 Your bike is not where you left it.
(somebody/take/my bike) *Somebody has taken my bike.*
- 1 The garage door was closed; now it is open.
(somebody/open/the garage door)
- 2 There are no biscuits in the cupboard.
(somebody/eat/all the biscuits)

- 3 The kitchen window was all right; now it is smashed.
(somebody/break/the kitchen window)
- 4 Mary's watch is not where she left it.
(somebody/steal/Mary's watch)

Égy feltaláló új találmányát szeretné népszerűsíteni az újságokban. Az alábbi listában a szükséges teendőket olvashatjuk – (✓) jelöli azokat, amelyekkel már végzett.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 0 prepare the circular letter ✓ | 2 put the copies in the envelopes |
| 0 buy the stamps | 3 write the text of the advertisement ✓ |
| 1 make copies of the letter ✓ | 4 send the advertisement to the paper |

Írjunk mondatokat a teendőkkel kapcsolatban. Az állító mondatokban használjuk az **already**, a tagadó mondatokban pedig a **yet** határozószót.

- 0 *He has already prepared the circular letter.*
- 0 *He hasn't bought the stamps yet.*
- 1
2
3
4

Égészítsük ki a következő szöveget a megadott szavakkal.

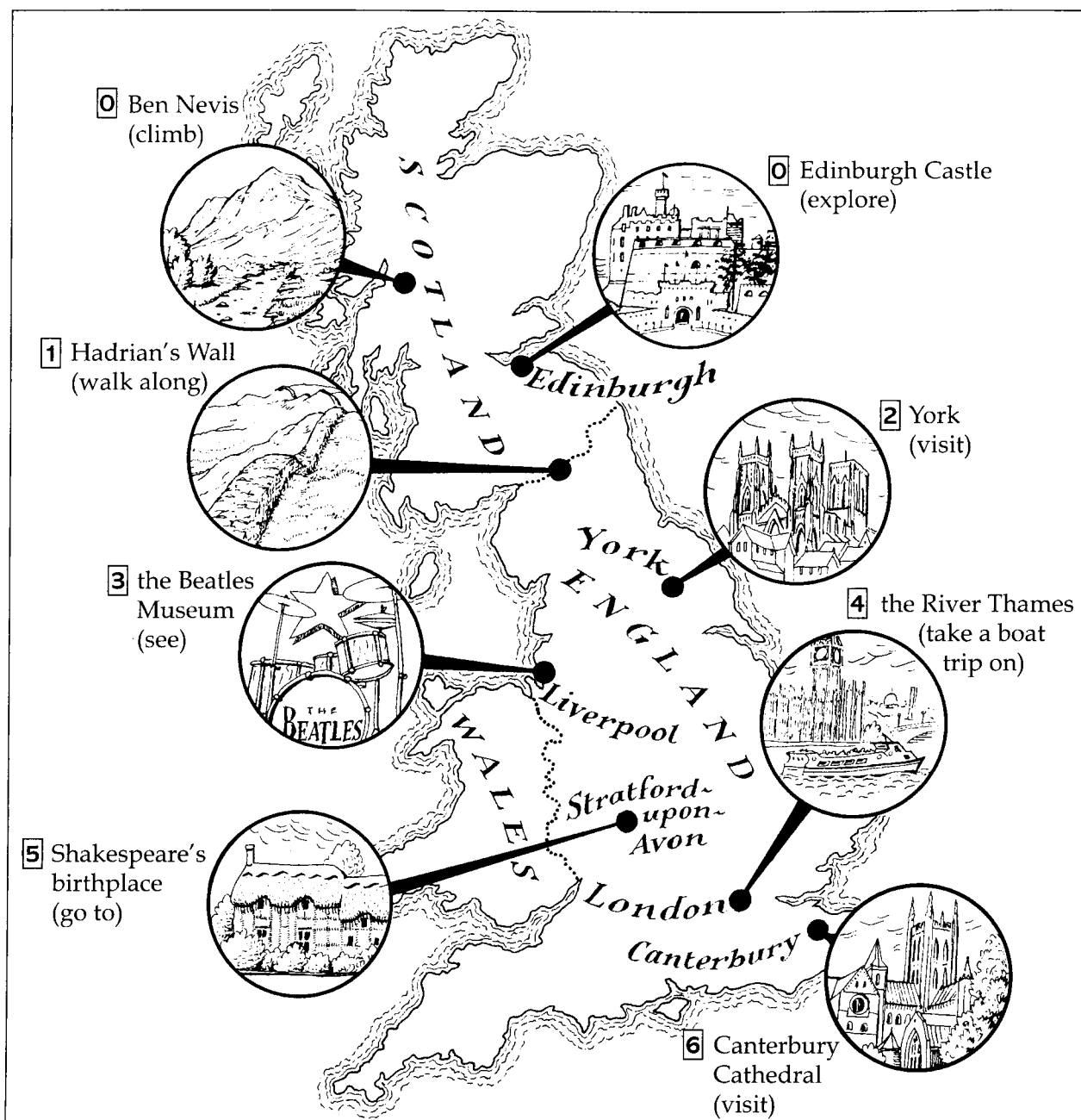
never (x2)	yet (x3)	gone	been	just (x2)	ever
------------	----------	------	------	-----------	------

- 0 A: Have you written to John *yet* ?
B: Yes, I've *just* finished a letter to him. I'll post it today.
- 1 A: I've been to Canada but I've been to America. Have you?
B: No, but my brother has to New York. He said it was great.
- 2 A: Are you coming home now?
B: No, I haven't finished my work
- 3 A: Can I speak to John, please?
B: I'm sorry. He's to Birmingham. He will be back tomorrow.
- 4 A: Have you been to Lisbon?
B: No, I've been to Spain but I've visited Portugal.
- 5 A: Have you seen Steve ?
B: Yes, I've had lunch with him.

Égészítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben megadott igék Present Perfect alakjával.

- 0 Don't take my plate away. I *haven't finished* (not/finish) my meal.
- 1 I (lose) my pen. Can I borrow yours, please?
- 2 My father (buy) an expensive new car.
- 3 I (make) some sandwiches. Would you like one?
- 4 I'm not sure what the problem with the car is.
It (not/happen) before.

G Anna és Péter hat hónapot töltött Nagy-Britanniában. A térkép és a táblázat alapján írjunk mondatokat programjukról.



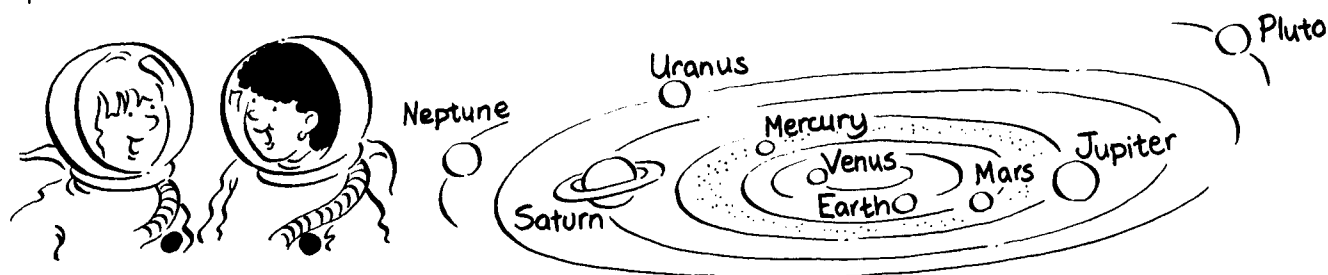
	0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Anna	x	✓	✓	x	✓	x	✓	✓
Péter	✓	✓	✓	x	✓	✓	✓	x

- 0 Anna hasn't climbed Ben Nevis, but Péter has.
- 0 Anna and Péter have explored Edinburgh Castle.
- 1 Anna
- 2 Anna
- 3 Anna
- 4 Anna
- 5 Anna
- 6 Anna

¶ A következő mondatok közül pipáljuk ki a hibátlanokat, a hibásakat pedig írjuk át helyesen.

- 0 A: Have you finished your homework? ✓
 B: No, I haven't finished it already. *No, I haven't finished it yet.*
- 1 A: How many times has Mary ever seen that film?
 B: She's seen it three times.
- 2 A: What has done today Ron?
 B: He has worked hard today.
- 3 A: Has your sister spoken to Philip recently?
 B: Yes, she have.
- 4 A: Have you ever gone to Paris?
 B: No, I've ever travelled outside Hungary.
- 5 A: Has it yet stopped raining?
 B: Yes, it has yet stopped.

¶ 2096-ot írunk. Két űrhajós arról beszélget, ki melyik bolygót látogatta már meg. Fordítsuk le a párbeszédet.



- JENNY: Voltál már a Jupiteren?
- DIANA: Nem, még nem voltam ott. És te?
- JENNY: Nem, de a barátom, Dan, februárban járt ott.
- DIANA: És mondott neked valamit róla?
- JENNY: Igen. Azt mondja, hogy a Jupiter unalmas.
- DIANA: Én éppen most tértem vissza a Marsról. Fantasztikus volt.
- JENNY: Még soha nem dolgoztam a Marson.
- DIANA: Tényleg? Gyönyörű bolygó. Én már hatszor voltam ott.
- JENNY: Nekem a Szaturnusz tetszik.
- DIANA: Olyan messze még nem jártam. Miért tetszik?
- JENNY: Szeretem a gyűrűket! Steve olyan szerencsés. Már háromszor járt ott.
- DIANA: Hová szeretnél még utazni?
- JENNY: A Plútóra.
- DIANA: Szent ég! Azt hiszem, szükségem van egy erős italra.



Past Simple vagy Present Perfect (1) (I lived/I have lived)

- 1** Amikor a cselekvés vagy történés időpontjára kérdezzük rá, egyszerű múltat (és nem Present Perfect szerkezetet) használunk: **What time?, When?** stb. A válaszban, amikor megmondjuk az időpontot, ugyancsak az egyszerű múlt időt használjuk (pl. **at five o'clock, in 1977, three hours ago**):

A: What time **did** the plane **land**?

(NEM: ~~What time has the plane landed?~~)

B: It **landed** at five o'clock.

(NEM: ~~It has landed at five o'clock.~~)

múlt

3 4 5 6 7

most

It **landed**.

A: When **did** John Lennon **die**?

(NEM: ~~When has he died?~~)

B: He **died** in 1980.

(NEM: ~~He has died in 1980.~~)

A: When **did** Mark **leave**?

B: He **left** three hours ago.

- 2** Egyszerű múlt időt használunk akkor is, amikor azt mondjuk meg, hogy valami hol történt, illetve ha a mondatban a múlt időt nem időhatározó, hanem időhatározói mellékmondat fejezi ki:

When I **was** in the army, I **had** a terrible time.

I **was** almost back home **when** the storm started.

- 3** A Present Perfectet használjuk, amikor nem az a fontos, hogy valami mikor történt, hanem az hogy milyen hatással van a jelenre:

Anna **has broken** her arm. (Anna eltörte a karját. – Most is el van törve.)

Bill **has made** the salad. (Bill elkészítette a salátát. – Kész van.)

Az egyszerű múlt használata azt jelzi, hogy a cselekvésnek vagy eseménynek nincs összefüggése a jelenrel:

James **broke** his arm last year.

Kate **cooked** supper yesterday.

- 4** Figyelem: a Present Perfectről azonnal áttérünk az egyszerű múlt időre, amikor egy esemény részleteit tárgyaljuk, vagyis megmondjuk, hogy az mikor, hol, hogyan stb. történt:

A: Anna's **broken** her arm.

B: How **did** she **break** it?

A: She **fell** when she was skiing.

A: **Have** you ever **been** to India?

B: Yes, I **have**.

A: Really? When **did** you **go**?

Gyakorlatok

- A** Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megfelelő ige egyszerű múlt idejű alakjával.

die go ~~write~~ divorce transmit win

- Shakespeare **wrote**..... 'Romeo and Juliet' in about 1595.
- France the World Cup in 1998.
- Marconi the first radio signals across the Atlantic in 1901.
- Marco Polo to China in 1271.
- Ayrton Senna in 1994.
- Diana Prince Charles in 1996.

- B** Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott kifejezésekkel.

- When I was at school, (I/not/like/history) **I didn't like history**.
- (My mother/be/at work) **My mother was at work** when the explosion happened.
- (I/meet/Brian) when we were in the army.
- (I/be/in the garden) when you phoned.
- When Sam was young, (she/love/swimming)

- 4 (I/buy/these shoes)when I was paid last week.
 5 When Neil was sixteen, (he/have/very long hair)
 6 When he saw her, (he/smile)

】 Az első állítás igaz, de igaz-e a második? Ha igaz, írjuk mellé, hogy **Yes**, ha nem tudjuk, akkor **Don't know**.

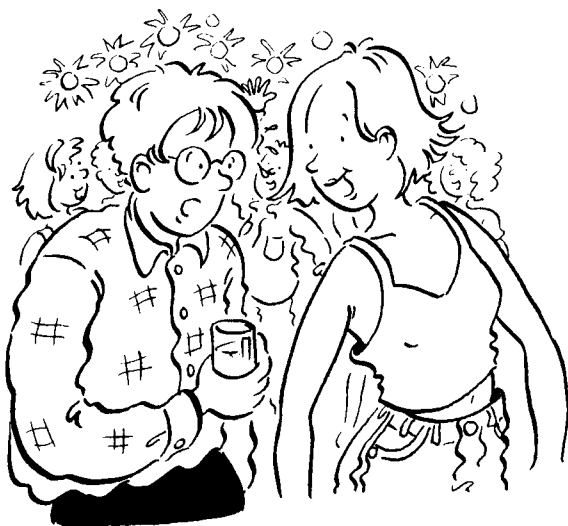
- | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 0 John grew a beard. | John has a beard now. | <i>Don't know.</i> |
| 0 Bob has grown a moustache. | Bob has a moustache now. | <i>Yes.</i> |
| 1 Ruth went to Italy. | Ruth is in Italy now. | ..... |
| 2 Sarah has opened the door. | The door is now open. | ..... |
| 3 Ian has gone abroad. | Ian is abroad now. | ..... |
| 4 Bill opened the windows. | The windows are open now. | ..... |
| 5 Bill has arrived home. | He is at home now. | ..... |
| 6 Peter put the TV on. | The TV is on now. | ..... |
| 7 Joyce closed the book. | The book is closed now. | ..... |
| 8 Joe has gone to Japan. | Joe is in Japan now. | ..... |

】 Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben megadott kifejezésekkel. Használjunk Present Perfectet vagy egyszerű múltat.

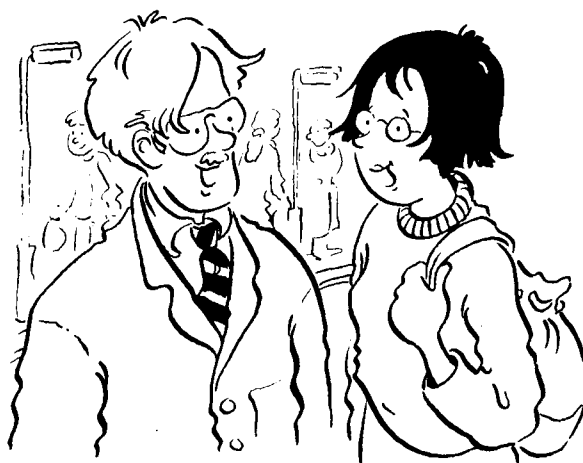
- 0 A: Why are you crying?
 B: Look. (I/cut/my hand) *I've cut my hand.*
 A: (How/it/happen?) *How did it happen?*
- 1 A: Is that a letter from John?
 B: Yes. It says that (his wife/have/a baby boy)
 A: (When/she/have/the baby?)
- 2 A: Why are you looking so cross, Jeff?
 B: Look. (Alison/break/my camera)
 A: (How/she/break/it?)
- 3 A: What's the problem, Jason?
 B: Look. (My bicycle/disappear)
 A: (Where/you/leave/it?)
- 4 A: What's the matter with Paul?
 B: (He/lose/his jacket)
 A: (When/he/lose/it?)
- 5 A: What's that piece of paper?
 B: It's my certificate. (I/pass/my exam)
 A: (What mark/you/get?)
- 6 A: Why are you looking so happy, Di?
 B: (I/buy/a new car)
 A: (Where/you/get/it?)
- 7 A: Are you going to the concert?
 B: No. (I/sell/my ticket)
 A: (When/you/sell it?)

E Steve és Ann az utcán találkozik, miután már hat éve nem látták egymást. Olvassuk el a párbeszédet, és húzzuk át a nem odaillő szerkezeteket.

- ANN: Steve! It's Steve, isn't it?
- STEVE: Ann! Sorry, ⁰ I haven't seen you. / I didn't see you. You look different.
¹ Have you changed your hair? / Did you change your hair?
- ANN: Yes, ² it was blonde when I was at school. / it has been blonde when I was at school. But you look different too!
- STEVE: Really?
- ANN: ³ You didn't wear glasses at school, did you? / You haven't worn glasses at school, have you?
- STEVE: Yes, I did! ⁴ You forgot! / You've forgotten!
- ANN: Sorry. My memory isn't very good. When did we last meet?
- STEVE: At the school disco, six years ago. ⁵ You have danced all night long! / You danced all night long!
- ANN: And ⁶ you have asked me to dance! / you asked me to dance!
- STEVE: And ⁷ you said, 'No.' / you have said, 'No.' I was very unhappy at the time.



At the school disco



Now

- ANN: Oh dear. I hope you're happy now!
- STEVE: Oh yes. ⁸ I've travelled all over the world. / I travelled all over the world.
⁹ I've met interesting people. / I met interesting people. ¹⁰ I learnt five languages! / I've learnt five languages! What about you?
- ANN: Well, ¹¹ I have gone to Italy two years ago. / I went to Italy two years ago. And ¹² I learnt to type last year. / I have learnt to type last year.
- STEVE: Do you still dance?
- ANN: Oh no. ¹³ I stopped dancing after school. / I have stopped dancing after school.
- STEVE: Well, I must go. It was nice to see you again.
- ANN: Yes. And you. Um... ¹⁴ Have you eaten in that new Japanese restaurant? / Did you eat in that new Japanese restaurant?
- STEVE: No, I haven't.
- ANN: Would you like to?
- STEVE: I'd love to. Perhaps we could go dancing afterwards just like old times.

Alkossunk a válaszoknak megfelelő kérdést egyszerű múltban vagy Present Perfectben.

where/you/go/on holiday/last year	how long/you/be/here
when/visit/your sister	why/you/shout at her
what/you/make	who/write/to
you/finish	why/you/leave/the restaurant

- 0 A: *Why did you shout at her?*
B: She borrowed my tennis racket and broke it. I was angry.
- 0 A: *Have you finished?*
B: I'm afraid not. I've got one more essay to write. You can go without me. I really don't mind.
- 1 A:
B: Two weeks ago. I stayed at her house for the weekend.
- 2 A:
B: To Majorca. I had a great time. Have you been there?
- 3 A:
B: This? It's a sort of bed for the cat to sleep in. Do you think it's soft enough?
- 4 A:
B: That was ages ago. I can't remember. Bad service perhaps. I never stay if I'm not happy.
- 5 A:
B: Everyone, but nobody has replied! Did you post the letters?
- 6 A:
B: Um...four days? A week? I forget everything on holiday! Joe darling, when did we get here?

Karen Titmus egy népszerű szappanopera egyik szereplője. Egészítsük ki az interjút egyszerű múlt vagy Present Perfect és a zárójelben lévő igék megfelelő alakjának használatával.

- INTERVIEWER: When ⁰ *did you decide* (you decide) to become an actress?
- KAREN: When I was about 8 years old.
- INTERVIEWER: Why? What ¹ (happen)?
- KAREN: I ² (see) a performance of a Shakespeare play at my local theatre. My parents ³ (take) me and I ⁴ (think) that it ⁵ (be) very exciting. I ⁶ (decide) that night to become an actress myself.
- INTERVIEWER: ⁷ (you enjoy) your time in the show 'The Locals'?
- KAREN: Yes, it ⁸ (be) great fun.
- INTERVIEWER: What ⁹ (be) your best experience in the show?
- KAREN: Well, of course, last year my character in the show ¹⁰ (get) married. It ¹¹ (be) a big story in the media and it ¹² (attract) a lot of publicity for me.
- INTERVIEWER: ¹³ (you have) any problems because you are so famous?
- KAREN: Not really. I ¹⁴ (meet) a lot of very nice people and they ¹⁵ (say) a lot of nice things to me.



Past Simple vagy Present Perfect (2) (for, since és ago)

Past Simple (egyszerű múlt)

Present Perfect

- 1 A következő mondatokban, egyszerű múlt időt használunk:

*It was very cold **last week**.*

Did you go to France last year?

*Sheila **did not go to work yesterday**.*

*She **phoned two hours ago**.*

Az egyszerű múltat akkor használjuk, ha a mondatban van múlt időre utaló időhatározó (**two hours ago, last week, yesterday**), amely azt fejezi ki, hogy a szóban forgó esemény már lejárt, a cselekvés már befejeződött.

A következő mondatokban Present Perfectet használunk:

***It has been** very cold **this week**.*

Have you been** on holiday **this year?

*Sheila **has not gone to work today**.*

*She **has phoned** three times **this afternoon**.*

A Present Perfectet olyan mondatokban használjuk, amelyekben az időhatározó (**this week, this year, today**) a beszéd időpontját is magában foglalja: **this week** (ezt csak akkor mondhatjuk, ha még az a hét tart), **this year**

- 2 Egyszerű múltat használunk, ha arról beszélünk, hogy valami a múltban egy bizonyos ideig tartott.

A: *How long **did** Mike **work** in Africa?*

B: *He **worked** there **for four years**.*

Mike már nem dolgozik Afrikában.

a múltban

most

for four years

Egyszerű múltat használunk abban az esetben is, ha olyan eseményről beszélünk, amely ma már nem élő személy életében történt:

A: ***Did** your grandmother ever **visit** Canada?*

B: *Yes, she **spent** several holidays there.*

Present Perfect szerkezettel fejezzük ki azokat az eseményeket és cselekményeket, amelyek még most is folyamatban vannak:

A: *How long **have** you **worked** here?*

B: *I've **worked** here **for six months**.*

(= Még most is itt dolgozom.)

a múltban

most

for six months

Present Perfectet használunk, ha olyan eseményekről beszélünk, amelyek ma is élő személy életében fordultak elő:

A: ***Have** you ever **visited** Canada?*

B: *Yes, I've **had** several holidays there.*

Figyelem: ha közöljük, hogy valami mikor történt, egyszerű múltat térünk át:

A: ***Have** you ever **visited** Canada?*

B: *Yes, I **went** to Toronto last year.*

- 3 Egyszerű múltat használunk annak a kifejezésére, hogy valami egy bizonyos idővel ezelőtt történt (**ago**), egy bizonyos ideig tartott (**for**), vagy egy adott időponttól kezdve valameddig tartott (**from/to**):

*The Second World War ended over 50 years **ago**.*

*The Second World War lasted **for** six years.*

*The Second World War lasted **from** 1939 **to** 1945.*

NEM: *The Second World War lasted **since** 1939 **to** 1945.*

Present Perfectet használunk annak kifejezésére, hogy valami egy idő óta (**for**) vagy egy meghatározott időpont óta (**since**) nem történt meg:

*I **haven't seen** Tom **for** three weeks. (= Három hete nem láttam Tomot.)*

*I **haven't seen** Tom **since** February. (= Február óta nem láttam Tomot.)*

*I **haven't seen** Tom **since** he came back. (= Nem láttam Tomot, amióta visszajött.)*

NEM: *I **have seen** Tom **three weeks ago**.*

Figyelem! Különös gonddal ügyeljünk az egyszerű múlt és a Present Perfect megkülönböztetésére, ugyanis a magyar nyelvben jelen vagy múlt idő is kifejezheti azt, amit az angolban a Present Perfect.

Pl.: *I've been here for three weeks.* (Három hete vagyok itt. – A magyarban jelen idő.)

I've already been to England. (Már voltam Angliában. – A magyarban múlt idő.)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék egyszerű múlt vagy Present Perfect alakjával.

- 0 (be) There *were* a lot of accidents last year, and there *have been* a lot this year, too.
- 0 (see) I *have* not *seen* Jane today, but I *saw* her yesterday.
- 1 (win) Our team is very good. We two competitions last year, and we two this year as well.
- 2 (make) The factory more than 1,000 motorbikes this year; it not so many last year.
- 3 (be) I'm worried about Mary. She ill last week, and she ill most of this week as well.
- 4 (work) Joe not hard last month, but he hard this month.
- 5 (earn) I a lot of money this year – much more than I last year.
- 6 (rain) It not much last year here, and it not much this year, either.
- 7 (write) Joanne to me last week, but she not this week.
- 8 (visit) Paul not his brother in Spain this year, but he him twice last year.
- 9 (snow) It not today, but it three times last week.

B A zárójelben az első évszám az adott személy születési évét adja meg, a második – ha már nem él – halála évét. Tegyük az igéket egyszerű múltba vagy Present Perfectbe.

- 0 Susan Cowley (1947–) is an artist. She *has painted* (paint) in many different styles and she *has had* (have) exhibitions in 14 countries.
- 1 Timothy Spinks (1846–1927) was a biologist. He (study) the plants of New Zealand, and he (write) several books on biology.
- 2 Claire Fox (1957–) is a doctor. She (develop) new treatments for diseases, and she (make) TV programmes about medicine.
- 3 Catherine Knight (1824–1883) was a nurse. She (work) with soldiers, and she (spend) her life trying to improve their lives.
- 4 Steven Brock (1963–) is a golf player. He (win) several competitions, and he (earn) a lot of money from advertising.
- 5 Peter Field (1948–) is a policeman. He (work) in London all his life, and he (arrest) more than 250 criminals.
- 6 Miranda Block (1901–1971) was a musician. She (play) the violin, and she (sing) in all the world's opera houses.

C A példa alapján írjuk át a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott kifejezésekkel.

0 Fran has been in Madrid for a week.

(go/ago) *Fran went to Madrid a week ago.*

(be/since last week) *Fran has been in Madrid since last week.*

1 Ben hasn't smoked for five years.

(stop/smoking/ago)

2 Jane moved to Bristol a year ago.

(live/since last year)

3 Anna has been married for three months.

(get/married/ago)

4 Mary bought a car six months ago.

(have/for six months)

5 Pat was ill yesterday and she's still ill today.

(be/for 24 hours)

6 Charles has had this job since last month.

(start/ago)

7 Kate has had a driving licence for a year.

(have/since last year)

8 Tom lost his job two months ago.

(be/unemployed/for two months)

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **for**, **since**, **ago** szavakkal.

HELEN: Hi! When did you get here?

DAVID: Oh, I've been here ⁰ *for* about an hour. The train came in quite a long time
1..... and then I had a cup of coffee.

HELEN: Let's go then, shall we?

GINA: Have you asked Sally to the party?

SUE: No. I haven't seen her ²..... April.

GINA: Well, she's working very hard at the moment.

JACK: Where have you been? I haven't seen you ³..... weeks.

ALAN: I know! I've been to Paris and New York on business.

JACK: How exciting! I haven't been to New York ⁴..... 1995.

PETER: I'm exhausted! I haven't played football ⁵..... I was at school.

IAN: Neither have I. When shall we play again?

PETER: Next year!

LUCY: Has the play started?

JO: Ssssh! It started five minutes ⁶.....

JILL: I've been here ⁷..... two o'clock. Don't you have a watch?

EMMA: Yes, of course I do, but I was stuck in traffic ⁸..... an hour.

E Egészítsük ki a levelet a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

14 Golita Drive
Santa Barbara
California
901032
USA
20th July 2001

Dear Mum and Dad,

How are you? I ⁰ *'ve been* (be) here for three days now, and it's fantastic! The family ¹ (meet) me at the airport on Sunday, and ² (take) me to their house. I ³ (never see) such a big house! I ⁴ (get) lost on the first floor this morning, and the garden is like a football pitch.

I ⁵ (see) the town centre yesterday afternoon. It's like a film – American cops, drugstores, big cars etc. We ⁶ (have) a Coke and a hamburger, of course. It ⁷ (be) the best hamburger I've ever had. The town isn't very big. We ⁸ (see) everything in an hour. I ⁹ (not meet) any film stars yet, but we're going to Los Angeles tomorrow, so here's hoping!

Fiona ¹⁰ (break) her arm in a local tennis competition last week. I think she'll be OK, and hope she can return to England with me for the English part of the exchange.

Well, I think I ¹¹ (say) everything. It's great fun! I ¹² (arrive) three days ago and I ¹³ already (start) to feel American. We must all come one day!

Love,

Kate

F Fordítsuk le ezeket a híres angol személyiségekről szóló mondatokat.

- 1 Jane Austen 1775-ben született. Regényeket írt, és Londonban és Bathban élt. Könyvei, például az *Értelem és érzelem* (*Sense and Sensibility*), a mai irodalomra is hatást gyakorolnak.
- 2 Az angolok nagy része (már) olvasta Charles Dickens könyveit, például a *Copperfield Dávidot*. Ez a regény a tizenkilencedik századi London életét mutatja be.
- 3 George Orwell írta az *Állatfarmot* (*Animal Farm*) és az 1984-et. 1950-ben halt meg. Könyvei megváltoztatták az emberek társadalomról alkotott véleményét.
- 4 Sean Connery színész. Több száz filmet készített. James Bondként lett híres az 1960-as években készült filmekben.
- 5 Margaret Thatcher 1979 és 1990 között volt miniszterelnök. Ő volt az első brit miniszterelnök. Amikor befejezte politikai pályáját, megírta önéletrajzát.
- 6 Andrew Lloyd Webber jónéhány rendkívül népszerű musicalt írt, például a *Macskákat* és az *Operaház fantomját*. Az első nagysikerű darabja a *Jézus Krisztus Szupersztár* volt.

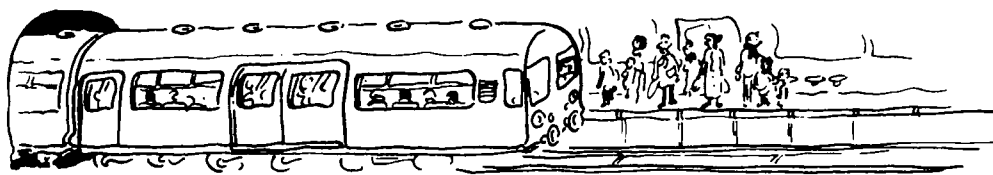
A Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megfelelő szerkezetekkel.

- SARAH: 0. *Have you ever been* (Have you ever been/Did you ever go) to the United States?
- JIM: Yes, 1. (I've been/I went) to California last year.
- SARAH: 2. (Have you liked/Did you like) it?
- JIM: Yes, 3. (I've enjoyed/I enjoyed) the trip a lot.
- SARAH: What 4. (have you done/did you do) there?
- JIM: 5. (I've visited/I visited) Hollywood, Disneyland and San Francisco. 6. (Have you been/Did you go) to California, Sarah?
- SARAH: No, but 7. (I've booked/I booked) a holiday there. I've got my ticket and I'm going next week!

B Nancy és Harry egy összejövételen találkozik. Évekkel ezelőtt ugyanarra az egyetemre jártak, de már régen nem látták egymást. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédüket a zárójelben megadott szavakkal és az egyszerű múlt vagy Present Perfect használatával.

- NANCY: Gosh, 0. *you've changed* (you/change)!
1. (I/not/recognize) you when 2. (you/come) into the room.
- HARRY: Yes, 3. (I/grow) my hair. It was very short when 4. (you/know) me all those years ago.
- NANCY: And 5. (you/grow) a beard.
- HARRY: Oh yes. 6. (I/grow) that about a year ago.
- NANCY: When 7. (we/meet) last?
- HARRY: 8. (It/be) at Anna's party. 9. (We/talk) about your boyfriend a lot.
- NANCY: Oh, him? 10. (I/stop) going out with him a long time ago.
- HARRY: I'm sorry to hear that. 11. (What/happen)?
- NANCY: 12. (We/have) a big argument. But I'm glad. 13. (He/not be) the right man for me.
- HARRY: 14. (you/see) any of the other people from our course recently?
- NANCY: Well, 15. (I/not/keep) in contact with many of them, but 16. (I/see) Dave and Kate a few times.
- HARRY: How are they?
- NANCY: Fine. 17. (They/get) married last month actually.
- HARRY: Really? 18. (I/not/know) they were a couple.
- NANCY: No, 19. (they/keep) it secret for a long time.
- HARRY: Mmm. 20. (I/ask) Kate to go out with me several times when we were students. Now I know why 21. (she/say) 'no' every time!

- 5 Egészítsük ki a londoni metróról szóló szöveget a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.



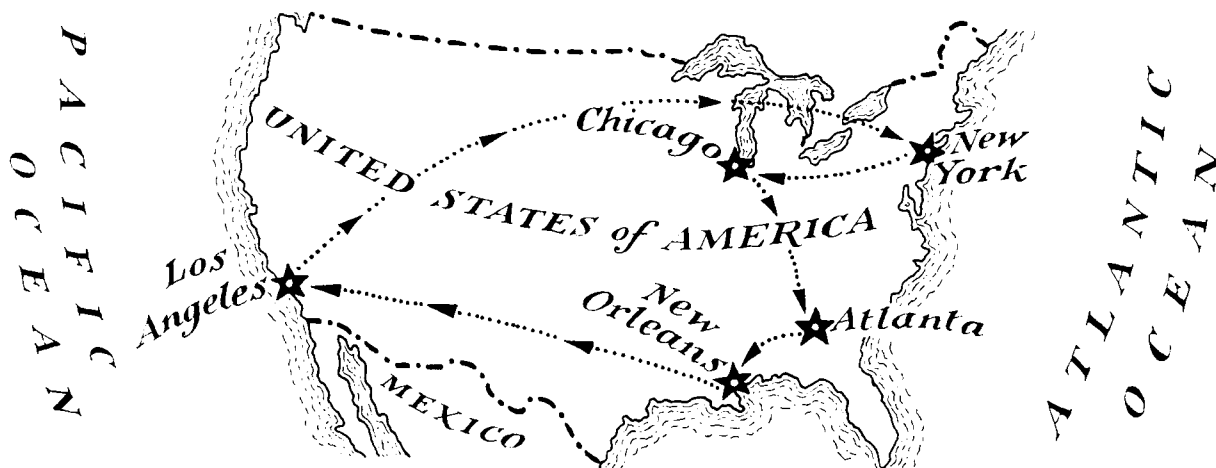
The London Underground

London ⁰ *has had* (have) an underground train system since the 19th Century. The London Underground ¹ (start) in 1863, when Victorian engineers and workers ² (build) the Metropolitan railway. This railway line ³ (go) from Paddington Station to Farringdon Street Station, and steam engines ⁴ (pull) the coaches. Eight more lines ⁵ (open) since the Metropolitan line started. The world's first underground electric railway ⁶ (open) in 1890. This line ⁷ (go) from the City of London to Stockwell in South London. The most modern line is the Jubilee line, which ⁸ (open) in 1979. Since the London Underground ⁹ (begin), many other cities, such as New York and Moscow, ¹⁰ (build) their own systems.

- 6 A következő párbeszéd Jim Leach és egy rendőrfelügyelő között zajlik. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben megadott kifejezésekkel egyszerű múltban vagy Present Perfectben.

POLICEMAN: Mr Leach, how many times ⁰ *have you been* (you/be) in prison?
 JIM LEACH: Twice.
 POLICEMAN: When ¹ (you/finish) your last prison sentence?
 JIM LEACH: I ² (come) out of prison about six months ago.
 POLICEMAN: How long ³ (you/live) in this town?
 JIM LEACH: I have lived here for about seven years. I ⁴ (move) here when I got married.
 POLICEMAN: So you ⁵ (be) married for seven years.
 JIM LEACH: No, my wife ⁶ (leave) me two years ago.
 POLICEMAN: ⁷ (you/see) her since she left you?
 JIM LEACH: No, I ⁸ (not/see) her since she left.

E Az alábbi párbeszéd egy újságíró és egy Amerikában vendégszereplő angol énekesnő között zajlik. A zárójelben megadott kifejezésekből írjuk meg az újságíró kérdéseit. Használjuk az igék egyszerű múlt vagy Present Perfect alakját.



- JOURNALIST: (When/you/arrive/in America?)
0 *When did you arrive in America?*
- MONICA: About six weeks ago.
- JOURNALIST: (How many/shows/you/do?)
1.....
- MONICA: Thirty so far. I work hard, don't I?
- JOURNALIST: (Which cities/you/play in?)
2.....
- MONICA: I've been to Chicago, Atlanta, New Orleans, and Los Angeles.
- JOURNALIST: (How many/shows/you/do/in Atlanta?)
3.....
- MONICA: I don't know. Seven? Eight? How many interviews did you do last month? Are you going to ask me some interesting questions?
- JOURNALIST: (How many people/come/to/your Saturday night show in Atlanta?)
4
- MONICA: I didn't sell the tickets. More than ten, I think.
- JOURNALIST: Actually, there were 20,000. It was a big success. OK, a new subject. (you/meet/any American singers/since/you/arrive?)
5
- MONICA: Sure. I've met some really cool guys. Mick Stevens, Joe Satino, Phil 'The Cat' Baker.
- JOURNALIST: (Where/you/see/Joe? In Chicago?)
6
- MONICA: Sure, that's where he lives.
- JOURNALIST: (you/play/some music/with Joe/in Chicago?)
7
- MONICA: Yeah, we did. I like Joe. Look, I'm getting tired. Have we finished?
- JOURNALIST: One more question? (How long/you/be/here/in New York?)
8
- MONICA: Three days. That's about twenty-five interviews.

- F** Az újságíró kapkodva írta meg a cikket, így hibák vannak benne. Húzzuk ki a fölösleges **have** és **has** szavakat.

FAX

Metropolitan Hotel, New York, USA

Monica ~~has~~ arrived in New York three days ago. She has played in cities all over America. 20,000 people have attended her Saturday night show in Atlanta. She has spent time with several American singers. She has visited Joe Satino in Chicago two weeks ago. She has played and recorded music with him. Last week she has sold 10,000 copies of her new record. But she looks tired. She has had a busy time in New York. Today she has already talked to ten journalists, and it's only 4 p.m.!

- G** Monica az interjú után felhívta londoni barátját. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott kifejezések megfelelő alakjával.

be never go ~~you be~~ you play see do do record just buy
you not leave phone you meet have

- WOMAN: Hello. Marion here.
- MONICA: Oh, it's Monica here. Can I speak to Zak, please?
- WOMAN: Sure. I'll get him.
- ZAK: Is that you, Monica?
- MONICA: Of course it's me. Where ⁰ *have you been* Zak? I ¹ more than fifty times since I arrived in America.
- ZAK: I ² some work to do. Why ³ any messages?
- MONICA: I don't like answering machines. You know that.
- ZAK: Anyway, how are you?
- MONICA: I'm tired, of course. I ⁴ thirty shows. I've played everywhere.
- ZAK: Where are you now?
- MONICA: I'm in New York. I ⁵ here for three days.
- ZAK: Great! I ⁶ to New York. What's it like?
- MONICA: It's full of journalists. I ⁷ fifteen interviews today.
- ZAK: ⁸ any American singers?
- MONICA: Sure. I've met Joe Satino and ...
- ZAK: Satino? Fantastic. ⁹ anything with him?
- MONICA: Yeah, we ¹⁰ a song together in Chicago. It was good.
- ZAK: Have you visited Steve yet?
- MONICA: Yes, I ¹¹ him in Atlanta. He's fine. Zak, are you going to come to America?
- ZAK: Of course. I ¹² a ticket.
- MONICA: Zak?
- ZAK: Yes.
- MONICA: Who's Marion?

1 A Present Perfect Continuous alakjai:

ÁLLÍTÁS		
I/you/we/they	have/'ve	} been cooking
He/she/it	has/'s	
<hr/>		
TAGADÁS		
I/you/we/they	haven't	} been cooking
He/she/it	hasn't	
<hr/>		
KÉRDÉS		
Have	I/you/we/they	} been cooking?
Has	he/she/it	

(Az **-ing** végződéssel kapcsolatos további tudnivalók a 361. oldalon, a D táblázatban, a kérdő alakra adható rövid válaszok pedig a 46. fejezetben találhatók.)

2 Ezt az igeidőt akkor használjuk, ha valami a múltban kezdődött el és mostanáig tart:

You're late! I've been waiting for you.

A Present Perfect Continuous mellett gyakran használjuk a **for** és a **since** elöljárókat. A **for** időtartamot, a **since** a cselekvés kezdetének időpontját jelöli:

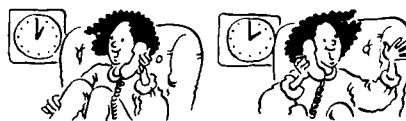
I've been waiting for you for two hours.

(= Két órája várlak. – időtartam)

I've been waiting for you since six o'clock.

(= Hat óra óta várlak. – kezdő időpont)

3 Néhány további példa:



Julia has been talking on the phone for an hour.
(Egy órával ezelőtt kezdett beszélni, és még most is beszél.)

You've been sitting there since one o'clock. (Egy órákor ültél le oda, és még most is ott ülsz.)

4 A Present Perfect Continuous szerkezettel olyan cselekvést fejezhetünk ki, amely a múltban kezdődött el, a beszéd pillanatában is tart és magyarázatot ad valamilyen jelenségre:

What a lovely smell! ~ Yes, I've been cooking.
(= Micsoda nagyszerű illat! ~ Igen, főzök.)

5 A Present Perfect Continuous szerkezet olyan cselekvésre is utalhat, amely a múlt egy bizonyos időpontja óta rendszeresen ismétlődik:

She's been having driving lessons for a couple of months. (Néhány hónapja tanul vezetni. – Néhány hónappal ezelőtt kezdte el, és még most is tanul.)

I've been playing tennis since I was a child.

6 Ha azt akarjuk megtudni, hogy valami mióta tart, a **How long** + Present Perfect Continuous szerkezetet használjuk:

How long have you been studying English?

Figyelem! Az **ever**, **never** és az **already** nem használható a Present Perfect Continuous szerkezettel.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő levelet Present Perfect Continuous és a zárójelben lévő igék megfelelő alakjának használatával.

Dear Diana,

Hello from Liverpool. I just thought I'd write and tell you about ⁰ *what's been happening*.

(what/happen) here since we last saw each other. ¹..... (Louise/study) hard - she's got her exams soon. ²..... (She/sit up) until late at night and

³..... (she/complain) about it a lot. ⁴.....

(William/try) to earn some money for several months. ⁵..... (He/look) for jobs and ⁶..... (he/go) for interviews but he hasn't found a job yet.

⁷..... (Mike/spend) most of his time on the golf course and

⁸..... (he/get) a lot better at the game. And me? ⁹.....

(I/get) ready for my trip to Italy. ¹⁰..... (I/read) guidebooks,
¹¹..... (I/buy) clothes and ¹²..... (I/save) as much
 money as I can. I'm really looking forward to it.

Marcia

! Az alábbi párbeszéd a munkából hazatérő anyja és gyermekei között zajlik. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott igék Present Perfect Continuous alakjával.

dig ~~have~~ make read tidy use wash watch work

- 0 MOTHER: Why are there dirty plates and glasses in the living room?
 LINDA: Because Peter *has been having*..... a party.
- 1 MOTHER: And why are all the toys in Jenny's bedroom on the floor?
 LINDA: Because she her cupboards.
- 2 MOTHER: And why is Clare soaking wet?
 LINDA: She her dolls in the bath.
- 3 MOTHER: And why is this carpet muddy?
 LINDA: Because the dog in the garden.
- 4 MOTHER: And why is the television on?
 LINDA: Because Peter's friends a video.
- 5 MOTHER: And why are you covered in flour?
 LINDA: Because I some cakes.
- 6 MOTHER: And why are all these magazines on the floor?
 LINDA: Dad them.
- 7 MOTHER: Jack! Why is this place in such a mess?
 JACK: I don't know. I the computer in the study.
- 8 MOTHER: Well, I all day and now I need some help to tidy up!

! Alakítsuk át a mondatokat a példa alapján. Használjuk a Present Perfect Continuous szerkezetet és a **for** vagy **since** elöljárószót.

- 0 She started her course a month ago and she is still doing it.
She has been doing her course for a month.
- 0 I started reading this novel last weekend and I'm still reading it.
I've been reading this novel since last weekend.
- 1 It started raining at three o'clock and it is still raining.

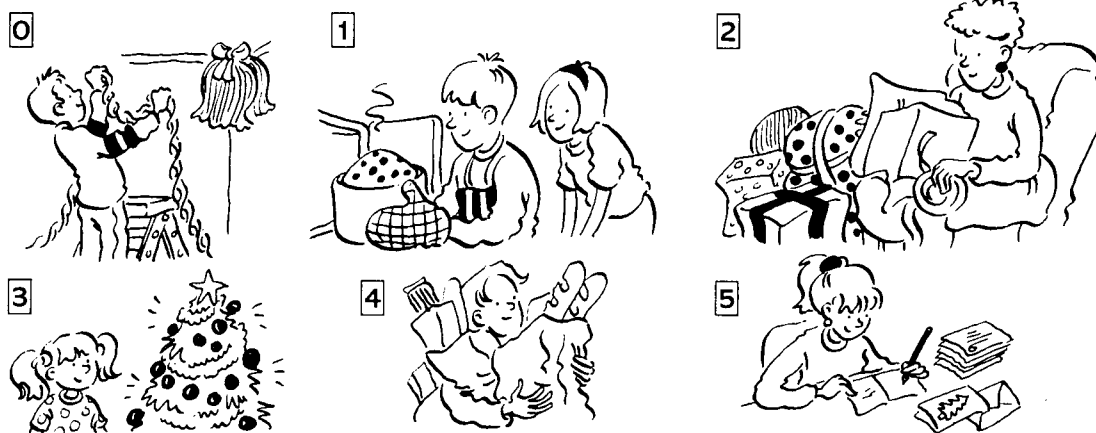
- 2 He started playing chess when he was ten and he still plays it.

- 3 I started work at eight o'clock and I'm still working.

- 4 Helen started looking for another job two months ago and she's still looking.

- 5 We arrived here two hours ago and we're still waiting.

D Nézzük meg a képeket, és a megadott szavakkal írjuk le, hogy a Wyatt család tagjai hogyan készülnek a karácsonyra. Használjunk Present Perfect Continuoust.

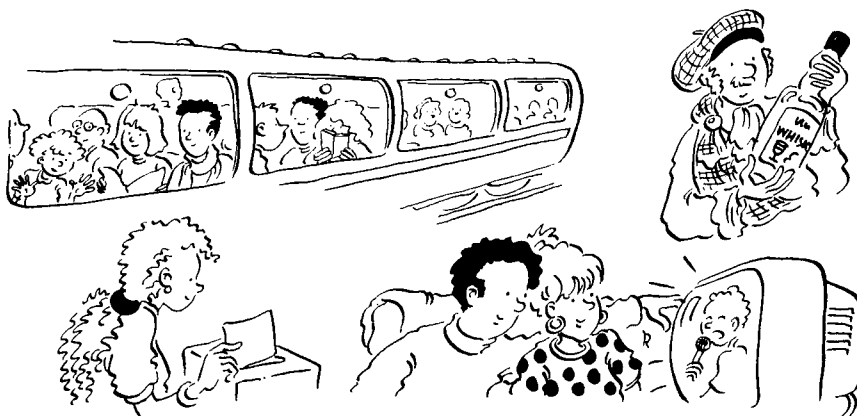


wrap make decorate shop write ~~put up~~ a cake cards
~~decorations~~ presents the tree for food

0 *John has been putting up decorations.*

- 1 Mary and Stephen
- 2 Martha
- 3 Delia
- 4 Tom
- 5 Joanna

E A táblázatban megadott információ alapján írunk állító mondatokat Nagy-Britanniáról. Használjuk a Present Perfect Continuoust és a **for** vagy **since** előjárószt.



People	by train	1829
Scotland	whisky	600 years
British women	in general elections	1928
People	the London Underground	1863
People	TV	50 years
Scientists	space	1957
Audiences	Shakespeare's plays	300 years
People	rock and roll	the 1950s
People	rugby	over 150 years
The British Royal Family	at Buckingham Palace	Victorian times
People	by credit card	the 1970s
Oxford University	students	the thirteenth century

- 0 (travel) *People have been travelling by train since 1829.*
- 0 (produce) *Scotland has been producing whisky for 600 years.*
- 1 (vote)
- 2 (use)
- 3 (watch)
- 4 (explore)
- 5 (enjoy)
- 6 (listen to)
- 7 (play)
- 8 (live)
- 9 (pay)
- 10 (educate)

3 A megadott kifejezések segítségével írjunk kérdéseket a következő válaszokhoz Present Perfect Continuous használatával.

How long/you/study physics

Where/you/sleep

Who/you/talk to

What/you/eat

~~you/work/hard~~

~~How long/you/learn French~~

Where/you/shop

Why/you/run

What/you/read

you/wait/long

- 0 A: *Have you been working hard?*
- B: Yes, I've done all my homework.
- 0 A: *How long have you been learning French?*
- B: For six years. I can speak it fluently.
- 1 A:
- B: I got up late, and I missed my bus.
- 2 A:
- B: Chocolate. Would you like some?
- 3 A:
- B: In the living-room. The bedroom was too cold.
- 4 A:
- B: For four years. I'm at Aberdeen University.
- 5 A:
- B: No, I've only been here about ten minutes.
- 6 A:
- B: A book about America. It's fascinating.
- 7 A:
- B: Miriam. She phoned from New York.
- 8 A:
- B: At Harrods. I bought a new watch.



Present Perfect Simple (I've done) és Present Perfect Continuous (I've been doing)

Hasonlítsuk össze a két igeidőt:

	Present Perfect Simple	Present Perfect Continuous
1	I/you/we/they He/she/it } have/'ve has/'s } eaten	I/you/we/they He/she/it } have/'ve has/'s } been eating
2	A Present Perfectet (have painted) általában akkor használjuk, amikor a cselekvés vagy történés, amelyről beszélünk, a múlt nem meghatározott időpontjában történt és a beszéd pillanatában már nem tart: <i>We've painted the flat.</i> (= Kifestettük a lakást.) <i>Anna's mended her bike.</i> (= Anna megjavította a kerékpárját.)	A Present Perfect Continuous (have been painting) akkor használjuk, amikor a cselekvés vagy történés a múltban kezdődött, és vagy befejeződött a beszéd pillanatáig vagy még most is tart: <i>We've been painting the flat. That's why it smells.</i> <i>We still have three rooms to paint.</i> (= Festjük a lakást. – Még nem fejeztük be. Még mindig hátra van három szoba.) <i>Anna's hands are dirty because she's been mending her bike.</i> (= Anna a kerékpárját javítja.)
3	A How many? , How much? és How often? kezdetű kérdésekben is gyakran használjuk a Present Perfectet. A kérdésre adott válaszban szintén: A: <i>How many rooms have you painted?</i> B: <i>We've painted three of them.</i> A: <i>How much has it cost?</i> B: <i>Oh, it hasn't cost much.</i> <i>How often have you stayed up all night?</i>	A How long? kezdetű kérdésben és a since és for előjárószt tartalmazó válaszban Present Perfect Continuous is használhatunk. A: <i>How long have you been waiting? Have you been queuing for a long time?</i> B: <i>I've been waiting since two o'clock.</i>

4 A következő esetekben a Present Perfect Continuous alakot nem használhatjuk:

- ▶ amikor rövid ideig tartó cselekvésről beszélünk (**have, stop, break** stb.):
Tony has had an accident on his bike.
- ▶ amikor az ige (pl.: **know, decide, forget, notice** stb.) valamiféle szellemi tevékenységet fejez ki:
I'm sorry. I've forgotten your name.
- ▶ amikor arról beszélünk, hogy valamit mikor csináltunk legutóbb:
I haven't eaten meat for two years. (= Két éve nem ettem húst. – Utoljára két évvel ezelőtt ettem húst.)

5 A **work, teach** és a **live** igeik használhatók mindkét szerkezettel. Ezekben a mondatokban a **for** vagy a **since** előjárószt használjuk. Ezekben az esetekben a kétféle szerkezet jelentése között nincs sok különbség.

I have taught here for two years. VAGY *I have been teaching here for two years.* (Két éve tanítok itt.)

Gyakorlatok

A Anna és Sophia házibulit rendez. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet Present Perfect Simple vagy Present Perfect Continuous és a zárójelben megadott ige megfelelő alakjának használatával.

- ANNA: Let's talk about our dinner party next week. How many people ⁰ *have you invited?* (you/invite)
- SOPHIA: Four. All of them ¹..... (reply) and all of them ²..... (say) that they can come.
- ANNA: Well, I ³..... (think) about Arthur and Fiona. I ⁴..... (decide) that we should invite them as well.

SOPHIA: Good idea. We ⁵..... (not see) them for ages. I wonder what they ⁶..... (do).

ANNA: Well, I ⁷..... (hear) from George that their lives ⁸..... (change) quite a bit. They ⁹..... (move) to a new house and they ¹⁰..... (decorate) it - they ¹¹..... (not finish) doing that yet. But Arthur ¹²..... (lose) his job.

SOPHIA: Oh dear. Well, let's invite them. It might cheer them up.

B Négy barát éppen valamilyen tevékenységet fejezett be. Nézzük meg a következő táblázatot.

	Tevékenység	Most
Neil	sweep the floors	he is sweating
Rachel	cut the grass	she is tired
Paul	do the washing-up	he has soft hands
Carol	peel the onions	she has red eyes

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a fenti információ alapján. Használjunk Present Perfectet vagy Present Perfect Continuousot.

- 0 Neil, why are you sweating? ~ Because *I have been sweeping the floors.*
- 0 Is the lawn finished? ~ *Yes, Rachel has cut the grass.*
- 1 Paul, why are your hands so soft? ~ Because I
- 2 Are the onions ready for the pan? ~ Yes, Carol them.
- 3 Rachel, you look tired. ~ Yes, I
- 4 Are the floors clean? ~ Yes, Neil them.
- 5 Why are your eyes red, Carol? ~ Because I
- 6 Are the plates clean? ~ Yes, Paul

C Maggie munkából hazatérve férjével, Tommal, és lányaival, Lizzel és Wendyvel beszélget. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megfelelő igealakokkal (Present Perfect vagy Present Perfect Continuous).

MAGGIE: Hello, Tom. ⁰ *Have you had*..... (you/have) a good day?

TOM: Well, not really. ⁰ *I've been trying*... (I/try) to talk to the boss about that transport problem all day but ¹..... (I/not/speak) to him yet.

MAGGIE: ²..... (I/have) a very successful day. ³..... (I/talk) to some Japanese customers for months, and now ⁴..... (I/sell) them three machines. ⁵..... (you/see) the girls yet?

TOM: No, ⁶..... (I/just/get) home. Wendy! Liz! Where are you?

LIZ: I'm in here. I'm watching the TV.

WENDY: I'm in the kitchen, doing my homework. ⁷..... (I/do) it since I got home and ⁸..... (I/finish) half of it.

MAGGIE: And how long ⁹..... (you/watch) the TV, Liz?

LIZ: ¹⁰..... (I/just/switch) it on.

WENDY: Don't tell lies. ¹¹..... (you/watch) it for more than an hour.

TOM: OK, stop that! Now who's going to help with supper?

LIZ: Not me. ¹²..... (I/help) three times this week already.

WENDY: Well, I can't help because I ¹³..... (not/finish) my homework.

- 1 A Past Perfect szerkezet a **had** segédigéből és az ige harmadik (befejezett melléknévi igenévi) alakjából áll (pl. **finished, gone**):

ÁLLÍTÁS	
I/you/he/she/it/we/they	had gone
<hr/>	
TAGADÁS	
I/you/he/she/it/we/they	hadn't gone
<hr/>	
KÉRDÉS	
Had I/you/he/she/it/we/they gone ?	

(A kérdésekre adható rövid válaszok a 46. fejezetben találhatók.)

(További információk a Past Perfect használatáról az E és F táblázatban találhatók a 362. és a 363. oldalon.)

- 2 Figyeljük meg az alábbi példát:

Jane **had gone** home when I **phoned** her at the office. (= Jane már elment haza, amikor a hivatalban telefonon kerestem.)

a múltban



most



- 3 A Past Perfect azt fejezi ki, hogy valami a múltban egy másik eseményt megelőzően történt. Ami előbb történt, azt jelöljük a Past Perfect alakkal (**had gone**), ami később, azt egyszerű múlt idővel (**phoned**).

*When I got home, I saw that the letter **had arrived**.* (= Amikor hazaértem, láttam, hogy a levél már megérkezett. – A levél előbb érkezett meg.)

*When he **had finished** his homework, he went to bed.* (= Amikor befejezte a házi feladatát, lefeküdt aludni. – Előbb fejezte be a házi feladatot.)

*He couldn't pay the bill because he **had left** his wallet at home.* (= Nem tudta kifizetni a számlát, mert otthon felejtette a tárcáját. – Előbb hagyta otthon.)

*I was very nervous because I **hadn't driven** a car on the motorway **before**.* (= Nagyon ideges voltam, mert azelőtt még soha nem vezettem autópályán.)

Figyeljük meg a **by the time** (= mikor/mire) használatát:

***By the time** he was twenty-five, he **had already made** a million pounds.* (= Huszonöt éves korára már egymillió fontot keresett.)

***Had** the builders **finished by the time** you got home from your holiday? ~ Yes, they **had**.*

Gyakorlatok

- A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az igék megfelelő alakjával (Past Perfect).

- I didn't watch the film because I **had seen** (see) it before.
- We couldn't eat at the restaurant because we (not/book) a table.
- I couldn't buy it because I (spend) all my money.
- I was tired because I (get up) very early that morning.
- He didn't know the answer because he (not/do) his homework.
- She was very happy because she (win) a prize.
- I (forget) my pen so I had to borrow one.
- When I got home, I switched on the answerphone. Several people (leave) messages for me.
- I (not/hear) the joke before; I laughed a lot.
- When we came out of the restaurant, we saw that our car (disappear).
- She couldn't see the photographs because she (not/bring) her glasses.
- The ground was very dry; it (not/rain) for a long time.

B Henry vacsorára hívta barátait a házába. Alkossunk mondatokat a Past Perfect használatával a lista alapján, amelyből kiderül, hogy mivel készült el és mivel nem, mielőtt a vendégek megérkeztek.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 0 | He bought the food. |
| 1 | He cleaned the flat. |
| 2 | He didn't buy anything to drink. |
| 3 | He had a shower. |
| 4 | He changed his clothes. |
| 5 | He started making dinner. |
| 6 | He didn't finish making dinner. |

By the time his guests arrived:

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 0 | <i>He had bought the food.</i> |
| 1 | ..... |
| 2 | ..... |
| 3 | ..... |
| 4 | ..... |
| 5 | ..... |
| 6 | ..... |



C Alkossunk összetett mondatokat **when** kötőszóval a példa alapján. Ügyeljünk, hogy mikor használunk egyszerű múltat és mikor Past Perfectet.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 0 | We finished our meal. Then we went for a walk. |
| | When <i>we had finished our meal, we went for a walk.</i> |
| 1 | I did the course. Then I was able to speak the language well. |
| | When I |
| 2 | He did all his work. Then he went home. |
| | When |
| 3 | Everyone left. Then I went to bed. |
| | When |
| 4 | She had a glass of water. Then she felt better. |
| | When |
| 5 | He did the washing-up. Then he listened to some music. |
| | When |
| 6 | Steve saved enough money. Then he bought a new motorbike. |
| | When |
| 7 | I discussed the problem with a friend. Then I felt happier. |
| | I felt happier when |
| 8 | She finished speaking. Then I gave my opinion. |
| | I gave my opinion when |
| 9 | The guests left. Then we tidied the house. |
| | We tidied the house when |



Past Simple (I saw) vagy Past Perfect (I had seen)

1 Hasonlítsuk össze a két példamondatot:

'I have never been on a plane before now.'

*Jenny flew to Rome last year. She **had never been** on a plane before that.*

Amikor múltban történt eseményről vagy cselekvésről beszélünk, egyszerű múltat használunk (**flew**); ha pedig olyan eseményről, amely a múltban történtek előtt zajlott, akkor Past Perfectet (**had been**).

Egy másik példa:

A mozi előtt Mary ezt mondja:

MARY: *We don't need to queue because I've already bought the tickets.* (= Nem kell sorba állnunk, mert már megvettem a jegyeket.)

Később így beszél róla:

MARY: *We didn't need to queue because I **had** already **bought** the tickets.* (= Nem kellett sorba állnunk, mert már (korábban) megvettem a jegyeket.)

Figyeljük meg, hogy a **never** és az **already** a befejezett melléknévi igenév előtt (**been**, **bought**) áll.

2 Amikor eseménysort mesélünk el, egyszerű múltat használunk:

A I parked my car. **B** I went to the shops.

C Somebody stole my radio. **D** I went back to my car.

a múltban A B C D **most**

Ha nem időrendi sorrendben mondjuk el az eseményeket, a befejezett múlt fejezi ki azt, ami előbb történt:

D I went back to my car. **C** Somebody **had stolen** my radio. (Mire visszamentem az autómhoz, ellopták a rádiómat.)

Ilyen esetekben használhatjuk a **when** (= amikor, mire) szót:



When I went back to my car, I saw that somebody **had stolen** my radio.

3 Függő beszédben is a Past Perfect alakot használjuk:

'I have suffered from asthma for many years.'

(= Hosszú évek óta gyötör az asztma.)

*She told the doctor that she **had suffered** from asthma for many years.* (= Elmondta az orvosnak, hogy hosszú idő óta gyöttri az asztma.)

(A függő beszéddel kapcsolatos további információ a 125. fejezetben található.)

Gyakorlatok

A Írjunk mondatokat arról, hogy az állításban szereplő személy az adott cselekvést már korábban is végezte-e, vagy még sohasem tett ilyet. Használjunk Past Perfectet **already** illetve **never** határozószóval.

- 0 Last summer Mary won a gold medal for the third time.
*She **had already won two gold medals** before that.*
- 0 Last year Ken visited Scotland for the first time.
*He **had never visited Scotland** before that.*
- 1 Last weekend Tom rode a horse for the first time.
 He before that.
- 2 Last summer Jeff ran in a marathon for the sixth time.
 He before that.
- 3 Last week Susan wrote a poem for the first time.
 She before that.
- 4 Last week Ann appeared on TV for the first time.
 She before that.

- 5 Last summer Tony played tennis at Wimbledon for the fifth time.
He before that.
- 6 Last year Jean wrote her third novel.
She before that.

3 A következő pontok két-két eseményt tartalmaznak abban a sorrendben, ahogy ezek megtörténtek. Alkossunk összetett mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal. Ügyeljünk, hogy mikor használunk egyszerű múltat, és mikor Past Perfectet.

- 0 A The driver started the car. B Lady James appeared.
(When Lady James/appear/, the driver/already/start/the car)
When Lady James appeared, the driver had already started the car.
- 1 A We put the fire out. B The firemen arrived.
(When the firemen/arrive/, we/already/put/the fire out)
.....
- 2 A Jim finished the work. B The manager came back.
(When the manager/come/back, Jim/already/finish/the work)
.....
- 3 A I went to bed. B Philip telephoned.
(When Philip/telephone/, I/already/go/to bed)
.....
- 4 A Alice and Jack had lunch. B Their children came home.
(When their children/come/home, Alice and Jack/already/have/lunch)
.....
- 5 A Ian made the dinner. B His wife got home from work.
(When his wife/get/home from work, Ian/already/make/dinner)
.....
- 6 A The thieves spent the money. B The police caught them.
(The thieves/already/spend/the money when the police/catch/them)
.....

3 Egészítsük ki a mondatokat Past Perfect használatával.

- 0 Last summer Pam said, 'I've always wanted to fly in a helicopter.'
Pam said that she *had always wanted to fly in a helicopter.*
- 1 Fred said, 'Jack has just gone out.'
Fred told us that Jack
- 2 Robert said to Jill, 'Have you been to Cambridge?'
Robert asked Jill if she
- 3 When the boys came home, Mrs Brock said, 'I've made some sandwiches.'
Mrs Brock told the boys that she
- 4 'I know your cousin,' said Tom. 'I met her in Amsterdam.'
Tom said he knew my cousin because he
- 5 Bob was talking to Jean, and he said, 'Have you ever been to Japan?'
Bob asked Jean if she

- 6 When Jack came, I said, 'I've finished the job.'
I told Jack that I
- 7 When the car mechanic arrived, we said, 'We've already found the problem.'
We explained to the mechanic that we
- 8 When I was interviewing the author, I said, 'How many books have you sold?'
I asked the author how many books she

D Alkossunk mondatokat a példa alapján Past Perfect és **never ... before** használatával.

- 0 Dan first flew to America when he was twelve. (in a plane)
He had never flown in a plane before.
- 1 Helen saw Rigoletto last night. (an opera)
.....
- 2 Tim ate at The Ashoko restaurant last weekend. (in a Japanese restaurant)
.....
- 3 Sarah first rode a Harley-Davidson when she was seventeen. (a motorbike)
.....
- 4 Not long ago Simon read War and Peace. (a Russian novel)
.....
- 5 Mauro went to London last summer. (be abroad)
.....
- 6 Katie heard a Beethoven symphony during last year's music festival. (live classical music)
.....
- 7 Bill first drove his dad's BMW when he was nineteen. (a car)
.....
- 8 Claire did a bungee jump last summer. (anything so crazy)
.....

E Tegyünk fel kérdéseket Past Perfect alakban a példa alapján.

- 0 Katie saw Romeo and Juliet last week.
Had she ever seen Romeo and Juliet before?
- 1 Flora went to Ireland last summer.
.....
- 2 Tony made a Christmas cake last year.
.....
- 3 Peter took Jenny out to dinner last night.
.....
- 4 Sue swam in a national competition last Saturday.
.....
- 5 Simon tidied his room yesterday.
.....
- 6 Brazil won the World Cup in 1994.
.....

F Az alábbi képek mindegyike mellett két összetett mondat áll. Pipáljuk ki azt a mondatot, amelyik a kép tartalmának jobban megfelel, a másikat pedig húzzuk át.



- 0 When the police arrived, the thieves ran off. ✓
~~When the police arrived, the thieves had run off.~~



- 1 When my father came home, we all had dinner.
~~When my father came home, we had all had dinner.~~



- 2 When the teacher walked in, Bob and Fred stopped fighting.
~~When the teacher walked in, Bob and Fred had stopped fighting.~~



- 3 When Clare's friends arrived, she opened her birthday presents.
~~When Clare's friends arrived, she had opened her birthday presents.~~



- 4 When James came in, his sister went out.
~~When James came in, his sister had gone out.~~

G Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a tartalmilag odaillő mondat függő beszéddé történő átalakításával.

Have you finished your homework?	I've lived in the same house all my life.
I've gone to the doctor's.	Did you remember to post my letters?
I've just seen a lovely dress I want to buy.	I've already seen the film.

- 0 Jean left a note for her husband to tell him that *she had gone to the doctor's.*
 1 Old Mrs Smith told us that she
 2 The teacher asked us if we
 3 Richard asked his wife if she
 4 Jill told Pam that she
 5 Bob asked Ruth out to the cinema, but she said that she

H Lisa Banks eltűnésével kapcsolatban nyomoz a rendőrség. Fordítsuk le a következő szöveget, amely annak a szemtanúnak a vallomásából származik, aki Lisát utoljára látta.

November tizenharmadikán este láttam Lisa Bankset a 'Mad Cow'-ban. Már azelőtt is láttam. Elég gyakran járt ebbe a sörözőbe. Ezen az estén egy férfivel volt, akit nem ismertem. Sosem láttam azelőtt. Odamentem a pulthoz, és vettem egy italt. Aztán leültem egy asztalhoz, és néhány barátommal beszélgettem. Amikor elfogyott az italom, visszamentem a pulthoz. Kerestem Lisát, de már elment. A férfi is eltűnt. Körülbelül fél tizenegy volt. Ez minden, amit mondani tudok.



Used to

- használata: ~~Last week I used to buy a CD player.~~

When Ellen went to Spain, she quickly **got used** to eating late in the evening. (= Amikor Ellen Spanyolországba ment, gyorsan hozzászokott a késő esti étkezéshez.)

Name	Ann	Tom	Robert	Pamela	Mary	Susan
In the past	meat	coffee	white bread	tap water	tinned fruit	margarine
Now	fish	tea	brown bread	bottled water	fresh fruit	butter

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a példa alapján.

- 0 Ann *used to eat* meat, but now *she eats* fish.
 1 Robert white bread, but now brown bread.
 2 Pamela tap water, but now bottled water.
 3 Mary fresh fruit now, but tinned fruit.
 4 Susan butter now, but margarine.

Ezután egészítsük ki a kérdéseket.

- 0 *Did Ann use to eat* meat? ~ Yes, she did, but now she eats fish.
 5 white bread? ~ Yes, he did, but now he eats brown bread.
 6 tinned fruit? ~ Yes, she did, but now she eats fresh fruit.
 7 tap water? ~ Yes, she did, but now she drinks bottled water.

Végül egészítsük ki ezeket a mondatokat.

- 0 Ann *didn't use to eat* fish, but she does now.
 8 Susan butter, but she does now.
 9 Mary eats fresh fruit now, but she it.
 10 Pamela drinks bottled water now, but she it.

B Húzzuk át a nyelvtanilag hibás mondatokat.

- 0 When he was at primary school, Tony used to work very hard.
 0 ~~Last year Peter used to get a new bicycle for Christmas.~~
 1 I didn't use to watch TV much, but I do now.
 2 When he was a teenager, my father used to buy all the Beatles' records.
 3 Paul uses to go to the cinema almost every weekend.
 4 Did Pamela used to go to the concert last night?
 5 Paul used to be really fit when he played a lot of volleyball.
 6 John use to spend a lot of money on that new jacket he bought last week.
 7 Kate didn't use to come to school yesterday because she was sick.
 8 Jane used to play tennis a lot, but she doesn't have time now.
 9 Did you use to go to the seaside for holidays when you were a child?
 10 We used to live in Canada before we came here.

C A példa alapján alkossunk mondatokat az adott személy régebbi és mostani szokásáról.

- 0 Andrew/get up/seven o'clock/now/7.30
Andrew used to get up at seven o'clock, but now he gets up at half past seven.
 0 I/swim/before work/now/after work
I used to swim before work, but now I swim after work.
 1 Dan/play/violin/now/guitar

 2 Anna/be/best friends/Angela/now/Cathy

 3 Susan/have/dancing lessons/now/riding lessons



Past Perfect Simple (I had eaten) vagy Past Perfect Continuous (I had been eating)

A Past Perfect Continuous alakjai:

ÁLLÍTÁS

She **had been eating**.

TAGADÁS

She **hadn't been eating**.

KÉRDÉS

Had she been eating?

Nézzük meg a Past Perfect és Past Perfect Continuous között lévő különbséget:

Past Perfect	Past Perfect Continuous
1 I/you/he/she/it/we/they had eaten	I/you/he/she/it/we/they had been eating
2 A Past Perfect olyan eseményt ír le, amely egy másik, ugyancsak a múltban történt esemény vagy cselekmény előtt már befejeződött: <i>We had rescued the old woman before the fire brigade arrived.</i> (= Kimentettük az idős hölgyet, mielőtt a tűzoltók megérkeztek.)	A Past Perfect Continuous olyan eseményt, cselekvést ír le, amely hosszan tartott egy másik, ugyancsak a múltban történt esemény előtt: <i>When the bus finally arrived, we had been waiting a long time.</i> (= Mire végül megérkezett a busz, már jó régen várahoztunk.)
3 A How many? , How much? , How often? kezdetű kérdésekben és az ezekre adott válaszokban is használjuk Past Perfectet: A: <i>How much fruit had they picked by noon?</i> B: <i>They had picked about 20 kilos.</i> A: <i>When the inspector visited the school, how many rooms had the workers painted?</i> B: <i>They had painted more than half of them.</i>	A How long? kezdetű kérdésekben használjuk a folyamatos befejezett múlt időt, a válaszban a since vagy a for elöljárószó: A: <i>How long had you been waiting when the bus arrived?</i> B: <i>We had been waiting for two hours.</i> <i>The men were very tired because they had been working since six in the morning.</i>

4 Figyelem: bizonyos esetekben csak a Past Perfect alakot használjuk, a Past Perfect Continuous nem:

- az olyan rövid ideig tartó cselekvést kifejező igék esetében, mint pl. **stop, break, finish** stb.:
*Tanya **had finished** her homework before dinner time.*
- az olyan igék esetében, amelyek gondolkodással kapcsolatosak: **know, decide, forget, notice**:
*I apologized because I **had forgotten** her name.*
- amikor arról beszélünk, hogy valamit mikor csináltunk utoljára:
*Before I visited Kenya last year, I **hadn't spoken** Swahili for over ten years.*

5 Bizonyos igék esetében mind a két igeidő használható; a mondat jelentése lényegében ugyanaz:

*In 2000, I **had taught** (VAGY I **had been teaching**) for two years.* (= 2000-ben már két éve tanítottam.)

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakból. Ügyeljünk arra, hogy a cselekvést, amely megelőzte a másikat, Past Perfect alakkal fejezzük ki.

0 (We/put/out the fire/before the fire brigade/arrive)

We had put out the fire before the fire brigade arrived.

1 (The children/clean/the flat/before/their parents/come/home)

2 (Two young men/catch/the thief/before/the police car/appear)

3 (Some volunteers/move/the car/before/the rescue truck/arrive)

B Ian és Rosemarie ezen a nyáron házasodott össze. Egészítsük ki a házasságkötés előtti időről szóló mondatokat a Past Perfect Continuous és a **for** vagy **since** előjárószo használatával.

When Ian and Rosemarie got married:

0 They/go out together/three years.

They'd been going out together for three years.

1 They/save up to buy a flat/a year.

2 They/plan the wedding day/January.

3 Ian/work as a teacher/2003.

4 Rosemarie/run her own business/six months.

5 They/organize their honeymoon/April.

6 They/talk about the wedding/ages!

C Frank Hounsell sikeres énekes. A következő interjúban arról beszél, milyen volt az élete, mielőtt népszerűvé vált. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a Past Perfect Simple vagy Past Perfect Continuous és a **for** vagy **since** előjárószo használatával, ahol szükséges.

INTERVIEWER: (How long/you/perform) before you became successful?

0 *How long had you been performing before you became successful?*

FRANK: (I/sing in public/over ten years).

1.....

INTERVIEWER: And (how long/record songs) when you had your first hit?

2.....

FRANK: (I/record songs/five years).

3.....

INTERVIEWER: (How many records/you/make)?

4.....

FRANK: (I/make three CDs but none of them/sell very well.)

5.....

INTERVIEWER: (you/give up hope) that you would succeed?

6.....

FRANK: (Well, I/work hard/years and years but I/not earn much money).

7.....

So, (I/think of giving up) when I finally had a hit record.

8.....

I'm glad I didn't give up!

A Egészítsük ki a következő üzeneteket a zárójelben megadott ige megfelelő alakjának használatával.

- 0 I *spoke* (speak) to Ken yesterday and he wants to arrange a meeting.
- 1 I (not go) to work last week because I (be) ill.
- 2 I (not have) a reply from you. Could you send one now?
- 3 I (talk) to a customer when you (ring) yesterday.
- 4 (you decide) whether you can meet me tomorrow or not?
- 5 (you see) Charles yesterday? What (he say) about your promotion?
- 6 I (try) to phone you for a couple of days.

B Írjunk kérdéseket az alábbi mondatokhoz. A kérdésben használjuk a válaszban szereplő ige-t.

- 0 A: Where/yesterday *Where was John yesterday?*
B: John was at home.
- 1 A: Where/when you met Jenny
B: I was going to work.
- 2 A: our players/well
B: Yes, they played very well.
- 3 A: How long/here
B: I've lived here all my life.
- 4 A: When/Einstein
B: I think he died in about 1950.
- 5 A: How long
B: I've been waiting for twenty minutes.
- 6 A: What time/to bed last night
B: I went to bed just after midnight.

C Alakítsuk át a mondatokat **since**, **for**, **in** vagy **ago** használatával.

- 0 Fran has been in Paris for a week now.
(go/to Paris/a week) *Fran went to Paris a week ago.*
- 1 Sally hasn't eaten meat for five years.
(stop/eating meat/five years)
- 2 Mary emigrated to Canada in 2000.
(live/in Canada/2000)
- 3 They have been married for six years.
(get married/six years)
- 4 My sister passed the driving test nine months ago.
(have/a driving licence/nine months)
- 5 Peter's flu started a week ago.
(Peter/have flu/a week)
- 6 Colin has lived here since 1999.
(come/to live here/1999)

D Használjuk a zárójelben megadott igék Present Perfect vagy Present Perfect Continuous alakját.

- 0 My back hurts because I *have been sitting* (sit) on a hard chair all day.
- 0 A: What's wrong with Mr Simons?
B: He *has broken* (break) his leg.
- 1 The dog is dirty because he (dig) in the garden.
- 2 How many cigarettes (you, smoke) so far today?
- 3 A: How's your friend Simon? (he, finished) that novel yet?
B: I don't think he'll ever finish it. He (write) it for ten years already.
- 4 That strange smell is because they (mend) the gas pipes.
- 5 Someone (eat) my lunch. There's only half of it left.
- 6 This week the children (collect) £500 for charity, so now we have nearly £2,000.

E A rendőrség egy rablás ügyében nyomoz. Egészítsük ki Brown felügyelő és az egyik nyomozó beszélgetését a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

- BROWN: How many people 0 *have you interviewed* (you/interview) up to now?
- DETECTIVE: I 1 (interview) two yesterday and I
2 (talk) to three today, but I'm seeing one more this afternoon.
- BROWN: Who 3 (you/see) first?
- DETECTIVE: I 4 (decide) to start with the most likely suspect, so I
5 (start) with Frank Burgess because he
6 (be) in prison three times for robbery.
- BROWN: Right. What 7 (he/say)?
- DETECTIVE: Here are my notes. 'On Friday night I 8 (set) off for my mother's at about nine o'clock. She lives in Nottingham and I
9 (get) there about midnight, so at the time of the crime I 10 (drive) north up the M1.'
- BROWN: I 11 (hear) that his mother
12 (die) two or three years ago.
- DETECTIVE: No, she was very ill and everybody 13 (think) she was going to die, but in the end she 14 (get) well again.
- BROWN: Well, I still don't believe him.
- DETECTIVE: Neither do I. His mother lives south of here, in Brighton. She
15 (live) there for years.
- BROWN: Who 16 (you/talk) to next?
- DETECTIVE: Charlie Green. I 17 (talk) to him when you
18 (phone) me yesterday.
- BROWN: He has also been in prison. I 19 (know) him since he
20 (be) at school with my brother. And what's his story?

DETECTIVE: He said he ²¹..... (keep) out of trouble since he
²²..... (come) out of prison two years ago. He said that at
first he ²³..... (work) in a garage and since then he
²⁴..... (work) in a hospital. I phoned the hospital later and
they said that he ²⁵..... (do) a great job ever since he
²⁶..... (start).

BROWN: OK, let's go back to Frank Burgess. What ²⁷..... (he/say)
he ²⁸..... (do) at the time of the crime?

F A hiányos mondatokba írjuk be a **used to** + főnévi igenév szerkezetet, ahol lehetséges.
Ha ezt nem használhatjuk, írjuk le még egyszer az első mondatban szereplő igét.

- 0 Liz skied a lot when she was young. Liz *used to ski* a lot when she was young.
- 0 I saw Rod three times last summer. I *saw* Rod three times last summer.
- 1 Tina always went to school by bus. Tina to school by bus.
- 2 They completed the house in three months. They the house in three months.
- 3 For a long time Bill lived alone. Bill alone.
- 4 Jill plays tennis every week. Jill tennis every week.
- 5 Our athletics team won nine medals. Our athletics team nine medals.
- 6 Philip smoked a lot, but he's stopped now. Philip a lot, but he's stopped now.

G Robert Fuller híres zenész. Egészítsük ki régi tanítványaihoz intézett beszédét a megadott kifejezésekkel. Minden egyes kifejezést csak egyszer használjunk.

haven't been	happened	had been practising	had become	started
had finished	used to shout	had never experienced	was blowing	
had put	was trying	have been playing	was happening	
haven't forgotten	sounded	used to arrive	gave	
haven't had	had not been able	had made	was getting	

First of all, I'd like to thank you for inviting me here today. I ⁰ *haven't been* back to the school since I left over ten years ago. Of course, I ¹..... my time here. I can still remember how I ²..... late and how the teachers ³..... at me!

On my way here, I ⁴..... to think of my best and worst memories of the school. Well, my best memory is something that ⁵..... in my first year. My class ⁶..... a concert for the rest of the school and the parents. Before the concert, we ⁷..... for weeks, but there was one piece of music that we ⁸..... to play properly. On the night of the concert, we were all really nervous when we ⁹..... to play that piece, but for some reason everyone got it right. It all ¹⁰..... fantastic and the audience stood up and applauded when we ¹¹..... I ¹²..... anything like it and I'll always remember how good we all felt. I ¹³..... as a professional musician for five years now and I still ¹⁵..... a better feeling.

And the worst memory? Well, that was something musical too. In my final year at the school, I ¹⁵..... good at the trumpet and the head teacher asked me to give a demonstration. I started to play but no sound came out. I ¹⁶..... as hard as I could but nothing ¹⁷..... The audience were looking at me and I ¹⁸..... embarrassed. Then I looked in the trumpet. Somebody ¹⁹..... a sock in there. It was a joke. The sock ²⁰..... it impossible for any sound to come out.

H Egészítsük ki Tom és Jane beszélgetését az itt megadott kifejezésekkel.

came had has gone has left have had have spoken
left spoke went have you been getting

- TOM: Now that you are married and are back at home, I expect you are thinking about having children.
- JANE: Oh, yes. What about you and Sally? How ¹..... on?
- TOM: That's a difficult subject. She ²..... to live in Scotland for a while.
- JANE: Do you mean she ³..... you?
- TOM: I'm not sure. She ⁴..... me two years ago, but then she ⁵..... back. We're still friends – I ⁶..... to her several times on the phone since she ⁷..... to Scotland; in fact I ⁸..... to her last night. But let's not talk about that.
- JANE: OK, let's change the subject. I ⁹..... nothing to eat since breakfast. Are you hungry? How about a Chinese meal?
- TOM: Good idea. It's ages since I ¹⁰..... a Chinese meal.

I A következő mondatok mindegyikében van hiba. Húzzuk át a hibás részt, és a helyes szót vagy kifejezést írjuk a mondat után.

- 0 We moved to this house two years ~~go~~ ago.....
- 1 Jim was here in the morning and his sisters was here in the afternoon.
- 2 My cousins didn't walked; they came by bike.
- 3 When we have finished the work, we had a cup of tea.
- 4 Have your parents ever gone to Australia?
- 5 Our neighbours have lived here since two years.
- 6 The children have being playing cards since breakfast.
- 7 Jackie and Tom haven't finished their homework already.
- 8 When she was young, my grandmother use to work in the market.
- 9 Last year Bob told me that he has passed every subject.
- 10 We were walk in the park when the rain started.

J Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

- 1 A nagyapám még csak tizenhárom éves volt, amikor (már) elkezdett dolgozni.
- 2 Tavaly a csapatunk nem játszott valami jól, de az idén már öt mérkőzést megnyertünk.
- 3 Mit csináltak a gyerekek, amikor hazaértél?
- 4 A gyerekek a nyár eleje óta a Balatonon vannak.
- 5 A munkások nagyon fáradtak, mert egész nap keményen dolgoztak.
- 6 Susie tegnap este telefonált és elmondta, hogy átment a vizsgán.
- 7 Az anyám egyszerű eladó volt, de 1999 óta ő a bolt vezetője.
- 8 Sheila azelőtt sokat teniszezett, de már évek óta nem játszott.

1 A be going to alakjai:

be going	+ to	+ FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
<i>It is going</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>snow.</i>

ÁLLÍTÁS

I am	}	going to leave.
He/she/it is		
We/you/they are		

TAGADÁS

I am	}	not going to leave.
He/she/it is		
We/you/they are		

KÉRDÉS

Am I	}	going to start?
Is he/she/it		
Are we/you/they		

2 Rendszerint a be ('m, 's, 're) összevont alakjait használjuk:

They're going to leave.

He's going to spend a week by the sea.

3 Az összevont tagadó alak: I'm not going to:

I'm not going to play tennis today.

Egyes szám harmadik személyben és a **you**, **we**, és **they** mellett kétféle tagadó alak lehetséges:

He/she/it isn't going to come.

He/she/it's not going to come.

You/we/they aren't going to come.

You/we/they're not going to come.

(A **be going to** szerkezetet tartalmazó kérdésekre adható rövid válaszok a 46. fejezetben találhatók:

Is he going to leave? ~ Yes, he is.)

4 A be going to jövő időt fejez ki.

Általában akkor használjuk,

- ha valamilyen szándékot vagy elhatározást fogalmazunk meg:

A: *What are you going to do tomorrow?*

(= Mit csinálsz holnap?)

B: *I'm going to visit Paul in Brighton.*

(= Meglátogatom Pault.)

A: *Are you going to drive?*

(= Kocsival mész?)

B: *No, I'm going to take the train.*

(= Nem, vonattal.)

(Magyarul a jövőre vonatkozó szándékot vagy elhatározást gyakran jelen idővel fejezzük ki.)

- ha valamit a rendelkezésünkre álló információ alapján megjósolunk:

Look at that blue sky! It's going to be a sunny day. (= Nézd, milyen kék az ég! Holnap napos idő lesz.)

I've eaten too much. I'm going to be ill.

(= Túl sokat ettem. Rosszul leszek.)

Look at the time. It's two o'clock. They aren't going to come now. (= Már nem fognak jönni.)

Gyakorlatok

A Paul elhatározta, hogy a következő dolgokat fogja tenni. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **be going to** szerkezet és a zárójelben megadott igék használatával.

- 0 *I'm going to study* (study) music at university.
- 1 I (travel) all over the world.
- 2 I (not/work) in an office.
- 3 I (marry) a very rich woman.
- 4 We (have) eleven children.
- 5 They (become) a football team.
- 6 They (win) the World Cup.
- 7 I (play) the piano every night in a café.
- 8 We (not cook) or clean.
- 9 We (eat) in restaurants every day.

B Sarah és Joe nyári terveikről beszélgetnek. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a zárójelben megadott igék és a **be going to** szerkezet használatával.

SARAH: What ⁰ *are you going to do?* (you/do) this summer, Joe?

JOE: I ¹ (travel) around Europe. I ² (buy) a special rail ticket and I ³ (visit) lots of countries.

SARAH: Which countries ⁴ (you/go) to?

JOE: I ⁵ (start) in France. Then I ⁶ (travel) to Holland.

SARAH: What kind of places ⁷ (you/see)?

JOE: I ⁸ (not go) to the big cities. I ⁹ (stop) in small towns.

SARAH: Where ¹⁰ (you/stay)?

JOE: I ¹¹ (not stay) in hotels because I ¹² (not have) much money to spend. I ¹³ (sleep) on the train as much as I can and I ¹⁴ (find) student hostels.

SARAH: How ¹⁵ (you/find) them?

JOE: I ¹⁶ (buy) a book with all the addresses and information.

SARAH: ¹⁷ (you/take) lots of photos?

JOE: Yes, and I ¹⁸ (write) a diary. I ¹⁹ (describe) all the places I visit and all the people I meet.

SARAH: Great. ²⁰ (let) me read it when you get back?

JOE: Oh, I'm not sure about that!

C Írjunk mindegyik képhez egy mondatot a **be going to** szerkezettel és a megfelelő kifejezéssel.

It/rain
They/eat/a pizza
They/not/play tennis
She/not/win/the race
She/have/a swim
They/watch/a film
He/make/a phone call
He/play/the piano



- 0 *He's going to make a phone call.*
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7



Will / shall (I will do it, Shall we go?)

- 1 A **shall/will** segédigével jövő időt fejezhetünk ki. Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:



It's now five o'clock. I'll stop work at six o'clock.
(= Most öt óra van. Hat órakor fogom abbagyni a munkát.)

- 2 A **will** segédige használata:

will/'ll	+	FŐNÉVI IGENÉV (to nélkül)
<i>I will</i>		<i>stop.</i>

ÁLLÍTÁS

I/he/she/it/we/you/they will/'ll go

TAGADÁS

I/he/she/it/we/you/they will not/won't go

KÉRDÉS

Will I/he/she/it/we/you/they go?

A beszélt nyelvben rendszerint az összevont alakot használjuk:

I'll, he'll, I won't, he won't.

- 3 A **will** segédigét használjuk, ha szerintünk valami a jövőben be fog következni, valaminek a bekövetkezésében reménykedünk vagy bízunk:

I'm sure Jane will love your new dress.

I think that in the future, everyone will have an electric car.

He's a good manager. He won't make any mistakes.

A **will** segédigével fejezzük ki, ha bizonyosan tudjuk, hogy valami be fog következni:

My father will be fifty years old tomorrow.

A **will** segédigét használjuk a jövőre vonatkozó kérdésekben is:

Will they win this game? (= Meg fogják nyerni a meccset?) ~ *Yes, I think they will.*

(A kérdésekre adható rövid válaszok a 46. fejezetben találhatók.)

- 4 Az **I'll** alakot használjuk, ha a beszéd pillanatában határozzuk el, hogy valamit meg fogunk tenni. Például megszólal a telefon, és azt mondjuk:

I'll answer it. (= Felveszem.)

Egy másik példa:

A: *Does anyone want to come with me tonight?*

B: *Yes, I'll come.* (= Igen, én megyek.)

A **will** kérést és a kérésre adott udvarias választ is kifejezhet:

A: *Will someone post this letter for me?*

B: *Yes, I'll post it for you.*

- 5 A **Shall I ...?** kezdetű kérdéssel valamit felajánlunk valakinek, vagy valamilyen döntést várunk tőle:

Shall I make you a cup of tea? (= Csináljak neked egy csésze teát?)

Shall I come after lunch? (= Ebéd után jöjlek?)

What time shall I come? (= Mikor jöjlek?)

Azt is a **shall** fejezi ki, ha azt akarjuk kideríteni, hogy valaki elfogadja-e a javaslatunkat:

Shall we go to the cinema tonight? (= Menjünk moziba ma este?)

A **let's** vagy a **why don't we?** kifejezésekkel is tehetünk javaslatot:

Let's go to the cinema tonight.

Why don't we go to the cinema tonight?

Gyakorlatok

- A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **will, won't, shall** vagy **let's** szavakkal.

- My mother is thirty-nine years old; she be forty next month.
- Tell me. How much sugar I buy?
- Don't take an umbrella; it rain today.
- I've got a good idea. have a party!
- I don't know if Linda and Paul be at the concert.
- A: Don't worry. I'm sure John lend us some money.
B: No, he says this time he lend us a penny.

B Alkossunk mondatokat **I'll** és a megfelelő kifejezés használatával.

phone for a taxi ~~carry some of them~~ make you a sandwich go with you
give you some money ask her to phone you tonight open a window

- 0 A: I want to take these books home, but they're very heavy.
B: *I'll carry some of them.*
- 1 A: I feel sick. It's so hot in this room.
B:
- 2 A: I want a cup of coffee, but I don't have any money.
B:
- 3 A: I'm hungry. I didn't have any lunch.
B:
- 4 A: It's ten o'clock. I'll be late if I walk.
B:
- 5 A: I want to speak to Jane. It's very important.
B:
- 6 A: I want to go to the museum, but I don't know the way.
B:

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **Shall I**, **Shall we** vagy **Let's** használatával.

- 0 A: I'm hungry. Are you going to the shop, Philip?
B: Yes. *Shall I* get you something to eat?
- 1 A: I'm going to get some tickets for the concert next week. buy you one?
B: Yes, please. I'd love to come.
- 2 A: I've got an idea. go to a restaurant tonight.
B: OK, go to the new Indian place?
- 3 A: Our meeting is at John's office on Baker Street. There's nowhere to park the car.
B: walk or take a taxi?
- 4 A: You look thirsty. get you a drink?
B: Yes, please. An orange juice or some water.
- 5 A: It's a beautiful day! have a picnic.
B: Wonderful idea! Who shall we invite?

D Fordítsuk le a mondatokat **will**, **won't**, **shall** vagy **let's** használatával.

- 1 Segítesz lemosni a kocsit? ~ Igen, segítek.
- 2 Játsszunk egy parti sakkot!
- 3 Mit vegyek fel? Vegyem fel a fekete ruhámat?
- 4 Ne aggódj. Ma délután felhívom a nagypapát.
- 5 Péter nem fog válaszolni erre a kérdésre.
- 6 Fáradt vagyok. Feküdjünk le aludni!



A jövő kifejezése – Present Continuous és Present Simple

1 Figyeljük meg a példákat:

I'm flying home tomorrow. (= Holnap hazautazom.)

He's starting a new job on Monday.

(= Hétfőn kezd dolgozni az új munkahelyén.)

Tony and Ann are coming at the weekend.

(= Tony és Ann a hét végén érkeznek.)

A fenti mondatokban a folyamatos jelent (Present Continuous) használtuk (lásd a 7. és a 9. fejezetet), de ezúttal nem azt fejezzük ki, hogy valami éppen most történik. Ezek a mondatok a jövőben majd bekövetkező cselekvést fejeznek ki.

Figyelem! Hasonló esetben a magyarban is gyakran jelen időt használunk (kezd, érkezik), bár a mondat a jövőre vonatkozik.

2 Nézzük meg a következő példát:

I bought my ticket last week. I'm flying home next week.

A folyamatos jelen (**I am flying**) olyan, jövőben történő cselekvést fejezi ki, amely már korábban eldőlt.

További példák:

Egy bank írt Tomnak, és közölte vele, hogy a jövő héten kezdhet náluk dolgozni.
He's starting a new job next week.
(= Jövő héten kezd egy új munkahelyen.)

Tom meghívja barátait:
Would you like to come for dinner on Sunday?
Tony és Ann válasza: *Yes.*
Tom ekkor ezt mondja:
Tony and Ann are coming on Sunday.

3 Gyakran az időhatározó is fontos része a jövő időt kifejező folyamatos jelenben álló mondatnak, pl. **next week, in July, tomorrow, on Sunday**:

JELENI IDŐ: *I'm leaving now.* (= Megyek. – most)

JÖVŐ IDŐ: *I'm leaving tomorrow.*

(= Megyek. – holnap)

JELENI IDŐ: *We're having a party at the moment.*

(= Összejövetel van nálunk.)

Can I phone you tomorrow?

JÖVŐ IDŐ: *We're having a party in July.*

(= Júliusban lesz nálunk egy összejövetel.)

4 Folyamatos jelent használunk, ha azt akarjuk megtudni, hogy valaki milyen programot tervez. *What are you doing this weekend?*

5 Nem használhatjuk a folyamatos jelent, ha a jövőben bekövetkező eseményt nem tőlünk függ:

HELYTELEN: *The sun is shining tomorrow.*

HELYESEN: *The sun will shine tomorrow.*

6 Ha olyan jövőbeli eseményről beszélünk, ami nem a mi szándékunktól vagy elhatározásunktól függ, az egyszerű jelent (Present Simple) használjuk:

A: *What time is the match on Saturday?*

B: *It starts at three o'clock.*

What subject do we have first lesson tomorrow?

Easter falls late next year.

The school year ends on 28 July this year.

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk mondatokat folyamatos jelenben a megfelelő kifejezéssel a zárójelben lévő állítás alapján.

I/fly/to Florida in August

I/go/to the doctor tomorrow

I/study/English in London in May

I/see/Mary this weekend

I/eat/in a new restaurant tonight

I/go/to a concert next Tuesday

0 (You paid for an English course in London yesterday.)

I'm studying English in London in May.

1 (You booked a table at a new restaurant last week.)

2 (You bought a ticket for a concert last month.)

3 (You telephoned your doctor this morning.)

4 (You paid for a holiday at a travel agent's last week.)

5 (You talked to Mary on the phone this morning.)

B Az alábbi lista Cathy jövő heti programját részletezi. Az információ alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat folyamatos jelen használatával.

Monday:	work until six o'clock; go to the library after work
Tuesday:	play tennis with Ian, five o'clock
Wednesday:	go to the doctor's, 2.30
Thursday:	have a typing lesson, 10.30–12.30
Friday:	meet Jackie outside cinema, 8.30; film starts at 8.45
Saturday:	Nick and Lucy come here for dinner
Sunday:	—

- 0 *She's working* until six o'clock on Monday.
- 1 to the library after work on Monday.
- 2 tennis with Ian at five o'clock on Tuesday.
- 3 to the doctor's at 2.30 on Wednesday.
- 4 a typing lesson from 10.30 to 12.30 on Thursday.
- 5 Jackie outside the cinema at 8.30 on Friday.
- 6 a film at 8.45 on Friday.
- 7 Nick and Lucy to her house for dinner on Saturday.
- 8 anything on Sunday.

C Két tanár az iskolai hangverseny szervezéséről beszélget. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet egyszerű vagy folyamatos jelen és a zárójelben megadott igék használatával.

- MR HOPPER: 0 *What's happening* (What/happen) at the concert next week?
- MR RANCE: Well, 1 (it/take place) on Thursday, as you know.
- MR HOPPER: Yeah. What time 2 (it/start)?
- MR RANCE: 7.00, but 3 (the doors/open) at 6.00.
- MR HOPPER: 4 (Who/play)?
- MR RANCE: Well, Year 2 have formed a group. 5 (They/sing) a few songs.
Then there's Maria from Year 4. 6 (She/play) a cello piece by
Elgar. And after that it's Year 5. 7 (They/sing) some
traditional songs.
- MR HOPPER: 8 (anyone else/perform)?
- MR RANCE: Oh yes, I nearly forgot. Mr Davies and Mrs Harris. 9
(They/dance).
- MR HOPPER: OK. What 10 (I/do)?
- MR RANCE: 11 (You/collect) tickets at the door and
12 (you/introduce) each of the performers.
- MR HOPPER: Fine. See you there.

Hasonlítsuk össze a **will** segédige és a **be going to** szerkezet használatát:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1 A will segédigét to nélküli főnévi igenévvel használjuk (do, go, be, arrive stb.):</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 5px; margin: 0 5px;">FŐNÉVI IGENÉV</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 5px; margin: 0 5px;">arrive</div> <div style="margin: 0 5px;">tomorrow.</div> </div> <p>John will arrive tomorrow.</p> <p>I/you/he (stb.) will / 'll go</p> <p>I/you/he (stb.) will not / won't go</p> <p>Will I/you/he (stb.) go?</p> | <p>A be going alakot to + főnévi igenév követi (to do, to be, to rain stb.):</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 5px; margin: 0 5px;">to + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 5px; margin: 0 5px;">to rain</div> <div style="margin: 0 5px;">soon.</div> </div> <p>It's going to rain soon.</p> <p>My friends are going to come tonight.</p> <p>It isn't going to rain today.</p> <p>What are you going to do on Sunday?</p> |
| <p>2 A will segédigét a beszéd pillanatában elhatározott cselekvés kifejezésére használhatjuk:</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 20px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">most</div>
 <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">beszéd</div>
 <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">elhatározás</div> </div> <p><i>I like this coat. I think I'll buy it.</i></p> <p>Üzletben, étteremben gyakran fejezzük ki a kívánságunkat a will segédigével.</p> <p>A: <i>What would you like to eat?</i></p> <p>B: <i>I'll have a pizza, please.</i> (= Kérek egy pizzát.)</p> <p>A will gyakran felajánlást vagy ígéretet fejez ki:</p> <p><i>I'll carry your case for you.</i></p> <p><i>I won't forget your birthday again.</i></p> <p>Ugyancsak a will segédigével fejezzük ki, ha bízunk benne vagy reméljük, hogy valami be fog következni:</p> <p><i>I'm sure you'll enjoy the film.</i></p> <p><i>I'm sure it won't rain tomorrow. It'll be another beautiful, sunny day.</i></p> | <p>A be going to szerkezettel a beszéd pillanata előtt már meglévő szándékot vagy elhatározást fejezhetünk ki:</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 20px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">most</div>
 <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100%;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">elhatározás</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">beszéd</div> </div> </div> <p><i>I'm going to clean my room this afternoon.</i></p> <p>(= Ma délután ki fogom takarítani a szobámat. – Délelőtt határoztam el.)</p> <p>Így kérdezzük rá mások terveire:</p> <p><i>Which train are you going to catch?</i></p> <p>(= Melyik vonattal mész?)</p> <p>A be going to szerkezettel fejezzük ki azt is, aminek a bekövetkezésére számítani lehet, mert a jelen helyzetben valami erre utal:</p> <p><i>He's running towards the goal, and he's going to score.</i></p> |

- 3** Előre eltervezett cselekvést vagy eseményt folyamatos jelennel vagy a **be going to** szerkezettel fejezhetünk ki. Hasonlítsuk össze a következő mondatokat:

<p>folyamatos jelen (Present Continuous):</p> <p><i>We're moving to a new flat in two weeks.</i></p> <p>(= Két héten belül új lakásba költözünk. – Már kitűztük a költözés időpontját.)</p>	<p>be going to:</p> <p><i>We're going to move to a new flat soon.</i></p> <p>(= Hamarosan új lakásba költözünk. – Szándékunkban áll, de még semmit sem véglegesítettünk.)</p>
---	---

A folyamatos jelen olyan, a jövőben bekövetkező eseményt jelöl, amelyet már megszerveztünk. A **going to** használata azt jelzi, hogy valami szándékunkban áll, de még nem szerveztük meg.

Nézzük meg a példamondatot:

*I'm **meeting** Diana at 3 p.m., and I'm **going to meet** her assistant some time next week.*

(Dianával megbeszéltük a találkozót, az asszisztensével csak szándékomban áll találkozni.)

Gyakorlatok

A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **be going to** szerkezettel és a megfelelő igével.

take	catch
eat	land
jump	knock



- 0 *He's going to eat* his meal.
- 1 The plane
 2 She a picture.
 3 He into the water.
 4 She on the door.
 5 He the ball.



Alkossunk mondatokat 'll és a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával.

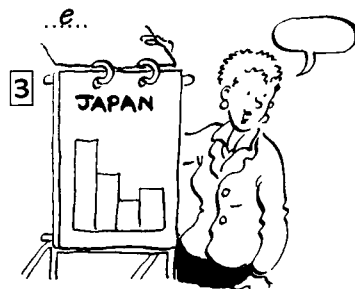
- 0 Sit down. (I/make/you a cup of coffee)
I'll make you a cup of coffee.
- 1 A: It's time for me to go home.
 B: (I/give/you a lift)
- 2 (I/phone/you tonight, I promise)
- 3 A: I won't be able to buy the tickets for the concert today.
 B: Don't worry. (I/buy/the tickets for both of us, and I/meet/you at the concert hall)

- 4 A: Oh no, it's raining and I must go to the shops.
 B: That's OK. (I/lend/you my umbrella)

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavak és 'll vagy a **be going to** használatával.

- 0 A: It's rather hot in here, isn't it?
 B: Yes, you're right. *I'll open* (I/open) a window.
- 1 A: Are you going to watch TV tonight?
 B: Yes, (I/watch) my favourite programme at nine o'clock.
- 2 A: What (you/eat) tonight? What food have you bought?
 B: I haven't bought any food.
 A: Well, why don't you come to my house? (I/cook) us something nice to eat.
- 3 A: I'm going into town tomorrow. (I/buy) some new clothes.
 B: Oh, what (you/get)?
 A: (I/look) for a T-shirt and some jeans.
 B: I'd like to go into the centre too. (I/come) with you.
- 4 A: (I/leave) work late tomorrow. There's a meeting at six o'clock.
 B: Oh, I didn't know that. Well, (I/see) you after the meeting.
- 5 (I/phone) Tom at six o'clock. I promised to phone him this evening.
- 6 A: Are you going to have a holiday in the summer?
 B: Yes, (I/travel) around Europe with a friend.

D Keressük meg minden képhez a megfelelő mondatot. A mondatpárokból csak az egyik mondat helyes, a másikat húzzuk át.



- a You look hot, I'll open a window./You look hot, I'm going to open a window.
 b Next year, we're going to enter the Japanese market./Next year, we'll enter the Japanese market.
 c Thanks, I'm going to have an orange juice./Thanks, I'll have an orange juice.
 d Have a rest, I'm going to do the photocopying./Have a rest, I'll do the photocopying.
 e Relax, I'll answer it./~~Relax, I'm going to answer it.~~
 f Thursday is no good for me, I'm afraid. I'll meet the new manager of our Tokyo office./Thursday is no good for me, I'm afraid. I'm going to meet the new manager of our Tokyo office.

E Válaszoljunk a kérdésekre **will** vagy **be going to** segítségével.

- 0 A: Hi, nice to see you. Would you like a drink?
 B: (I/have/a coke, please) *I'll have a coke, please.*
 1 A: What are you doing these days?
 B: (Nothing much but I/start/a new job soon)
 2 A: Would you like something to eat?
 B: (Thanks, I/have/a sandwich)
 3 A: What are your plans for the weekend?
 B: (I/do/some shopping tomorrow and I/go/for a swim on Sunday)

 4 A: Why is Maria standing by the piano?
 B: (She/sing/, I'm afraid)
 5 A: This cake looks delicious. Are you going to have some?
 B: (No, but I'm sure you/enjoy/it)
 6 A: How are you getting home?
 B: (David/give/me a lift)

3 A Hollandiából hazatérő Lizt bátyja, Tom várja a londoni pályaudvaron. Ellenőrizzük hogy a szövegben aláhúzott részek helyesek-e vagy sem. Pipáljuk ki a hibátlan szerkezeteket, a hibásakat pedig húzzuk át, és írjuk melléjük a helyes megoldást.

TOM: Hi Liz. Do you want some tea or coffee after your journey?

LIZ: Thanks. I'll ⁰ ✓ have a cup of tea.

TOM: I'm going to ⁰ I'll carry your bag – you look tired.

We'll ¹ go to that café over there.

Here we are. So, welcome back to England. How was Holland?

LIZ: Well, it was great to have some time to think, and I've made some decisions. I'll ² talk to the boss tomorrow, and I'll ³ ask him if I can move to another department.

TOM: Good. I'm sure he'll ⁴ give you what you want. Would you like something to eat?

LIZ: Um, yes. I'm going to ⁵ have a sandwich. Thanks. What about you?

TOM: No, thanks, I don't want to spoil my appetite. I've reserved a table for this evening at the Mexican restaurant in Leicester Square. I'll ⁶ take Jill. What are you going to do this evening?

LIZ: I haven't thought about it. I'll ⁷ probably cook something. Oh, and I must ring Dad. Did you remember that it's his birthday tomorrow?

TOM: Yes, I remembered. He'll ⁸ be fifty. Promise me you'll relax a bit?

LIZ: Sure.

TOM: OK. I'll ⁹ get you a taxi. Call me tomorrow.

You won't ¹⁰ forget, will you?

3 Ann egy hét múlva nyaralni megy, de addig még sok tennivalója van. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a táblázat alapján. A már elrendezett tevékenységeknél használjunk folyamatos jelent, a többinél pedig **be going to** szerkezetet.

	morning	afternoon/evening
Monday	10.00 take Tim to the airport	wash the car
Tuesday	buy some stamps	write some letters
Wednesday	11.00 take the dog to the vet	tidy my flat
Thursday	12.30 cook lunch for mother	buy a new squash racket
Friday	9.00 play squash with Mary	do the shopping
Saturday	wash my hair	6.00 meet Tim at the airport

0 Ann **is taking** Tim to the airport on Monday morning.

0 On Monday evening Ann **is going to wash** the car.

1 On Tuesday she some stamps because in the evening she some letters.

2 She can't see anyone on Wednesday morning because she the dog to the vet.

3 On Wednesday evening she her flat.

4 On Thursday afternoon she a new squash racket because squash with Mary on Friday morning.

5 On Friday afternoon she the shopping.

6 She her hair on Saturday morning because she Tim at the airport at six o'clock.



Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a jövő kifejezése (31–4. fejezet)

A Nézzük meg a táblázatot, és egészítsük ki a mondatokat a következő igékkel: **beat, draw with, lose to**.

Bob Foster's forecast for next Saturday's big football matches:

Arsenal 1 – 1 Liverpool	Leeds 2 – 1 Everton	Chelsea 1 – 2 Luton
Ipswich 3 – 3 Millwall	Brighton 2 – 1 Oxford	Portsmouth 0 – 2 Preston

Bob Foster thinks that:

- 0 Arsenal *will draw with* Liverpool.
- 1 Leeds Everton.
- 2 Chelsea Luton.
- 3 Ipswich Millwall.
- 4 Brighton Oxford.
- 5 Portsmouth Preston.

B Olvassuk el George holnapi programját, és egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a zárójelben megadott szavak és folyamatos jelen használatával.

9 o'clock:	catch the train
10 o'clock:	meet Judy in the main square
11 o'clock:	meet Harry and Fred for coffee
12 o'clock:	go to the theatre box office for tickets
1 o'clock:	have lunch with Dave
2–5 o'clock:	help Dave in his bike shop
6 o'clock:	catch the train home

- TIM: What ⁰ *are you doing* (you/do) tomorrow, George?
- GEORGE: ¹ (I/go) into the town centre.
- TIM: What time ² (you/catch) the train?
- GEORGE: At nine o'clock. ³ (I/meet) Judy at ten o'clock.
- TIM: Where ⁴ (you/meet) her?
- GEORGE: In the main square, and then ⁵ (we/meet) Harry and Fred in a café. After that, ⁶ (we/go) to the theatre to buy some tickets, and then ⁷ (I/have) lunch with Dave.
- TIM: What ⁸ (you/do) in the afternoon?
- GEORGE: ⁹ (I/help) Dave in his shop.
- TIM: When ¹⁰ (you/come) home?
- GEORGE: ¹¹ (I/catch) the train back at six o'clock.

C Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavak és a **be going to** szerkezet segítségével.

- 0 (Mike/help us/tomorrow) *Mike is going to help us tomorrow*
- 1 A: (you/see/new James Bond film?)
B: Yes, (I/buy/a ticket/this afternoon)
- 2 A: (you/clean/the car?)
B: No, (Mum/take/it to the car wash)

- 3 A: The weather man says (it/rain/this afternoon)
 B: I know. (I/take/my umbrella)
 4 A: (What/you/study/at university next year?)
 B: (I/study/medicine)

D Egészítsük ki a párbeszégeket **will** vagy **be going to** és a megfelelő kifejezés segítségével, attól függően, hogy a cselekvést mikor határozzák el.

take it to the car wash	get you an aspirin	see her
go to the hairdresser's	have a shower	make some tea

- 0 MARY: Philip, I'm very thirsty.
 PHILIP: I am too. *I'm going to make some tea.* I've already put the kettle on to boil.
 0 PAUL: I've got a headache.
 SALLY: Oh, *I'll get you an aspirin.*
 1 JACK: Is your toothache better?
 JILL: No, but I've phoned the dentist. I at 10.30.
 2 JANE: Do you think my hair is all right?
 SAM: No, I'm sorry, I don't. I think it needs a cut.
 JANE: OK, I this afternoon.
 3 ANN: Where's Tom?
 MIKE: He's just gone into the bathroom. He
 4 JOHN: Where have you been with the car? It's very dirty.
 ROSE: Is it? OK, I

E Állapítsuk meg, hogy az aláhúzott szerkezeteket helyesen használják-e a következő párbeszédekben. Ha igen, pipáljuk ki, ha pedig nem, húzzuk át és írjuk mellé a helyes megoldást.

A: I'm thirsty.

B: Shall I get ⁰ ✓ you a drink?

A: Yes, please. ~~I'm having~~ ⁰ *I'll have* a Coca-Cola.

A: I'm not doing ¹ anything tonight. How about you?

B: No, I'm free. Will we go ² to the cinema?

A: No, let's go ³ to that new Italian restaurant.

B: All right. What time am I coming ⁴ to collect you?

A: What have you brought this bag to work for? Will you go ⁵ on a trip?

B: Yes, straight after work, I'm going ⁶ to the station.

A: What time the train leaves ⁷?

B: At half past six.

A: I'm going to give ⁸ you a lift in my car if you like.

B: Thank you, but my husband's going to take ⁹ me.

A: Shall we play ¹⁰ tennis tomorrow?

B: OK. What time?

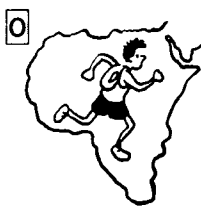
A: Well, tomorrow the park opens ¹¹ at nine o'clock.

B: No, I go ¹² out for a meal with Margot tonight, so I'll be ¹³ home late. How about twelve o'clock? Is that all right?

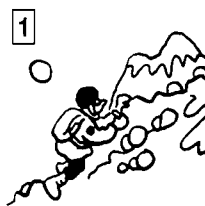
A: Right. I meet ¹⁴ you at the park at twelve.

F Mark világyáró. A képek és a lista segítségével írjunk mondatokat jövő évi programjáról a **be going to** szerkezettel.

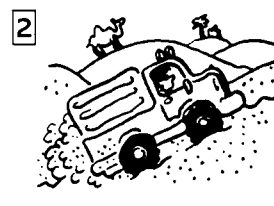
he/drive/across the Sahara
he/walk/across the Antarctic
he/run/across Africa
he/fly/over the Amazon
he/climb/Mount Everest
he/sail/across the Pacific



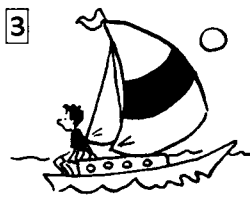
JANUARY



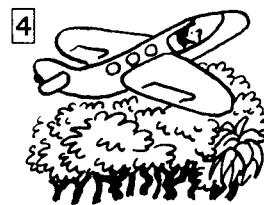
MARCH



MAY



JULY



SEPTEMBER



NOVEMBER

- 0 *Mark's going to run across Africa in January.*
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5

G Ebben a táblázatban jövő heti utazásunk programját foglaltuk össze.

4-DAY TRIP TO MADRID

Tuesday: flight leaves at 18.00; check in at the Hotel Princess
Wednesday: visit the Prado Museum, morning; take a guided tour of the Royal Palace, afternoon
Thursday: have a special lunch at the hotel; see an opera at the Opera House, evening
Friday: leave Madrid at 11.00.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat folyamatos jelen és az alábbi igék használatával.

have go see fly stay leave take visit

- 0 *We're going* on a 4-day trip to Madrid next week.
- 1 to Madrid at 18.00 on Tuesday.
- 2 in the Hotel Princess.
- 3 the Prado Museum on Wednesday morning.
- 4 a guided tour of the Royal Palace on Wednesday afternoon.
- 5 a special lunch at the hotel on Thursday.
- 6 an opera at the Opera House on Thursday evening.
- 7 Madrid at 11.00 on Friday.

Stan és Peter arról beszélget, milyen lesz az élet ötven év múlva. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a **will** és a megfelelő kifejezések használatával.

I'm sure/we not eat/normal food.	they/speak/the language!
people/not have to/go/abroad.	we/all/have electric cars
people/get/sick?	there/not be/any shops.

STAN: I think ⁰ *we'll all have electric cars* because there won't be enough petrol.

PETER: You're probably right. And we'll buy everything by computer because ¹

STAN: I'm not sure about that. People like to go shopping.

PETER: Perhaps.

STAN: But people will learn languages by computer so that when they go abroad ²

PETER: No, I think there'll be virtual reality machines at home which will simulate holidays so ³

STAN: Are you sure? I don't think the technology will be ready.

PETER: What will hospitals be like? ⁴

STAN: I don't know.

PETER: ⁵ because we won't be able to produce enough. People will drink special vitamin drinks instead.

STAN: I hope you're wrong. Come on, let's go to the shops, buy some food, cook it, and plan our next holiday! Quick!

Fordítsuk le a következő levelet.

Kedves Carol!

Jövő héten rövid nyaralásra megyek. Kis szállodában fogok lakni a Wondermare-tó közelében. Természetesen nincs elég pénzem a nyaralásra, de vonattal fogok utazni – ez olcsóbb lesz, mint autóval – és biztos vagyok benne, hogy elfogadják majd a szállodában a hitelkártyámat. (De nem lesz elég pénzem vendéglőben étkezni.)

Hétfőn a cégnél fontos megbeszélés lesz, természetesen nem leszek itt. Gondolom, senkinek sem fogok hiányozni.

Szombaton jövök majd vissza. Azt hiszem, a vonat öt körül ér be. Majd akkor felhívlak,

Üdvözlettel,

Philip



When, as soon as, until stb. és a jelen idő

1 Nézzük meg a következő mondatokat:

When the programme ends, I'll do the washing-up.
(= Amikor a műsor befejeződik, el fogok mosogatni.)

Wait here until I get back.

(= Várj itt, amíg vissza nem jövök.)

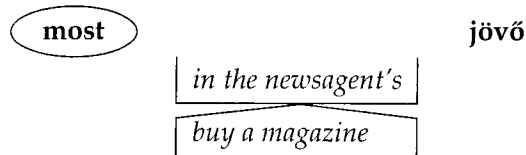
I'll phone you as soon as I arrive.

(= Felhívlak, amint megérkezem.)

A **when, before, after, until** és az **as soon as** után jelen időt használunk akkor is, ha a jövőben bekövetkező eseményről beszélünk. Ezek után a szavak után nem használhatjuk a **will** segédigét. Helytelen a *When the programme will end ...* mondat.

Figyelem! Magyarul az **until** helyes fordítása általában: 'amíg nem' (pl.: amíg vissza nem jövök), az angolban az **until** kezdetű mellékmondatban az ígét nem tagadjuk. Helytelen az *until I don't come* mondat.

- 2 ➤ A **when** kezdetű mellékmondatban egyszerű jelent használunk, amikor arról beszélünk, ami a jövőben fog bekövetkezni:
I'll buy a magazine when I'm in the newsagent's.



When you see her, give her my message.

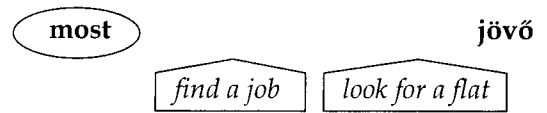
- Az **until** kezdetű mellékmondatban egyszerű jelent használunk, amikor azt mondjuk, hogy valami mostantól kezdve a jövőben valameddig tartani fog:
We'll sit outside until it gets dark.
(= Addig fogunk kint ülni, amíg be nem sötétedik.)

- Az **as soon as** jelentése időhatározói mellékmondatban: 'rögtön azután':
They'll start playing as soon as it stops raining. (= El játszani, amint eláll az eső.)

- A **before** jelentése időhatározói mellékmondatban: 'mielőtt', 'azt megelőzően':

I'm going to finish this work before I go.

- 3 A **when** után Present Perfectet (**have done**) akkor használunk, amikor arról beszélünk, aminek be kell fejeződnie vagy ami be fog fejeződni egy másik cselekvés előtt:
When I've found a job, I'll look for a flat.
(= Ha találtam állást, akkor majd keresek lakást.)



When Simon has saved enough money, he'll buy a car. (= Amikor Simon már elég pénzt takarított meg, vesz majd egy autót.)

- 4 **After** után használhatunk akár egyszerű jelent, akár Present Perfectet, nincs sok jelentésbeli különbség:
After she takes/has taken the course, she'll be a qualified teacher.

Gyakorlatok

- A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a: **when, before, after, as soon as**, vagy **until** szavakkal. Egyes mondatoknál több megoldás is lehetséges.

- 0 I'll stay in this job **until** I find a better one.
- 1 I'm going to keep working I finish this.
- 2 Remember to buy some stamps you're in the post office.
- 3 I speak to him on the phone tonight, I'll ask him.
- 4 We can go for a meal we've seen the film.
- 5 I'll keep looking for it I find it.
- 6 I'll wait for them it gets dark, and then I'll leave.
- 7 Don't forget to lock the door you go out.
- 8 I've found the information, I'll phone you.

B Egészítsük ki a párbeszégeket egyszerű jelen vagy egyszerű jövő (**will + to** nélküli főnévi igenév) használatával.

- 0 A: Could you post this letter for me today, please?
B: Yes, I *'ll do* (do) it when I *go* (go) to the shops.
- 1 A: I might be late tonight.
B: OK. I (wait) until you (arrive).
- 2 A: I'm leaving next week.
B: I (see) you before you (go), won't I?
- 3 A: Have you decided what you're going to do at the weekend yet?
B: No, but I (phone) you as soon as I (know) what I'm going to do.
- 4 A: Have you done that homework yet?
B: No, not yet. I (do) it when I (have) enough time.
- 5 A: I don't want to go to that party tonight.
B: Well, I'm sure you (enjoy) it when you (get) there.
- 6 A: Could you tell Tom to ring me, please?
B: Yes, I (tell) him when I (see) him tomorrow.
- 7 A: Mr Jackson isn't in at the moment.
B: I see. Well, I (wait) until he (come) back.
- 8 A: Have you booked a hotel in London yet?
B: No, but we (book) one before we (go) there.

C Az alábbiakban egy bankrablás tervéről olvashatunk. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben megadott igékkel. Használjunk egyszerű jelent, Present Perfectet, vagy egyszerű jövőt (**will** segítségével).

OK. This is the plan. I ⁰ *'ll put* (put) the rope and the bags in my van tomorrow afternoon. When everything ⁰ *is* (be) ready, I ¹ (come) to collect you three. Then we ² (drive) to that street behind the bank. As soon as it ³ (get) dark, Frank and Tony ⁴ (climb) onto the roof of the building. I ⁵ (look) out for the police and Sam can stay in the car. Wait on the roof until you ⁶ (see) my signal. When you ⁷ (see) the signal, open the roof door with this key. As soon as you ⁸ (get) inside, you ⁹ (see) an alarm on the left. Disconnect it. When you ¹⁰ (do) that, go down the stairs to the basement. No, wait! Before you ¹¹ (go) down, listen very carefully to see if there is anyone inside. Here are the keys to the strong room. When you ¹² (go) into the strong room, you ¹³ (find) the lights on the right. As soon as you ¹⁴ (put) all the money in the bags, turn the lights out. The bags ¹⁵ (be) heavy, but don't use the lift. When you ¹⁶ (climb) the stairs back to the roof, signal to me once. As soon as I ¹⁷ (see) your signal, I ¹⁸ (help) you with the bags and the ropes. Everything ¹⁹ (be) fine! And we ²⁰ (live) the rest of our lives in luxury!

- 1** A Future Continuous (**will be doing**) a jövő adott pillanatában folyamatban lévő cselekvésre vagy eseményre utal:
If you get there at one o'clock, they'll be having lunch. (= Ha egy órakor mésző oda, éppen ebédelni fognak.)
We'll be sailing across the Atlantic at this time tomorrow. (= Holnap ilyenkor éppen az Atlanti-óceánon fogunk hajózni.)
- 2** A Future Perfect (**will have done**) a jövő adott pillanatáig befejezendő cselekvést vagy eseményt jelöl:
They'll have finished all the work by the end of the week. (= A hét végére már minden munkával kész lesznek.)
If you don't get there before six o'clock, Tim will have left. (= Ha nem érsz oda hat előtt, Tim addigra már nem lesz ott.)
- 3** A Future Perfect Continuous (**will have been doing**) a jövő adott pillanata előtt megkezdett, és az említett időpontban még tartó cselekvésre vagy eseményre utal:
If we get there at ten o'clock, the others will have been waiting for an hour. (= Ha tízóra érünk oda, addigra a többiek már egy órája fognak várakozni.)
Next month we will have been saving for ten years. (= Jövő hónapban lesz tíz éve, hogy takarékoskodunk.)

- 4** A fenti szerkezetekben kérdésnél és tagadásnál a **will** illetve **won't** segédigét használjuk (**won't = will not**):
What will you be doing at this time tomorrow?
They won't have finished all the work by the end of the week.
How long will they have been waiting for us?
- 5** A múltban megfogalmazott jövőre vonatkozó szándékot a **was/were going to** szerkezettel fejezhetjük ki:
I had to leave before the end of the meeting because I was going to catch an early train. (= Az értekezlet vége előtt kellett elmennem, mert egy korai vonatot akartam elérni.)
Anne couldn't accept the invitation because she was going to visit her mother. (= Anne nem fogadhatta el a meghívást, mert az édesanyját akarta meglátogatni.)
- Ha ezt a szerkezetet használjuk, a mondatból nem derül ki, vajon a szándék megvalósult-e:
I was going to buy you a present, but I didn't have enough money. (= Akartam venni ajándékot, de nem volt elég pénzem.)
- A **was/were going to** szerkezettel fejezünk ki olyan jövőre vonatkozó jóslatot is, amelyet tapasztalható tények valószínűsítene:
The clouds were gathering; it was going to rain.
My mother was in a bad mood. I could tell that she wasn't going to let me go to the disco.

Gyakorlatok

A A következő beszélgetés egy főiskola büféjében hangzott el. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat Future Perfect Continuous és a **for** előljárószo használatával.

- 0 In two months, I/live in this country/three years.
 In two months, *I will have been living in this country for three years.*
- 1 Next week I/come to this college/a year.
 Next week
- 2 In a few days, I/go out with my girlfriend/six months.
 In a few days,
- 3 On Friday, I/do my part-time job/two weeks.
 On Friday,
- 4 In a week's time, my brother/live in my flat/six months.
 In a week's time,
- 5 In a few minutes, we/sit here/three hours!
 In a few minutes,

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az alábbi igék és a Future Perfect szerkezet használatával.

correct do double eat install ~~leave~~ read sell wash

- 0 If we don't get there quickly, Bill *will have left*.
- 1 I imagine they all the hard work before we arrive.
- 2 They all the best food by the time we get to the party.
- 3 What a lot of visitors! I don't think we up all the dishes before suppertime.
- 4 The government insists that they the number of hospital beds by the end of next year.
- 5 Our school computers in all the classrooms by the end of the year.
- 6 The organizers say they all the tickets before the games start.
- 7 The teacher says that she all the projects by next week.
- 8 I'm not sure that I all the books on the reading list before the exam.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék és a Future Perfect Continuous szerkezet használatával.

- 0 By this evening they *will have been queuing* (queue) all day.
- 1 If the parcel doesn't come tomorrow, we (wait) two weeks for it.
- 2 At the end of the month Mary (work) here for a year.
- 3 Next year our company will have a big celebration. We (make) leather shoes for 100 years.
- 4 My father wants a change. Next year he (do) the same job for five years.
- 5 When the ceremony is over, those soldiers (stand) in the same place for almost four hours.
- 6 It's an endurance competition. At midnight all the couples that are still on the dance floor (dance) non-stop for twenty-four hours.

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **was/were going to** szerkezet és a megfelelő ige használatával.

buy ~~catch~~ visit watch clean go have

- 0 A: Why did they leave early?
B: Because they *were going to catch* an early train.
- 1 A: When I saw your brothers, they were wearing overalls.
B: Yes, they out the garage.
- 2 A: Why was Sally cross?
B: Because she some concert tickets, but they had all gone.
- 3 A: I saw your sister walking to town this morning.
B: Yes, she in the car but my mother needed it.
- 4 A: There were a lot of people in the park this morning.
B: I imagine they the cricket match.
- 5 A: I saw your mother carrying some flowers this morning.
B: Yes, she granny. Granny's in hospital.
- 6 A: I thought I told Peter to have his hair cut!
B: Well, he it cut this morning, but the hairdresser's was full.

A Keressük meg a képekhez tartozó kifejezéseket, és írjunk mondatokat a **be going to** szerkezet használatával.



They/order a meal
The film/start
He/make an omelette
They/not/get home quickly
She/have a shower
They/rob a bank
The sun/come out
She/not/talk to him

- 0 *They're going to rob a bank.*
- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7

B Egészítsük ki a következő beszélgetést. A nem megfelelő kifejezést húzzuk ki.

- PETE: ⁰Are you having/Do you have a holiday this summer, Molly?
- MOLLY: Yes, ¹I'm going/I go on a trip to the US next week.
- PETE: Oh. That sounds good. Which part?
- MOLLY: ²I'm staying/I'll stay in Dallas to begin with. Then ³I hire/I'm going to hire a car and ⁴I'll drive/I'm going to drive through some of the Southern States.
- PETE: That sounds good. When ⁵does your flight leave/will your flight have left?
- MOLLY: At 6 o'clock on Friday. ⁶I'm going to get/I'll get a taxi to the airport. ⁷The plane lands/The plane will land in Dallas at about 11 o'clock their time.
- PETE: When ⁸is your trip ending/does your trip end?
- MOLLY: On Friday the 21st. ⁹I arrive/I'll arrive back here at 5.
- PETE: Well, I could pick you up from the airport. ¹⁰I'm not doing/I won't do anything that day, I'm sure.
- MOLLY: Oh thanks. That would be great.

3 Egészítsük ki a párbeszégeket a zárójelben megadott szavak és 'll vagy a **be going to** szerkezet használatával.

- 0 A: It's rather hot in here, isn't it?
B: Perhaps it is. Don't worry! *I'll open* (I/open) a window.
- 1 A: Is there anything good on TV tonight?
B: Yes, 'Sing with the stars', my favourite programme. That's what (I/watch).
- 2 A: Come and have supper with us tonight, but come early because my husband's told me that (he/go) to bed early.
B: All right, (we/come) straight after work.
- 3 A: I've made a shopping list. Tomorrow (I/buy) some new clothes.
B: What (you/get)?
A: (I/spend) most of my money on some new shoes. There's a shop in town that imports them direct from America.
B: That sounds interesting. I think (I/come) with you.
- 4 A: Hey, Peter phoned last night. (he/meet) me for a drink.
B: Have you decided where to go? I suggest you try that new place called Dombies.
A: OK, (we/try) there.
- 5 A: There's a good film on at the Classic cinema. (I/see) it tomorrow evening. Do you want to come?
B: Tomorrow's a bit difficult. (I/paint) my bedroom. But when I've finished, (I/phone) you.

4 Írjunk mondatokat az adott szavakkal. Használjuk a **will** segédigét, ahol szükséges.

- 0 Tom/be/at the bus stop/when/you/get/there.
Tom will be at the bus stop when you get there.
- 1 She/phone/me/as soon as/she/get/to the station.
.....
- 2 When/you/meet/Philip/you/recognize/him easily. He has a red beard.
..... He has a red beard.
- 3 The guide/wait/here/until you/come/back.
.....
- 4 We/call/at granny's house/before/we/go/to the cinema.
.....
- 5 Take the medicine. After/you/take/it/you/feel/a lot better.
Take the medicine.
- 6 The play/start/as soon as/everybody/be/quiet.
.....
- 7 It/be/very quiet/when your cousins/go/home.
.....
- 8 As soon as/he/finish/work/Brian/phone/us.
.....

E Pam egy boltban dolgozik. Az alábbi táblázatban összeírta hétvégi teendőit, és amikor valaki felhívja, hogy töltsenek együtt egy kis időt, elfoglaltságára hivatkozva visszautasítja. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket folyamatos jelen vagy a **be going to** szerkezet használatával.

	Morning	Afternoon	Evening
Friday	work (9.00 – 12.00)	do my washing	supper with Ted (8.00)
Saturday	work (9.00 – 12.00)	make some cakes	play tennis with Sara (7.00)
Sunday	clean the flat	have a piano lesson with Bob (3.00)	go to bed early

- 0 ANNE: Can we meet on Friday morning?
 PAM: No, *I'm working on Friday morning.*
 ANNE: How about Friday afternoon?
 PAM: No, *I'm going to do my washing on Friday afternoon.*
- 1 BILL: Can I see you on Friday evening?
 PAM: No, I'm afraid
 BILL: What about Saturday afternoon?
 PAM: Sorry,
- 2 DAVE: Could we see each other on Saturday evening?
 PAM: No, because
 DAVE: How about Sunday morning?
 PAM: No,
- 3 ELLEN: Is there any chance of seeing you on Sunday afternoon?
 PAM: No,
 ELLEN: What about Sunday evening?
 PAM: Oh, no

F Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a Future Continuous és az alábbi igék használatával.

do fly get have lie work

- 0 At this time tomorrow, we *'ll be flying* over the Atlantic.
 1 If your cousins come after lunch, we in the garden.
 2 Don't get there too early. They breakfast.
 3 At this time next week, you on a beach on the Costa Brava.
 4 Tomorrow, when you're still in bed, I my maths exam.
 5 The invitation says eight o'clock. Don't arrive before eight because they everything ready.

G Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a Future Perfect és a zárójelben megadott igék használatával.

- 0 If we don't get there quickly, Bill *will have left.* (leave)
 1 The highway engineers say that they (install) all the new traffic lights before the end of the year.
 2 Next week, when my father runs in the marathon, he (compete) in every local marathon for the past twenty years.
 3 We must get to the concert early. Otherwise people (take) all the good seats.
 4 A: When (you/finish) decorating the flat?
 B: I (not/finish) until the end of the week.

1 Fejezzük be a mondatokat az adott szavak és a Future Perfect Continuous használatával.

- 0 Some of the people hoping to get tickets have been here since early this morning. By the time the ticket office opens/they/queue/for six hours.
By the time the ticket office opens *they will have been queuing for six hours.*
- 1 I've been teaching since I left university. By next summer/I/teach/for ten years.
By next summer
- 2 I'm moving house. I'll be tired this evening because I/lift/boxes/all day.
I'll be tired this evening because
- 3 My grandmother's employer is going to give her a gold watch next year. By then/she/work/for the firm for forty years.
By then
- 4 The protest has lasted a long time. Tomorrow the protesters/sit/in front of the government building for two weeks.
Tomorrow the protesters

2 Egészítsük ki a következő telefonbeszélgetést a **was/were going to** szerkezet és a megadott igék használatával.

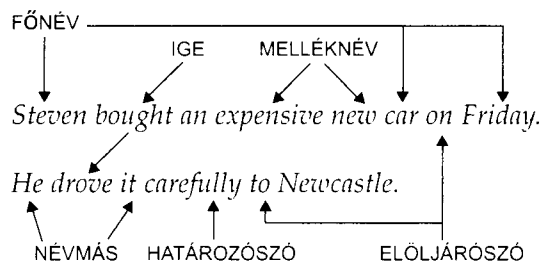
tell be have ~~phone~~ invite arrange call suggest

- CAROL: I thought you ⁰ *were going to phone* me yesterday.
- DENNIS: Sorry. I ¹ you but I was too busy. I didn't think I ²
such a busy week but I've got lots to do.
- CAROL: I thought we ³ to meet one evening this week.
- DENNIS: Yes. I ⁴ that we meet on Thursday. I thought I ⁵
free then but now I've found out that I won't be.
- CAROL: That's OK. I ⁶ you that I can't make Thursday. I ⁷
you to my place on Friday.
- DENNIS: I think we'll have to try next week instead!

3 Egészítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

This is my new plan for the future. I ⁰ *was going to study* (study) medicine at university, but I've changed my mind. I've decided that first I
¹ (work) abroad for a year, singing and playing the guitar. Then I ² (come) home and sing in pubs and clubs for two years. By that time I ³ (be) twenty-one and I ⁴ (perform) for three years, so lots of people
⁵ (hear) me. Then I ⁶ (study) at the new school of drama. It ⁷ (open) in three years' time. If I do well at drama school, in ten years' time I
⁸ (perform) on the London stage. Perhaps I
⁹ (be) the best actress of my generation. And if my plan doesn't work, I ¹⁰ (study) medicine!

1 Figyeljük meg az alábbi mondatot :



2 Konkrét főnevek:

river cars sugar

Elvont főnevek:

love problems education

Élőlényeket jelentő konkrét főnevek:

woman dogs insect

Tulajdonnevek, földrajzi nevek:

Jane Harris Paris Oxford Street

Összetett főnevek:

bedroom footpath notebook

3 Cselekvést vagy létezést kifejező igék:

work play live meet stay see

4 Segédigék: **be, have, do, will, can, may, must** stb.

Az ige mellett gyakran segédige áll:

I have seen Peter. (**have** = elsődleges segédige)

I must go now. (**must** = módbeli segédige)

5 A melléknév (a mondatban jelző) megelőzi a főnevet (a jelzett szót):

We had a wonderful day.

A **be, look, seem, feel** igék után melléknév is állhat (főnév nélkül):

He's hungry. She looks tired.

Figyelem! Az angolban a melléknévnek nincs többes száma, akkor sem, ha a mondat alanya többesszámú főnév: *She is pretty. They are pretty.* (= Ő csinos. Ők csinosak.)

6 A határozószó kiegészíti az ige jelentését:

She walked quickly. He sings well.

A legtöbb melléknévből **-ly** végződés hozzáadásával képezhetünk határozószót:

clearly slowly badly

7 A főnév helyett személyes névmás (**I, you, he, she** stb.) állhat a mondatban:

David has a new job. He is enjoying it.

Figyelem! Amikor magyarra fordítunk, gyakran felesleges a névmást kitenni, mert a magyarban a személyrag megmutatja, kiről beszélünk. A fenti mondatot helytelen lenne úgy fordítani, hogy *Ő élvezi azt.*

8 Az előjárósók (**in, on, at** stb.) segítségével helyet vagy időt jelölhetünk:

HELY: *She's at home. It's in the box.*

IDŐ: *I'll see you on Monday.*

They went on holiday in June.

Gyakorlatok

A Az aláhúzott szavakat írjuk a táblázat megfelelő oszlopába.

Főnév	Ige	Segédige	Melléknév	Határozószó	Névmás	Előjárósó
			wonderful			

I had a wonderful holiday in Spain last year.

She lives in a large flat in New York.

Peter walked quickly to work.

We met them in Green Street on Friday.

You must come and visit me in Scotland.

My teacher spoke clearly but I didn't understand her.

Mary and Jackie are studying Japanese at college.

I have lost my bag.

They bought a big, old house in the country.

She swims fast, and she can ski well too.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a táblázatban szereplő szavakkal. Minden szót csak egyszer használjunk.

Főnév	Ige	Segédige	Melléknév	Határozószó	Névmás	Elöljárószó
job match Saturday	find pass	has must Do	beautiful sick	badly easily carefully	I You	on at in

- 0 Paul *has* just started a new *job*
- 1 You'll the books the table.
- 2 bought some flowers and gave them to my wife.
- 3 She played and lost the tennis
- 4 haven't seen your grandfather for a long time – you visit him at the weekend.
- 5 Don't worry! You'll the exam
- 6 Listen! The money is the box.
- 7 We're playing volleyball on you want to play?
- 8 I feel What did we eat the restaurant?

C Képezzünk összetett szavakat az alábbiakból, és írjuk ezeket a magyar megfelelőik mellé. Minden szó csak egyszer használható.

ache ball bath book brush business coat end fish foot head house
light ~~motor~~ news paper pot rail rain room scraper shell shop sky
sun tea tooth ~~way~~ way week wife woman

0	autópálya	<i>motorway</i>	8	újság	
1	fürdőszoba		9	felhőkarcoló	
2	fogkefe		10	kagyló	
3	labdarúgás		11	hétvége	
4	üzletasszony		12	esőkabát	
5	könyvesbolt		13	vasút	
6	fejfájás		14	teáskanna	
7	háziasszony		15	napfény	

D A zárójelben megadott szavakat tegyük a megfelelő helyre a mondatban.

- 0 (on) I'm ^a flying ^b to ^c Mexico ^d Sunday. *d*
- 1 (interesting) I ^a saw ^b a ^c very ^d film ^e last ^f night.
- 2 (quickly) Go ^a or ^b you'll ^c miss ^d the ^e train!
- 3 (can) I ^a see ^b the ^c mountains ^d from ^e my ^f window.
- 4 (it) She ^a sent ^b me ^c a ^d ticket ^e but ^f I ^g left ^h at ⁱ home.
- 5 (go) You ^a look ^b sick. You ^c must ^d and ^e see ^f a ^g doctor.
- 6 (in) I ^a stayed ^b there ^c for ^d a ^e week ^f June.
- 7 (big) Mary ^a gave ^b Christopher ^c a ^d present.
- 8 (road) There's ^a snow ^b on ^c the ^d so ^e drive ^f carefully.

40 Szórend (alany, állítmány, tárgy)

- 1 Az angol kijelentő mondat szórendje általában:
alany + állítmány + bővítmény

ALANY	ÁLLÍTMÁNY (IGE)	TÁRGY
<i>They</i>	<i>will like</i>	<i>the food.</i>
<i>Peter</i>	<i>is watching</i>	<i>TV.</i>
<i>Sally</i>	<i>paints</i>	<i>portraits.</i>

- 2 Egyes igék után nem áll tárgy:

Steven has gone. Ann and Tom can swim.
The man shouted.

Egyes igék után mindig következik tárgy:

They want a drink.
Sara wrote the letter.

- 3 Főnév vagy melléknév a hozzá kapcsolódó létigével (**be**) együtt lehet a mondat állítmánya:

FŐNÉV	
<i>Pat is</i>	<i>a doctor.</i>
MELLÉKNÉV	
<i>Mary was</i>	<i>sad.</i>

A **look**, **seem** (= valamilyennek látszik), **feel** (= valahogy érzi magát) (ld. 39. fejezet), **get** (= valamilyenné válik) (ld. 62. fejezet) típusú igék után is állhat melléknév (főnév nélkül):
Mary looks sad. I'm getting hungry.

- 4 Ha létige van a mondatban, a tagadás a **be** ragozott alakja + **not** (vagy **n't**) szerkezettel történik:

ALANY	ÁLLÍTMÁNY	BŐVÍTMÉNY
<i>Pat</i>	<i>is not</i>	<i>a doctor.</i>
<i>Mary</i>	<i>wasn't</i>	<i>sad.</i>

Ha segédige van a mondatban, a tagadás a segédige + **not** (vagy **n't**) szerkezettel történik:

ALANY	SEGÉDIGE + not	FŐIGE	BŐVÍTMÉNY
<i>Peter</i>	<i>isn't</i>	<i>watching TV.</i>	
<i>Peter</i>	<i>shouldn't</i>	<i>watch TV.</i>	
<i>Steven</i>	<i>hasn't</i>	<i>gone home.</i>	
<i>They</i>	<i>can't</i>	<i>swim.</i>	

Egyszerű jelenben a tagadás a **do(es)** segédige + **not** (vagy **n't**) szerkezettel, egyszerű múltban pedig a **did + not** (vagy **n't**) szerkezettel történik. A segédige után a főige **to** nélküli főnévi igenéve áll:

Sally doesn't/didn't paint portraits.

- 5 Ha a mondatban létige van (jelen időben **am/is/are**, múlt időben **was/were**), kérdésben a létige az alany elé kerül:

ÁLLÍTMÁNY	ALANY	BŐVÍTMÉNY
<i>Is</i>	<i>Pat</i>	<i>a doctor?</i>
<i>Why was</i>	<i>Mary</i>	<i>sad?</i>

Kérdésben a segédige is az állítmány előtt áll:

SEGÉDIGE	ALANY	ÁLLÍTMÁNY	BŐVÍTMÉNY
<i>Will</i>	<i>they</i>	<i>like</i>	<i>the food?</i>
<i>Where has</i>	<i>Steve</i>	<i>gone?</i>	

Kérdésnél egyszerű jelenben a **do(es)**, egyszerű múltban pedig a **did** segédigét és a főige **to** nélkül főnévi igenévi alakját használjuk:

Do they want a drink?
When did Sara write the letter?

- 6 Függő kérdésnél, mivel kijelentő mondatról van szó, nem használjuk a **do/did** segédigét, és a szórend a szokásos alany + állítmány + bővítmény sorrend szerint alakul. Az eredeti kérdő mondat kérdőszavából kötőszó lesz – ha nincs ilyen (eldöntendő kérdésnél), akkor az **if** (= vajon, hogy) kötőszót használjuk:

I'm asking you if Pat is a doctor.

(= Azt kérdezem, hogy Péter orvos-e.)

I don't know if they will like the food. (= Nem tudom, vajon ízlik-e majd nekik az étel.)

Tell me where Steven has gone.

(= Mondd meg nekem, hova ment Steven!)

I wonder when Sara wrote the letter.

(= Szeretném tudni, Sara mikor írta a levelet.)

Gyakorlatok

- A A következő mondatokban szórendi hiba lehet. Pipáljuk ki a helyes mondatokat, a hibásakat pedig írjuk le helyesen.

- 0 Mary has phoned. ✓
0 Has phoned Mary? *Has Mary phoned?*

- 1 The boys are playing football.
- 2 Brilliant was the film.
- 3 Michael not has come.
- 4 The children are looking tired.
- 5 Jack does play the trombone?
- 6 What languages can speak Margaret?
- 7 I don't know where Jimmy lives.
- 8 When Alice went to Paris?

B Alkossunk mondatokat a szavak sorba rendezésével.

- 0 (Ann/does/eggs/eat/not) *Ann does not eat eggs.*
- 1 (awake/children/not/the/were)
- 2 (flowers/gone/have/all/the/where/?)
- 3 (did/film/not/see/the/we)
- 4 (are/boys/doing/those/what/?)
- 5 (do/eat/insects/meat/not)
- 6 (do/elephants/live/where/?)
- 7 (can/piano/play/Terry/the)
- 8 (chemistry/does/sister/study/your/?)

C Pipáljuk ki a hiánytalan mondatokat, ahol pedig kiegészítésre van szükség, használjuk a megadott szavakat. Néhány mondatnál több megoldás is lehetséges.

are can did has have is ~~peak~~ you

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 0 Mary looks happy. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 0 Alan can <i>peak</i> Spanish | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 Cats not good swimmers. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 Where we sit? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 The weather not been good. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 When they send the letter? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 My father made the supper. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 What Philip watching? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 What time did have lunch? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 He will not say where he works. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9 Which films you seen? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10 Ask them how they feel. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

D Fordítsuk le a következő mini-párbeszégeket.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 A: Megeszed a húst?
B: Igen, de a tojást nem kérem. | 4 A: Láttad Marikát?
B: Nem, nem láttam. |
| 2 A: A nővéred tanárnő?
B: Nem, egy irodában dolgozik. | 5 A: Mit mondott az az ember?
B: Egy szót sem szólt. |
| 3 A: Hol lakik Tibor?
B: Nem tudom, hol lakik. | |



A kiegészítendő kérdés – kérdőszók

1 A where, when, why és how kérdőszó. A kiegészítendő kérdést kérdőszóval kezdjük, ezt követi a létige (**am/is/are/was/were**) vagy a segédige, utána pedig az alany áll (ld. 40. fejezet):

- **Where** (= hol)
A **where** kérdőszó helyre kérdez:
Where is Mike? ~ He's at home.
- **When** (= mikor)
A **when** időpontra:
When do they play football? ~ On Fridays.
- **Why** (= miért)
A **why** kérdőszó valaminek az okára kérdez:
Why is Mary at home? ~ Because it's a school holiday.
- **How** (= hogyan)
A **how** a cselekvés módjára kérdez:
How does he travel to work? ~ He goes by train.
A **how** kérdőszóval kérdezzük meg azt is, hogy valaki hogy van:
How are you? ~ I'm fine.
(További tudnivalók a **how** kérdőszóval kapcsolatban a 42. fejezetben találhatók.)

2 A who, what, which és whose szintén kérdőszó. A kiegészítendő kérdést kérdőszóval kezdjük, ezt követi a létige (**am/is/are/was/were**) vagy a segédige, utána pedig az alany áll. A **who** személyre kérdez:

- **Who** (= ki, kit)
Who is that man? (= Ki az a férfi?)
Who do you like best? (= Kit szeretsz a legjobban?)

➤ **What** (= mi, mit), **which** (= melyik, melyiket)
A **what** általában tárgyakra, fogalmakra vagy eseményekre vonatkozik:

What are they doing? (= Mit csinálnak?)

What's your name? (= Mi a neved?)

What colour is your new coat? (= Milyen színű az új kabátod?)

A **which** kérdőszót több lehetőség közül való választás esetén használjuk:

There's Coke or beer. Which do you want?

(= Melyiket kéred?)

Which name do you prefer: Emma or Sarah?

➤ **Whose** (= kié)

A **whose** valaminek a tulajdonosára kérdez:

Whose is this book? (= Kié ez a könyv?)

Whose book is this? (= Ez kinek a könyve?)

3 A who, what, which és whose rendszerint az alanyra kérdez (további tudnivalók a 43. fejezetben):

Who lives here? (= Ki lakik itt?) ~ Mary lives here.

What is happening? (= Mi történik?) ~ Nothing is happening.

Which team is winning? (= Melyik csapat áll nyerésre?) ~ Our team is winning.

Whose photo hangs on the wall? (= Kinek a fényképe lóg a falon?) ~ My photo hangs on the wall.

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk kérdéseket a zárójelben megadott szavakból.

- 0 (you/where/live/do/?) *Where do you live?*
- 1 (do/get up/you/when/?)
- 2 (she/does/where/come from/?)
- 3 (leaving/they/are/when/?)
- 4 (he/is/why/waiting/?)
- 5 (are/you/how/?)
- 6 (is/where/the town centre?)
- 7 (Paul/drive/so fast/does/why/?)
- 8 (when/the film/does/start/?)
- 9 (do/how/you/feel/?)
- 10 (is/running/she/why/?)

B Írjunk kérdéseket a mondatokhoz **Where, When, Why, How, What, Which** vagy **Whose** kérdőszóval.

- 0 Where do you live? ~ I live in the next street.
- 1 ~ I arrived about an hour ago.
- 2 ~ I came with a friend of mine.
- 3 ~ That man over there is my boss.
- 4 ~ I got here by taxi.
- 5 ~ Brian invited me.
- 6 ~ I'd like to eat some of that cake.
- 7 ~ I prefer white wine.
- 8 ~ This is my glass.
- 9 ~ I'm leaving in about an hour.
- 10 ~ I'm going home by taxi.

C Írjunk kérdéseket az alábbi válaszokhoz.

- 0 When is the last train?
The last train is at half past eleven.
- 1
She lives near the market.
- 2
The boy in the photo is my cousin.
- 3
John's going out because he wants some fresh air.
- 4
Jack drinks coffee in the morning.
- 5
They are going to the cinema this evening.
- 6
They cut the paper with a machine.
- 7
It's my sister's bicycle.
- 8
Elephants live in Africa and India.
- 9
Sara goes to bed at about eleven o'clock.
- 10
They are playing cricket.

D Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

- 1 Itt egy alma és egy barack. Melyiket kéred?
- 2 Kié ez a kabát a széken?
- 3 Ki a kedvenc énekesnőd?
- 4 Melyik kép tetszik jobban, ez a modern, vagy az a régi?

A kiegészítendő kérdés – How long? How far? How often? How many? How much? How old?

- 1 A How long?** (= mennyi ideig?) kezdetű kérdés valamilyen cselekvés vagy esemény időtartamára kérdez:

How long is the course? ~ *Six weeks.*

How long does the journey take? ~ *Three hours.*

A from ... to vagy **a from ... until** (= -tól ...-ig) előjárószókat használjuk akkor, ha megadjuk a kezdés és a befejezés időpontját:

She was a student from 1985 to 1990.

Tomorrow I'm working from 8.30 until 6.30.

- 2 A How far?** (= milyen messze?) két hely közötti távolságra kérdez. **A from ... to** előjárószókat használjuk:

How far is it from Amsterdam to Paris? ~ *475 kilometres.*

How far are the shops from here? ~ *Not far.*

- 3 A How often?** (= milyen gyakran?) a cselekvés gyakoriságára kérdez. A válaszban gyakran használjuk az **every day**, **once a week** stb. időhatározókat:

How often do the buses run? ~ *Every hour.*

How often do you play squash? ~ *Twice a week.*

- 4 A How much?** (= mennyi?, mennyit?) szerkezettel valaminek az árára kérdezhetünk:

How much is a return ticket to Brighton?

How much did you pay for this car?

- 5 A How much?** (= mennyi?) kezdetű kérdés megszámlálhatatlan főnevekre kérdez. Ezeknek nincs többes számú alakjuk, és nem tehetünk eléjük határozatlan névelőt (pl. **bread, work, weather, money, music, meat, milk, cheese**). (További információ a 70. fejezetben és a 360 oldalon a B táblázatban található.)

How much bread is there in the cupboard?

How much work did you do today?

Figyelem! A **money** (= pénz) az angolban megszámlálhatatlan főnév, nincs többes száma.
How much money do you have?

- 6 A How many?** (= hány?) megszámlálható dolgok mennyiségére kérdez:

How many students are in your class? ~ *Twenty.*

How many people went to the party? ~ *Ten.*

(Lásd még a 78. fejezetet.)

- 7 A how** kérdőszó melléknév (a mondatban jelző) vagy határozószó (a mondatban határozó) előtt áll.

How tall is the church? (= Milyen magas a templom?) ~ *It's over 100 metres.*

How well does he play? (= Milyen jól játszik?) ~ *He plays very well.*

How old are you? (= Hány éves vagy?) ~ *I'm 19./I'm 19 years old. NEM I'm 19 years.*

Figyelem: a **How old** szerkezettel bármilyen életkorra kérdezhetünk, még egy gyerekére is:
How old is he? – *He is two months old.*

Gyakorlatok

- A** Alkossunk kérdéseket **How long**, **How old**, **How often** stb. használatával. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igeidőre.

0 (How/you/stay/in New Zealand?)

How long did you stay in New Zealand?

~ I stayed there for six months.

1 (How/he/read/a newspaper?)

~ He reads one every day.

2 (How/a single room/cost?)

~ It costs £50 a night.

3 (How/be/you when you went to live in Australia?)

~ I was 15 when I went there.

4 (How/exams/you/going to take?)

~ I'm going to take three exams.

5 (How/the course/last?)

~ It will last for two years.

Alkossunk kérdéseket a **How old, How much, How many** stb. szerkezettel és a zárójelben megadott szavakkal.

- 0 A: *How old is your husband?* (your husband/be)?
 B: He is 34. He'll be 35 next month.
- 1 A: (languages/you/speak)?
 B: I speak three – English, French and Chinese.
- 2 A: (it/be/from here to the airport)?
 B: It's about 25 kilometres.
- 3 A: (the meal/cost)?
 B: I can't remember, but it wasn't very expensive.
- 4 A: (you/stay/there)?
 B: I stayed there from June until October.
- 5 A: (the postman/come)?
 B: He comes twice a day.

Fordítsuk le a kérdéseket **How** kérdőszó és a megadott szavak segítségével.

big far fast long many much often old quickly
--

- 0 Milyen gyorsan mehet ez a vonat? *How fast* can this train go?
- 1 Milyen gyakran mosol fogat? do you clean your teeth?
- 2 Hány éves a nővéred? is your sister?
- 3 Mekkora a szobád? is your bedroom?
- 4 Mennyibe kerül a Coca-Cola ebben a diszkóban? is a Coca-Cola in this disco?
- 5 Mennyi ideig laktál Bathban? have you lived in Bath?
- 6 Hányan jönnek? people are coming?
- 7 Milyen messzire van a park? is it to the park?
- 8 Milyen gyorsan tudod befejezni a munkát? can you finish the work?

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet Sarah kérdéseivel. Minden kérdést egy **How** kezdetű kérdőszóval kezdjük.

- 0 SARAH: *How many hours a week do you work?* (hours a week/you/work)
 EMMA: I work 40 hours a week.
- 1 SARAH: (you/travel abroad)
 EMMA: I travel abroad about six times a year.
- 2 SARAH: (you/work for that company)
 EMMA: I've been working for that company for two years.
- 3 SARAH: (be/your office/your home)
 EMMA: It's 5 kilometres to my office from my home.
- 4 SARAH: (you/earn)
 EMMA: I earn about 40,000 a year.
- 5 SARAH: (people/work in your department)
 EMMA: 55 people work in my department.
- 6 SARAH: (successful/be/your company)
 EMMA: My company is very successful.



A kiegészítendő kérdés – alanyra és tárgyra vonatkozó kérdések

1 Hasonlítsuk össze az alábbi mondatokat:

<p>ANN: ALANY <i>Who</i> told you? (= Ki mondta neked?)</p> <p>MARY: <i>James told me.</i> (= James.)</p> <p>Ez a kérdés az alanyra vonatkozik.</p>	<p>ANN: TÁRGY <i>Who</i> did you see? (= Kit láttál?)</p> <p>MARY: <i>I saw Bill.</i> (= Billt.)</p> <p>Ez a kérdés a tárgyra vonatkozik.</p>
---	---

2 Mindkét mondatban **who** a kérdőszó.

<p>A Who told you? kérdésben a who a mondat alanya. (= Ki?)</p> <p>Egy másik példa:</p> <p>ANN: ALANY <i>Who</i> wrote Hamlet?</p> <p>MARY: <i>Shakespeare wrote</i> Hamlet.</p> <p>Amikor a who kérdőszóval az alanyra kérdezzünk, a kérdő mondat szórendje megegyezik az állító mondatéval:</p> <p>ALANY <i>Who</i> is going to come with me? (= Ki jön velem?)</p> <p><i>Who</i> lives in that old house? (= Ki lakik abban a régi házban?)</p> <p><i>Who</i> wants some more coffee? (= Ki kér még kávé?)</p>	<p>A Who did you see? mondatban a who a mondat tárgya. (= Kit?)</p> <p>Egy másik példa:</p> <p>ANN: TÁRGY <i>Who</i> did you visit last night?</p> <p>MARY: <i>I visited</i> a friend of mine.</p> <p>Amikor a who kérdőszó a tárgyra kérdez, a be, do, have stb. segédige az alany előtt áll a kérdő mondatban:</p> <p>TÁRGY <i>Who</i> are you going to invite? (= Kit fogsz meghívni?)</p> <p><i>Who</i> did Laura ask for help? (= Kit kért meg Laura, hogy segítsen?)</p> <p><i>Who</i> have you visited? (= Kit látogattál meg?)</p>
--	--

3 Hasonlítsuk össze a **what** kérdőszóval kezdődő, alanyra illetve tárgyra vonatkozó kérdéseket:

<p>ALANY <i>What</i> is in this dish? (= Mi van ebben az edényben?)</p>	<p>TÁRGY <i>What</i> did you buy at the shops? (= Mit vásároltál?)</p>
---	--

Figyelem! A **who** és **what** kezdetű kérdésben, ha a kérdés az alanyra vonatkozik, soha nincs **do** segédige: *Who likes ice cream?* *What makes this noise?*

Ha a **who** és a **what** a tárgyra vonatkozik, kell a **do** segédige: *Who do you love?* (= Te kit szeretsz?)
What do you want? (= Mit akarsz?)

Gyakorlatok

A Kérdezzünk az aláhúzott mondatrészekre **Who** vagy **What** kérdőszóval.

- (Eric met somebody.) *Who did Eric meet?*
- (Somebody ate the last piece of cake.) *Who ate the last piece of cake?*
- (Somebody wants some more coffee.)
- (Something happened at the end of the story.)
- (Somebody is going to pay the bill.)
- (He had something for breakfast.)
- (Their letter said something.)
- (Somebody knows the answer to my question.)
- (They saw something.)
- (She is phoning somebody.)

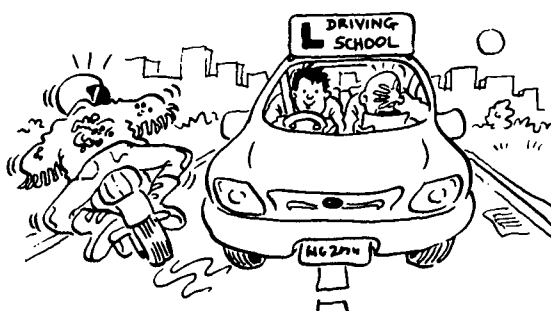
B Alkossunk kérdéseket **Who** vagy **What** kérdőszóval a zárójelben megadott információk segítségével.

- 0 Who were you talking to on the phone? ~ (I was talking to) Elizabeth (on the phone).
 0 What was the result of the game? ~ (The result of the game was) 2-0 to Italy.
 1 ~ Anita and Frank (went on the trip).
 2 ~ I'm not sure (what's happening in this film).
 3 ~ (I'm going to phone) Jane.
 4 ~ (I watched) that new comedy programme
 (on TV last night).
 5 ~ John (sent these flowers).
 6 ~ (I bought) a book (in that shop).

C Olvassuk el a szöveget, majd tegyünk fel kérdéseket a mondatokra a zárójelben megadott szavakkal.

Two days ago Robert took his driving test. He failed it. Afterwards he met his friend Philip. He told Philip that he had failed his test. Then he said, 'Don't tell anyone. It's a secret.' Philip said, 'OK, I won't tell anyone.'

Later that day, Philip met Linda for coffee and he said, 'Robert failed his driving test.' Linda laughed. 'Poor Robert,' she said.



- 0 (What/Robert/do/two days ago?)
What did Robert do two days ago? ~ He took his driving test.
 1 (What/happen?)
 ~ He failed it.
 2 (Who/take/his/driving test?)
 ~ Robert.
 3 (What/Robert/fail?)
 ~ His driving test.
 4 (What/Robert/say/to Philip?)
 ~ He said, 'Don't tell anyone.'
 5 (Who/meet/Linda/for coffee?)
 ~ Philip.

D Egészítsük ki a kérdéseket a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével.

- 0 (Oswald, kill) Who did Oswald kill? ~ He killed President Kennedy.
 0 (Kennedy, kill) Who killed Kennedy? ~ Oswald killed Kennedy.
 1 (the Nobel Prize, win) Who for Physics in 1909? ~ Marconi.
 2 (Marconi, invent) What ? ~ Short-wave radio.
 3 (Everest, climb) Who with Hillary? ~ Sherpa Tensing.
 4 (Prince Charles, marry) Who ? ~ He married Diana.
 5 (Hiroshima, destroy) What ? ~ An atomic bomb.
 6 (Churchill, smoke) What ? ~ Cigars.
 7 (France, beat) Who in the European Cup Final? ~ France beat Italy.



Milyen? – What ... like? (What's she like?)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi kérdést és választ:

A: *What's Mark like?*

B: *He's very good-looking and he's very kind, but he's not very clever.*

A **What ... like?** kérdés valakinek a külsejére (**tall, short, pretty** stb.) vagy a természetére (**interesting, boring, friendly, unfriendly** stb.) vonatkozik.

A **What ... like?** kérdés helyre, könyvre, filmre vagy eseményre is vonatkozhat (pl. buli, futballmeccs stb.):

A: *What's Rio de Janeiro like?*

B: *Well, the beaches are wonderful but the traffic is awful.*

A: *What's Spielberg's latest film like?*

B: *It's excellent.*

2 A look like külső tulajdonságra utal:

A: *What does Julie look like?*

B: *She's tall with brown hair.*

A **What ... like?** kérdés valami ízére, hangjára tapintására, vagy szagára is vonatkozhat:

A: *What does that taste like?* (= Milyen íze van?)

B: *It tastes like cheese.* (= Mint a sajtnak.)

A: *What is this material?*

B: *I don't know. It looks like wool but it feels like cotton.* (= Nem tudom, ránézésre gyapjú, de a tapintása olyan, mint a pamuté.)

3 A Who ... like jelentése: 'kire hasonlít':

A: *Who's Julie like – her father or her mother?*

B: *She's like her mother.*

Rio de Janeiro is like Buenos Aires.

Your house is not like mine. It's much bigger.

(= A te háza nem olyan, mint az enyém. A tiéd sokkal nagyobb.)

Figyeljük meg a fenti kérdések szórendjét! A **who** áll a mondat elején, azt követi a létige, utána következik az alany, és a kérdést a **like** zárja. A válaszban a szórend: alany, létige, **like**, majd annak a megnevezése, akire valaki/valami hasonlít.

4 A What's she like mondatban a like előjárósó, nem azonos a like igével.:

A: *What music does Julie like?* (= Julie milyen zenét szeret?)

B: *She likes rock music.*

5 Ha valaki egészségéről vagy hogylétéről érdeklődünk, rendszerint a How (nem pedig a What ...) kérdőszót használjuk:

A: *How's your brother today?*

B: *He feels much better.*

A: *How is your boss today?*

B: *He's in a good mood!*

Gyakorlatok

A Tegyük fel kérdéseket a mondatokra a zárójelben megadott szavak és az **is/are like** vagy a **look like** szerkezet segítségével. Néhány mondatnál két megoldás is lehetséges.

0 (What/Sally/like)

A: *What is Sally like?*

~ B: *She's clever, but she's a bit boring.*

0 (What/Jane/like)

A: *What does Jane look like?*

~ B: *She's quite short and has dark hair.*

1 (What/Peter/like)

A:

~ B: *He's not a very interesting person.*

2 (What/Anna's parents/like)

A:

~ B: *They're very generous.*

3 (What/Tom/like)

A:

~ B: *He's very tall, and he has blond hair.*

4 (What/Eva/like)

A:

~ B: *She's tall and strong.*

5 (What/Bob and Tom/like)

A:

~ B: *They're very amusing.*

6 (What/Susan/like)

A: ~ B: She's tall and slim, and she wears glasses.

B Olvassuk el a következő leírásokat.

Kiwis are a round, brown fruit with a rough skin. They have almost no smell, but they are sweet, with a flavour similar to strawberries.

A double bass is a musical instrument. It is the largest member of the violin family. It has a deep sound.

Írjunk kérdést a mondatokra a **look/sound/taste/smell/feel + like** szerkezettel.

- 0 *What do kiwis look like?* ~ They're round and brown.
1 ~ It has a deep sound.
2 ~ They don't really have a smell.
3 ~ They have a flavour like strawberries.
4 ~ Like a very big violin.
5 ~ They have a rough skin.

C Tegyük fel kérdéseket a mondatokra a **like** előjárószo vagy a **like** ige és a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával.

- 0 (What music/you/like)
A: *What music do you like?* ~ B: I like rock music.
0 (What/Julie/like)
A: *What is Julie like?* ~ B: She is very amusing.
1 (Who/your sister/like)
A: ~ B: She likes a boy in her class.
2 (What/Paul's brothers/like)
A: ~ B: They think they're clever, but I don't.
3 (What/Jane/like/for breakfast)
A: ~ B: She likes toast and marmalade.
4 (Who/you/like)
A: ~ B: I'm like my mother.
5 (What/Mary's husband/like)
A: ~ B: He is rather boring. He's not like her.
6 (What sports/you/like)
A: ~ B: I like swimming and football.

D Írjunk kérdéseket a **What ... like?** szerkezet (amely állandó tulajdonságra kérdez) vagy a **How ...?** kérdőszó (amely ideiglenes helyzetre kérdez) és a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével.

- 0 (be/Atlanta) *What is Atlanta like?* ~ It's a very modern city.
0 (be/Mike/today) *How is Mike today?* ~ He feels a lot better.
1 (be/John's flat) ~ It's very big, and it has a wonderful view.
2 (be/your boss/in the mornings) ~ He is tired and cross.
.....
3 (be/a squash racket) ~ It's similar to a tennis racket, but lighter.
4 (be/your sister) ~ She's very well, thank you.
5 (be/Portugal) ~ It's very interesting. There's lots to see.



Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a kiegészítendő kérdés (41–4. fejezet)

A Írjunk kérdéseket a mondatokhoz a megadott kérdőszók és a zárójelben lévő szavak használatával. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igeidőre.

when what (x2) which which of (x2) who (x2)

- 0 (... leave/school) *When did you leave school*? ~ I left school last year.
- 1 (... these books/Sally/read)? ~ She is reading all of them.
- 2 (... Jane/have/for breakfast)? ~ She has toast and coffee.
- 3 (... you/see/at the station)? ~ I saw John.
- 4 (... Mary/prefer,/tea or coffee)? ~ She prefers tea.
- 5 (... you/studying/at university)? ~ I'm studying chemistry.
- 6 (... these two books/you/buy)? ~ I'm buying both of them.
- 7 (... they/invite/to their party)? ~ They're inviting all their friends.

B Luke és Clare nyaralni készül. Írjuk le Luke kérdéseit a zárójelben megadott igék használatával.

- LUKE: So, ⁰ *where shall we go?* (we/shall/go)
- CLARE: Let's go to Ireland.
- LUKE: OK and ¹ (we/be going to/go)?
- CLARE: In the last two weeks of June.
- LUKE: Fine. ² (we/need to do/next)?
- CLARE: We need to book a hotel in Dublin.
- LUKE: OK. ³ (hotel/you/prefer)?
- CLARE: I prefer this one, in this brochure, The Gresham.
- LUKE: ⁴ (you/choose/that one)?
- CLARE: I've chosen it because it looks nice and it's in the centre.
- LUKE: ⁵ (be going to/make/the booking)?
- CLARE: I'll do it. I've got all the details.

C Keressük meg a kérdésekhez tartozó választ.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 0 Who's the baby like? | a All kinds, but especially Indian. |
| 1 What's their house like? | b He's quite tall, with dark hair. |
| 2 What kind of food do you like? | c Small, but full of famous buildings. |
| 3 What's Helen like? | d Exactly like his father. |
| 4 What does Peter look like? | e Very clever and amusing. |
| 5 What does that cheese taste like? | f She's like her mother. |
| 6 What's Cambridge like? | g Modern, with a nice little garden. |
| 7 Who's Pauline like? | h It's very strong. |
- 0 *d* 1 2 3 4 5 6 7

D Tegyük fel kérdéseke az aláhúzott mondatrészekre.

0 Bill phoned ⁰ Sally ⁰ last Saturday.

0 Who did Bill phone last Saturday?

0 When did Bill phone Sally?

Jack is going ¹ to Portsmouth ² by car.

1

2

Jill's father is ³ much better.

3

Ann bought ⁴ the small picture ⁵ because she didn't like the bigger ones.

4

5

⁶ Mary's daughter is working ⁷ in America.

6

7

⁸ Mary and Tom brought ⁹ the drinks.

8

9

E Susan állásinterjún vesz részt egy nemzetközi cégnél, amely a fejlődő országok támogatásával foglalkozik. Fordítsuk le az ügyvezető kérdéseit.

0 MANAGER: (Mi a teljes neve?) What is your full name?

SUSAN: Susan Elizabeth Branston.

1 MANAGER: (Honnan értesült erről az állásról?)

SUSAN: I saw an advertisement in the paper.

2 MANAGER: (Melyik újságban?)

SUSAN: *The Guardian*.

3 MANAGER: (Milyen gyakran olvassa a *Guardian*?)

SUSAN: Almost every day.

4 MANAGER: (Mikor fejezte be a középiskolát?)

SUSAN: In 1999. And then I went to university.

5 MANAGER: (Mit tanult az egyetemen?)

SUSAN: Geography and modern languages.

6 MANAGER: (Miért szeretne nálunk dolgozni?)

SUSAN: Because I want to help poor people and because I like visiting other countries.

7 MANAGER: (Hány országban járt már?)

SUSAN: Oh, several. Five or six in Europe and also Egypt and Morocco.

MANAGER: I see. Well, now you have to do a writing test. Can you come this way please?

F Tegyük fel kérdéseket **Where, How much, When** stb. kérdőszóval. Használjuk a zárójelben megadott információt.

- 0 *Where do Tom and Jean live?* ~ (Tom and Jean live) in Plymouth.
- 0 *How much butter did you buy?* ~ (I bought) half a kilo (of butter).
- 1 ~ (Lucy is going to come) tomorrow.
- 2 ~ (They borrowed) Maria's (car).
- 3 ~ (They lived here) for four years.
- 4 ~ (Michael has got) fifty (compact discs).
- 5 ~ (Pam goes to work) by bus.
- 6 ~ (They stopped working) because the lights went out.
- 7 ~ (The coast is) five miles (from here).

G Írjunk kérdéseket az adott válaszokhoz a zárójelben lévő szavak segítségével.

- 0 (Tina Taylor interviewed the winner.)
 - a Who *did Tina Taylor interview?* ~ The winner.
 - b Who *interviewed the winner?* ~ Tina Taylor.
- 1 (Jack is going to help Susan.)
 - a Who ~ He's going to help Susan.
 - b Who ~ Jack.
- 2 (John won three prizes.)
 - a How many ~ Three.
 - b Who ~ John.
- 3 (There are three machines; the machine in the corner makes the boxes.)
 - a Which ~ The one in the corner.
 - b What ~ Boxes.

H Tegyük fel két kérdést mindegyik helyzetben a zárójelben megadott ige segítségével.

- 0 There is an umbrella here. I don't know who it belongs to. (leave)
 - a *Whose umbrella is this?*
 - b *Who's left an umbrella here?*
- 1 I found a purse. I don't know who it belongs to. (lose)
 - a Whose
 - b Who's
- 2 There is a car parked in my space! (park)
 - a Whose
 - b Who's
- 3 I found a ten pound note on the floor. (drop)
 - a Whose
 - b Who's

I A példa alapján írjunk két-két kérdést és választ a képeken látható diákokkal kapcsolatban a megadott szavak segítségével. Minden szót használjunk.

football swimming short long dark blonde muscular
tennis small slim basketball athletic tall

0 *What does Carol look like?*

She's small and slim, and she has long blonde hair.

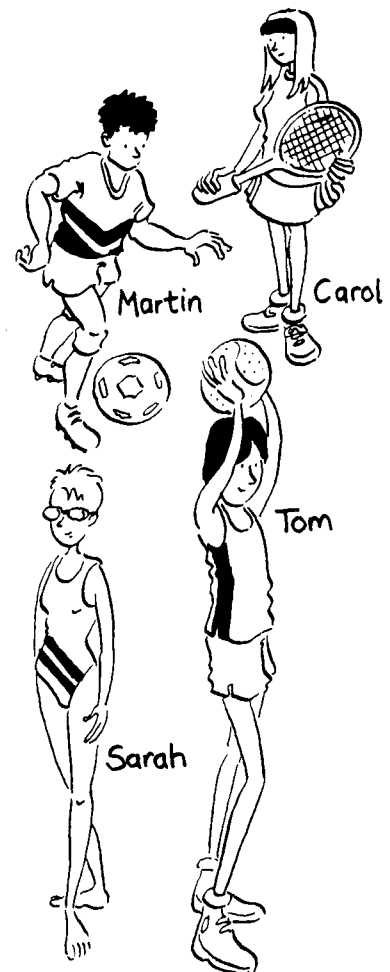
What sport does she like?

She likes tennis.

1

2

3



I A Jones házaspár házat szeretne vásárolni. Fordítsuk le az ingatlanügynökkel folytatott beszélgetést.

MR JONES: Milyen a ház?

ÜGYNÖK: Szép régi ház. Azt hiszem, tetszeni fog önöknek.

MR JONES: Mennyire régi?

ÜGYNÖK: Körülbelül százéves.

MR JONES: Hol van?

ÜGYNÖK: Egy kisvárosban York mellett.

MR JONES: Ki lakik most ott?

ÜGYNÖK: Mr Ryan, a ház tulajdonosa.

MR JONES: Miért akarja eladni?

ÜGYNÖK: Mert Manchesterbe költözik. Ott talált munkát.

MR JONES: Mikor költözik?

ÜGYNÖK: Hamarosan.

MR JONES: Mikor nézhetjük meg a házat?

ÜGYNÖK: Bármikor. Máris felhívom.

MRS JONES: Várjon egy percet! Még tudnom kell néhány dolgot. Hány hálószoba van?

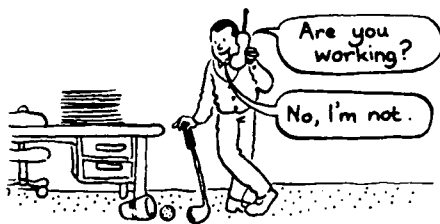
ÜGYNÖK: Két hálószoba van. Mindkettő meglehetősen nagy.

MRS JONES: Milyen messze van a legközelebbi bolt?

ÜGYNÖK: Egy kis bolt és a bank egészen közel van, de autóbuszra kell szállni, ha a legközelebbi bevásárlóközpontba akarnak menni.

MRS JONES: Rendben. Menjünk, nézzük meg. Még egy kérdés. Mennyibe kerül?

1 Nézzük meg a következő példákat:



KÉRDÉS	RÖVID VÁLASZ
<i>Is he at work?</i>	~ <i>Yes, he is.</i>
<i>Can I come?</i>	~ <i>No, you can't.</i>
<i>Do you like it?</i>	~ <i>Yes, I do.</i>
<i>Does she live here?</i>	~ <i>No, she doesn't.</i>

A rövid válasz azt jelenti, hogy a válaszban nem ismételjük meg az egész kérdést.

Is she sick? { ~ *Yes, she is sick.* (Ez teljes válasz, itt a kérdés minden szavát megismételtük)
~ *Yes, she is.* (rövid válasz)

Rövid választ (igen/nem) eldöntendő kérdésre adhatunk:

Are you coming? { ~ *Yes, I am.*
~ *No, I'm not.*

2 A rövid válaszban nem ismételjük meg a kérdőmondatban szereplő főigét:

Did he go to Paris? ~ *Yes, he did.* NEM: *Yes, he did go.*

Is she waiting? ~ *Yes, she is waiting.*

Ha a kérdésben a **be** létige szerepel, a rövid válaszban is ezt használjuk:

Are you tired? ~ *Yes, I am.*

Is he hungry? ~ *Yes, he is.*

Is there a café near here? ~ *Yes, there is.*

Were there enough sandwiches? ~ *Yes, there were.*

Figyelem! A magyar nyelvben a rövid válasz lehet egyszerűen: 'Igen'. Az angolban ennire rövid választ adni udvariatlan, ott a rövid válaszban segédigét és személyes névmást is használunk. *Are you tired?* ~ *Yes, I am.* (NEM: *Yes.*)

Tagadó válasznál a segédigéhez a **not (n't)** tagadószó járul:

Will they win? ~ *No, they won't.*

Did Paul come? ~ *No, he didn't.*

Are you cold? ~ *No, I'm not.*

Az igenlő rövid válaszban nem használjuk az összevont alakokat:

Are you tired? ~ *Yes, I am.* (NEM: *Yes, I'm.*)

Is he happy? ~ *Yes, he is.* (NEM: *Yes, he's.*)

3 Rövid válasszal fejezhetjük ki egyetértésünket vagy ellenvéleményünket egy elhangzott megállapítással kapcsolatban:

KIJELENTÉS	VÁLASZ
<i>He's working hard.</i> (= Keményen dolgozik.)	~ <i>Yes, he is.</i> (= Hát igen./ Bizony.)
<i>She's at work.</i> (= A munkahelyén van.)	~ <i>No, she isn't.</i> (= Dehogy van.)
<i>She loves films.</i> (= Szereti a filmeket.)	~ <i>Yes, she does.</i> (= Így van.)

Ha az ige az állítást tartalmazó mondatban egyszerű jelenben van, a **do/does** segédigét, ha egyszerű múltban, akkor a **did** segédigét használjuk a rövid válaszban:

She loves films. ~ *Yes, she does.*

He liked the book. ~ *Yes, he did.*

4 Írásban a **Yes** vagy **No** után vesszőt teszünk:
He lives in London. ~ *No, he doesn't.*

Gyakorlatok

A Húzzuk át a rövid válaszban felesleges részt, és az utolsó szükséges szó után tegyünk pontot.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 0 Can you come tonight? | ~ Yes, I can. come tonight. |
| 1 Will you see Ted tomorrow? | ~ Yes, I will see Ted tomorrow. |
| 2 Do you have toast for breakfast? | ~ No, I don't have toast for breakfast. |
| 3 Do you drive to work? | ~ Yes, I do drive to work. |
| 4 Did she come yesterday? | ~ No, she didn't come yesterday. |
| 5 Were you tired after the game? | ~ Yes, I was tired after the game. |
| 6 Can she sing well? | ~ No, she can't sing well. |
| 7 Did Tom have a holiday? | ~ Yes, he did have a holiday. |

- 8 Is she studying French? ~ Yes, she is studying French.
 9 Do you play basketball? ~ No, I don't play basketball.
 10 Are you thirsty? ~ No, I'm not thirsty.

B Keressük meg a kérdésekhez tartozó választ.

Yes, she did. No, he doesn't. No, she wasn't. Yes, he did. Yes, I will.
~~Yes, they did.~~ Yes, I do. No, they aren't. No, I can't.

- 0 Did they all leave? ~ *Yes, they did.*
 1 Does Steve work hard? ~
 2 Do you like this music? ~
 3 Are they listening? ~
 4 Did she enjoy her holiday? ~
 5 Was Mary at the concert? ~
 6 Will you phone this weekend? ~
 7 Can you play the guitar? ~
 8 Did he go to bed? ~

C Adjunk igenlő és tagadó választ a kérdésekre.

- 0 Was the film good? ~ *Yes, it was.*
 ~ *No, it wasn't.*
 1 Does he enjoy French food? ~ Yes,
 ~ No,
 2 Can Billy swim? ~ Yes,
 ~ No,
 3 Will they return tonight? ~ Yes,
 ~ No,
 4 Do you want to buy that shirt? ~ Yes,
 ~ No,
 5 Are they coming in Mike's car? ~ Yes,
 ~
 6 Did you ask Sally to come? ~
 ~

D Egészítsük ki a következő kérdésekre adott rövid válaszokat.

- 0 Does everyone have to vote in Britain? No, *they don't.*
 1 Is the age for voting 18? Yes,
 2 Does the Prime Minister live at 10 Downing Street? Yes,
 3 Are there two main political parties in Britain? Yes,
 4 Do general elections happen every three years? No,
 5 Was there a female Prime Minister in 1980? Yes,
 6 Are the Houses of Parliament in Manchester? No,
 7 Does the Queen open Parliament? Yes,
 8 Do people in Britain care about politics? Yes,

- 1 Az utókérdés kijelentő mondathoz kapcsolt rövid kérdés (pl. **isn't it?**, **haven't we?**):

HENRY: *We've met before, **haven't we?*** (= Már találkoztunk, ugye?)

JEFF: *Yes, we have.*

- 2 Figyeljük meg a következő párbeszéd részletet:

ANNA: *Sandra is Swiss.* (= Sandra svájci.)

DAVID: *No, she's French, **isn't she?*** (= Nem, francia. Vagy nem? – Én azt hittem. Lehet, hogy tévedek?)

Amikor az utókérdés valóságos kérdés, a mondat végén emelkedő hanglejtést használunk.

Viszont ha az utókérdés nem igazi kérdés, ereszkedő hanglejtést használunk:

*That was a boring programme, **wasn't it?***
(= Unalmas műsor volt, ugye?)

- 3 Az utókérdésben használt segédige a főmondatban szereplő igétől függ:

IGE	+ UTÓKÉRDÉS
be:	<i>You're French, aren't you?</i> (A be megfelelő alakja: are – aren't)
ige:	<i>He plays golf, doesn't he?</i> (A do segédige megfelelő alakja: plays – doesn't)
segédige:	<i>It has arrived, hasn't it?</i> (A segédige megfelelő alakja: has – hasn't)

- 4 Állító mondatnál az utókérdésben a tagadó alakot használjuk:

ÁLLÍTÓ ALAK	+ TAGADÓ ALAK
<i>I'm right,</i>	<i>aren't I?</i>
(Figyelem! A be egyes szám első személyben amn't , HANEM aren't .)	
<i>You're 18,</i>	<i>aren't you?</i>
<i>They're getting tired,</i>	<i>aren't they?</i>
<i>They were friendly,</i>	<i>weren't they?</i>
<i>He lives in France</i>	<i>doesn't he?</i>
<i>You speak Spanish,</i>	<i>don't you?</i>
<i>You passed your exams,</i>	<i>didn't you?</i>
<i>She has left,</i>	<i>hasn't she?</i>
<i>You can drive,</i>	<i>can't you?</i>
<i>The bus will come soon,</i>	<i>won't it?</i>
<i>There's enough food,</i>	<i>isn't there?</i>

- 5 Tagadó mondatnál az utókérdésben állító igealakot használunk:

TAGADÓ ALAK	+ ÁLLÍTÓ ALAK
<i>It isn't very cheap,</i>	<i>is it?</i>
<i>We aren't going to be late,</i>	<i>are we?</i>
<i>She wasn't angry,</i>	<i>was she?</i>
<i>You don't like this,</i>	<i>do you?</i>
<i>She didn't win,</i>	<i>did she?</i>
<i>She hasn't visited Ireland,</i>	<i>has she?</i>
<i>She can't drive,</i>	<i>can she?</i>
<i>It won't rain today,</i>	<i>will it?</i>
<i>There aren't many chairs,</i>	<i>are there?</i>

Gyakorlatok

- A Fejezzük be a mondatokat a megfelelő utókérdéssel.

aren't you? can you? didn't you? does it? don't you? ~~have we?~~ is it? is there?
isn't it? does it? don't you? have we? is it? is there? isn't it?

JO: We haven't met before, ⁰ ***have we?***

TIM: No, I've just arrived.

JO: Ah, yes. You and your friends came last week, ¹

TIM: Well, two weeks ago actually.

JO: You come from Australia, ²

TIM: Yes, from Sydney. And you're from Scotland, ³

JO: Yes, that's right. Tell me about Sydney. It's very hot there, ⁴

TIM: Most of the time, but not always.

JO: But it never gets very cold, ⁵

TIM: Well, no, not as cold as northern Europe, for example.

JO: So you can't do winter sports then, ⁶

TIM: No, but we do a lot of surfing. There isn't anywhere to surf here, ⁷

JO: That's true. But nowhere is perfect, ⁸

B Fejezzük be a mondatokat utókérdéssel.

- 0 The programme starts at seven o'clock, *doesn't it?*? ~ Yes, that's right.
- 1 I can use this ticket on any bus,? ~ Yes, you can.
- 2 The bill won't be very high,? ~ No, I don't think so.
- 3 He wasn't very polite,? ~ No, he wasn't.
- 4 I didn't make a mistake,? ~ No, you didn't.
- 5 That was a lovely meal,? ~ Yes, it was delicious.
- 6 They left last week,? ~ Yes, that's right.

C Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet utókérdésekkel.

MARTHA: I'm going to Helsinki tomorrow.

CHARLES: That's in Finland, ¹

MARTHA: Yes, it's the capital.

CHARLES: You've been there before, ²

MARTHA: Yes, two years ago.

CHARLES: But you can't speak Finnish, ³

MARTHA: No, I can't.

CHARLES: But a lot of Finnish people speak English, ⁴

MARTHA: Yes.

CHARLES: Well, I'll see you before you leave, ⁵

MARTHA: Yes, I'll see you tonight.

D Fejezzük be a megkezdett mondatokat a válaszok alapján, utókérdés használatával.

- 0 A: She *comes from Hungary, doesn't she?*
- B: Yes, she comes from Hungary.
- 1 A: You can
- B: Yes, I can speak French very well.
- 2 A: You haven't
- B: No, I haven't heard this story.
- 3 A: You went
- B: Yes, I went to Frank's party.
- 4 A: It isn't
- B: No, it isn't very far from here.
- 5 A: She won't
- B: No, she won't be angry.

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:



So am I. (= Én is.)

2 További példák:

He **was** very angry. (= Nagyon mérges volt.)
 ~ So **was** I. (= Én is.)
 My flat's quite small. (= A lakásom elég kicsi.)
 ~ So **is** mine. (= Az enyém is.)
 They **were** waiting. ~ So **was** she.
 I'm going to have tea. ~ So **am** I.
 Ann **has** finished her work and so **has** Mary.
 They've been waiting. ~ So **has** she.
 I **work** in an office. ~ So **do** I.
 I **enjoyed** the film. ~ So **did** I.
 Philip **will** pass the exam and so **will** you.
 (= Philip át fog menni a vizsgán, és te is.)
 He **can** drive. ~ So **can** she.

Figyeljük meg:

- állító mondat esetén az állításhoz fűzött megjegyzésben a **so** szót használjuk;
- az állításban használt ige vagy igei szerkezet határozza meg, hogy milyen segédige áll a **so** után.

So am I helyett mondhatjuk azt is, hogy **I am too**, a **So is she** helyett **She is too** – mindkét változat ugyanazt jelenti.

3 További példák:

I'm tired. ~ I **am** too.
 We've got a small flat. ~ We **have** too.
 I **work** in an office. ~ I **do** too.
 Bill **enjoyed** the film and I **did** too.
 He **can** drive. ~ She **can** too.

4 Tagadó mondat után a **Neither am I/Nor am I** (= Én sem.) típusú szerkezetet használjuk:

I'm **not** tired. ~ **Neither am** I. (= Nem vagyok fáradt. ~ Én sem.)
 I **haven't** seen that film. ~ **Neither have** I.
 I **don't** like this place. ~ **Neither do** I.
 I **didn't** see that play. ~ **Neither did** I.
 Tom's sister **can't** drive and **neither can** he.
 (= Tom nővére nem tud vezetni, és maga Tom sem.)

5 Az **I'm not either, She doesn't either** ugyanazt jelenti, mint a **Neither am I**, illetve a **Neither does she**:

I'm **not** tired. ~ I'm **not** either.
 I **haven't** seen that film. ~ I **haven't** either.
 I **don't** like this place. ~ I **don't** either.
 I **didn't** see that play. ~ I **didn't** either.
 His sister **can't** drive and he **can't** either.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **so, too, either** vagy **neither** szavakkal.

- 0 I really enjoyed that meal. ~ **So** did I.
- 0 I haven't done the homework. ~ I haven't **either**
- 0 We live in the centre of town. ~ We do **too**
- 1 I don't like football. ~ do I.
- 2 I haven't been to America. ~ have I.
- 3 My father works in an office. ~ does mine.
- 4 I haven't read a newspaper today. ~ have I.
- 5 I play a lot of different sports. ~ I do
- 6 I've been working very hard lately. ~ have I.
- 7 Ann will be at the party and will Jane.
- 8 My brother can't speak any foreign languages and can my sister.
- 9 Helen sent me a birthday card and Robin did
- 10 George isn't going to the meeting and I'm not

- 11 Tony arrived late and did I.
 12 Kathy didn't go to the concert and did I.

B A példa alapján fűzzünk megjegyzést a következő állításokhoz **so** vagy **neither** használatával.

- 0 I've got a cold. (I) ~ *So have I.*
 0 I haven't got much money. (I) ~ *Neither have I.*
 1 We're going to the concert. (we) ~
 2 My pen doesn't work. (mine) ~
 3 I haven't read today's paper. (I) ~
 4 My meal was excellent. (mine) ~
 5 I've been ill. (Frank) ~
 6 Ron didn't go to the party. (George) ~
 7 I can't understand this game. (I) ~
 8 I'm not working tomorrow. (I) ~
 9 Ruth passed the exam. (John) ~
 10 I've eaten enough. (I) ~
 11 I'm going to see that film. (we) ~
 12 My car is very old. (mine) ~

C A táblázatban megadott információ alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat **so**, **too**, **either** vagy **neither** használatával.

	JULIA	ROBERT	SANDRA	PAUL
Lives in:	New York	Chicago	New York	Los Angeles
Speaks:	Spanish	French	Spanish	French
Drives?	Yes	No	No	Yes
Likes:	reading	travelling	travelling	reading
Plays:	basketball	basketball	tennis	tennis

- 0 Julia lives in New York and Sandra *does too*
 0 Julia lives in New York and *so does* Sandra.
 1 Robert doesn't live in New York and Paul.
 2 Robert doesn't live in New York and Paul
 3 Julia speaks Spanish and Sandra.
 4 Julia speaks Spanish and Sandra
 5 Robert can't speak Spanish and Paul.
 6 Robert can't speak Spanish and Paul
 7 Julia can drive and Paul
 8 Robert can't drive and Sandra.
 9 Julia has passed her driving test and Paul.
 10 Robert likes travelling and Sandra.
 11 Julia likes reading and Paul
 12 Julia plays basketball and Robert.
 13 Sandra doesn't play basketball and Paul.

Képesség és lehetőség kifejezése (can, can't, could, couldn't, be able to)

1 A can segédigével így alkotunk mondatot:

can + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV TO NÉLKÜL
I can <i>ski</i> . (= Tudok síelni.)

ÁLLÍTÁS

I/he/she/it/you/we/they **can** *ski*.

TAGADÁS

I/he/she/it/you (stb.) **cannot/can't** *ski*.

KÉRDÉS

Can I/he/she/it/you (stb.) *swim*?

A beszélt nyelvben **cannot** helyett általában a **can't** alakot használjuk:

He **can't** swim.

(Can you swim? ~ Rövid válasz: No, I **can't**.)

Lásd a 46. fejezetet.)

2 A can és a can't azt fejezi ki, hogy valamit képesek vagyunk/nem vagyunk képesek megcsinálni, valamit tudunk vagy nem tudunk:

She **can** *speak Japanese*. (Beszél japánul.)

He **can't** *ski*. (= Nem tud síelni.)

A **can/can't** azt is jelentheti, hogy valami egy adott pillanatban lehetséges:

I **can** *see the moon*. (= Látom a holdat. = Látható a hold.)

3 A could segédigével így alkotunk mondatot:

could + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV TO NÉLKÜL
I could <i>ski</i> . (= Tudtam síelni.)

ÁLLÍTÁS

I/he/she/it/you/we/they **could** *ski*.

TAGADÁS

I/he/you (stb.) **could not/couldn't** *ski*.

KÉRDÉS

Could I/he/you (stb.) *ski*?

A **could** azt fejezi ki, hogy a múltban valamit tudtunk, valamire képesek voltunk:



I **could** *run* 100 metres in 12 seconds when I was young.

Susan **could** *read* when she was three years old.

Ha olyan tevékenységről beszélünk, amelyre a múlt egy adott pillanatában voltunk képesek, a **could** segédige helyett általában a **was/were able to** szerkezetet használjuk:

I **was able to** *visit her yesterday*. (= Tegnap meg tudtam látogatni.) NEM: ~~I could visit her yesterday.~~

A **couldn't** egyaránt kifejezheti azt, hogy valamire a múltban nem voltunk képesek, és azt is, hogy egy adott alkalommal nem:

I **couldn't** *understand physics at all when I was at school*. (= Iskolás koromban egyáltalán nem tudtam megérteni a fizikát.)

I **couldn't** *see the film because there was a really tall man in front of me*. (= Nem láttam a filmet, mert egy nagyon magas ember ült előttem.)

4 Jövő időben a will + be able to szerkezetet használhatjuk.

(A ~~will can~~ helytelen.)

The baby **will be able to** *talk soon*.

Gyakorlatok

A képek és a példa alapján és alkossunk rövid párbeszédet **can** vagy **can't** használatával.

0



play tennis



play the violin

A: **Can she** *play tennis*?

B: Yes, **she can**.

A: **Can she** *play the violin*?

B: No, **she can't**. **She can** *play tennis*,
but **she can't** *play the violin*.

1



see the hills



see the sea

A:?
 B: Yes,
 A:?
 B: No,
 but

2



speak Japanese



speak French

A:?
 B: No,
 A:?
 B: Yes,
 but

3



eat the chips



eat the fish

A:?
 B: Yes,
 A:?
 B: No,
 but

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **can**, **can't**, **could** vagy **couldn't** használatával.

- 0 You don't have to shout. I *can* hear you very well.
- 0 I *couldn't* watch that programme last night because I had to go out.
- 1 He play last week because he was injured.
- 2 He eats in restaurants all the time because he cook.
- 3 I give you a lift in my car because it isn't working at the moment.
- 4 I didn't have a good seat in the theatre, so I see the stage very well.
- 5 John doesn't need a calculator. He do very difficult sums in his head.
- 6 She's very good at music. She play three instruments.
- 7 I find my address book. Do you know where it is?
- 8 He spoke very quickly and I understand anything he said.
- 9 We go on the trip because we afford it. It was very expensive.
- 10 I do any more work because I was very tired, so I stopped.
- 11 She spoke very clearly. I understand everything.
- 12 Our dog is very clever. It turn the lights on.
- 13 Look at the rain. We leave now because we haven't got an umbrella.
- 14 In the days before fridges, you keep food for only a couple of days.
- 15 This computer programme translate into six languages.
- 16 Gorillas make noises but they speak.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **was able to** vagy **were able to** szerkezettel.

- 0 I *was able to* get the last ticket for the concert.
- 1 After waiting for a long time, we get into the museum.
- 2 They buy a new carpet very cheaply in the sales.
- 3 I eat three plates of pasta in the restaurant last night!
- 4 Our friends visit us yesterday afternoon despite the bad weather.
- 5 I finish my homework in half an hour today.
- 6 She have a long holiday last year.

D A táblázatban megadott információ alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat **can**, **could** vagy **will be able to** használatával.

	LAST YEAR	NOW	HOPES FOR THE FUTURE
Joy	swim 100 metres	swim 1000 metres	swim for her club team
Mark	type 15 words per minute	type 30 words per minute	work as a secretary
Bill	lift 25 kilos	lift 100 kilos	join a weightlifting team
Anne	speak only a little French	speak French quite well	work as an interpreter
Carol	only cook omelettes	cook quite well	work as a chef
Tom	only play the piano	play the piano and the violin	play in an orchestra
Susan	only ride a bike	drive a car	drive a racing car
Frank	jump only 5 metres	jump 7 metres	represent his club
Gail	only ski down blue slopes	ski down red slopes	teach skiing

- 0 Last year Joy *could swim 100 metres* Now, *she can swim 1000 metres*
- 0 At the moment Anne *can speak French* quite well, and if she studies hard, perhaps *she'll be able to work* as an interpreter.
- 1 Last year Mark Now,
- 2 At the moment Bill , and if he trains hard, perhaps
- 3 Last year Anne Now,
- 4 At the moment Carol , and if she works hard, perhaps
- 5 Last year Tom Now, , and if he works hard, perhaps
- 6 Last year Susan Now, , and she hopes that one day
- 7 This year Frank , although last year he If he does well, one day he
- 8 Gail hopes that one day she Although last year she , now she

- E** Jack 19 éves, és éppen elköltözik otthonról, mert egy másik városban fog egyetemre járni. Fogalmazzuk meg kérdésben a szülei és saját aggodalmait a jövővel kapcsolatban. Használjunk **be able to** szerkezetet.

JACK'S PARENTS' WORRIES

cook for himself?
pass all his exams?
come home at weekends?
keep his room tidy?
do his own washing?

JACK'S WORRIES

get up in time for lectures?
find time to study?
afford to go out?
keep in touch with my old friends?
understand the lectures?

Jack's parents

- 0 *Will he be able to cook for himself?*
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4

Jack

- 0 *Will I be able to get up in time for lectures?*
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

- F** Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott igékkel és **could**, **couldn't** vagy **was/were able to** használatával.

contact escape get into move put see send sleep swim

During the night of the storm no one ⁰ *could sleep* because of the noise of the wind. In the morning we ¹ that something was seriously wrong. The engines were silent and the ship's radio was broken so the boat ² and no one ³ a message for help. Luckily, one of the passengers had a good mobile phone, so he ⁴ the coast guard. But then the ship began to sink fast. Some of the passengers were frightened because they ⁵ , but luckily everyone ⁶ the lifeboats. We ⁷ our luggage in the lifeboats, so we had to leave everything behind. But the important thing was that we ⁸ safely and it wasn't long before the coast guard found us.

- G** Fordítsuk le a következő szöveget.

Carol kisöccse egy éves. A múlt héten még nem tudott járni, de ma felállt és sikerült néhány lépést megtennie. Oda tudott menni a könyvespolchoz, és le tudta venni az egyik könyvet.

Carol húga hat éves. A múlt hónapban még nem tudott úszni, és biciklizni sem tudott. Most úszóleckékre jár, és tud úszni egy kicsit. Carol biciklizni tanítja. Körbe tud biciklizni a kertben, és nemsokára képes lesz biciklivel elmenni a boltba Carollal.

Carol nagyapja hetven éves. Amikor fiatal volt, tudott teniszezni, és le tudta futni a maratont. Most nem tud ennyit futni, de tud úszni, és hosszú sétákat tesz. Tornagyakorlatokat is tud végezni.

- 1 A **can** és **could** segédigékkel kérést fejezhetünk ki:

Can/could + I/we + have ...?				
Can	I	have	a coffee?	
(= Kaphatok/Kérek egy kávét.)				
Could	I	have	a receipt?	
(= Kaphatnék egy elismervényt?)				
Could	we	have	two tickets, please?	
Can	I	have	some sugar?	



- A **Could I?** udvariasabb, mint a **Can I?**

- 2 A **can**, **may** és **could** segédigével engedélyt kérhetünk:

Can/May/ Could + I/we + TO NÉLKÜLI FŐNÉVI IGENÉV				
May	I	use	your pen?	
(= Használhatom a tolladat?)				

Could we look at your map, please?
Can I borrow your tennis racket, please?

- A **can** vagy **may** (a **could** nem) azt is kifejezi, hogy valamit megengedünk:
You can/may leave your bag here.
 (= Itt hagyhatod a csomagodat.)
- Amikor nem egy emberre vonatkozó, hanem általánosan mindenkre érvényes engedélyről van szó, a **can** segédigét használjuk:
In Britain, people can drive a car when they are 17.
- Hivatalos engedélyt a **may** segédige is kifejezhet:
Bags may be left here.
- Általános engedélyezést vagy tilalmat a **be allowed to** szerkezettel is kifejezhetünk:
At that school students can wear/are allowed to wear jeans.

- 3 A **Can you?**, **Could you?** és **Would you?** (de a **May you?** nem) azt is kifejezheti, hogy valakitől valamit kérünk. A **could** és a **would** formálisabb és udvariasabb, mint a **can**.

Can/Could/ Would + you + TO NÉLKÜLI FŐNÉVI IGENÉV				
Can	you	help	me?	
(= Tudnál nekem segíteni?)				

Could you buy me a newspaper?
I'm hot. Would you open the window, please? ~
Yes, of course.

Gyakorlatok

- A Tegyük helyes sorrendbe a zárójelben megadott szavakat. (Fogalmazzunk meg kéréseket.)

0 (have/a return ticket to York/could/please/I)
Could I have a return ticket to York, please?

1 (please/I/can/a glass of orange juice/have)

2 (we/listen to your new CD/can)

3 (your phone/please/use/I/can)

4 (may/borrow/your camera tomorrow/I)

5 (please/the menu/pass/you/could)

6 (can/this letter for me/you/post)

- B** Hogyan kérnénk az alábbi dolgokat a különböző helyszíneken? Használjuk a megadott kifejezéseket és a zárójelben lévő szerkezetet.

have a map of the town have a single room ~~have a ticket for Glasgow~~
have two melons have some fish and chips

- 0 PLACE: a train station
(could I ... please) *Could I have a ticket for Glasgow, please?*
- 1 PLACE: a greengrocer's
(can I ... please)
- 2 PLACE: a restaurant
(can I ... please)
- 3 PLACE: a hotel
(could I ... please)
- 4 PLACE: a tourist information centre
(could I ... please)

- C** Kérjünk engedélyt a zárójelben megadott szerkezet és a megfelelő kifejezés segítségével.

use your photocopier ~~use your dictionary~~ turn on the TV close the window borrow your pen

- 0 SITUATION: You want to find the meaning of a word.
(may I) *May I use your dictionary?*
- 1 SITUATION: You want to write down a telephone number.
(can I)
- 2 SITUATION: You want to watch a programme.
(can I ... please)
- 3 SITUATION: You're feeling cold.
(may I)
- 4 SITUATION: You need a photocopy of a letter.
(may I ... please)

- D** Kérjünk segítséget az adott helyzetben a megfelelő kifejezés és a zárójelben megadott szerkezet használatával.

tell me the time ~~buy me a magazine~~ carry one of these cases
tell me the way to Buckingham Palace

- 0 PROBLEM: You're sick. You're in bed. You're bored.
(can you ... please) *Can you buy me a magazine, please?*
- 1 PROBLEM: Your suitcases are very heavy.
(could you)
- 2 PROBLEM: You're lost in London.
(could you ... please)
- 3 PROBLEM: You've forgotten to put your watch on.
(can you)



Utasítás, tanács, tiltás (must, mustn't)

1 A must segédigével így alkotunk mondatokat:

must	+ TO NÉLKÜLI FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
I must	go. (= Feltétlenül mennem kell.)

ÁLLÍTÁS

I/he/she/it/you/we/they **must go**.

TAGADÁS

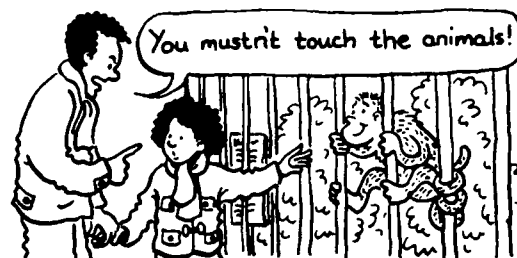
I/he/she/you (stb.) **must not/mustn't go**.

2 must (= kell)

- A **You must** kezdetű mondat tartalmazhat szigorú parancsot vagy figyelmeztetést :
You must all finish your work before you go home!
You must pay attention when I'm talking to you!
- A **You must** szerepel olyan nyilvános helyeken elhelyezett feliratokon is, amelyek mindenkre érvényes szabályokat vagy utasításokat tartalmaznak:
You must pay before you enter the museum.
All visitors must go to reception when they arrive.
- Tanácsot is megfogalmazhatunk a **You must** kezdetű mondatokkal:
You must visit the art gallery. The paintings there are fantastic.
You must read this book; it's fantastic!
- Amikor úgy érezzük, hogy valamit meg kell tennünk, a mondatot az **I must** vagy a **We must** szavakkal kezdhethetjük:
I must leave now, I'm getting tired.
 (= Mennem kell, kezdek fáradt lenni.)
I haven't got any money. I must get a job.
We must buy some milk at the supermarket.

3 mustn't (= nem szabad/tilos)

- A **mustn't** tiltást vagy figyelmeztetést fejez ki:



You mustn't be late.

You mustn't forget to buy your ticket.

- A figyelmeztetés saját magunknak is szólhat:
I mustn't forget my passport.
We mustn't spend all our money today!

4 A must és a mustn't a jelenre és a jövőre is vonatkozhat:

JELEN

I'm tired. I must go to bed.

You mustn't speak to her now!

JÖVŐ

You must book your ticket next week.

(NEM ~~You will must~~ ...)

It's my uncle's birthday next month. I must visit him.

A **must** segédige a múltra nem vonatkozhat. Helyette a **have to** segédigét használjuk. (További tudnivalók az 52. fejezetben található.)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a must/mustn't segédigével.

- 0 You **mustn't** cross the road without looking. It's dangerous.
- 1 You try the food that he cooks. It's delicious!
- 2 The exam is next month. I work harder.
- 3 You forget your umbrella. It's going to rain.
- 4 We stay here any longer. We must go to the station now, or we'll miss our train.
- 5 You learn to swim before you go sailing.
- 6 I phone John tonight. I haven't spoken to him for a long time.
- 7 You listen or you won't understand.

- 8 It's seven o'clock. Shall we go? We miss the concert.
 9 Be careful! You lose that money.
 10 It's an important match. You play well.
 11 You read this book. It's fantastic.
 12 You go into the cinema without a ticket.

B A Rio szálloda nem túl vendégszerető hely, rengeteg szabályt kell betartani. Olvassuk el a listát, és írjunk mondatokat a **must/mustn't** segítségével.

NOTICE TO GUESTS

Carry your own suitcases to your room.
 Do not take food into your room.
 Pay for your room when you arrive.
 Vacate your room by 9 a.m. on the day you leave.
 Do not ask hotel staff for tourist information.
 Return to the hotel before 10 p.m. every night.



- 0 *You must carry* your own suitcases to your room.
 1 You food into your room.
 2 for your room when you arrive.
 3 your room by 9 a.m. on the day you leave.
 4 hotel staff for tourist information.
 5 to the hotel before 10 p.m. every night.

C Henry változtatni akar szokásain. Írjunk a képek alapján mondatokat a megfelelő kifejezéssel és a **must/mustn't** segítségével.

study in the evening
 run every morning
~~dress smartly~~
 watch TV all day
~~smoke~~
 visit my grandmother
 sleep in the afternoon
 dance all night

0



I mustn't smoke.

0



I must dress smartly.

1



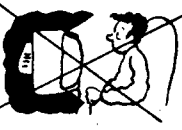
2



3



4



5



6





Kell, nem kell (have to, don't have to)

1 A have to alakjai egyszerű jelenben:

ÁLLÍTÁS ÉS TAGADÁS				
I/you/we/they	{	have don't have	}	to go.
He/she/it	{	has doesn't have	}	
KÉRDÉS				
Do	I/you/we/they	}	have	to go?
Does	he/she/it	}		

2 have to (= kell)

A **have to** segítségével azt fejezhetjük ki, hogy valamit azért kell megtennünk, mert bizonyos, mások által előírt szabályokat be kell tartanunk:

*We **have to pay** the rent every month.*

(= Minden hónapban kell lakbért fizetnünk.

~ Így szól a szerződés.)

*My brother **has to travel** a lot in his job.*

Ha olyasmiről beszélünk, amit mi magunk tartunk fontosnak, a **must** segítségével használjuk (lásd az 51. fejezetet).

3 Akkor is a have to segítségével használjuk, amikor valamit azért kell megtennünk, mert a körülmények kényszerítenek rá:

*I **have to get** a bus to school.*

*She **has to live** on a small income.*

4 A Do I/you . . . have to alakot használjuk, ha azt kérdezzük, hogy valamit meg kell-e tennünk:

*Do I **have to show** my passport?*

*Do you **have to wear** a uniform at work?*

5 A don't have to azt jelenti, hogy valamit nem kell megtennünk:



*We **don't have to hurry**; we're early.*

*I **don't have to get up** early on Sunday. I can stay in bed if I want.*

6 A have to helyett a have got to alak is használható:

*Do you **have to/Have you got to** get up early tomorrow? ~ Yes, I **have to/I've got to** get up at six o'clock.*

*They **don't have to/haven't got to** come this afternoon.*

Figyelem! A **have got to** alak múlt időben nem használható:

*They **had to** leave early.* (= Korán el kellett menniük.) A ~~had got to~~ helytelen.

7 Múlt időben a had to alakot használjuk.

Figyelem! Tagadó alakja **didn't have to**.

*I **had to do** a lot of work yesterday.*

*We **didn't have to play** football at school.*

NEM: ~~We hadn't to play football.~~

*Did you **have to work** hard for the exam?*

8 Jövő időben a will have to/'ll have to szerkezetet használjuk:

*He'll **have to look** for another job.*

*We **won't have to get** tickets in advance.*

*Will they **have to get** visas?*

De a **have to** jelen idejű alakkal jövő időt is kifejezhetünk:

*I **have to do** some shopping tomorrow.*

*Do you **have to work** next weekend?*

Gyakorlatok

A Az alábbi táblázatban néhány foglalkozással kapcsolatban találunk információt. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **have to** vagy **don't have to** használatával.

	Shop assistants	Bank clerks	Doctors	Teachers
deal with the public	✓	✓	✓	X
work on Sundays	✓	X	✓	X
work with money	✓	✓	X	X
wear uniforms	✓	X	✓	X

- 0 Shop assistants *have to deal* with the public.
 1 Teachers the public.
 2 Teachers on Sundays.
 3 Doctors on Sundays.
 4 Shop assistants with money.
 5 Bank clerks with money.
 6 Doctors with money.
 7 Shop assistants often uniforms.
 8 Teachers uniforms.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **have to** segédige és a zárójelben megadott kifejezések alkalmazásával. Figyeljünk a megfelelő igeidő használatára.

- 0 *I have to leave* (I/leave) now; I've got an appointment at the dentist's.
 0 *Did you have to study* (you/study) literature when you were at school?
 0 *You don't have to come* (You/not/come) with me now if you don't want to.
 1 (I/not/work) hard because the job was very easy.
 2 (I/do) this work now, or can I do it tomorrow?
 3 (I/run) to school because I was late.
 4 (I/go) to an important meeting yesterday.
 5 (you/show) your passports when you reached the border?
 6 (I/pay) in cash next week or can I give you a cheque?
 7 (You/not/decide) today. You can tell me tomorrow.
 8 I arrived late yesterday because (I/wait) a long time for a bus.

C Írjuk meg a párbeszédeket a zárójelben megadott szavak és a **have to** megfelelő alakjának használatával.

DANIEL: 0 *Good morning. I'd like to buy a travel card. What do I have to do?*
 (Good morning. I'd like to buy a travel card. What/I/do?)

ASSISTANT: 1 (You/fill/in an application form.)

DANIEL: 2 (I/give/you/a photograph?)

ASSISTANT: 3
 (No, you/not/give/me anything, except the money!)

DAD: 0 *What did you have to do at school today?* (What/you/do/at school today?)

GEOFF: 4 (We/do/some/English tests.)

DAD: 5 (How many questions/you/answer?)

GEOFF: 6 (We/answer/about 40 grammar questions.)

DAD: 7 (you/speak/in English?)

GEOFF: 8 (No, but we/do/that next week.)



Must vagy have to; mustn't vagy don't have to

- 1** A **must** azt fejezi ki, hogy valaminek az elvégzését fontosnak tartjuk:

You **must go**. (Menned kell!)

Tagadó/tiltó alak:

You **mustn't worry**. (= Nem szabad nyugtalankodnod!)

Figyelem! A **mustn't** azt jelenti, hogy 'nem szabad', 'tilos', nem azt, hogy 'nem kell', 'nem fontos'.

- 2** A **have to** többnyire azt fejezi ki, hogy valamit szabály vagy törvény ír elő, vagy valaki kötelez minket valamire:

Doctors sometimes **have to work** on Sunday.

A tagadó és a kérdő alakban a **do** segédigét használjuk:

Teachers **don't have to work** on Sunday.

Do you **have to work** today? ~ No, I **don't**.

- 3** ÁLLÍTÁS

Állító mondatban nincs mindig lényeges különbség a **must** és **have to** használata között. Sok dolgot szabályok írnak elő, amelyek betartását mi is fontosnak tartjuk:

In Britain you **must drive** on the left. VAGY In Britain you **have to drive** on the left.

- 4** TAGADÁS

Figyeljük meg a különbséget a **mustn't** és a **don't have to** között:

- A **mustn't** gyakran azt jelenti, hogy valamit nem szabad megtenni, mert szabályellenes vagy tiltja a törvény:

You **mustn't smoke** on buses.

(= Az autóbuszokon tilos a dohányzás.)

In football you **mustn't touch** the ball with your hands. (= Futballban tilos a labdát kézzel érinteni.)

- A **don't have to** jelentése: 'nem kell', 'nem szükséges', 'nincs előírva':

In Britain, people **don't have to carry** a passport with them.

Nowadays students **do not have to learn** Latin at school.

- 5** KÉRDÉS

Kérdezni a **do/does . . . have to** (NEM **must**) alakkal kell, ha azt kérdezzük, hogy valami kötelező-e vagy nagyon fontos:

Does Michael **have to get up** early tomorrow?

Do we **have to wait** here?

Gyakorlatok

- A** Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **must/mustn't** segédigével és a megfelelő igével.

be ~~drive~~ obey park play work

- 0 Car drivers **must drive** slowly in towns.
 1 You your car in a 'No Parking' area.
 2 Everybody the traffic police.
 3 You football in the street.
 4 Drivers careful when it's foggy.
 5 Lorry drivers when they are tired.

- B** Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a **must/mustn't** segédigével és a megadott igékkel. Mindegyik igt csak egyszer használjuk.

finish forget ~~visit~~ buy ask leave tell have

A: We ⁰ **must visit** the castle before we leave.

B: Yes, and we ¹ to take a boat trip on the river.

A: Do you think I can take a holiday next month, George?

B: Yes, but you ² the boss first.

A: We ³ this work tonight.
 B: Why?
 A: We're going to have a test tomorrow.
 A: You ⁴ now.
 B: Why not? I'm tired and I want to go home.
 A: Please stay. She's going to sing the best song of the evening.
 A: I worked hard yesterday and made a lot of money.
 B: That's good but you look tired. You ⁵ a rest tomorrow.
 A: John and I are going to get married, but you ⁶ my father.
 B: Why not?
 A: John is an actor and my father doesn't like actors!
 A: I hate this flat. It's so small.
 B: I know. We ⁷ a house with a garden.

C Az alábbi szabályok egy iskola házirendjében szerepelnek. Alakítsuk át a mondatokat a **you** általános alany és a **must/mustn't** segítségével alkalmazásával.

~~Attend all classes.~~

Don't take school books home with you.

Don't make a noise in the corridors.

Don't write in school books.

Arrive for lessons on time.

Bring your own pens and paper.

- 0 **You must attend** all classes.
 1 school books home with you.
 2 a noise in the corridors.
 3 in school books.
 4 for lessons on time.
 5 your own pens and paper.

D A zárójelben lévő állítás alapján alkossunk kérdést **Do/Does ... have to** használatával, és adjunk rövid választ, ahogy a példában látjuk.

- 0 (They don't have to work hard.)
Do they have to work hard? ~ No, **they don't.**
 0 (They must stay at home.)
Do they have to stay at home? ~ Yes, **they do.**
 1 (Jim has to go to the doctor's.)
 ~ Yes,
 2 (We must show our passports.)
 ~ Yes,
 3 (Linda doesn't have to pay.)
 ~ No,
 4 (They must do all this work today.)
 ~ Yes,

E Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott szavakkal. Minden szót csak egyszer használjunk és semmi mást ne tegyünk hozzá.

Does she have to has she has must mustn't ~~have~~ does she

MARK: We ⁰ *have* to get up early tomorrow.

BOB: Why?

MARK: Have you forgotten? Angela ¹ to move to a new flat tomorrow, and I promised we would help her.

BOB: ² have to move out by a particular time?

MARK: No, there's no rush. She doesn't ³ leave her old flat before the afternoon, but there are lots of things that ⁴ to pack, so we ⁵ get there fairly early.

BOB: Why ⁶ have to move, by the way?

MARK: She said that I ⁷ tell you because she wants to tell you herself when she sees you tomorrow.

F Nézzük meg a következő feliratokat, és írjunk mondatokat **don't have to** vagy **mustn't** használatával.

ANTIQUE
Please feel free to come in.
(No eating inside.)

Entry possible
30 minutes
before the concert.
No late arrivals
allowed.

All vehicles – slow.
Drivers of large
vehicles, wait for
guard before crossing.

STUDENTS!
Please be quiet -
4th year exam
in progress.

LIBRARY
No talking.
Please leave books
on tables.

SWIMMING POOL
Free swim today.
No eating.
No drinking.

0 You *don't have to* go in.

0 You *mustn't* eat inside.

1 You arrive half an hour early.

2 You arrive late.

3 Small vehicles wait.

4 Drivers of large vehicles cross alone.

5 Students make a noise.

6 Third year students take the exam.

7 You talk in the library.

8 You put the books back on the shelves.

9 Swimmers pay today.

10 Swimmers eat or drink by the pool.

G A Stanton Squash Club az alábbiakra kötelezi látogatóit:

wear sports shoes leave the changing rooms tidy finish on time

és a következő dolgokat tiltja:

disturb other players eat or drink outside the bar take club balls home

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **have to**, **don't have to** vagy **mustn't** használatával.

- 0 You *don't have to* wear white clothes, but you *have to* wear sports shoes.
- 0 You *mustn't* disturb other players, but you *don't have to* be silent.
- 1 You finish on time, but you start on time.
- 2 You play with club balls, but if you do, you take them home.
- 3 You eat or drink outside the bar, but you buy your food in the bar if you don't want to.
- 4 You leave the changing rooms tidy.

H Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat. (Használjuk a **you** általános alanyt.) Ezután döntsük el, melyik állítás igaz, melyik hamis, és véleményünket vitassuk meg csoporttársainkkal és a tanárral.

- 1 Tizenhat éven felülinek kell lennünk ahhoz, hogy cigarettát vásárolhassunk.
.....
- 2 Ha nem mész át az iskolai vizsgán, évet kell ismételned.
.....
- 3 Amikor Londonba vagy Párizsba utazunk, nem kell útlevelet vinni magunkkal.
.....
- 4 Lottószelvény vásárlásához legalább tizennyolc évesnek kell lennünk.
.....
- 5 A kutyatartáshoz engedély szükséges.
.....
- 6 Étteremben vagy sörözőben tilos a dohányzás.
.....
- 7 A motorkerékpárosoknak bukósisakot kell viselniük.
.....
- 8 A választásokon minden felnőttnek szavaznia kell.
.....
- 9 A tizennyolc éven aluliak étteremben nem fogyaszthatnak alkoholt.
.....
- 10 Éjszaka nem szabad világítás nélkül kerékpározni.
.....
- 11 Ha elmúltál tizenhét éves, és házasságot akarsz kötni, nem kell engedélyt kérned a szüleidtől.
.....
- 12 Autóvezetéskor biztonsági övet kell használni. Az utasnak nem kell használnia az övet.
.....



Bizonyára, bizonyára nem, talán (must, can't, may, might, could)

- 1 A főnévi igenév **to** nélküli alakjával használjuk (pl. **be, go, come, earn**) a következő segédigéket: **must, can't, may, could**:

They **must**

FŐNÉVI IGENÉV earn

a lot.

- 2 BIZONYOSSÁG:

She must be rich.

(= Bizonyára gazdag.)

Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

Jane got top marks in her exams. She **must be** very clever. (= Jane a legjobb jegyeket kapta a vizsgáin. Bizonyára nagyon okos. – Annak alapján, amit róla tudunk, ezt joggal feltételezzük.)

A **must** tehát azt fejezi ki, hogy valamiről meg vagyunk győződve, bizonyosak vagyunk benne:

The Greens have two houses and two cars. They **must earn** a lot of money. (= Greenéknek két házuk és két autójuk van. Nyilván nagyon sokat keresnek.)

A: There's someone outside in an orange car.

B: It **must be** Susan. She's the only person I know with an orange car. (= Ez bizonyára Susan.

Az ismerőseim közül ő az egyetlen, akinek narancssárga autója van.)

- 3 LEHETETLENSÉG:

She can't be poor.

(= Nem lehet szegény.)

Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

Tim studied hard for his exams, but he got poor marks. He **can't be** very clever. (= Tim rengeteget tanult a vizsgáira, de gyenge jegyeket kapott. Nem lehet nagyon okos. – Annak alapján, amit tudunk róla, úgy gondoljuk, hogy nem nagyon okos.)

The Browns both have part-time jobs; they **can't earn** much money. (= Brownék mindketten csak részidőben dolgoznak; nem kereshetnek sokat.)

A: There's someone at the door. I think it's Bill.

B: It **can't be** Bill. He's in Australia.

(= Nem lehet Bill, ő Ausztráliában van.)

- 4 LEHETSÉGES:

She { may might could } be in the garden.
--

(= Lehet, hogy a kertben van.)

Figyeljük meg a következő példát, amelyben a **may** segédige szerepel:

A: Eva is not in her room. Where is she?

B: She **may be** in the garden. (Annak alapján, amit tudunk, feltehetően a kertben van.)

A **might**, a **may** és a **could** azt fejezi ki, hogy valami lehetséges, de nem bizonyos.

Ugyanezek a segédigék a jövőben bekövetkező eseményre is utalhatnak:

My sister **might come** tomorrow. (= Lehet, hogy holnap jön a nővérem.)

She **may/might come**, but she **may/might not**.

(Lehet, hogy jön, lehet, hogy nem.)

A **could** segédigét ennek kifejezésére nem használhatjuk. Helytelen a következő mondat:

~~She could come but she couldn't.~~

A tagadó alak: **may not** vagy **might not**.

A: I've phoned Jill, but there's no answer.

B: She **may not be** at home.

(= Lehet, hogy nincs otthon.)

I **might not finish** the project in time.

(= Lehetséges, hogy nem fogok időre végezni a feladattal.)

A **may not** (**mayn't**) összevont alakját nem használhatjuk, a **mightn't** alakot igen.

His story **mightn't be** true.

(= Lehet, hogy a története nem igaz.)

Gyakorlatok

- A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **must** vagy **can't** és a megfelelő ige használatával.

be belong speak come spend have like live want remember

- 0 Anna lived in America for three years, so she **must speak** English.
- 0 Tom's brother doesn't know anything about medicine, so he **can't be** a doctor.
- 1 Jane has an incredible number of compact discs. She music a lot.
- 2 Peter doesn't speak German, so he from Germany.

- 3 This jacket to Janet because it's not her size.
- 4 That man around here because he doesn't know any of the street names.
- 5 Jack a lot of clothes. He wears something different every day.
- 6 Sam's grandmother is over eighty years old, so she the Second World War.
- 7 You've got ten cats already. You to get another one.
- 8 Susan buys new clothes every day. She a lot of money.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **might** vagy **might not** és a zárójelben megadott ige használatával.

- 0 Accept their offer. You **might not get** (get) a better opportunity.
- 1 I (buy) her this plant for her birthday. She likes plants a lot.
- 2 Take a coat with you. It (be) cold this evening.
- 3 We (go) to Greece this summer, but we haven't booked anything yet.
- 4 I (go) by car because there will be a lot of traffic.
- 5 They (come) to the party tonight. They're very busy.
- 6 A: What are you going to do tonight?
B: I'm not sure. I (stay) at home. I'm tired.
- 7 I don't know where Jane is at the moment. She (be) in the gym, or she (be) in the science lab.
- 8 Don't worry too much about that mistake. It (be) important.
- 9 I'll try to change the time of my flight, but it (be) possible. The planes are often full at this time of year.
- 10 You (find) a hotel if you go to the main street – there are lots there.

C Bankrablás történt – a rendőrség összegyűjtötte a gyanúsítottak fényképét. Nézzük meg a képeket és egészítsük ki a mondatokat **can't be**, **could be** vagy **must be** használatával.



Drake



Hall



Brown



Rogers



Smith

- 0 A witness says that the robber had glasses. If that's true, then it **can't be** Brown or Drake. It **must be** either Hall or Rogers or Smith.
- 1 A witness says that the robber had black hair. If that's true, then it Hall, but it Brown.
- 2 A witness says that the robber had a moustache. If that's true, then it Rogers, but it Drake or Brown.
- 3 A witness says that the robber didn't have a beard. If that's true, then it Drake or Brown but it Hall or Smith.
- 4 A witness says that the robber had black hair and wore glasses. If that's true, then it Rogers. It Hall.
- 5 And if what everyone says is true, then

D Alakítsuk át a mondatokat **must**, **can't**, **may/might** vagy **may not/might not** használatával.

- 0 I'm sure she's very rich.
She *must be very rich*.
- 1 Perhaps Mary won't come.
Mary
- 2 I've never seen him so he definitely doesn't live near here.
I've never seen him so he
- 3 It is possible that Peter is in the garage.
Peter
- 4 He gets to work before me so it's obvious that he takes the train.
He gets to work before me so he
- 5 It's possible that my parents will pay for the concert tickets.
My parents
- 6 It's possible that Jack is not willing to help us.
Jack
- 7 Perhaps she'll go abroad but perhaps she won't.
She

E Egészítsük ki a szöveget **must**, **can't** vagy **might** és a megfelelő kifejezés használatával.

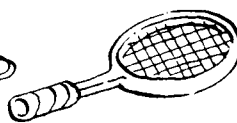
cost a lot of money ~~be a soldier~~ work long hours go to Portugal come this weekend
be very interested earn £60,000 a year also be at the shops be at the gym

- 0 RUTH: I think Ann's brother is in the army.
JAMES: He *can't be a soldier* ; he's only fifteen.
- 1 BOB: What are you going to do next summer?
SUSAN: I don't know. We , but it's not certain yet.
- 2 FRED: Mike's new flat is all electric – kitchen, heating, everything.
PETER: That in electricity bills.
- 3 SAM: Is Mary coming to see us this week?
SALLY: It depends on her work. She if she finishes the project that she's doing.
- 4 CAROL: Have Brian and Kim got any children?
TOM: Yes, they have two children, but they in them, because they never talk about them.
- 5 ANDY: Do you see your new neighbours very much?
SARAH: No, they , because they are hardly ever at home.
- 6 PAUL: Fred's gone out, hasn't he? Where has he gone?
ANN: I don't know. He or he
- 7 TIM: Is Jane very rich?
EMMA: Oh yes, she has a flat and a sports car. She at least.

F Kinek a számára vásárolták a képeken látható ajándékokat? Alkossunk mondatokat a kedvenc időtöltések listája és a példák alapján.

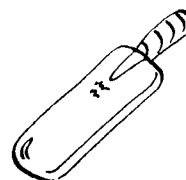
Peter
music
reading
cricket

Susan
music
photography
tennis



James
music
painting
tennis

Jill
aerobics
skiing
reading



0 *The leotard must be for Jill. It can't be for anyone else.*

0 *The CDs could be for Peter, Susan or James. They can't be for Jill.*

1 The tennis racket
It

2 The camera
It

3 The paints and brushes
They

4 The skiing clothes
They

5 The books
They

6 The cricket bat
It

G Fordítsuk le a következő jelenetet a *Hamupipőke (Cinderella)* című meséből.

SZOLGA: A herceg elrendelte, hogy meg kell találni ennek a cipőnek a tulajdonosát. Egy gyönyörű lány vesztette el a legutóbbi bálon. Ha megtaláljuk, a herceg feleségül veszi a lányt. A szerencsés leányból hercegnő lesz. Fel akarják próbálni, hölgyeim?

1. MOSTOHATESTVÉR: Csak az enyém lehet! Add ide! Nézzétek! Ez pontosan az én méretem!

2. MOSTOHATESTVÉR: Te biztos, hogy bolond vagy! Ez nem lehet a te cipőd. A te lábad nagy, ez a cipő pedig kicsi, mint az én lábam. Ennek az én cipőmnek kell lennie. Biztos vagyok benne, hogy a bálban vesztettem el.

SZOLGA: Bocsásson meg, kisasszony. Ez a cipő nem lehet az öné. Az ön lába túl nagy. A cipő bizonyára egy másik hölgyé, aki ebben a házban lakik – vagy kérdezzem meg a szomszédokat?

1. MOSTOHATESTVÉR: Ez csak Hamupipőke lehet...

SZOLGA: Hamupipőke? Hol van?

1. MOSTOHATESTVÉR: Ó, nem tudom. Biztos a konyhában van.

2. MOSTOHATESTVÉR: Lehet, hogy a kertben van.

SZOLGA: Hívják ide rögtön. Fel kell próbálnia ezt a cipőt. Lehet, hogy ő az a lány, akit a herceg keres. Talán ő az új hercegnő!

MOSTOHATESTVÉREK: Nem! Nem lehet ő a hercegnő! Ez bizonyára tévedés!



Múltra utaló módbeli segédigék (must have seen, can't have done)

- 1 A must, can't, may, might és could** segédigével múltra is utalhatunk. A **have** és az ige befejezett melléknévi igenévi alakja áll a segédige után:

*Mary **must have seen** him.* (= Mary biztosan látta őt.)

*Ken **might have gone** home early.*
(= Ken talán korán hazament.)

2 BIZONYOSSÁG

Nézzük meg, hogyan használjuk a **must** segédigét:

*Jane got good marks in her exams. She **must have worked** hard.* (= Jane jó jegyeket kapott a vizsgán. Bizonyosan keményen dolgozott.)

*They've changed everything in their house. They **must have spent** a fortune.*
(= Mindent átalakítottak a házban. Bizonyára egy vagyont költöttek.)

3 LEHETETLENSÉG

Nézzük meg, hogyan használjuk a **can't** segédigét:

*I saw Bill in Oxford this afternoon so he **can't have stayed** in London all day.*

(= Ma délután Oxfordban láttam Billt, szóval nem tölthette az egész napját Londonban.)

Ugyanezt kifejezhetjük a **couldn't have** alakkal is:

*Nobody answered the phone so they **couldn't have been** at home.* (= Senki nem vette fel a telefont, lehetetlen, hogy otthon voltak.)

4 LEHETSÉGES

Figyeljük meg a **may have** használatát:

*I don't know where Sally is. She **may have gone** to the shop.* (= Nem tudom, hol van Sally. Lehet, hogy elment a boltba.)

A **may, might és could** (a ~~can~~ nem) + **have** azt fejezi ki, hogy valami talán úgy történt, de nem tudjuk bizonyosan:

*John doesn't know where his watch is but he thinks he **might/could have left** it at school.* (= John nem tudja, hol az órája, de azt gondolja, talán az iskolában hagyta.)

A tagadó alak **may not** vagy **might not** (DE NEM **could not**):

A: *Carol's not answering her mobile.*

B: *She **might not have taken** it with her.*
(= Talán nem vitte magával.)

A: *Peter set off early to go to a museum.*

B: *He **may not have realized** that they don't open until ten o'clock.* (= Talán nem tudta, hogy nincsenek nyitva tíz előtt.)

Gyakorlatok

- A** Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a következő szerkezettel: **must** vagy **can't** + **have** + a megfelelő ige befejezett melléknévi igenévi alakja.

be buy catch like live retire spend study take visit

- 0 The boss increased Alan's salary so she **must have liked** his work.
- 0 Saul doesn't know a word of French so he **can't have lived** in France.
- 1 Jack was at home all weekend so he at the theatre.
- 2 Sara didn't use to have so many CDs. She a lot more recently.
- 3 Mrs Stuart is almost 70 so she from her job.
- 4 Their house is wonderful now. They a fortune on it.
- 5 Tom didn't know what an antibiotic is so he medicine.
- 6 Tim was only in Brazil for a week, so he all the places he says that he went to.
- 7 Your mother's umbrella isn't here. She it with her.
- 8 John's very late getting home. He his usual train.

B Alkossunk hasonló értelmű mondatokat **must**, **can't**, **might** vagy **might not + have + befejezett melléknévi igenév szerkezet** használatával.

- 0 Those letters aren't here now so I'm sure that somebody has posted them.
Those letters aren't here now so somebody **must have posted** them.
- 1 Susan's had exams all day so I'm sure that she hasn't spoken to Barry.
Susan's had exams all day so she to Barry.
- 2 The book isn't here. Perhaps Peter took it home.
The book isn't here. Peter it home.
- 3 Jim sounded cross on the phone so I'm certain he hasn't had a good day.
Jim sounded cross on the phone so he a good day.
- 4 The road's quite wet so I'm sure it rained during the night.
The road's quite wet so it during the night.
- 5 They don't watch much TV so perhaps they haven't heard the news.
They don't watch much TV so they the news.
- 6 Sara lives on that street so I'm sure she heard the fire engines.
Sara lives on that street so she the fire engines.

C Egy öreg ház padlásán értékes festményt találtak. Olvassuk el a nagy festőkről szóló információt és egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **can't have been**, **could have been** vagy **must have been** szerkezettel.

Hans Holbein, German	1497–1543	(16th century)
Michelangelo, Italian	1475–1564	(16th century)
Rubens, Flemish	1577–1640	(17th century)
Jan Vermeer, Dutch	1632–1675	(17th century)
Canaletto, Italian	1697–1768	(18th century)
Frans Hals, Dutch	1580–1666	(17th century)

- 0 One expert thinks that the painting is from the early 16th century. If that's true, then the painter **could have been** Michelangelo but **can't have been** Rubens.
- 1 Another expert thinks that the painting is Dutch or Flemish. If that is true, then the painter Canaletto but Vermeer or Rubens.
- 2 Another expert thinks that the painting is from the 17th century. If that's true, the painter Frans Hals or Rubens, for example, but Holbein.
- 3 Another expert is certain that the painting is Dutch. If that's true, the painter Michelangelo, but Vermeer or Frans Hals.
- 4 Another expert is convinced that the painting is Italian and from the 18th century. If that's true, then the painter Holbein or Rubens. In fact, the painter Canaletto.



Kellene, nem kellene (should, shouldn't)

- 1 A **should** segédigét a főige **to** nélküli főnévi igenévi alakjával (**do, go** stb.) használjuk:

I should FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
do *some work tonight.*
(NEM *I should to do ...*)

Minden személyben a **should** alakot használjuk:

I/you/he/she/it/we/they should go.

- 2 A tagadó alak: **shouldn't** (= nem kellene)

You shouldn't sit in the sun all day.
They shouldn't spend so much money.

- 3 Az **I should/we should** szerkezettel azt fejezzük ki, hogy valamit meg kellene tennünk, mert az úgy helyes:

I should go home. It's midnight.
We should invite them for a meal.

Az **I/we shouldn't** azt jelenti, hogy valamit nem kellene megtennünk:

We shouldn't spend so much money.

A **you should/shouldn't** szerkezettel tanácsot adhatunk:

You should look for a better job.
You shouldn't drive so fast.

A **should** nem olyan nyomatékos, mint a **must** vagy a **have to**:

You should eat more fruit. (Több gyümölcsöt kellene enned. – Jó lenne.)
'*You must eat more fruit,*' said the doctor.
(= Több gyümölcsöt kell enned, mondta az orvos. – Ez nagyon fontos.)

- 4 A **should I/we ...?** kérdő alakkal tanácsot kérünk:



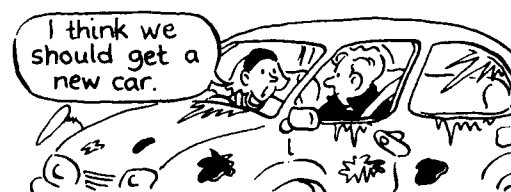
What should I say to Helen?

(= Mit mondjak Helennek?)

I need a new passport. Where should I go?

(= Új útlevele van szükségem. Hova menjek?)

- 5 Az **I think we should, I don't think you should** kezdetű mondatokkal a véleményünket mondhatjuk meg valamiről:



I don't think you should believe everything he says. (= Azt hiszem, nem kellene mindent elhinned, amit mond.)

(ÁLTALÁBAN NEM: *I think you shouldn't ...*)

- 6 A **Do you think I should ...?** kezdetű mondatral valakinek a véleményét kérjük:
- He hasn't replied to my letter. Do you think I should phone him?* (= Gondolod, hogy fel kellene hívnom?)
- What do you think I should give Tom for his birthday?* (= Mit gondolsz, mit kellene adnom Tomnak a születésnapjára?)

Gyakorlatok

- A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **should/shouldn't** segédigével és a zárójelben megadott kifejezéssel.

- 0 *You shouldn't work* (You/work) so hard. Have a holiday.
- 0 I enjoyed that film. *We should go* (We/go) to the cinema more often.
- 1 (You/park) here. It's not allowed.
- 2 What (I/cook) for dinner tonight?
- 3 (You/wear) a coat. It's cold outside.
- 4 (You/smoke). It's bad for you.
- 5 (We/arrive) at the airport two hours before the flight.
- 6 (I/pay) now or later?
- 7 Do you think (I/apply) for this job?
- 8 What do you think (I/write) in this space on the form?

- 9 (I/eat) any more cake. I've already eaten too much.
 10 This food is terrible. (We/complain) to the manager.
 11 Which shirt do you think (I/buy)?

B Henry főzni fog. Adjunk neki tanácsokat a **you should** vagy **you shouldn't** szerkezet és a felszólító mondatokban lévő igék használatával.

Don't leave the meat in the oven for more than one hour.
 Cut the onions as small as possible.
 Use fresh herbs and fresh vegetables.
 Don't put in too much salt and pepper.
 Wait until the water boils before you put the vegetables into it.
 Heat the oven before you put the meat in.
 Cut the meat into four equal slices.

- 0 *You shouldn't leave* the meat in the oven for more than one hour.
 1 the onions as small as possible.
 2 fresh herbs and fresh vegetables.
 3 in too much salt and pepper.
 4 until the water boils before you put the vegetables into it.
 5 the oven before you put the meat in.
 6 the meat into four equal slices.

C Írjuk le Brian és Keith beszélgetését a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával. A mondatokba tegyük be a **do** vagy **should** segédigét, ahol szükséges.

- BRIAN: (I want to buy a motorbike. What/you/think/I/do?)
 0 *I want to buy a motorbike. What do you think I should do?*
 KEITH: (You/look/at the advertisements in the papers.)
 0 *You should look at the advertisements in the papers.*
 BRIAN: (Which papers/I/get?)
 1
 KEITH: (I think/you/buy/the local newspapers.)
 2
 BRIAN: (What/you/think/I/do/before I buy a bike?)
 3
 KEITH: (I/not/think/you/decide/too quickly.)
 4
 (You/check/the condition of the bike.)
 5
 (You/ask/somebody who knows about bikes to look at the bike for you.)
 6
 (You/not/buy/one just because it looks nice!)
 7
 (You/be/very careful.)
 8



Kellene, jobban tennéd, ha... – should, ought to, had better

- 1 A **should**, az **ought to** és a **had better** mellett **to** nélküli főnévi igenevet használunk (pl. **be, go, ask, wait**):

		FŐNÉVI IGENÉV	
I	should	go.	(= Mennem kellene.)
You	ought to	ask.	(= Meg kellene kérdezned.)
We	had better	wait.	(= Jobb lenne, ha várnánk.)

- 2 A **should** és az **ought to** segédigével tanácsot kérünk vagy tanácsot adunk, azt mondjuk meg, mi a helyes vagy mi a legjobb döntés:

A: I've got toothache. What **should I do**?

B: You **should go to the dentist's**.

Amikor kötelezettségről vagy törvényről beszélünk, általában az **ought to** segédigét használjuk:

A: I saw a robbery. What **should I do**?

B: You **ought to report it to the police**.

Amikor azonban személyes véleményünknek adunk hangot, rendszerint a **should** segédigét használjuk:

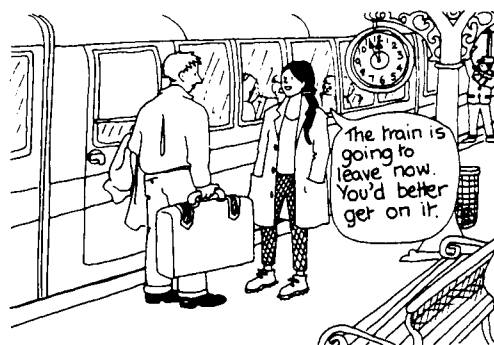
B: I think you **should forget about it**.

Kérdő és tagadó mondatban gyakrabban használjuk a **should**, mint az **ought to** segédigét. (Az **ought to** hivatalosabb hangzású.)

I **shouldn't go**. VAGY: I **ought not to go**.

Should I go? VAGY: **Ought I to go**?

- 3 Amikor tanácsot adunk, vagy arra utalunk, hogy szerintünk valakinek mit kellene tennie, a **had better** szerkezetet is használhatjuk:



There'll be a lot of traffic tomorrow. We **had (VAGY We'd) better leave early**.

I **had (VAGY I'd) better ask the doctor about the pain in my stomach**.

Figyelem! Bár a **had** múlt idejű alak, a **had better** szerkezet nem a múlt, hanem a jelenre vagy a jövőre utal.

A **had better** egy konkrét helyzetre vonatkozik, a **should** vagy az **ought to** általánosságban ad tanácsot:

I'm not ready. You'd **better not wait for me**.

(= Nem vagyok még kész, jobb lesz, ha nem vársz rám.)

When people are in trouble, they **should go to the police**. (NEM: ... ~~they had better go to the police~~.)

(= Amikor az emberek bajban vannak, a rendőrséghez kell fordulniuk.)

Figyelem! A **had better** tagadó alakja: **had better not + to** nélküli főnévi igenev: You'd better not wait for me.

Az **ought to** tagadó alakja: **ought not to**: You ought not to do that.

Gyakorlatok

- A Egészítsük ki a kérdésekre adott válaszokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal, **not** és **to** hozzáadásával, ahol szükséges.

0 A: Should Henry stay in bed?

B: No, the doctor said he **shouldn't** (should) stay in bed.

1 A: Can we move that cupboard?

B: No, it's very delicate, so you (ought) leave it where it is.

2 A: Should we change these notices?

B: No, the show is still on, so we (should) change them until next week.

- 3 A: You'd better tell the boss about the accident immediately.
 B: No, she's in a bad mood. I (had better) tell her until tomorrow.
- 4 A: Does the doctor say it's all right for Mrs Bradley to work?
 B: Yes, but she must be careful. She (ought) lift anything heavy, for example.
- 5 A: Can they come before dinner?
 B: No, we haven't got enough food, so they (had better) come after dinner.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **should/shouldn't** segítségével és a megfelelő kifejezéssel.

call an ambulance	give you a new cup	drive home in her car
leave everything where it is	decide for herself	move the person yourself
borrow money	do anything about it	let him eat so much
make him do lots of sport	report it to the police	ask someone to take her
touch anything		

- 0 A: There is a house near my home where I often hear a child crying.
 B: You **should report it to the police**
- 0 A: My daughter wants to marry a sailor. What should I do about it?
 B: In my opinion, you **shouldn't do anything about it** Your daughter **should decide for herself**
- 1 A: If someone has a serious accident, what's the right thing to do?
 B: Well, you It's not a good idea to move an injured person. Instead, you to take the person to hospital.
- 2 A: Last Saturday I bought some coffee cups but one was broken. What can I expect the shop to do?
 B: They
- 3 A: My son is twelve years old and he's already very overweight.
 B: Well, it's important not to eat too much, so you
 Also, you
- 4 A: If you come home and see that you've been robbed, what's the best thing to do?
 B: Well, you You and call the police.
- 5 A: Mary can't work because she's feeling sick. How can she get home?
 B: Well, she She home.
- 6 People if they can't pay it back.

C Írjunk megjegyzést az állításokhoz **had better** és a zárójelben megadott kifejezés használatával.

- 0 A: I've got a headache.
 B: (You/go and lie down) **You'd better go and lie down**
- 1 A: The children want to play in the kitchen.
 B: (they/clear everything away)
 Well, when they finish.
- 2 A: I think it's going to rain.
 B: (we/take our umbrellas) Yes,
- 3 A: I'm going to go to bed now. We have to get up very early tomorrow.
 B: (I/go to bed early too) Yes,



Szükséges, nem szükséges – need, needn't

- 1** A **need** igét akkor használjuk, amikor arról beszélünk, amit meg kell tennünk, de nem mert kötelező, hanem mert szükséges: **need** + főnévi igenév (pl. **to do, to go**)

to + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV

I **need** **to go** to the dentist's.

Egyes szám harmadik személyben (**he, she, it**) a **need** ige **-s** személyragot kap:

She **needs to buy** some white paint.

Tagadó és kérdő alakban, valamint rövid válaszban a **do** segédigét használjuk:

You **don't need to go** to the doctor's.

Mary **doesn't need to buy** any green paint.

A: Do you need to go to the dentist's?

B: Yes, I **do**. / No, I **don't**.

A: Does Mary need to buy any brushes?

B: Yes, she **does**. / No, she **doesn't**.

- 2** A **need** igét akkor is használhatjuk, ha arra utalunk, hogy mire van szükségünk. Ebben az esetben a **need** után tárgy áll:

TÁRGY

Mary **needs**
I **don't need**
Does Peter **need**

some white paint.
a new car.
any help?

That carpet **needs cleaning**.

(= Azt a szőnyeget ki kell tisztítani.)

My watch **needs repairing**.

(= Az órát meg kell javíttatni.)

Figyelem! A **need** + tárgy szerkezetet magyarra általában a 'szüksége van valamire' vagy a 'kell valakinek valami' szerkezettel fordítjuk, az angol mondatban a **need** után következő főnév vagy **-ing** alak (**paint, car, help, cleaning, repairing**) a mondat tárgya.

- 3** Ha arról beszélünk, hogy valamit nem kell megtenni, használhatjuk a **needn't** alakot, amely után **to** nélküli főnévi igenév áll (pl. **go, buy**). A **needn't** és a **don't need to/doesn't need to** jelentése megegyezik:

FŐNÉVI IGENÉV

You **needn't** **go** to the shops. We have enough food.

(VAGY: You **don't need to go** to the shops.)

Mary **needn't buy** any paint.

(VAGY: Mary **doesn't need to buy** any paint.)

Nem használhatjuk a **needn't** alakot, ha a mondatban tárgy követi: (pl. **your coat**): You **don't need** your coat. It's not cold outside.

(= Nem kell kabát. Nincs kint hideg.)

(NEM: ~~You needn't your coat.~~)

- 4** Múlt időben a **needed to** alakot használjuk:

The room was dirty, so they **needed to** clean it before they started to paint it.

Tagadás:

The room wasn't dirty so they **didn't need to** clean it before they started to paint it.

Figyelem! A **needn't have** + befejezett melléknévi igenév jelentése: 'nem kellett volna', 'felesleges volt'.

We **needn't have lit** the fire, because it was a warm evening. (Nem kellett volna befűteni, meleg este volt.)

You **needn't have bought** any bread, Jim. There is plenty in the cupboard. (Jim, nem kellett volna kenyeret vened, rengeteg van a szekrényben.)

Gyakorlatok

- A** Alex Norvégiába utazik a nyáron, ezzel kapcsolatban kér tanácsot Caroltól, aki tavaly már járt ott. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a **need** megfelelő alakjával.

ALEX: 0 **I need** (I) some advice. What 0 **do I need to take** (I/take) with me?

CAROL: Well, 1 (you/take) warm clothes because it's like early spring in England.

ALEX: 2 (I/take) gloves as well?

CAROL: No, 3 (you/not) gloves there. But there's something else you mustn't forget. 4 (Everybody/buy) something to repel the mosquitoes.

ALEX: OK. What else 5 (I)?

CAROL: Well, you simply must take a camera, but 6 (you/not/take) extra film because they sell films on the boat.

ALEX: I'm glad you mentioned that. My camera ⁷ (mend). I must take it to the shop.

B Alakítsuk tagadóvá a zárójelben megadott mondatokat.

- 0 (Jane needs to pay Jim today.) *Jane needn't pay Jim today.*
 0 (The car needs new tyres.) *The car doesn't need new tyres*
 1 (We need a lot of paper.)
 2 (Mark needs to get everything ready today.)
 3 (Mary needs to leave at six o'clock.)
 4 (Ann needs a new bag.)

C Az alábbi táblázatban összefoglaltuk, hogy a Brightside Gimnázium milyen eszközöket biztosít diákjai számára a vizsgákön illetve sportversenyeken való részvételhez.

Examinations	The school provides:	The school doesn't provide:
art exams	paint	brushes
drawing exams	paper	rulers and pencils
tennis competitions	balls	rackets
football competitions	football shirts	shorts and boots

A példa alapján írjuk le, hogy mit kell, illetve mit nem kell a diákoknak magukkal hozniuk az egyes eseményekre.

- 0 (art exams/paint) *Students needn't bring paint for art exams.*
 0 (tennis competitions/rackets) *Students need to bring rackets for tennis competitions.*
 1 (football competitions/football shirts)
 2 (drawing exams/paper)
 3 (art exams/brushes)
 4 (tennis competitions/balls)
 5 (football competitions/shorts and boots)
 6 (drawing exams/rulers and pencils)

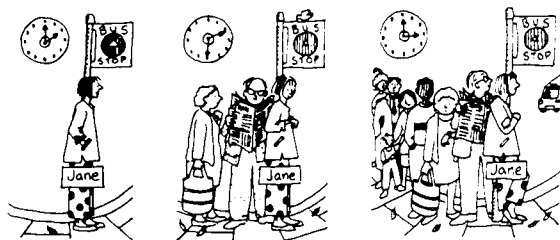
D Használjuk a **didn't need to** vagy **needn't have** szerkezetet a megfelelő igével.

- 0 The programmes didn't cost us anything. We didn't pay for them.
 We *didn't need to pay* for the programmes.
 0 You took your umbrella yesterday but it didn't rain.
 You *needn't have taken* your umbrella yesterday.
 1 Jill paid for her holiday in advance, but it wasn't necessary.
 Jill for her holiday in advance.
 2 My sister spoke to Sally yesterday, so I didn't phone her.
 I Sally because my sister had spoken to her.
 3 We bought extra food but now John and Mary can't come.
 We extra food because John and Mary can't come.
 4 Why did you work during the weekend? We don't have to finish until next week.
 You during the weekend.
 5 I didn't take my passport with me because an identity card was enough.
 I my passport with me.



Kellett, kellett volna – had to do, should have done

1 Nézzük meg a példát:



Jane **had to wait** an hour for a bus.

A **had to wait** azt jelenti, hogy Jane azért várt egy óra hosszat, mert nem jött busz.

A **had to** tehát azt jelenti, hogy azért tettünk valamit, mert szükséges volt.

Ha azt akarjuk mondani, hogy valaki azért nem tett meg valamit, mert arra nem volt szükség, a **didn't have to** alakot használjuk:

*I **didn't have to** work last Saturday.*

Kérdésben a **do** segédigét használjuk: **did ...**

have to:

*Did you **have to** work last Saturday?*

2 Nézzük meg a következő példát:

Claire szombaton is jár dolgozni. Múlt szombaton beteg volt, ezért akkor nem dolgozott:
*Claire **should have gone** to work last Saturday, but she was ill. So she stayed at home.*

A **should have (done/gone stb.)** azt jelenti, hogy valaminek meg kellett volna történnie, de nem történt meg. Ezzel a szerkezettel kritizálhatunk is valakit. Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

Peter nem zárta be a kaput, és a tehenek nem arra a legelőre mentek, ahová kellett volna:
*Peter **should have closed** the gate. (= Peternek be kellett volna zárnia a kaput.)*

A **shouldn't have** + befejezett melléknévi igenév szerkezet arra utal, hogy valami olyan történt, aminek nem kellett volna:

*Peter **shouldn't have left** the gate open.*

*I **shouldn't have got** angry with Jane.*

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket **had to** illetve **did ... have to** szerkezet és a zárójelben megadott szó használatával.

- 0 JIM: When you had those stomach pains, *did you have to* (you) go into hospital?
JOAN: No, I *didn't have to* (not) go into hospital, but I *had to* stay in bed for a week.
- 1 ALAN: Was there a translation in the exam?
JANE: No, we (not) translate anything, but we write three essays.
- 2 ANN: I was very busy yesterday.
BILL: What (you) do?
ANN: I prepare everything for today's meeting.
- 3 KEN: (you) wear a uniform when you were at school?
JEAN: Yes, and we make sure it was always neat and tidy, as well.
- 4 TOM: What (you) do to get your international driving licence?
TINA: I show the police my national driving licence, but I (not) take another driving test.
- 5 MARK: Our children enjoyed their holiday at the summer camp.
MARY: (they) help at mealtimes?
MARK: Well, they (not) make the food, but they help with the washing-up.

3 A következő mondatokban használjunk **should have** vagy **shouldn't have** szerkezetet.

- 0 I didn't work hard at school.
I **should have worked** hard at school.
- 0 I left school when I was only 16. That was silly.
I **shouldn't have left** school when I was only 16.
- 1 I didn't get any qualifications. That was a mistake.
I some qualifications.
- 2 I started to drink a lot when I was 17.
I to drink when I was 17.
- 3 I got married when I was 18, but I was too young.
I when I was 18.
- 4 My uncle offered me a job but I didn't take it. That was stupid.
I the job that my uncle offered me.

3 Az alábbi táblázatban a Heathrow repülőtér egyik információs pultjának hétféle munkabeosztása olvasható.

SATURDAY		SUNDAY	
On duty	Comments	On duty	Comments
Jenny	✓	Colin	✓
Brian	ill	Mary	✓
Joan	ill	Derek	ill
Daniel	✓	Carol	ill

A táblázat alapján írjunk mondatokat **had to**, **didn't have to** vagy **should have** használatával.

- 0 (Jenny/Saturday) **Jenny had to work on Saturday.**
- 0 (Colin/Saturday) **Colin didn't have to work on Saturday.**
- 0 (Carol/Sunday) **Carol should have worked on Sunday** but she was ill.
- 1 (Colin/Sunday)
- 2 (Joan/Sunday)
- 3 (Derek/Sunday) but he was ill.
- 4 (Mary/Saturday)
- 5 (Brian/Saturday) but he was ill.
- 6 (Daniel/Saturday)
- 7 (Joan/Saturday) but she was ill.
- 8 (Derek/Saturday)



Ismétlő gyakorlatok: módbeli segédigék (49–59. fejezet)

A Tegyük fel a következő állításokhoz kapcsolódó kérdést.

- 0 The boys can go. ~ Where *can they go*
- 1 Victor must stay. ~ How long
- 2 Sally has to leave. ~ When
- 3 Peter should see a doctor. ~ Which doctor
- 4 Bill had to pay. ~ How much
- 5 Mike might have been at someone's house. ~ Whose
- 6 My sister can play the piano. ~ How well
- 7 Molly needs some white paint. ~ How many litres
- 8 Terry should have gone to the bank. ~ When

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **can, can't, could, couldn't, will be able to** vagy **won't be able to** használatával.

- 0 A couple of years ago Peter *couldn't* play the piano at all, but now he *can* play quite well.
- 1 Frances speak any foreign languages at the moment, but if she lives in Germany for a couple of years I imagine she speak German.
- 2 My father was a good runner when he was young. He run twenty kilometres, but now he run more than two or three.
- 3 You're pleased that you play for the first team now, but if you don't train properly, you continue in the first team.
- 4 My sister hasn't got much money at the moment so she buy a car, but if she saves, perhaps she buy one next year.
- 5 My baby brother say several words now, but only a few weeks ago he say a single one.
- 6 Before I did the cookery course I only make omelettes, but now I make other things.

C Az első oszlopban különböző mondatok első két szava található, a másodikban a mondatok folytatása, de többféle összetétel is lehetséges. Keressük meg az összes helyes változatot, és a megfelelő betűket írjuk a számok mellé.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| 0 Can I | a see you tomorrow? |
| 1 I can | b pass me the salt? |
| 2 Could I | c not smoke here. |
| 3 You may | d come back next week. |
| 4 You could | e help me please? |
| 5 Can you | f lend you my CDs. |
| 6 May I | g sit next to you? |
| 7 Could you | h bring my boyfriend with me? |
| 8 I could | i see I was busy. |
- 0 *a, g, h* 1 2 3 4
 5 6 7 8

】 A következő táblázat egy nyári diáktábor szabályait foglalja össze. Egyes dolgokat kötelező betartani, a többi tetszés szerint választható. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **must**, **mustn't** vagy **don't have to** használatával.

	Compulsory		Optional
	✓	✗	?
At meal times	shirt and shorts	no mobile phones	shoes
On excursions	packed lunch	no radios	drinks
On river trips	life jacket	no bottles	swimming costume
In the morning	have a shower	no waking others	make your bed
At bed time	clean your teeth	no sweets	put the lights out

- 0 At meal times you **must** wear a shirt and shorts. On an excursion, you **must** take radios. When there's a river trip, you **don't have to** wear a swimming costume.
- 1 When you go on an excursion, you collect a packed lunch.
- 2 At meal times you wear shoes.
- 3 When there's a river trip, you take bottles with you.
- 4 At meal times you use mobile phones.
- 5 When you go on an excursion, you take drinks.
- 6 When there's a river trip, you wear a life jacket.
- 7 In the morning you have a shower.
- 8 In the morning you wake others.
- 9 In the morning you make your bed.
- 10 At bed time you clean your teeth.
- 11 At bed time you eat sweets.
- 12 At bed time you put the lights out.

】 Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **had to** vagy **should have** szerkezettel aszerint, hogy a cselekvés végül megtörtént-e vagy sem.

- 0 The teacher gave Paul some extra homework last Monday and he did it.
Last Monday Paul **had to do** some extra homework.
- 0 Last Tuesday Sally had 'dentist's' in her diary, but she didn't go.
Last Tuesday Sally **should have gone** to the dentist's.
- 1 Last Wednesday Connie needed some coloured paper but she forgot to buy it.
Last Wednesday Connie some coloured paper.
- 2 Last Tuesday Bill got up early because he was going to catch a plane.
Last Tuesday Bill up early.
- 3 Last Saturday Jenny didn't have enough money to go shopping so she went to the bank first.
Last Saturday Jenny to the bank before she went shopping.
- 4 Last Friday Tim went to renew his passport but he didn't take his old passport with him.
Last Friday Tim his old passport with him.
- 5 Last Sunday Brian intended to phone his cousin but he forgot.
Last Sunday Brian his cousin.
- 6 The teacher told Sara to finish her essay after school, and she did.
Sara her essay after school.

F Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket **must**, **might** vagy **can't have** és a megfelelő ige használatával.

buy ~~earn~~ give ~~go~~ know live speak take

- 0 Vicky has changed her car twice this year. She *must earn* a lot of money.
- 0 A: Where's your brother?
B: I'm not sure. Perhaps he went to the park or he *might have gone* to the sports club.
- 1 A: Do you know where that man lives?
B: No, but he round here because I've never seen him before.
- 2 A: Did Joe buy a chicken for lunch?
B: Perhaps. Or he a rabbit. I'm not sure.
- 3 Joe's umbrella isn't here. He it with him.
- 4 A: I work at Bradley's, the sports shop.
B: Then you my sister, Patty, because she's the manager.
- 5 A: What are you going to give Robin for his birthday?
B: I'm not sure, but I him a CD.
- 6 A: Yesterday I phoned and talked to somebody called Daniel, I think.
B: No, you to Daniel. He wasn't here yesterday.

G Egészítsük ki az iskola tanárai és a diákok képviselői között játszódó párbeszédet a megadott szavakkal illetve kifejezésekkel.

can (x2) could (x2) couldn't had better have to might have must must have
need (x2) ought should should have will have to

- MRS COLE: Well, it's ten o'clock. 0 *Can* we begin the meeting?
- CAROL: Not really, Mrs Cragg. Stephen 1 be here and he hasn't come to school yet.
- MR KING: What's happened to him?
- CAROL: I don't know. I suppose he 2 be ill or he 3 missed the bus.
- MRS COLE: Well, he 4 come soon or we 5 begin without him. Oh, here he is now.
- STEPHEN: Good morning everyone! I'm sorry I'm late. I 6 gone back to sleep after the alarm rang.
- MR KING: All right. Let's begin. What are the things that we 7 talk about?
- CAROL: Well, first there are the showers in the gym. There 8 be something wrong with them because the water is always cold.
- MRS COLE: Yes, the men 9 come last week to repair them, but they phoned to say they 10 come. I'll phone them again. What else?
- STEPHEN: Well, there's the question of the bikes. We 11 to have more places for them.
- MRS COLE: Well, how big is the problem? 12 you perhaps give us an exact idea of how many more we 13 ?
- STEPHEN: OK. I'll count them and bring the exact figures next time.
- MR KING: Is there anything else?

STEPHEN: There's nothing that I ¹⁴ think of.

MRS COLE: All right. Thank you for coming. And Stephen, remember! When your alarm rings, you ¹⁵ to get up straight away.

H A következő párbeszédben a tanár egy elvégzendő feladatáról beszél diákjaival. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott kifejezésekkel.

can give can we ask you can get can't be had better save have to hand might do might forget must be must work mustn't be should be should we wait should write down won't be able
--

TEACHER: I want you to do a project about a visit abroad. You ⁰ *can give* the project any title you like, but the project ¹ about a foreign country. That's the only subject allowed. I want you to describe the things young people ² or see during a three-day visit.

SARA: Miss, ³ questions now or ⁴ until later?

TEACHER: I think you ⁵ your questions until I've finished talking.

SARA: But I ⁶ my question.

TEACHER: Write it down and then you won't forget it. Your project ⁷ between five and ten pages long. I ⁸ very exact because I don't know how many pictures you will put in. It ⁹ less than five pages. I will return projects which are shorter than this. You will work in groups. Everybody ¹⁰ with one or two other people. ¹¹ information from the library or from travel agencies, but perhaps the best place to look is on the Internet. But remember that you ¹² the address of anywhere you visit in case you want to go back there later. OK. Any questions?

SARA: When do we ¹³ it in?

TEACHER: Good point! By the end of the month. I ¹⁴ to accept any projects after that because next month I'll be very busy.

I Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

- 1 Annának reggel nyolctól délután négyig kell dolgoznia.
- 2 Ki tudná nyitni nekem az ajtót, kérem?
- 3 Jobban tennéd, ha nem ennél ilyen sokat.
- 4 Ha beteg vagy, nem kell tornagyakorlatokat végezned.
- 5 Itt nem szabad parkolni, menjünk a másik utcába.
- 6 Szerintem meg kellene mondanod a mamádnak, hogy eltörted a bögrét.
- 7 Nem kellett volna sietnünk, mert a koncert később kezdődött.
- 8 Jack nem tudott beszélni az igazgatóval, mert már elment.
- 9 Semmiért nem kellett fizetnem, minden ingyen volt.
- 10 Több időre volt szükségünk, hogy befejezzük a munkát.



A birtoklás kifejezése – have és have got

- 1** Nézzük meg a **have** ige használatát a következő példában:

*They always **have** breakfast at seven o'clock.*
(= Mindig hét órakor reggeliznek.)

ÁLLÍTÁS		
I/you/we/they	have	
He/she/it	has	
TAGADÁS		
I/you/we/they	don't have	
He/she/it	doesn't have	
KÉRDÉS		
Do	I/you/we/they	have ...?
Does	he/she/it	

- 2** A következő mondatban a **have got** alakot használjuk:

*I've **got** three brothers.* (= Három bátyám van.)

ÁLLÍTÁS		
I/you/we/they	have got/'ve got	
He/she/it	has got/'s got	
TAGADÁS		
I/you/we/they	haven't got	
He/she/it	hasn't got	
KÉRDÉS		
Have	I/you/we/they	got ...?
Has	he/she/it	got ...?

- 3** A **have** és a **have got** egyaránt használható, ha:

- azt mondjuk, hogy valakinek valamije van:
*We **have** a house in Spain.*
*We've **got** a house in Spain.*
*Paul **doesn't have** a car.*
*Paul **hasn't got** a car.*
***Do you have** any money?*
***Have you got** any money?*
- a családukról beszélünk:
*Jane **has** a brother and a sister.* (= Jane-nek van egy bátyja és egy nővére.)
*Jane's **got** a brother and a sister.*
- valaki külsejét írjuk le:
*She **has** blue eyes.* (= Kék szeme van.)
*She's **got** blue eyes.*
***Does your brother have** long hair or short hair?*
(= A bátyádnak hosszú vagy rövid haja van?)
***Has your brother got** long hair or short hair?*
- rossz közérzetről panaszkodunk:
*I **have** a headache.* (= Fáj a fejem.)
*I've **got** a headache.*

- 4** A **have** (NEM **have got**) alakot használjuk, ha étkezésről, szabadságról/nyaralásról beszélünk, valamint a következő kifejezésekben: '**have a bath**', '**have a shower**' és '**have a wash**'.

***Do you normally have** a big breakfast?* (= Általában sokat eszel reggelire?)
Have a good holiday! (= Kellemes nyaralást!)
*I **always have** a shower before I go to sleep.* (= Mindig zuhanyozom, mielőtt lefekszem aludni.)

- 5** Múlt és jövő időben a **have got** szerkezetet nem használjuk:

I ~~had~~ a car but I sold it. (NEM: ~~I had got a car~~ ...)

Gyakorlatok

- A** Anne és Jim kitalálós játékot játszik, a feladvány egy híres házaspár. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a **have got** szerkezet használatával.

- ANNE: 0 ***Have they got*** (they) any children?
JIM: Yes, 1 (they) a daughter.
ANNE: And 2 (they) a lot of money?
JIM: 3 (they/not) as much money as Bill Gates.
ANNE: What colour eyes 4 (the man)?
JIM: 5 (he) blue eyes.
ANNE: And 6 (the woman) blue eyes, too?
JIM: I don't know, but she's ugly.
ANNE: Then it's the Clintons. I know you don't like Hillary!

B Egészítsük ki a szöveget a **have** ige állító vagy tagadó alakjával.

It's nine o'clock on Sunday morning. During the week we ⁰ *have* breakfast together at half past seven, but on Sunday my father and I ¹ breakfast early, and my mother ² hers until ten or eleven. Sometimes my parents ³ a swim before breakfast, but if they ⁴ a swim, then my mother ⁵ a long bath and my father ⁶ a shower. I ⁷ coffee and toast for breakfast, but my father ⁸ toast. He prefers cereal.

C Írjuk le a kérdésekre adható választ a példa alapján. Használjuk a zárójelben megadott kifejezéseket.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 0 (got/I've/two brothers) | A: Have you got any brothers or sisters?
B: Yes, <i>I've got two brothers.</i> |
| 1 (in Edinburgh/a flat/she's got) | A: Does your sister live in Scotland?
B: Yes, |
| 2 (you/got – have/a headache?) | A: What's the matter?
B: No, but I feel tired. |
| 3 (blonde hair/she/got/hasn't) | A: Jane's tall and blonde.
B: No, you're wrong. |
| 4 (have/you/do/a holiday every year?) | A:
B: No, I don't. |
| 5 (a car/I/got/haven't) | A: Do you drive to work?
B: No, |
| 6 (you/dinner at seven?/have/do) | A:
B: No, we always eat at half past seven. |

D A következő mondatok közül néhányban hiba van. Írjuk át helyesen a hibás mondatokat, a helyes mondatokat pedig pipáljuk ki.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 0 We've got a holiday in Mexico every year. | <i>We have a holiday in Mexico every year.</i> |
| 0 Paul's got a sister in Scotland. | ✓ |
| 1 She is tired but she doesn't have a cold. | ..... |
| 2 I haven't got lunch every day. | ..... |
| 3 Have you got a shower every day? | ..... |
| 4 Have you got an English dictionary? | ..... |
| 5 Do you have a headache? | ..... |
| 6 I have got a holiday in Spain every year. | ..... |
| 7 We've got a large garden. | ..... |
| 8 I've got a bath at ten and I go to bed at eleven. | ..... |
| 9 They have got dinner at eight o'clock. | ..... |
| 10 They've got two dogs. | ..... |
| 11 Have got a good weekend! | ..... |
| 12 Have you got a motorbike? | ..... |

Make, do és get

1 Figyeljük meg a **make** és a **do** ige használatát a következő mondatokban:

A: *What's Jim **doing**?*

B: *He's **making** a cake. (NEM ... ~~doing~~)*

A: *What sort of cake is he **making**?*

B: *A chocolate cake.*

A: *What's Helen **making**?*

B: *She isn't **making** anything.*

A: *What's she **doing** then?*

B: *She's **reading**.*

A **do** jelentése 'tesz/csinál/cselekszik', a **make** jelentése 'készít'(pl. **make a chair/cake**).

2 Sok kifejezésben szerepel a **make** vagy a **do** ige, nem mindegy, mikor melyiket használjuk. Néhány gyakran használt kifejezés amelyekben a **make** igét használjuk:

make a complaint (= panaszt tesz)
make a decision (= elhatároz)
make a difference (= különbséget tesz)
make an effort (= erőfeszítést tesz)
make friends (= összebarátkozik)
make a journey/trip (= utazást tesz)
make a meal (= ételt készít)
make a mistake (= hibázik)
make money (= pénzt keres)
make a phone call (= telefonál)

Néhány gyakran használt kifejezés a **do** igével:

do your best (= megtesz minden tőle telhetőt)
do some work (= munkát végez)
do an exercise (= megcsinál egy gyakorlatot/feladatot)
do some homework (= házi feladatot készít)
do your hair (= megcsinálja a frizuráját)
do a job (= elvégez egy munkát)
do the washing-up (= elmosogat)
do someone a favour (= szívességet tesz)
do the cleaning (= takarít)
do the shopping (= bevásárol)

3 A **get** igének számos jelentése van. Íme néhány gyakran használt kifejezés:

- **get** (+ főnév) = **receive** (kap)
*Did you **get** any letters today?*
*She **got** a dictionary for her birthday.*
- **get** (+ főnév) = **buy, bring** (vásárol, hoz)
*I'll **get** some cheese when I go to the shops.*
*Could you **get** a pen from my desk?*
- **get to** (+ főnév) = **arrive at/in** (megérkezik)
*What time did you **get to** the office?*
- **get** (+ melléknév) = **become** (valamilyenné válik)
*Everything is **getting** more expensive. (= Minden egyre drágább.)*
*I **got angry** and shouted at them. (= Mérges lettem, és elkezdtem kiabálni velük.)*

Tanulmányozzuk a következő kifejezéseket, amelyekben a **get** + melléknév szerkezet szerepel:

get engaged (= eljegyez)
get wet (= megázik)
get married (= házasságot köt)
get confused (= összezavarodik)
get divorced (= elválik)
get lost (= eltéved)
get washed (= megmosakodik)
get drunk (= berúg)
get dressed/undressed
 (= felöltözik/levetkőzik)
get stuck (= beragad)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a szöveget a **make** vagy a **do** ige megfelelő alakjával.

In our house there is always plenty of work to ⁰..... Luckily, everybody ¹..... something. My big brother ²..... the shopping; my twin sister ³..... the toast for breakfast, and on Sundays she ⁴..... pancakes. My parents usually ⁵..... the dinner, and I always ⁶..... the washing-up. We all ⁷..... the cleaning – except for my baby sister because she's too small to ⁸..... anything.

B Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a **make** vagy a **do** ige megfelelő alakjával és a megadott szavakkal.

best	favour	difference	effort	decision	friends	job	shopping
work	mistake						

ROSE: Would you ⁰ *do* me a *favour* and ⁰ *do* some *shopping* for me?

ALAN: Yes, OK.

ROSE: Are you all right, Alan? Is something wrong?

ALAN: I have to ¹ a about my future. I think I'm going to leave my job.

ROSE: What's the matter? Aren't the people nice? Haven't you ² any there?

ALAN: Oh, yes. I like the people who work there.

ROSE: What is it then?

ALAN: Well, I think I ³ a when I chose an office job because I have to
⁴ all the boring , and I don't like it.

ROSE: When you start, it doesn't ⁵ much what kind of company it is. New people often have to ⁶ a boring at first. You just have to
⁷ your , and when they see that you are ⁸ an
..... , then perhaps they'll offer you something better.

C A **get** helyett használjunk más igét a következő mondatokban.

- Mary got a prize for her drawing. → Mary *received* a prize for her drawing.
- What time does this train get to London? → What time does this train in London?
- The noise got louder and louder. → The noise louder and louder.
- Will you get some fruit when you go to the shops? → Will you some fruit when you go to the shops?
- We usually get our meat from the supermarket. → We usually our meat from the supermarket.
- They will get a cheque for the work they did. → They will a cheque for the work they did.
- In the middle of the day the desert sand gets very hot. → In the middle of the day the desert sand very hot.

D Alkossunk kifejezéseket a **get** igével és a megadott szavakkal, és a megfelelő alakokat írjuk be a mondatokba.

confused	divorced	dressed	drunk	engaged	lost	married	stuck	washed
----------	----------	--------------------	-------	---------	------	---------	-------	--------

- When you've finished swimming, *get dressed* quickly so you don't get cold.
- Jane and Bill were engaged for three years. They in 1997 and they in 2000. But unfortunately they in 2002.
- They took their car onto the beach and it in the sand.
- Don't go through the woods; follow the road and you won't
- I feel really dirty after walking around the city centre; I must go and
- Football hooligans often go to pubs and before the match starts.
- When people explain things too quickly to me, I often

- 1** Amikor a **make** ige után személynév vagy személyes névmás áll, utána pedig egy melléknév, akkor azt jelenti a mondat, hogy valami valakinek valamilyen érzést okoz:

	make + + NÉV/NÉVMÁS + MELLÉKNÉV		
Champagne	makes	me	drunk.

(= A pezsgőtől részeg leszek.)

Azt is ez a szerkezet fejezi ki, hogy valakit valamilyen cselekvésre készítetünk:

	make + NÉV/NÉVMÁS + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV		
Sad films	make	me	cry.

(= A szomorú filmekről sírok.)

(NEM ... *make me to cry*.)

Figyelem! Ebben a szerkezetben, amelyet műveltető szerkezetnek nevezünk, a főnévi igenév **to** nélkül áll.

- 2** Nézzük meg ezt a példát:

*The teacher **made us do** our homework again.* (= A tanár újra megíratta velünk a házi feladatot.)

A **make + név/névmás + főnévi igenév** szerkezet azt is jelenti, hogy valakit valamire kötelezünk:

*My parents **make me tidy** my bedroom.* (A szüleim velem takarították ki a hálószobámat.)

Tagadás: *They **don't make me wash** my clothes.* (= A ruháimat nem mosatják ki velem.)

Kérdés:

*Do his parents **make him work** at home?* (= A szülei dolgoztatják otthon?)

- 3** Nézzük meg a **let** ige használatát:

	let + NÉV/NÉVMÁS + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV		
They	let	me	stay

out late.

(= Megengedik, hogy későig kimaradjak.)
(NEM ... *let me to stay* ...)

A **let** ige jelentése: 'megenged'.

Tagadó alakja: **don't/doesn't let**.

*My parents **don't let me stay** out late.* (= A szüleim nem engedik meg, hogy későig kimaradjak.)

*What **do** your parents **let you do**?* (= Mit engednek meg neked a szüleid?)

Figyelem! A **let** igét **to** nélküli főnévi igenévvel használjuk.

- 4** A **let** igével engedélyt is kérhetünk:

*'I've got a new camera.' 'Oh, **let me see**!'* (= Hadd nézzem meg!)

A: *'It's a difficult decision; **let me think** about it.'*
(= Ez nehéz döntés. Hadd gondolkozzam rajta.)

B: *'**Let me know** when you decide.'* (= Tudasd velem, amikor eldöntöted.)
(NEM *Make me know* ...)

***Let me in!** I want to talk to you.* (Engedj be! Beszélni akarok veled.)

Gyakorlatok

- A** Alkossunk hasonló értelmű mondatokat **make** vagy **let** ige használatával.

- Derek's parents don't let him go to bed late.
Derek's parents *make him* go to bed early.
- Ellen's mum makes her do her homework before she watches TV.
Ellen's mum watch TV before she does her homework.
- Lara's mother doesn't let her wear short skirts.
Lara's mother wear long skirts or trousers.
- Eric's dad makes him have his hair cut short.
Eric's dad grow his hair long.
- Anna's parents don't make her come home early at weekends.
Anna's parents stay out late at weekends.
- Sam's parents let him sleep late on Saturdays.
Sam's parents get up early on Saturdays.

- 6 Jenny's dad makes her drink water with her meals.
Jenny's dad sweet drinks with her meals.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **make** vagy **let** megfelelő alakjával.

- 0 I forgot my history book, but Jack *let* me share his.
0 Tom's mother *made* him get his hair cut before his job interview.
1 Mary wasn't at Alan's party. Her father didn't her go.
2 Mike is quite lazy, but his wife him help her with the children.
3 Paul's mother him eat sweets, but she always him clean his teeth afterwards.
4 Peter wanted to give up his piano lessons, but his parents him continue with them.
5 Tom is allergic to cats. If he goes near one it him sneeze.
6 Anne's boss is very understanding. She her work at home if her children are ill.
7 Cathy's parents her do lots of things my parents won't allow me to do!
8 I love onion soup, but peeling the onions always me cry.
9 Janet is very silly sometimes. She can't understand her maths homework, but she doesn't anyone help her.
10 Joe was driving badly. So the police stopped him and him take a breath test.
11 I often my best friend borrow my clothes, because she me borrow hers.
12 The police the thieves give back all the money.

C Ann fia, David, nem kevés bosszúságot okoz az anyjának. Olvassuk el, amit az anya mond fiának, aztán az aláhúzott részeket írjuk át a példa alapján.

'Well, first of all ⁰ you must pay for the window you broke. ⁰ I'll give you your pocket money early, so that you can do that. And ¹ you must go and apologize to Mrs Rowland. Then ² you have to tidy your room, because it's in a terrible mess, ³ and you have to finish your science homework as well. After that, ⁴ you must do your music practice. ⁵ You can't watch any television today. You won't have time. Then ⁶ you must show me your homework. ⁷ You can phone your friends then if you like, but ⁸ you certainly can't go out! ⁹ You'll have to spend the evening in your room and ¹⁰ go to bed early. Are you listening to me, David?'

- 0 *Ann made David pay for the window he broke.*
0 *She let him have his pocket money early.*
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **make, do, have** vagy **get** ige megfelelő alakjával. Ügyeljünk a helyes igeidő használatára.

- 0 He is *making* a cup of coffee in the kitchen.
- 0 We *had* lunch in a very pleasant little restaurant yesterday.
- 1 She always excited before her birthday.
- 2 I always a bath before I go to bed.
- 3 We have to some homework every evening.
- 4 Yesterday I a terrible mistake.
- 5 They the shopping and then they went home.
- 6 It always very hot here during the summer.
- 7 Could I a quick phone call, please?
- 8 Please don't so much noise.
- 9 We a wonderful holiday in Greece last year.
- 10 How old were you when you married?

B Ezen a listán Anna tegnapi programja látható. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a **make, do, have** vagy **get** ige megfelelő alakjaival. Néhány mondatban egynél több megoldás is lehetséges.

7.30	Got up. Shower.
8.00	Breakfast. (Fruit juice and toast.)
8.30 – 9.00	Walk to work. Rain.
9.00 – 1.00	Work. Very busy.
1.00 – 2.00	Lunch in office. (Sandwiches.)
2.00 – 5.00	Work. Finished everything.
5.30	Shopping. Home.
7.00	Pizza for dinner. Washed up.
8.00 – 11.00	TV. Tired. Bed.

It was a normal day for Anna yesterday. She got up at seven thirty and she
 0 *had* a shower. Then she 1 breakfast. For breakfast she 2
 fruit juice and toast. She walked to work. It rained and she 3 wet. In the
 morning she 4 a lot of work. She 5 lunch at about one o'clock.
 She 6 sandwiches for lunch. She 7 all her work by five o'clock,
 so she went home. On the way home she 8 some shopping. She
 9 a pizza for dinner. She 10 the washing-up and then she
 watched TV for three hours. By eleven o'clock she felt quite tired, and so she went to
 bed.

C Egészítsük ki a következő kérdés-válasz párokat a **make**, **do**, **have** vagy **get** ige megfelelő alakjaival.

- 0 A: Was the film good?
B: No, I got bored in the middle of it.
- 1 A: Could you some shopping for me?
B: Yes, what do you want me to buy?
- 2 A: Were you pleased by the news?
B: No, it me very unhappy.
- 3 A: Was it a warm day?
B: Yes, but it rather cold in the evening.
- 4 A: Are you hungry at the moment?
B: No, I a big meal a couple of hours ago.
- 5 A: Did he pass the test?
B: No, he a lot of mistakes.
- 6 A: Are you ready to go out?
B: No, I'm not. I want to a wash first.
- 7 A: Could you repair this for me?
B: Yes, but I can't it until tomorrow.

D Keressük meg az első oszlopban lévő mondatok befejezését a második oszlopban.

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|---------------------------------------|
| 0 | When Jane went to London, she forgot her map | a | and he got drunk. |
| 1 | Linda fell in love with Paul | b | and she got angry with them. |
| 2 | Kate was at the bus stop when it started to rain | c | and she got lost. |
| 3 | Tony woke up half an hour later than usual | d | and they got married. |
| 4 | Mrs Hill's class made a lot of noise | e | and they got divorced. |
| 5 | The burglar tried to climb through a small window | f | so she got wet. |
| 6 | Peter's marriage to Julia failed | g | and he had to get dressed in a hurry. |
| 7 | Tim had never tasted whisky before | h | and he got stuck. |

0 c 1 2 3 4 5 6 7

E Írjuk át a következő mondatokat **has** helyett **has got** használatával, ha ez lehetséges.

Ha nem, húzzunk egy vonalat.

- | | | |
|----|---|------------------------------|
| 0 | Amy has curly hair. | <i>Amy's got curly hair.</i> |
| 0 | James had cornflakes for breakfast. | — |
| 1 | Mary has a bad cough. | |
| 2 | Tom has two older sisters. | |
| 3 | Helen has a new CD player. | |
| 4 | Alice had dinner with her cousins. | |
| 5 | I don't have time to read the newspaper. | |
| 6 | Tom had very long hair when he was a teenager. | |
| 7 | Sam has a holiday home in France. | |
| 8 | Do you have enough money for your train ticket? | |
| 9 | After the football match, Ben had a hot shower. | |
| 10 | Steve is having a wonderful holiday in Spain. | |

F Használjuk a **do**, **have**, **let** vagy **get** igét egyszerű múltban a következő párbeszéd kiegészítéséhez. Ahol zárójel is van, a zárójelben megadott szót is tegyük be a mondatba.

TOM: Tell me about life when you were young, Granny.

GRANNY: We ⁰ *had* a good time, but we ⁰ *didn't have* (not) so many toys and things.

TOM: How ¹ (you) to school?

GRANNY: I walked to school.

TOM: And ² (you) lunch at school?

GRANNY: Every morning my mother ³ some sandwiches and I took those to school.

TOM: And ⁴ (you) a television and a computer?

GRANNY: No, we ⁵ a radio, and our neighbours sometimes ⁶ me listen to their records. But my parents always ⁷ me do my homework before I ⁸ anything else.

TOM: And what was Christmas like?

GRANNY: Well, we ⁹ our own Christmas cards and decorations because we ¹⁰ (not) much money. On Christmas day we ¹¹ a big lunch, then we ¹² the washing up together. Afterwards, we sang songs and played games.

TOM: I don't know how you had a good time without a computer! Mum and Dad ¹³ me buy a new computer game yesterday. But they ¹⁴ me pay for it myself.

G Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a **make** vagy **do** ige megfelelő alakjával.

AMY: How do you share the housework in your family?

DAN: Mum ⁰ *does* most of the shopping, and she also ¹ the washing and ironing. We all ² some cleaning and we ³ our own beds.

AMY: Who ⁴ the cooking?

DAN: We all ⁵ some, but my mother ⁶ all our bread and cakes. Dad usually ⁷ the washing up. He always ⁸ the coffee after meals, too.

H Alkossunk mondatokat az adott szavakból a **make**, **do** vagy **get** ige megfelelő alakjával.

0 A: you/any mistakes/in your homework?

Did you make any mistakes in your homework?

B: Yes, I made two.

1 A: Amy/any letters/this morning?

B: Yes, she got two, and a postcard.

2 A: What time/you/usually/to work?

B: I usually get there at about 8.30.

3 A: you/me/a favour?

B: Yes, of course I will, if I can.

4 A: When/Helen/a decision/about moving to London?

B: As soon as she finds a flat there.

5 A: your daughter/undressed without help?

B: Yes, she can.

6 A: you/a lot of international phone calls?

B: Yes, I do, because I call my relatives in New Zealand and Canada.

7 A: What/Sue/for her birthday?

B: A new camera and some money to buy clothes.

8 A: Jill and Mick/married soon?

B: Yes, they are. The wedding is next month.

9 A: When/you/the shopping?

B: Whenever I have time. Usually on Saturday morning.

I Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **make** vagy **let** ige megfelelő alakjával.

0 Anne hates all vegetables, but her mother ***makes*** her eat some every day.

1 My parents don't me do anything that I don't want to.

2 Kate loves her pet cat so much she it sleep on her bed.

3 Why don't you your hair grow a bit? You always have it cut so short!

4 Peter wanted to go to work when he had flu, but the doctor him stay at home all week.

5 John is too strict with his children. He never them enjoy themselves.

6 Please me copy your maths homework! I can't do it at all.

7 Mum! Look what Sue me do! She pushed me and I knocked the milk over!

8 Sorry I'm home so late. Mr Jones wouldn't us go until the classroom was tidy.

9 Mum! Tom give me my pen! He took it and he won't give it back!

10 My dad was great. As soon as I passed my test he me drive his car.

I Fordítsuk le a következő beszélgetést. Ahol lehet, használjuk a **make** igével képzett műveltető szerkezetet.

EVE: Nem igazság! A szüleim nem hagynak semmit csinálni. Minden este otthon kell maradnom leckét csinálni. Nem engednek diszkóba menni, de balettórákra kell járnom és franciát kell tanulnom. Ezt mind utálok! Vasárnap templomba kell mennem és sokszor meg kell látogatnom a nagynénémet. Még dolgoznom is kell a ház körül. Takarítanom és főznöm kell. Nagyon mérges vagyok ettől!

ROY: Szerencsés vagy! Az én szüleim semmire sem kényszerítenek. Hagyják, hogy későn menjek haza, engedik, hogy dohányozzam, még ihatok is. Milyen borzasztóak a szüleim! Soha nem aggódnak értem!



Speak és talk; borrow és lend; take és bring; carry és fetch

1 Speak és talk (beszél)

A **speak** igét akkor használjuk, amikor:

- azt mondjuk, hogy valaki a gondolatait előszóval fejezi ki, illetve, amikor azt mondjuk meg, hogyan beszél:
*The room was silent. No one **spoke**.*
*Marian **speaks** very clearly.*
- arról a képességről beszélünk, hogy valaki valamilyen nyelven tud vagy azon a nyelven beszél:
*Clare can **speak** French and Spanish.*
- valaki valakivel párbeszédet folytat (~ to someone):
- telefonon:
*Could I **speak to** Mr Smith, please?*
- ugyanez formálisabb stílusban:
*I would like to **speak to** the manager.*

A **talk** igét akkor használjuk, amikor:

- valaki valamit megbeszél valakivel.

talk to someone about { something doing something

*I really must **talk to** Joanne. We need to **talk about** going on holiday.*

2 Borrow (kölcsön kér), lend (kölcsön ad)

A **lend** ige használata:

lend something to someone
lend someone something

Figyeljük meg a mondatok szerkezetét! Ha az igét a tárgy követi, a részeshatározó előtt **to** áll. Ha az ige után áll a részeshatározó, nincs előtte **to**.

*I **lent** Stephen my dictionary because he had lost his.* (= Kölcsönadtam Stephennek a szótáramat, mert a sajátját elvesztette.)

A **borrow** ige használata:

borrow something from someone

*Laura **borrowed** money **from** the bank in order to start her own business.* (= Laura kölcsönt vett fel a banktól, hogy elindítsa a vállalkozását.)

3 Take és bring, fetch és carry

Ezek az igék valami elmozdítását, elvitelét jelentik, de használatuk nagyon különböző.

Hasonlítsuk össze:

- A **take** jelentése: 'valamit elvisz valahova':
*When you go out, could you **take** this letter to the post office for me?*
- A **take away** jelentése: 'valamit valahonnan elvisz':
*The waiter came to our table to **take away** our plates.*
- A **bring** jelentése: '(oda)hoz valamit, ahol vagyunk vagy ahova menni fogunk':
*Mum, can I **bring** a friend home for dinner?*
- A **fetch** jelentése: 'valamiért elmegy, hogy elhozza valahonnan':

fetch someone/thing **from** somewhere
(= elhoz valakit/valamit valahonnan)
fetch something **for** someone (= elhoz valamit valakinek)

*Max usually **fetches** his son James **from** nursery at five o'clock.* (= Max rendszerint ötkor hozza el a fiát, James-t az óvodából.)

Az angolban a 'valakiért elmegy és elhozza' kifejezhető a **fetch** vagy a köznyelvben gyakran a **(go and) get** igével is:

*Max usually **(goes and) gets** his son James **from** nursery at five o'clock.*

- A **carry** ige a 'visz' fizikai tevékenység jellegét hangsúlyozza, ezért gyakran a 'cipel' igével fordítható:
*She was **carrying** a baby in her arms.* (= Egy kisbabát vitt a karjában.)
*Give me a hand! I can't **carry** this by myself.* (= Segíts! Egyedül nem bírom ezt vinni.)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **speak** vagy **talk** ige megfelelő alakjával.

- 0 Luke has got tonsillitis. Yesterday he couldn't **speak** at all.
- 1 James and Sheila aren't happy in London. They're about selling their house and going back to Scotland.
- 2 (On the phone) Could I to Mrs Brady, please?

- 3 My French teacher was an amazing man. He could six languages fluently.
- 4 Pauline in such a quiet voice, I couldn't hear what she said.
- 5 I met my old friend Janet at 6.00, and at 10.30 we were still !
- 6 You were on the phone all morning! Who were you to?

B Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a **lend** vagy **borrow** ige megfelelő alakjával.

BEN: You know Mike? He just asked if he could ⁰ **borrow** twenty pounds from me.

NICK: You didn't ¹ him anything, did you?

BEN: No, I didn't. I made some excuse and said I couldn't.

NICK: You were right to do that. He ² from everyone, you know, and he's very slow to pay people back. I ³ him ten pounds once, and I didn't get it back for weeks!

BEN: Well, I felt a bit mean. I could easily afford to ⁴ him ten pounds. It isn't very much, and perhaps he really needs it.

NICK: Not very much? If you're so rich, can I ⁵ ten pounds from you? I don't get my allowance from my parents for another week, and I'm really short of money at the moment!

C Keressük meg az összetett mondatok első tagmondatához illő folytatást.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 0 Sue always has school lunches | a because I'm taking the kids to the dentist's. |
| 1 Peter has trained his dog well | b but Claire takes sandwiches with her. |
| 2 Sharon couldn't stop coughing | c so she brought a computer home from the office. |
| 3 The waiter picked up the heavy tray | d he took his girlfriend with him. |
| 4 The next time you come to visit us | e I called an ambulance to take him to the hospital. |
| 5 I won't be at work this afternoon | f so Tom fetched a glass of water for her. |
| 6 My mum had a lot of work to finish | g he carries his papers in a smart leather briefcase. |
| 7 When Jack went to Paris on business | h and carried it carefully to the table. |
| 8 When Steve broke his arm | i why don't you bring your sister with you? |
| 9 The fireman came out of the house | j and when he throws a stick, Fido always fetches it. |
| 10 When James goes to his office | k carrying an unconscious child in his arms. |

0 **b** 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **bring**, **fetch** vagy **carry** ige megfelelő alakjával.

- 0 Judy **has taken** the children camping in Wales for a few days.
- 1 When you come to my house, can you some computer games with you?
- 2 Philip is very generous. Last time he came to visit, he presents for everyone.
- 3 Jenny is the children from school. She'll be home soon.
- 4 Our cat has got three kittens. She them around the house in her mouth.
- 5 When you come to my party, would you like to a friend with you?
- 6 It's quite cold today. If you go out, make sure you your coat.
- 7 When she went shopping, Kate plenty of money with her – and spent it all!
- 8 I have an important letter about your exams for you all. Please remember to it home and give it to your parents.
- 9 When you go into town, could you my suit from the cleaner's?
- 10 When Simon travelled around Europe as a student, he everything he needed on his back in an enormous rucksack.

Állapotot jelentő, 'statikus' igék

1 Nézzük meg a következő mondatokat:



A: What does Tom do?
B: He **sings** in a pop group.



A: What is Tom doing?
B: He's **singing** with his band.

A cselekvést jelentő, 'dinamikus' igék mind általános (pl. **he sings**), mind folyamatos (pl. **he's singing**) szemléletben is használhatóak. A legtöbb ige (pl. **sing, teach, study, talk, listen, sit, play** stb.) ebbe a csoportba tartozik.

Vannak azonban folyamatos alakban nem használható, úgynevezett statikus igék is. Nézzük meg a példákat:

Tom has a motorbike.



Tom likes Mary.



NEM: ~~tom is having a motorbike.~~
Tom is **liking** Mary.

Ezeket az igéket (**have/have got, like, know**) csak egyszerű alakban használhatjuk:

2 Ebbe a csoportba tartoznak:

► a gondolkodással kapcsolatos igék:

know (= tud, ismer)
forget (= elfelejt)
notice (= észrevesz)
understand (= megért)
recognize (= felismer)
remember (= emlékszik)

I **know** the answer. (NEM ~~I'm knowing~~ ...)

► az érzelmeket kifejező igék:

hate (= gyűlöl) **like** (= szeret)
love (= szeret) **want** (= akar)

He **likes** ice-cream. (NEM ~~He's liking~~ ...)

► egyéb ide tartozó igék:

be (= van)
cost (= valamennyibe kerül)
fit (= illik valamihez)
hear (= hall)
include (= magába foglal)
mean (= jelent)
need (= kell)
own (= birtokol)
matter (= számít)
prefer (= előnyben részesít)
smell (= szagot áraszt)
sound (= hallatszik)

These shoes **cost** £55. (NEM ~~... are costing~~ ...)

3 Hasonlítsuk össze a következő mondatokat. Az egyikben az ige cselekvést, a másikban állapotot jelöl. A cselekvést folyamatos, az állapotot egyszerű jellel fejezzük ki:

look: He's **looking** at the picture. (= Nézi a képet.)
He **looks** tired. (= Fáradtnak látszik.)
taste: John **is tasting** the soup. (= John megkóstolja a levest.)
The soup **tastes** nice. (= A leves jó ízű.)
feel: She's **feeling** the material. (= Tapogatja az anyagot.)
I **feel** cross about the accident. (= Mérges vagyok a baleset miatt.)
have: What's she doing? She's **having** lunch. (= Mit csinál? Ebédel.)
What's wrong? I **have** a headache. (= Mi a baj? Fáj a fejem.)
think: Please be quiet. I'm **thinking**. (= Kérlek, maradj csendben! Gondolkodom.)
I **think** you're right. (= Azt hiszem, igazad van.)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő szöveget a megadott igékkal. Ügyeljünk az egyszerű (**I eat**) és folyamatos (**I'm eating**) jelen helyes alkalmazására. Minden igét csak egyszer használjunk.

listen like sit ~~talk~~ want drink play understand think

Everybody ⁰ **is talking** very loudly. Tom ¹ near the CD player because he ² to the music. 'Who ³ the

guitar?' Judy asks him. 'It's Eric Clapton. I ⁴..... he's fantastic,' says Tom.
 'I ⁵..... the music, but I don't ⁶..... the words very well,'
 Judy says. At the end of the song, Judy says, 'Are you thirsty, Tom? ⁷.....
 you a drink?' 'Yes, a glass of orange juice, please,' says Tom. 'I never
⁸..... beer or wine.'

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával (egyszerű vagy folyamatos jelen).

- 0 I *don't understand* (not/understand) that sign over there. What *does it mean* (it/mean)?
- 1 Paula and Jack are in the sitting room. They (listen) to the news, and Paula (look) at a magazine as well.
- 2 Tim (like) his new shoes; they (fit) him perfectly.
- 3 JUNE: Look! That woman (sit) in your chair.
BARRY: It (not/matter). I can sit over there.
- 4 This computer is very expensive. It (cost) more than £3000, but the price (include) five CDs.

C Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakból egyszerű vagy folyamatos jelen használatával.

- 0 ALAN: (You/wear/your coat. /you/go/out?)
You're wearing your coat. Are you going out?
- JANE: (Yes, I/go/the shops. I/need/some more paint.)
Yes, I'm going to the shops. I need some more paint.
- 1 ADAM: (you/recognize/the woman in this photo?)
.....
SUSAN: (you/mean/the woman who/look/straight at the camera?)
.....
- 2 MARK: (Hello, David. Why/you/stand/here? /you/wait/for me?)
.....
DAVID: (Yes, I/want/to speak to you.)
.....
- 3 JAMES: (Listen to the engine. /you/think/it's all right?)
.....
FIONA: (It/sound/all right, but it/smell/of oil.)
.....

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal.

tastes	is tasting	feels	is feeling	thinks	is thinking
--------	------------	-------	-----------------------	--------	-------------

- 0 A customer *is feeling* some curtain material.
- 1 She's smiling because she about her boyfriend.
- 2 The cook the soup now.
- 3 This material very soft.
- 4 This cake delicious.
- 5 Pamela English is an easy language to learn.



Igei kifejezések – phrasal verbs (1) (go with, put on, get up)

1 Az igék egy mellettük álló másik szóval (határozószóval vagy előjárószóval) gyakran úgynevezett 'phrasal verb' kifejezést alkotnak, melynek jelentése eltér az önállóan álló ige jelentésétől (pl. **go with, put on, get up**).

2 Az ige + határozószó vagy előjárószó szerkezet (pl. **go with, go off, go on**) jelentése nem feltétlenül következtethető ki a két szóból, amelyből a kifejezés áll. Például a **go on** jelentése: 'folytat'. Az igei kifejezések jelentését célszerű szótárban ellenőrizni.

3 Nyelvtanilag különböző 'phrasal verbs' fajták léteznek:

► Első csoport:

*The police **are looking for** the criminal.* (= A rendőrség keresi a bűnözőt.)

*The police **are looking for** him.*

(NEM *The police are looking him for.*)

A **look for** szerkezet igéből és előjárószóból áll, ilyenkor a tárgy (**the criminal, him**) mindig az igei kifejezés után áll. Hasonló, gyakran használt szerkezetek:

go with (= vele jár)
break into (= betör)
look into (= megvizsgál valamit)
come across (= véletlenül találkozik)
look after (= gondoskodik róla)
call for (= felszólít valamire)
get at (= kritizál)
join in (= csatlakozik)

► Második csoport:

*She **put on** a hat.* (= Felvett egy kalapot.)

*She **put** a hat **on**.*

*She **put it on**.* (NEM *She put on it.*)

A **put on** kifejezés tárgya a **hat**, illetve az **it**. Ha a mondat tárgya névmás (**me, you, her, him, it, us, them, one, some, any**), akkor az a kifejezés igei és határozószói része közé kerül; ha főnév, akkor tehetjük akár az ige (**put a hat on**), akár az egész kifejezés után (**put on a hat**). Ilyen, gyakran használt szerkezetek még:

bring back (= visszahoz)
work out (= kidolgoz)
put on (= felvesz – ruhát)
fill in (= kitölt – kérdőívet)
take off (= levesz – ruhát)
put away (= eltesz)
hand in (= benyújt)
rub out (= kiradíroz)
look up (= kikeres)
turn down/off (= lehalkít, kikapcsol)
turn up/on (= felhangosít, bekapcsol)

► Harmadik csoport:

*I usually **get up** at seven o'clock.* (= Rendszerint hét órakor kelek fel.)

A harmadik csoportba azok a szerkezetek tartoznak, amelyek után nem állhat tárgy:

get away (= meglóg)
get back (= visszatér)
go out (= kijut)
go on (= folytat)
go off (= távozik)
get off/on (= leszáll, felszáll)
come round (= átjön)
hold on (= vár)
get up (= felkel)

Figyelem! A 'phrasal verb' sajátossága az is, hogy egy a szókapcsolatnak számos jelentése lehetséges, a zárójelben megadott jelentés csak egy a lehetséges jelentések közül.

► Negyedik csoport:

*I'm really **looking forward to** my holiday.* (= Nagyon várom a nyaralásomat.)

Ebbe a csoportba azok a három szavas kifejezések tartoznak, amelyeknél az ige és a határozószó után mindig áll előjárószó, és azzal együtt – természetesen – tárgy:

look forward to (= valamit örömmel vár)
get on with (someone) (= kijön valakivel)
come up with (= előáll valamivel)
look up to (= tisztel valakit)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő párbeszédet a megadott igei kifejezésekkel.

go out come round join in ~~turn down~~ get back call for
get off look after put on

FRANK: Ann, 0 *turn down* the music a bit. I want to tell you something.

ANN: What is it?

FRANK: Tom has just phoned to say that he is 1 here with his children, Jane and Michael. He wants us to 2 them while he goes to the shops in town.

ANN: We don't have to stay at home, do we? I'm going to the sports club with Sally. She's 3 me at eleven o'clock.

FRANK: No, you can 4 if you like. But it's cold; are you going to go on your bike?

ANN: Yes, but I'll 5 some warm clothes.

FRANK: OK, Jane and Michael can go there on the bus. I'll tell them where to 6

And when you're at the club, can you let Jane and Michael 7 your games?

ANN: Don't worry. We always have a good time together.

FRANK: Good, but remember to 8 by one o'clock, so we can have lunch.

B Helyettesítsük az aláhúzott szavakat a megfelelő igei kifejezéssel. Használjunk szótárt, ha szükséges.

brought back ~~get away~~ went off fill in get at hold on look up
put away rubbed out

- 0 How did the prisoners escape? *get away*
- 1 If you want a passport, you must complete this form.
- 2 Wait! I'm coming.
- 3 I can't reach the books at the back of the cupboard.
- 4 The bomb exploded just before midnight.
- 5 The teacher erased the words that were wrong.
- 6 You can consult the meaning of the words in a dictionary.
- 7 Has Philip returned the books that he borrowed?
- 8 At the end of the day the children stored their toys.

C Egészítsük ki a kérdésekre adott válaszokat a kérdésben szereplő igei kifejezés megfelelő alakjával és a zárójelben megadott névmással. Ügyeljünk a helyes szórendre.

0 A: Where did you come across that old bicycle?

B: (it) I *came across it* in my grandfather's garage.

0 A: Have you taken your shoes off?

B: (them) Yes, I've *taken them off*

1 A: How did the thief break into your house?

B: (it) He using a hammer.

2 A: Can you turn the bedroom lights off, please?

B: (them) Yes, I'll in a minute.

- 3 A: Have the students handed in their homework?
B: (it) Yes, they've all
- 4 A: This maths problem is difficult. I can't work out the answer.
B: (it) No, I can't either.
- 5 A: Do you think this tie goes with my shirt?
B: (it) Yes, it very well.
- 6 A: Who looks after your dogs when you are away on business?
B: (them) My neighbour

D A következő mondatoknál el kell döntenünk, hogy lehetséges-e más szórendet is használni vagy sem. Ha az aláhúzott szó a mondat másik helyére is kerülhet, írjuk át a mondatot – ha nem, húzzunk egy vonalat.

- 0 Carol took off her gloves.
Carol took her gloves off.
- 0 I came across this chair in a second-hand shop.
—
- 1 Simon joined in the singing.
- 2 The ball got stuck high in a tree, and we couldn't get at it.
- 3 It's hot in here. Shall I turn down the heating?
- 4 Could you look up 'trivial' in your dictionary, please?
- 5 I really don't think a brown jacket goes with grey trousers!
- 6 The lesson is over. It's time to put away your books.
- 7 It's cold this morning. I think you should put on a scarf.
- 8 Quick! Rub out that drawing before the teacher comes in!
- 9 Someone broke into our office last night and stole the computers.
- 10 To open a bank account, you have to fill in this form.

E Egészítsük ki a következő párbeszédet a megadott igei kifejezésekkel.

look up to	go out	join in	look after	look into	go off	look forward to
get on with	hold on	put away	come across			

- 0 A: How do you *get on with* Martin?
B: Fine. I've always found him very friendly and sociable.

- 1 A: Is Amy starting university?
B: Oh yes. She can't wait to get there!
- 2 A: Where did you get that hat? It's great!
B: I it on a market stall, when I was actually looking for a belt.
- 3 A: What did you do last Saturday night?
B: Nothing much. I didn't I just stayed in and watched TV.
- 4 A: Are you ready? We'll miss the train if we don't go soon!
B: ! I'll be ready in two minutes!
- 5 A: Do you like Mr Arnold?
B: I don't like him, but I him. He's a brilliant teacher.
- 6 A: I feel awful! I think I must be getting the flu. And I've got an important meeting today.
B: Don't worry. Go home and let me everything here.
- 7 A: Did David enjoy his first day at school?
B: Yes, he did. His teacher said he all the activities, and had fun.
- 8 A: What happened to your local MP? Wasn't he involved in some scandal?
B: Oh, haven't you heard? The police are his financial affairs.
- 9 A: It looks as if summer is over. It's quite cool today.
B: Yes. Time to the barbecue until next year!
- 10 A: I love the fireworks on Bonfire Night, don't you?
B: No! Every time one with a loud bang, I jump out of my skin!

F Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat az alábbi igei kifejezések alkalmazásával. Mindegyiket csak egyszer használjuk.

get back ~~come across~~ get up look up to look after
put on look forward to take off go away

- 0 Egy konferencián Peter összefutott egy régi barátjával, akit sok éve nem látott.
At a conference Peter came across an old friend who he hadn't seen for many years.
- 1 Sarah fivére, Mark felnéz a nővérére. Csodálja, és nagyszerűnek tartja.
.....
- 2 David nagyon későn ért haza a buliból, így másnap reggel nem tudott időben felkelni.
.....
- 3 Amikor elmegyek hétvégre, mindig a szomszédok vigyáznak a házra.
.....
- 4 Alice nagyon várja a tizenhatodik születésnapját. Az összes barátját meghívta a születésnapi bulijára.
.....
- 5 Amikor megjöttem, levettem az ingem és pólót vettem fel.
.....



Igei kifejezések – phrasal verbs (2) (get over, call off, grow up)

Ahogy az előző fejezetben láttuk, a 'phrasal verb' elnevezésű szerkezetek nyelvtani szempontból négy csoportba oszthatók:

- 1** Igéből és előjárósóból álló szerkezet, ahol a tárgy mindig az igei kifejezés után áll:

*This book **belongs to** Ingrid.* (= Ez a könyv Ingridé.)

*It **belongs to** her.*

Ebbe a csoportba tartoznak még:

call at (= rövid időre megáll valahol)
call on (= beugrik valakihez)
consist of (= valamiből áll)
deal with (= megold valamit, foglalkozik valamivel)
get over (= túleszi magát valamin)
go over (= áttekint valamit)
head for (= valami felé tart)
keep off (= távol tartja magát valamitől)
laugh at (= kinevet)
lead to (= valamihez vezet)
look through (= alaposan átnéz)
make for (= elindul valami felé)
pay for (= kifizet)
see to (= gondoz)
stand for (= jelent)
take after (= hasonlít valakire)
think of (= gondol valakire/valamire)

- 2** Igéből és határozószóból álló szerkezet, ahol a tárgy az ige vagy az egész kifejezés után áll:

*Tim **cleaned up** the mess.* (= Tom feltakarította a piszkot.)

*Tim **cleaned** the mess **up**.*

Ha a tárgy személyes névmás, akkor csak az ige és a határozószó között állhat:

*Tim **cleaned it up**.* (= Tim tisztította fel.)

(NEM *Tim **cleaned up it**.*)

Ebbe a csoportba tartoznak még:

bring up (= említ)
call off (= lemond egy eseményt)
call out (= szólít)
carry out (= kivitelez)
clear up (= feltakarít)
find out (= megtud pl. titkot)
pick up (= felvesz)
put off (= elodáz)
put up (= elszállásol)
sort out (= elintéz)
take up (= belefog valamibe)
throw away (= kidob)
try on (= felpróbál)
wash up (= elmos pl. edényt)

- 3** Igéből és határozószóból álló szerkezet, amely után nem áll tárgy:

*Where did you **grow up**?* (= Hol nőttél fel?)

Ebbe a csoportba tartoznak még:

call out* (= felkiált)
clear up* (= kitisztul)
dress up (= felöltözik)
find out* (= kitalál)
get through (= végére ér)
give in (= megadja magát)
run away (= elszalad)
set off (= útnak indul)
shut up (= befogja a száját)
stay in (= otthon marad)
wash up* (= elmosogat)

* A csillaggal jelölt kifejezések tárgyas változatban is előfordulnak – ilyenkor a 2. csoportba tartoznak.

- 4** Az ige és a határozószó után mindig áll előjárószó, és azzal együtt tárgy:

*I can't **put up with** all this noise.* (= Nem tudom elviselni ezt a lármát.)

A negyedik csoportba tartoznak még:

catch up on = behoz lemaradást
catch up with = utolér
get away with = megúszik valamit
go out with = együtt jár valakivel
live up to = megfelel az elvárásnak

Gyakorlatok

A A zárójelben megdott szót tegyük a megfelelő helyre a mondatban.

- 0 (to) This book belongs *to* Ingrid ~~to~~ I'd better return it to her.
- 1 (it) There was a lot of rubbish but Mr Brown cleaned up
- 2 (her) My mother was eccentric and my sister takes after
- 3 (for) It was getting dark so the scouts headed the nearest village
- 4 (it) Everyone said the project would be difficult but they carried out without any problems.
- 5 (them) I know their parents died when the children were young, so who brought up ?
- 6 (away) What did you do with that magazine? Did you throw it ?
- 7 (up) What's your hat doing on the floor? Pick it !
- 8 (it) I like this dress. Can I try on ?
- 9 (at) My sister laughed all the jokes
- 10 (with) My colleague deals complaints

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott igei kifejezésekkel úgy, hogy jelentésük az első mondatéhoz hasonló legyen.

check in find out ~~get over~~ give out look out pick up put up with
stand for take up

- 0 Has your mother recovered from her cold?
Has your mother *got over* her cold?
- 1 Be careful! You almost stepped on my foot.
..... ! You almost stepped on my foot.
- 2 How did you discover that they were married?
How did you that they were married?
- 3 What do the initials NATO mean?
What do the initials NATO?
- 4 They started practising yoga in India.
They yoga in India.
- 5 When you arrive at the hotel, you have to register.
When you arrive at the hotel, you have to
- 6 I'm not prepared to tolerate bad behaviour.
I'm not prepared to bad behaviour.
- 7 I'll collect the children on my way home from work.
I'll the children on my way home from work.
- 8 Molly, can you distribute the papers. Two per person.
Molly, can you the papers. Two per person.

C Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott kifejezések megfelelő alakjával. Ügyeljünk a zárójelben lévő névmások pontos elhelyezésére.

call on	catch up on	clear up	find out	head for	laugh at
put off	put up	run away	set off	stay in	

Kate and Jane had to study a lot so they usually ⁰ *stayed in* during the week, but at the weekend they always tried to go out. One weekend they decided to go camping, but it rained so hard that they had to ¹ (it) for a week. The weather wasn't very good in the first part of that week, but it ² on Friday, and on Saturday it was fine. They ³ after breakfast and got a train going to Ripon. From Ripon they ⁴ Pateley Bridge, about fifteen kilometres away. When they reached Grantley, which was about half way, they ⁵ Ellen Eastwood, a distant cousin of Kate's. Ellen was very pleased to see them and offered to ⁶ (them) for the night. They accepted, but decided to go on to Pateley Bridge and then come back in the afternoon. When they got back, Ellen had found some old photograph albums and they all ⁷ the funny clothes and the hairstyles from the old days. Then they talked and talked. Kate ⁸ things about her grandparents that she didn't know before – apparently they had to ⁹ to get married. (Her parents had never told her that.) But it wasn't just Ellen who talked; she wanted to ¹⁰ the lives of Kate's family in York, so Kate told her everything about her parents and her two brothers.

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megfelelő kifejezésekkel.

- 0 When you leave a hotel, you usually have to *b* before midday.
a) call off b) check out c) run away d) sort out
- 1 They say the new goalkeeper is very good. I hope he his reputation.
a) makes for b) takes up c) goes out with d) lives up to
- 2 Jason was in a children's home.
a) brought up b) tried on c) stayed in d) taken up
- 3 Do you want a lift in my car? Where are you ?
a) going over b) heading for c) picking up d) getting through
- 4 You start walking. I'll you in a few minutes.
a) catch up with b) lead to c) get over d) pick up
- 5 She's very obstinate. Once she's decided something, she won't
a) take after b) give in c) find out d) look through
- 6 When it's a carnival time, everybody has to
a) put on b) set off c) dress up d) call out
- 7 It rained in the morning but in the afternoon it
a) cleared up b) got over c) cleaned up d) got through
- 8 We'll have to decide this week. We can't until next week.
a) keep it off b) deal it with c) call it out d) put it off

E Néhány diák a félév végére tervezett összejövetelt beszél meg. Egészítsük ki a beszélgetést a megadott kifejezések megfelelő alakjával. Ügyeljünk a zárójelben lévő névmások elhelyezésére.

call out	clear up	deal with	dress up	get away with	go over
pay for	pick up	put up	shut up	think of	

PETRA: OK. As you know, we have to organise the end-of-term party. First we have to
0 *think of* a theme, like monsters or cartoon characters or something because
everybody likes to 1 at these parties.

COLIN: I vote for monsters. I want to be a monster.

PETRA: All right, you can be a monster, Colin. Then someone has to make posters and
2 (them) so that everybody knows the date and the theme.

GERRY: I can 3 (that). I'm good at drawing.

PETRA: OK. Then we need someone to collect money from everybody who's coming.

LAURA: I'll do that. Collecting money's my hobby!

PETRA: All right, but you also have to order the food and 4 (it) out of the money
you collect.

LAURA: Oh, dear. I thought that I would 5 just collecting the money.

PETRA: Then we usually borrow musical equipment from the sports club, so we don't need to pay
anything there. But we need somebody to collect it.

FRANK: No problem. I'll 6 (it) in my new car.

KEN: The oldest new car in the world!

FRANK: Oh, 7 ! You're just jealous!

PETRA: All right, all right. As you know, we always have a bingo competition, so we need
someone to 8 the numbers.

FRANK: How about Ken? He's got a big mouth.

KEN: Thanks for the compliment. OK, I'll do it.

PETRA: Right. And now for the best bit. We need some volunteers to 9 everything
at the end.

EVE: Everyone can help to do that.

PETRA: Yes, I suppose so. All right, let's 10 everything again so that it's clear ...

F Fordítsuk le a mondatokat a megadott igei kifejezések segítségével. Mindegyiket csak egyszer használjuk.

call at	consist of	go out with	grow up	lead to	live up to
look through	throw away				

- 1 Jack beugrott a postára, hogy bélyeget vegyen.
- 2 Az új filmsorozat öt részből áll.
- 3 Minden lapot átnéztél ma reggel?
- 4 Vidéken vagy városban nőttél fel?
- 5 Tim nem tud eleget tenni a szülei elvárásainak.
- 6 Peter az összes régi lemezét kidobta.
- 7 Ez az út a tengerpartra vezet?
- 8 A nővérem egy ismert újságíróval jár.



A főnevek többes száma – plural nouns (cats, men); one / ones

- 1 A főnevek többes számban általában **-s** végződést kapnak:

EGYES SZÁM	TÖBBES SZÁM (+ -s)
a cup	→ some cups
one student	→ three students
the cat	→ the cats

- Írásban **-s, -ss, -sh, -ch** vagy **-x** végződésű főnevek, valamint egyes **-o**-ra végződő főnevek többes számban **-es** végződést kapnak:

+ -es	
bus	→ buses
kiss	→ kisses
wish	→ wishes
watch	→ watches
match	→ matches
box	→ boxes
potato	→ potatoes
tomato	→ tomatoes

- Mássalhangzó + **-y**-ra végződő főnevek **-ies** végződést kapnak:

-y → -ies	
family	→ families
country	→ countries
city	→ cities

- A főnév végén álló **f**-ből többes számban gyakran **v** lesz:

-f/-fe → -ves	
loaf	→ loaves
wife	→ wives
knife	→ knives

- 2 Egyes főnevek többes száma rendhagyó:

man	→ men	tooth	→ teeth
woman	→ women	sheep	→ sheep
child	→ children	mouse	→ mice
person	→ people	fish	→ fish
foot	→ feet		

(A többes számmal kapcsolatos további információ az A táblázatban, a 360 oldalon található.)

- 3 One és ones

A főnév megismétlése helyett a **one** névmást használhatjuk:

I need a pen. Have you got one? (= Szükségem van egy tollra. Neked van (tollad)?)

Our house is the one with the red door. (= A mi házunk az a piros ajtajú (ház).)

Többes számú főnévre a **ones** névmással utalhatunk:

Do you like red apples or green ones? (= A zöld almát szereted vagy a pirosat?)

These biscuits are cheaper than those ones. (= Ezek a kekszek olcsóbbak, mint azok.)

- 4 Kérdő mondatban gyakran használjuk a **Which one ...?** (= melyik) és a **Which ones ...?** (= melyek) alakot:

ASSISTANT: *Which one would you like, the black dress or the white one?*

MARY: *I'd like the black one, please.* (= A feketét kérem.)

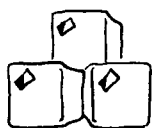
JIM: *I like the black and white photographs. Which ones do you like? The black and white ones or the colour ones?*

SUSAN: *I prefer the colour ones.* (= Nekem jobban tetszenek a színesek.)

Gyakorlatok

- A Írjuk a képek alá a megfelelő főnév többes számú alakját.

0



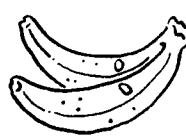
Some **boxes**

1



Some

2



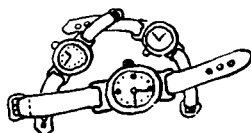
Two

3



Some

4



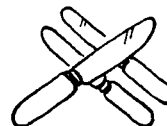
Three

5



Some

6

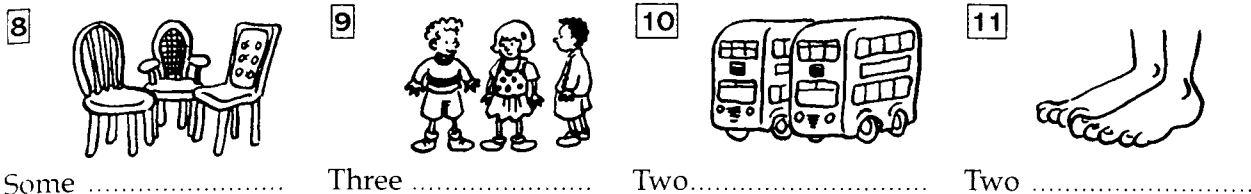


Some

7



Four



B Pipáljuk ki a helyesen írt többes számú alakokat és húzzuk át a hibásakat.

knives ✓	tooths	matches	wishs	matchs	citys
cities	men	countries	potatoes	teeth	familys
wishes ✓	tomatos	mouses	wifes	wives ✓	potatos
countrys	tomatoes	mans	mice	knifes	families

C Írjuk át a zárójelben megadott mondatokat úgy, hogy a főnevet a **one/ones** névmással helyettesítjük.

- 0 He's got a new suit.
(It's a blue suit.) *It's a blue one.*
- 0 A: Who is your favourite actor?
B: (The actor that I like best is Bruce Willis.) *The one that I like best is Bruce Willis.*
- 1 I want a glass of orange juice.
(Do you want a glass of orange juice?)
- 2 The chocolate cakes are popular.
(But the strawberry cakes are nicer.)
- 3 A: Which house do you like?
B: (I like the house with the red door.)
- 4 Tom has a blue carpet in his room.
(Emma has a green carpet in her room.)
- 5 English is a difficult language.
(There isn't an easy language.)
- 6 A: Where are the photos?
B: (Do you mean the photos of the wedding?)

D Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a **one/ones** névmással.

- ELLEN: Here's the china department. We need some cups.
ERIC: Do we want large ⁰ *ones* or small ¹ ?
ELLEN: Small ² are best.
ERIC: But I like tea in a large cup.
ELLEN: OK, put six small cups and a large ³ in the basket.
ERIC: What about a teapot? There's a metal ⁴ and a nice china ⁵ Which ⁶ do you like?
ELLEN: I prefer the china ⁷
ERIC: It's similar to the little cups but it's not like my big ⁸ Now, we also need knives.
ELLEN: Can't we use the ⁹ that my mother gave us?
ERIC: Well, I suppose the big ¹⁰ for bread is all right, but we certainly need some little ¹¹ for vegetables and a sharp ¹² for meat.
ELLEN: All right. Where are the knives?



Megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnevek – countable és uncountable nouns

- 1 A legtöbb főnévnek egyes és többes számú alakja is van:

house/houses dog/dogs man/men

Ezek megszámlálható főnevek.

one house two dogs three men

Az **a**, **some** és **the** névelő használható a megszámlálható főnevek előtt:

	EGYES SZÁM	TÖBBES SZÁM
a:	a house	~
the:	the house	the houses
some:	~	some houses

- 2 Más főneveket általában nem tehetünk többes számba:

water bread petrol rain tennis

Ezek megszámlálhatatlan főnevek (ld. 360. old. B táblázat).

Nézzük meg az alábbi képeket:



rain (megszámlálhatatlan) **cars** (megszámlálható)



Az **a** névelő vagy számnév nem állhat megszámlálhatatlan főnév előtt, de a **the** és a **some** igen:

a: We need to buy bread and sugar.
some: Stop here. We need **some** petrol.
the: Look at **the** rain!

- 3 Az alábbiakban néhány megszámlálhatatlan főnevet sorolunk fel azokkal a kifejezésekkel együtt, amelyekkel „megszámolhatjuk” ezeket:

a { glass
bottle
carton } of { water
milk
a cup of { tea
coffee

a spoonful of { sugar
coffee
a { slice
piece } of { cake
bread
toast
cheese
a piece of { luggage
information
news
advice
homework

A **some** megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnevekkel egyaránt használható: **some apples, some water** (ld. 73. fejezet).

Vásárláskor ezek előtt a főnevek előtt a **grams/kilos/litres** stb. szavakat is használhatjuk:

Can I have two litres of milk, please?

- 4 Egyes főnevek egyaránt lehetnek megszámlálhatóak vagy megszámlálhatatlanok, aszerint, hogy milyen jelentésben használjuk azokat:

MEGSZÁMLÁLHATATLAN

I like tea. (= Szeretem a teát.)

Her hair is red. (= Vörös haja van.)

I haven't got time. (= Nincs időm.)

I always have sugar in my tea. (= Cukorral iszom a teát.)

MEGSZÁMLÁLHATÓ

I'd like two teas, please. (= Két CSÉSZE teát kérek.)

Three sugars in my tea, please. (= Három KOCKACUKROT kérek a teámba.)

There's a hair in my tea. (= Egy HAJSZÁL van a teámban.)

We always have a good time on holiday. (= Nyaraláskor mindig jól érezzük magunkat.)

Figyelem! A have a good time kifejezés jelentése: 'Jól érzi magát, jól szórakozik.'

Gyakorlatok

A Tegyük az **a** vagy **some** szavakat a következő főnevek elé.

0 <u>a</u> house	7 information	15 warm water
0 <u>some</u> bread	8 toast	16 big city
1 holiday	9 bird	17 good news
2 cinema	10 grass	18 Indian tea
3 luggage	11 trains	19 boring film
4 socks	12 musician	20 thick book
5 school	13 spaghetti	21 good advice
6 homework	14 ideas	22 tall woman

B Válasszuk ki a megfelelő lehetőséget a szöveg kiegészítéséhez.

Welcome to Chatsworth House. I'm going to lead this tour of the house and give you ⁰ an/some information about the history of the house. Let's start in the famous Dining Room, which George V and Queen Mary visited in 1933. For ¹ a/- dinner, the King and Queen ate ² a/- beef from Scotland and ³ a/- small pig from a local farm, and drank ⁴ a/some wine from France and Italy. The beautiful cloth on the table is made of ⁵ the/- best Lancashire cotton. To your left, you can see that the legs of ⁶ the/- little table in the corner are made of ⁷ a/- glass. Finally, on the wall by ⁸ the/a window, there is ⁹ a/some painting by ¹⁰ the/- Dutch painter, Van Dyck.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal.

a (x2)	bottle	cartons	cup (x2)	pieces	slice (x2)	some (x3)	the (x4)	two (x3)
--------	--------	---------	----------	--------	------------	-----------	----------	----------

- 0 My father has a motorbike.
- 1 After school I have a of bread with butter on it.
- 2 Tom has got three of luggage.
- 3 Sue always has a of coffee after lunch.
- 4 For this experiment we need a glass with water in it.
- 5 We want coffees, please – one white and one black.
- 6 We must stop at a garage and put petrol in car.
- 7 How much is bottle of Coke at supermarket?
- 8 There are two of milk in fridge.
- 9 Can I have a of tea and a of cake, please?
- 10 There are hairs in bath. Both are long and blond.

D Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

- 1 A poggyászom az autóban van.
- 2 Tudsz adni egy papírt és egy ceruzát?
- 3 Citromot és két kanál cukrot kérek a teámba.
- 4 Tojásh és sajtot kell vennünk.
- 5 Ebben a könyvben popzenével kapcsolatos tudnivalók vannak.
- 6 Van egy rossz hírem a számodra.
- 7 Kaptál házi feladatot holnapra?
- 8 Nem sok víz van az asztalon.
- 9 Nem kérek tejet a kávémba.
- 10 Sally gyakran kólát iszik, miközben a házi feladatot írja.



A névelő (1) – articles (a, an, the)

1 Hasonlítsuk össze az a és az an használatát:

<p>➤ Az a határozatlan névelőt mássalhangzóval kezdődő szavak előtt használjuk (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l stb.): <i>a doctor a big car a girl</i></p> <p>➤ az a névelőt használjuk azok előtt a szavak előtt is, amelyek u-val kezdődnek, és kiejtésük megegyezik a you szó kiejtésével, valamint az eu kezdetű szavak előtt: <i>a university a European city</i></p>	<p>➤ Az an határozatlan névelőt magánhangzóval kezdődő szavak előtt használjuk (a, e, i, o, u): <i>an apple an interesting film</i></p> <p>➤ az an névelőt használjuk azok előtt a szavak előtt is, amelyek néma h-val kezdődnek. Hasonlítsuk össze a következő két szót: <i>an hour</i> (a kiejtése azonos az our szó kiejtésével, az ilyen h-t nevezzük néma h-nak.) <i>a house</i> (ebben a szóban a h nem néma, tehát a névelő a)</p>
---	--

2 Hasonlítsuk össze az a/an és a the névelő használatát:

<p>MARY: <i>I've got a CD player and a TV in my room.</i> JOE: <i>Is the TV big?</i> <i>a TV</i> (– egy tévé, itt említik először) <i>the TV</i> (– az a bizonyos tévé, amit Mary az előző mondatban említett)</p>	<p>➤ Az a/an határozatlan névelőt használjuk, ha egyik beszélő sem tudja, konkrétan kiről vagy miről van szó: <i>There's a man at the door.</i></p> <p>➤ A the határozott névelőt akkor használhatjuk, ha mindkét beszélő számára nyilvánvaló, kiről vagy miről van szó. <i>Do you like the new film by Steven Spielberg?</i></p>
--	---

3

<p>Az a/an névelőt használjuk:</p> <p>➤ árák, sebesség és gyakoriság megnevezése előtt: <i>It costs £2 a litre. (= Literenként két font.) He drives at ninety miles an hour! (= Óránként kilencven mérfölddel hajt.) I go to the gym twice a week. (= Kétszer egy héten megyek a tornaterembe.)</i></p> <p>➤ a hundred, a thousand és a million számnevek előtt: <i>a hundred people a thousand days</i></p> <p>➤ ha valaki foglalkozásáról beszélünk: <i>I'm a bank manager.</i></p>	<p>A the névelőt használjuk:</p> <p>➤ ha az említett dologból vagy személyből csak egy van: <i>May I turn on the TV? (= Bekapcsolhatom a tévét? – csak egy tévé van) The Queen is visiting our school today. (= Ma a királynő meglátogatja az iskolánkat.)</i></p> <p>➤ ha azt mondjuk, hogy valaki valamilyen hangszeren játszik: <i>I play the guitar. (= Gitáron játszom.) Jane plays the violin. (= John hegedül.)</i> Figyelem! A hangszer neve előtt nincs előjárósó: NEM: I play on the guitar.</p>
---	--

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a vagy an határozatlan névelővel.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 0 My father's got a new car. | 4 He's Italian businessman. |
| 0 It's an old film. | 5 The journey takes hour. |
| 1 This is interesting book. | 6 We've got black cat. |
| 2 They've got house in Spain. | 7 I want to buy umbrella. |
| 3 It's cheap restaurant. | 8 Maths is difficult subject. |

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **a** vagy **an** határozatlan névelővel és a megfelelő szókapcsolattal.

- 0 Steven Spielberg is *an American director*.
- 1 Tokyo is
- 2 Heathrow is
- 3 The Ganges is
- 4 Oxford is
- 5 A BMW is
- 6 Spain is

European country
Indian river
American director
university town
Japanese city
English airport
German car

C Ian Brent biztosítást szeretne kötni, ezért kereste fel Mike Cox, a biztosítótársaság képviselője. Egészítsük ki a párbeszéd szövegét **a**, **an** vagy **the** névelővel.

MIR COX: Hello, my name is Mike Cox. I am from ⁰ *the* insurance company.
I have ⁰ *a* form with some questions. Your name is Ian Brent.
Do you have ¹ middle name?

MIR BRENT: Yes, my full name is Ian Stanley Brent.

MIR COX: All right. Now, where do you live, Mr Brent?

MIR BRENT: I live in ² house in Peckham.

MIR COX: Peckham, I see. And what is your job?

MIR BRENT: I'm ³ scientist. I work for ⁴ government.

MIR COX: Do you work in ⁵ laboratory or in ⁶ office?

MIR BRENT: I work in ⁷ small office in ⁸ centre of London.

MIR COX: And how do you get to ⁹ office from Peckham?

MIR BRENT: I usually take ¹⁰ underground.

MIR COX: What is your salary, Mr Brent?

MIR BRENT: Well, I earn almost £35,000 ¹¹ year.

MIR COX: Now, your family. You're married, aren't you?

MIR BRENT: Yes, and we have two children, ¹² girl and ¹³ boy.
¹⁴ girl is sixteen and ¹⁵ boy is fourteen.

MIR COX: Fine. And you want to take out ¹⁶ insurance policy for £100,000.

MIR BRENT: Yes, that's right.

MIR COX: Well, that's all. Can you sign ¹⁷ form here at ¹⁸ bottom?

D A következő mondatokban nem mindig a megfelelő névelőt használták. Húzzuk át a helytelenül használt névelőket és írjuk melléjük a helyes megoldást, a hibátlanokat pedig pipáljuk ki.

0 I'm not sure what she does, but I think she's a ✓ doctor.

0 I see ~~the~~ *a* thousand different things when I am on holiday.

1 Be careful! That perfume costs £100 a bottle.

2 Please invite Ben to your party. He plays a piano and a guitar.

3 A: What does John do?

B: I'm not sure, but I think he's the teacher in a school.

4 She likes to drive at the hundred miles an hour.

5 I play the violin in an orchestra. They pay me £50 the day!

6 I've got the hundred jobs to do before we leave.

7 A: Is my handbag in the living-room?

B: No, it isn't. I think it's in a kitchen.

A névelő (2) – articles (a, an, the)

1 Az a/an határozatlan névelő használata:

- egyes számban álló főnevek előtt:
He was reading a book.
 - személyek vagy tárgyak leírása előtt:
They have a beautiful house.
John is an old friend of mine.
 - a **What + a/an + főnév felkiáltásban:**
What a beautiful day! (= Micsoda szép nap!)
- (Az a/an használatára vonatkozó egyéb tudnivalók a 71. fejezetben találhatók.)

2 A the határozott névelő használata:

- egyes és többes számban álló főnevek előtt:
the book the books
 - megszámlálhatatlan főnevek előtt (pl. **music, water, food, education**):
The water is in the fridge.
- Figyelem! A megszámlálhatatlan főneveknek nincs többes számuk, és az a/an határozatlan névelőt sem használjuk megszámlálhatatlan főnevek előtt.
- A **the** névelőt akkor használjuk, ha teljesen egyértelmű, kiről vagy miről van szó:
Anna likes music, but she doesn't like the music that John plays.
Mike's gone to the shops.
I must go to the bank /the station/the airport.
 - ha valamiből csak egy van:
the River Thames the Atlantic
the Himalayas the USA
- (Egyéb tudnivalók a 71. fejezetben találhatók.)

3 Nem használjuk a the névelőt

- többes számban álló főnevek (pl. **vegetables**) és megszámlálhatatlan főnevek (pl. **education, music**) előtt, amikor ezekről a dolgokról általánosságban beszélünk:
Do you like vegetables?
I think education is very important.
 - feladatok száma és oldalszámok előtt:
Do Exercise 3 on page 29. (= Végezd el a 29. oldalon a 3. feladatot.)
Használjuk viszont sorszámnevek előtt:
Do the third exercise.
 - Nem használjuk sem az a/an, sem a the névelőt nyelvek megnevezése, étkezések neve, városok, a legtöbb ország és a legtöbb utca neve előtt, valamint repülőterek, állomások, önállóan álló hegységek és tavak neve előtt sem:
She speaks Spanish.
She lives in Amsterdam in Holland.
What time will lunch be?
from Heathrow Airport to Oxford Street
 - Nincs névelő a közlekedési eszközök neve előtt sem:
by car/taxi/bus/plane/train
- Figyelem: ha a **car** főnév előtt az **in** elöljárószó áll, akkor ki kell tennünk a **the** névelőt: *I came in the car/in my car.*
- Ha a **What ...!** kezdetű felkiáltásban többes számú főnév vagy megszámlálhatatlan főnév van, az a/an névelőt nem használhatjuk:
What disgusting food!
(= Micsoda undorító étel!)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő szöveget a/an vagy the névelővel, ahol szükséges.

Home and school: In our class ⁰ the teacher lives in ⁰ a house, but all the students live in ⁰ flats. Many students have ¹ breakfast at home but one or two make ² sandwich and eat it on ³ way to school. Some students walk to school, but many take ⁴ underground and some come by ⁵ car.

Interests: Everybody goes to ⁶ cinema – some students see ⁷ films two or three times ⁸ week. Everybody likes to listen to ⁹ music and most people listen to ¹⁰ radio for ¹¹ hour or more every day.

Ambitions: Some students want to study ¹² science at ¹³ university; some want to find ¹⁴ job, and one wants to be ¹⁵ artist.

B A következő szöveg a Heathrow repülőtér egyik étterméről szól. Ahol az aláhúzott kifejezéseket helyesen használták, pipáljuk ki, ahol nem, húzzuk át a kifejezést és írjuk mellé a helyes megoldást.

What kind ⁰ ~~of the food~~ of food can you choose if you miss your plane and have to spend a night at ⁰ a Heathrow hotel ? I suggest that you ¹ leave an airport , and take a look at the local restaurants.

'Apollo' is twenty minutes from the airport ² by taxi and is a Greek restaurant that belongs ³ to a local family They also have ⁴ the pasta and other international food.

⁵ The food on the menu outside looked good and I decided to have a Greek salad, and then a steak. I normally ⁶ have a dinner at about eight o'clock, but it was then about nine. I was looking forward ⁷ to a glass of wine and some bread. ⁸ The number sixteen on the wine list looked interesting – a red wine ⁹ from the Mexico I ordered ¹⁰ a bottle of water as well. (It was £2.00, which is quite cheap these days ¹¹ in UK restaurants)

When it arrived, ¹² the food was good. ¹³ The first course , the salad, was fresh and delicious. ¹⁴ And steak was even better. So, if you spend a night at Heathrow, try 'Apollo'.

C Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet **a/an** vagy **the** névelővel, ahol szükséges.

MIKE: Is Maria ⁰ a student at your college?

ROSIE: No, she's ¹ old friend of mine.

MIKE: What does she do?

ROSIE: She's ² computer programmer. She's not English, you know. She comes from ³ Brazil, but she lives in ⁴ USA.

MIKE: Has she got ⁵ job there?

ROSIE: Yes, she works for ⁶ big company there.

MIKE: Do you write ⁷ letters to each other?

ROSIE: Yes, I've got ⁸ letter from her here.

MIKE: What does she say in ⁹ letter?

ROSIE: She says that she has ¹⁰ nice apartment in ¹¹ centre of ¹² Chicago.

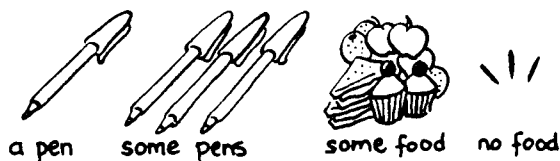
D Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

- 1 Van egy könyvem az elefántokról.
- 2 Árulnak bort az állomás mellett lévő boltban?
- 3 A zene nagyon fontos az Egyesült Államokban.
- 4 Félek a kutyáktól, főleg a nagy kutyáktól.
- 5 Az ebédet az étkezőben szolgálják fel.
- 6 A kertben zöldség és gyümölcs is van, a gyümölcsöt megesszük, de a zöldséget eladjuk.
- 7 A film fantasztikus volt, a színészek pedig csodálatosak.
- 8 Sally irodalmat tanul az egyetemen.
- 9 Hawaii a Csendes-óceán közepén van.
- 10 Párizs, Franciaország fővárosa, a Szajna partján fekszik.



A/an, some, any, no, none

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi ábrákat:



2 Az a/an névelőt egyes számban álló, megszámlálható főnevek előtt (pl. **pen**, **car**, **friend**) használjuk:

*I need **a** pen.*

*Do you have **a** car?*

*He doesn't have **a** friend.* (= Nincs egy barátja sem.)

(A megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnevekre vonatkozó tudnivalók a 70. fejezetben találhatók.)

3 A **some** és **any** határozatlan névmás után a megszámlálható főnevek többes számban állnak (pl. **pens**, **friends**, **books**):

*I've got **some** new pens.*

*John doesn't have **any** friends.*

*Do you have **any** books about Africa?*

4 A **some** és **any** határozatlan névmást megszámlálhatatlan főnevekkel is használjuk – ezeknek természetesen ilyenkor sincs többes számú alakja (pl. **money**, **information**, **advice**, **news**, **music**, **coffee**, **milk**, **toast**, **bread**, **food**, **water**, **snow** stb.):

*I haven't got **any** money.*

(= Egyáltalán nincs pénzem.)

*Is there **any** snow on the mountains in summer?*

*I would like **some** coffee, please.*

5 ÁLLÍTÁS

Állító mondatokban általában a **some** használatos:

*She's got **some** photos of her baby.*

*I'd like **some** information, please.*

Állító mondatban az **any** jelentése 'akármelyik', 'bármelyik':

*You can leave at **any** time.*

*Take **any** book.*

6 TAGADÁS

Tagadásnál az **any** vagy a **no** névmást használjuk:

*We haven't got **any** eggs.* VAGY

*We've got **no** eggs.*

*There isn't **any** milk.* VAGY

*There is **no** milk.*

Tagadó mondatban az **any** és a **some** jelentése különböző:

*I don't like **any** fruit.*

(Semmiféle gyümölcsöt nem szeretek.)

*I don't like **some** fruit.*

(Néhány gyümölcsöt nem szeretek.)

7 KÉRDÉS

Kérdésben általában az **any** névmást használjuk:

*Do you speak **any** Russian?*

(= Beszélsz valamennyit oroszul?)

Kérdő mondatban akkor lehet **some**, amikor a kérdésre igenlő választ várunk:

*Can you give me **some** information?*

Kínáláskor mindig a **some** használatos:

*Would you like **some** coffee?*

8 A **some** és **any** határozatlan névmás önállóan, tehát főnév nélkül is állhat, Tagadáskor a **not** ... **any** szerkezet vagy a **none** névmás használható (NEM **no**).

*We don't need to buy cheese because there's **some** in the fridge.*

*We need to buy eggs because there aren't **any** in the fridge.* (VAGY: because there are **none** in the fridge.)

Gyakorlatok

A Tom és Tina vásárlási listát készít. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a: **a/an, some, any, no, none** szavakkal.

TOM: We haven't got ⁰ **any** eggs so we need to buy ⁰ **some**

TINA: No, no. There are ¹ in the fridge, but there's ² cheese.

TOM: OK, cheese. Now, we've got ³..... fruit in the sitting room but we haven't got enough for the weekend so we need to buy ⁴..... more. What else?

TINA: We want to have ⁵..... salad for lunch, I think.

TOM: Yes, of course. So we need ⁶..... lettuce. Oh, and ⁷..... tomatoes because there are ⁸..... in the kitchen.

TINA: We must buy ⁹..... bottle of oil as well.

TOM: OK, and I want to buy ¹⁰..... newspaper because there's ¹¹..... football match on TV this afternoon but I don't know what time it starts.

TINA: But there are ¹²..... football matches today because the weather is so bad. We can go and see ¹³..... film instead.

TOM: Oh, all right. Anyway, are there ¹⁴..... more things to put on the list?

TINA: No, I think that's everything. I hope you've got ¹⁵..... money because I haven't got ¹⁶.....

TINA: OK. Put ¹⁷..... coat on and get ¹⁸..... shopping bag and we're ready.

B Alakítsuk tagadóvá a mondatokat **not ... any** használatával.

- 0 We've got some photos of our holiday.
We haven't got any photos of our holiday......
- 1 I can give you some advice.
.....
- 2 There are some good films at the cinema this week.
.....
- 3 There is some cake in the cupboard.
.....
- 4 Miriam has some heavy luggage to take to the airport.
.....
- 5 There are some letters for you today.
.....
- 6 There is some snow on the mountains this morning.
.....

C Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat.

- 1 Szomjas vagyok. Adj egy kis vizet, légy szíves!
- 2 Van valami könyved Afrikáról?
- 3 Nincs itthon kenyér, és nincs keksz.
- 4 Van testvéred? ~ Három nővérem van, de fiútestvérem nincs.
- 5 Általában szeretem az embereket, de néhányat nem szeretek.
- 6 Kaphatsz néhányat ezekből a fényképekből.
- 7 Vasárnap egyáltalán nincs vonat.
- 8 Tiszta ingre van szükségem, de nincs a szekrényben.
- 9 Nincs pénzünk itthon, és nincs a bankban sem.
- 10 Pirítóst akarok készíteni. Van régi kenyერünk?
- 11 Van szótárad? ~ Igen, van itt néhány.
- 12 Nem tudtunk bélyeget venni, de vettünk borítékokat.

A Pótoljuk a hiányzó **a/an** határozatlan névelőt.

- 0 **An** hour is **a** long time.
- 1 Take umbrella. ~ It's OK, I've got hat.
- 2 Please take piece of fruit. Would you prefer orange or banana?
- 3 interesting programme is on TV tonight. It's about island in the Indian Ocean.

B A következő mondatpároknál az egyik mondatból az **a/an**, a másiból pedig a **the** hiányzik. Pótoljuk a névelőket.

- 0 'Mary' is **a** girl's name.
'Mike' is **the** name that my parents gave me.
- 1 Batsford is town where my uncle lives.
Winchester is town in the south of England.
- 2 Trains don't stop here because station is closed.
Almost all towns have railway station.
- 3 My sister wants to write book about her favourite hobby.
..... books in the library are very old.
- 4 If you don't know how to get somewhere, ask policeman.
I know police officer whose photo was in the paper.
- 5 A German family lives in house next to ours.
My cousin can't find house to buy anywhere.
- 6 woman behind you is Ann's mother.
At work I sit next to woman with beautiful red hair.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **a/an** vagy **the** névelővel, de csak akkor, ha szükséges.

- 0 On Sunday we get up late and have lunch in **the** garden.
- 1 Do you grow vegetables in your garden? I prefer them to flowers!
- 2 Now she's a star, she owns beautiful house, overlooking Pacific.
- 3 Over hundred people share the big prize every week.
- 4 The hospital charges visitors one pound hour for parking. How scandalous!
- 5 I'm late when I go to work by bus. So I take car.
- 6 I love music, especially rock, but I like dance music as well. My favourite instrument is guitar.
- 7 Jenny's brother is economist. He lives in Leeds and teaches at University of South Yorkshire.
- 8 What beautiful mountains there are in Wales – but what terrible weather!
- 9 I think exercise is very important. I run several times week and play tennis whenever I can.
- 10 Please turn to page 40 and look at exercise 3.

D Tegyük a zárójelben lévő főneveket többes számba.

- 0 I live in the same street as Mary. Our (family) *families* are friends.
- 1 I need a new set of kitchen (knife)
- 2 Can you name all the (country) of the European Union?
- 3 In the story, the old witch gives the girl three (wish)
- 4 Please get half a kilo of (tomato) and a couple of small white (loaf) when you go out.
- 5 There aren't many (fish) left in some parts of the ocean.
- 6 The dentist checks my (tooth) and gives them a polish.
- 7 I wait for half an hour, and then two (bus) come along together!
- 8 (City) can be difficult places to bring up (child) in.
- 9 Pack the (box) carefully. The (watch) are fragile.
- 10 More (man) work as secretaries, and more (woman) become managers these days.
- 11 These days, a lot of couples go to football (match) Men don't always go without their (wife) or girlfriends.
- 12 James treads on Diana's (foot) when they dance.

E Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az **a** névelővel, ahol szükséges.

- 0 Can you get me *a* tea, and get *a* lemonade for Sue?
- 1 Would you like coffee? Have you got time for one?
- 2 Kate has long dark hair.
- 3 Do you take sugar in your tea?
- 4 We always have great time at Mike's New Year's Eve party.
- 5 Oh, disgusting! Look, there's hair in my soup!

F Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket **a/an** vagy **the** névelővel.

- 0 A: Have Ann and Mark got any pets?
B: Yes, they've got *a* dog and *a* cat.
A: Does *the* dog like *the* cat?
- 1 A: This is interesting book.
B: Who's author?
A: Jane Sinclair – you know, she's woman who has her own show on TV.
- 2 A: Have you got ruler that I can borrow?
B: I've got plastic one and wooden one. But wooden one is broken.
A: Well, lend me plastic one then, please.
- 3 A: 'Heartache' is wonderful film.
B: Who is director?
A: Bob Pine. He's great film director.
- 4 A: Why is earth hot at equator?
B: Because that is part of earth that is close to sun.

G Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal.

piece bottle some cup spoonful glass slice

- 0 I have a *slice* of cake with my coffee every morning.
- 1 Alan has a very interesting of news to tell you.
- 2 We need to stop at the next garage and buy petrol.
- 3 Remember this of good advice.
- 4 Every morning, the milkman leaves a of milk outside my front door.
- 5 I've got useful information for you about your exam.
- 6 A of honey with hot water and lemon juice is good for a cold.
- 7 Would you like coffee? I usually have a at about this time.
- 8 I can't come out tonight. I've got an important of homework to hand in in the morning.
- 9 You don't look at all well. Would you like a of water?
- 10 For a quick snack, I often have a of milk and a of cheese on toast.

H Használjuk a **some**, **any** vagy **no** határozatlan névmást a mondatok kiegészítésére.

- 0 Do you go to *any* museums or art galleries when you travel?
- 1 Have you got money? We need to buy food.
- 2 I've got bad news for you. There are trains today because of the drivers' strike.
- 3 Do you speak Arabic? Try to learn before you go to Cairo.
- 4 The refugees are in a desperate situation. A lot of them haven't got food, and there's clean water in the area.
- 5 Let me give you advice. Don't just take job. Wait until you find the right one.
- 6 It's January and there isn't snow. So there's skiing for us!

I Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **a/an** vagy **the** névelővel.

- 0 Can you tell me the way to *the* bus station, please?
- 1 I've got new mobile phone. It's much better than old one.
- 2 A: Would you like to go to see film tonight?
B: Yes, I'd love to see new one by Tarantino.
- 3 I need to find bank. Is there one anywhere near here?
- 4 There's great show on at the theatre. It's latest musical by Andrew Lloyd Webber.
- 5 Can I borrow suitcase from you? big one with wheels would be best.
- 6 Can I turn radio on? I want to hear six o'clock news.
- 7 Joanne doesn't like man in library.
- 8 Queen lives in Buckingham Palace.

J Sue és Judy egy kirakat előtt áll. Egészítsük ki beszélgetésüket a **one/ones** névmás használatával.

SUE: Oh look! I like those trousers!

JUDY: Which ⁰ **ones** ? The loose, baggy ¹ ?

SUE: No. The tight, black ² What do you think?

JUDY: Not bad. They'd look good on you.

SUE: What about you? Don't you want a new jacket?

JUDY: Well, sort of. I really need ³ I'd like ⁴ of those leather ⁵ they've got on the rail over there.

SUE: Go in and try ⁶ on, then.

JUDY: There's no point. I haven't got that much money!

K Egészítsük ki a szöveget a következőkkel: **some, one/ones, no, none, a/an, any, the** – de csak ott, ahol szükséges.

A lot of my friends have ⁰ **a** pet. ¹ of them have big dogs and others have small ² I have other friends who prefer ³ cats, but ⁴ of these friends have ⁵ dog as well because, as everybody knows, ⁶ cats and ⁷ dogs are not good friends. I have ⁸ Alsatian dog; her name is Queenie because she's ⁹ girl. During the day she lives in ¹⁰ house, but at night she sleeps on ¹¹ old carpet in ¹² garage. Queenie is ¹³ very clever dog; for example, she always knows when it's time for ¹⁴ lunch. She has her food on ¹⁵ big plate in ¹⁶ kitchen; she eats all sorts of ¹⁷ food but, like all big dogs, she prefers ¹⁸ meat, and obviously if we give her ¹⁹ bone, she likes it to be a big ²⁰ My mother says that Queenie has bad habits. For example, Queenie wakes my mother every morning. But this is because there's ²¹ food in ²² garage, so in the morning Queenie is hungry. But I say that with ²³ lovely dog like Queenie, you must forgive ²⁴ bad habits that she has.

L Válasszuk ki a zárójelben megadott szavak közül a megfelelőt.

(A – azt jelenti, hogy az adott helyre esetleg semmit sem kell beírni.)

- 0 I like (–/the) ice-cream, especially **the** (–/the) Italian kind.
- 1 (A/Some) men have smelly (feet/foot).
- 2 The line is closed. (Any/No) trains come this way nowadays.
- 3 We need to buy (a/some) bread.
- 4 I always have (–/the) milk in my coffee.
- 5 Waiter! There are two (hair/hairs) in my soup.
- 6 Margaret's (–/a) teacher at (a/an) university in Spain.
- 7 We play (–/the) tennis three times (a/the) week.
- 8 (–/The) River Arno rises in (–/the) Apennines.
- 9 In general Peter likes (–/the) music but he doesn't like (–/the) jazz.
- 10 There are (an/some) excellent shops in (–/the) Regent Street.
- 11 The museum has many French paintings but it doesn't have (any/no) Italian (one/ones).
- 12 Can you give me (an/some) information, please?



A személyes névmás alanyi és tárgyi alakja – I és me

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:

ALANY + IGE (ÁLLÍTMÁNY) + TÁRGY		
Mary	saw	Peter and Paul.
She	saw	them.

Mary helyett használhatjuk a **she** személyes névmást (alany), Peter and Paul helyett állhat **them** (tárgy).

2 A személyes névmás alakjai:

	ALANY	TÁRGY
EGYES SZÁM	1 I	9 me
	2 you	10 you
	3 he	11 him
	4 she	12 her
	5 it	13 it
TÖBBES SZÁM	6 we	14 us
	7 you	15 you
	8 they	16 them

Az angol mondatban mindig van alany.
They are coming. (NEM: ~~Are coming.~~) (= Jönnek.)

Elöljárószó után a személyes névmás tárgyi alakját használjuk:

I play tennis with her. (= Vele teniszezem.)

3 Figyeljük meg a személyes névmások alanyi illetve tárgyi alakjának használatát a következő párbeszédben:

Sue: Hello, ¹I think I know ¹⁰you. ²You're John's brother, Tom. I sometimes see ¹⁵you together. I'm Sally's sister.

Tom: Oh, how is ⁴she? I don't often see ¹²her.

Sue: She's fine. And how's John?

Tom: ³He's OK. He's studying biology. He likes ¹³it but he says ⁵it's difficult.

Sue: What do ⁷you both do at the weekends? ⁶We often play tennis. You can have a game with ¹⁴us if you like.

Tom: It's fine for me, but I'm not sure about John. He's got exams soon. ⁸They're next week, I think, and he's studying hard for ¹⁶them. I must ask ¹¹him first.

Sue: OK, give ⁹me a ring tonight.

4 Az **it** névmással egyrészt élettelen dolgokra vagy állatokra utalhatunk, másrészt pedig úgynevezett "személytelen alanyként" használhatjuk, például amikor időjárásról, időről, a hét napjairól, távolságról beszélünk:

I'm studying economics. It's a difficult subject.

It's hot today. (NEM: ~~There is/We have hot today.~~)

It's four o'clock.

It's Tuesday.

It's the third of April.

It's 200 miles to York.

Look at that bird! It's eating the bread.

Gyakorlatok

A Írjuk át a következő mondatokat úgy, hogy az aláhúzott mondatrészek helyett személyes névmást használunk.

0 Helena and I are in the same class. I like Helena a lot.

We are in the same class. I like her a lot.

1 Richard is the best student. A lot of people ask Richard for help.

2 The other students don't work as hard as me. I work a lot harder than the other students.

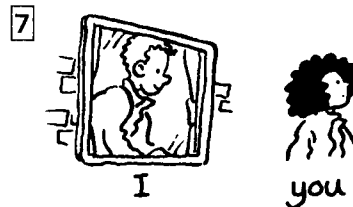
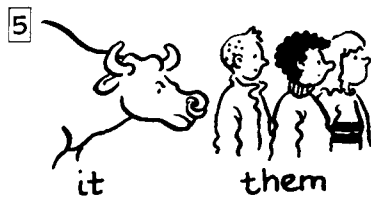
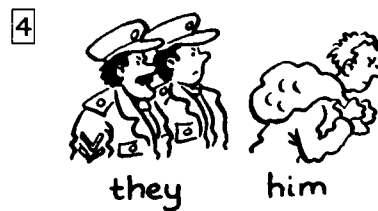
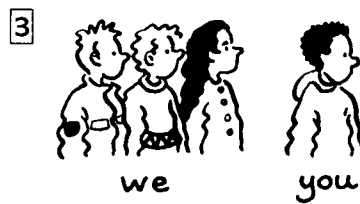
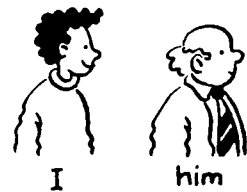
3 The other students and I have exams soon. Are you and your class taking any?

4 David and I sometimes behave badly. The teacher sometimes gets angry with David and me.

5 Our course is quite hard. Some people won't finish the course.

B A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat személyes névmásokkal.

- 0 *I* see *him*, but *he* doesn't see *me* 0
- 1 see, but doesn't see
- 2 sees, but doesn't see
- 3 see, but don't see
- 4 see, but doesn't see 1
- 5 sees, but don't see
- 6 see, but don't see
- 7 see, but don't see



C James magáról és a családjáról beszél. Egészítsük ki a szöveget személyes névmásokkal.

Hi! 0 *I* 'm James and 1 live in Australia. 2 've got two brothers. 3 're called Pete and Mike. My mother works at the hospital. 4 is a doctor. My father works in a sports shop. 5 works very hard. The shop makes a lot of money, and 6 's always full of people.

A következő mondatokat a személyes névmás tárgyi alakjával (**me, you** stb.) egészítsük ki.

On Saturdays I work for my father. I help 7 in the shop, and he gives 8 some money. On Sundays we go to the beach. We have two dogs, and we take 9 with us. We also take a ball and they play with 10 while we swim.

Ezeket a mondatokat pedig a személyes névmás alanyi vagy tárgyi alakjával egészítsük ki.

At the moment I'm at university. I'm studying business. 11 's an interesting subject. Two of my schoolfriends are at university with 12 Our teachers are good but 13 give 14 a lot of work to do. Next week 15 are all taking our first exams. I want to get good marks in 16



A birtokos névmás – possessive pronouns (my, your; mine, yours)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:

This car belongs to me. (= Ez az én autóm.)

It's my car. (= Ez az én autóm.)

It's mine. (= Ez az enyém.)

2 Nézzük meg a táblázatot:

A SZEMÉLYES NÉVMÁS TÁRGYI ALAKJA	JELZŐI BIRTOKOS NÉVMÁS	ÖNÁLLÓ BIRTOKOS NÉVMÁS
me	my	mine
you	your	yours
him	his	his
her	her	hers
it	its	–
us	our	ours
you	your	yours
them	their	theirs

3 my, your stb.

- A jelzői birtokos névmást (**my, your** stb.) főnévvel együtt használjuk:

my book his hands their house

Figyelem! A magyarban nincs jelzői birtokos névmás. A birtokviszonyt toldalékkal (a szó végéhez toldott birtokjellel) fejezzük ki (könyvem, könyved stb.).

- A jelzői birtokos névmás egyes szám harmadik személyben a birtokos neméhez igazodik:

Sara and her husband. Tony and his wife.

- Testrészek neve előtt is a birtokos névmást használjuk:

Mary has hurt her foot. (NEM: ... ~~the~~ foot)
(= Mary megütötte a lábát.)

Figyelem! A magyarban a birtokos személyét hangsúlyozhatjuk, ha a birtokot jelölő szó elé személyes névmást teszünk (az én könyvem, a te könyved stb.) – az angolban erre nincs lehetőség.

4 mine, yours stb.

- Az önálló birtokos névmást (**mine, yours** stb.) a jelzői birtokos névmás + főnév szerkezet helyett használjuk:
My flat is in the centre of town. Where's yours?
(*yours* = *your flat*)

Az önálló birtokos névmás után nem állhat főnév.

5 's

Az aposztróf (') + **s** főnévhez járul, és birtokviszonyt jelöl. Magyar fordítása: '-nak a ...', '-nek a ...'

Mike's house. (= Mike-nak a háza.)

- Egyes számú főnevek + '**s**':
Where is Tom's bike? (Tom kerékpárja)
- Rendhagyó többes számú főnevek (pl. **men**) + '**s**':
Have you got the children's books?
(A rendhagyó többes számú főnevek a 69. fejezetben találhatók.)
- Szabályos többes számú főnevek után (pl. **teachers**) + '**s**':
Figyelem! A többes szám -**s** jele után nem áll még egy **s**, csak az aposztróf.
We have eight children. This is the boys' bedroom, and this is the girls' bedroom.

6 Az 's birtokos végződést általában csak élőlényeket jelentő főnevekhez tehetjük. Élettelen dolgoknál az of birtokos szerkezetet használjuk:

The boys' room. (NEM: ~~The room of the boys.~~)
The end of the film. (NEM: ~~The film's end.~~)

Amikor azt mondjuk:

I'm going to the newsagent's, the baker's stb.,
valójában arra gondolunk: 'the newsagent's shop/the baker's shop'.

7 Birtokos névmás előtt névelőt (a/an/the) nem használunk:

It's a my bag.
It's the ours.
Those books are the Tom's.

A **friend, colleague, relative, cousin, uncle, aunt** stb. szavakat a következő szerkezetben is használhatjuk: **a/an** + főnév + önálló birtokos névmás (vagy tulajdonnév + '**s**):
Mary is a friend of mine.
The winner was a cousin of Alan's.

8 Vigyázat! Az its és az it's nem ugyanaz:

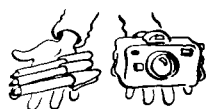
I've got a new dog. Its name is Pluto.
(*Its* = birtokos névmás, az övé)
It's cold today. (*It's* = *It is*)

Gyakorlatok

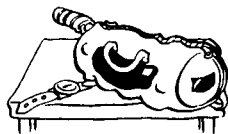
A Használjunk jelzői (**my, your** stb.) és önálló (**mine, yours** stb.) birtokos névmást a következő mondatokban.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 0 This car belongs to me. | This is <i>my</i> car. | It's <i>mine</i> |
| 1 That ticket belongs to you. | That's ticket. | It's |
| 2 These shoes belong to her. | These are shoes. | They're |
| 3 This house belongs to them. | This is house. | It's |
| 4 These cups belong to us. | These are cups. | They're |
| 5 Those books belong to him. | Those are books. | They're |

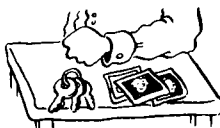
B A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat jelzői (**my, your** stb.) és önálló (**mine, yours** stb.) birtokos névmás használatával.



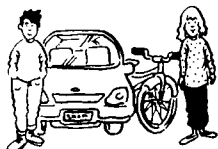
me



you



him



us



them



her

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 0 Those are <i>his</i> keys. | 6 This is car. |
| 1 That book is | 7 Those are sandwiches. |
| 2 These pens are | 8 Is this bag ? |
| 3 That's money. | 9 Those photos are |
| 4 This bike is | 10 This is camera. |
| 5 That ruler is | 11 Is this watch? |

C Írjunk mondatokat az **'s** birtokos és a **this is** illetve **these are** szerkezet használatával.

- 0 This umbrella belongs to Sue.
- 0 These books belong to the students.
- 1 These keys belong to Peter.
- 2 This football belongs to the boys.
- 3 This house belongs to my teacher.
- 4 These bikes belong to my sisters.
- 5 This room belongs to the children.
- 6 This chair belongs to the manager.
- 7 These suitcases belong to Mark.
- 8 These bags belong to the women.
- 9 This radio belongs to Joan.

This is Sue's umbrella.

These are the students' books.



A mutató névmás – demonstrative pronouns (this, that, these, those)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi példákat:

This exercise is difficult.
These are very expensive!
*What is **that**?*
*Can you see **those** birds?*

2 Egyes és a többes számú alakok:

EGYES SZÁM		TÖBBES SZÁM
this car (= ez)	→	these cars (= ezek)
that car (= az)	→	those cars (= azok)

A mutató névmást általában főnévvel együtt használjuk (pl. **this painting, those apples**):
*I like **this** painting.*
***Those** apples are delicious.*

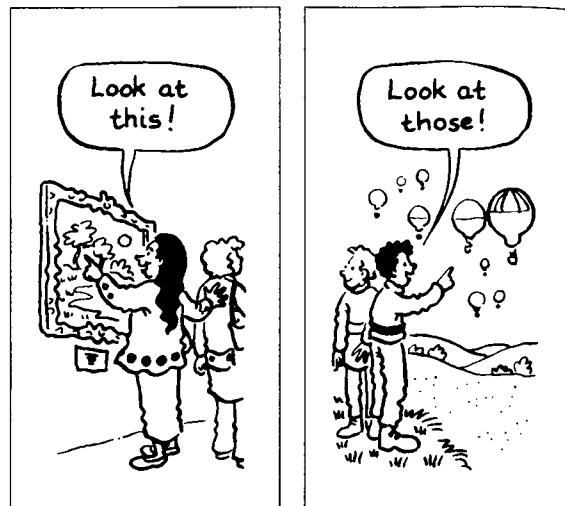
A mutató névmás akkor állhat főnév nélkül, amikor a szövegösszefüggésből egyértelmű, hogy mire utalunk:

Egy diák épp most fejezte be a házi feladatát, és azt mondja a barátjának:
***That** was easy! (**That** = a házi feladat)*

Mike az édesanyját várja az állomáson. Felemeli a csomagjait, és azt mondja:
***These** are heavy! (**These** = a csomagok)*

3 A **this** és **these** névmás hozzánk közel lévő, a **that** és **those** pedig távolabb lévő dolgokra mutat:

Nézzük meg a képeket:



4 Ugyanígy használjuk a **this/these** illetve **that/those** mutató névmást az időben közeli (pl. éppen most történő) illetve távoli eseményekkel kapcsolatban:

John (egy koncerten):
*Some of **these** songs are beautiful.*
 John (a koncert után):
*Some of **those** songs were beautiful.*

Gyakorlatok

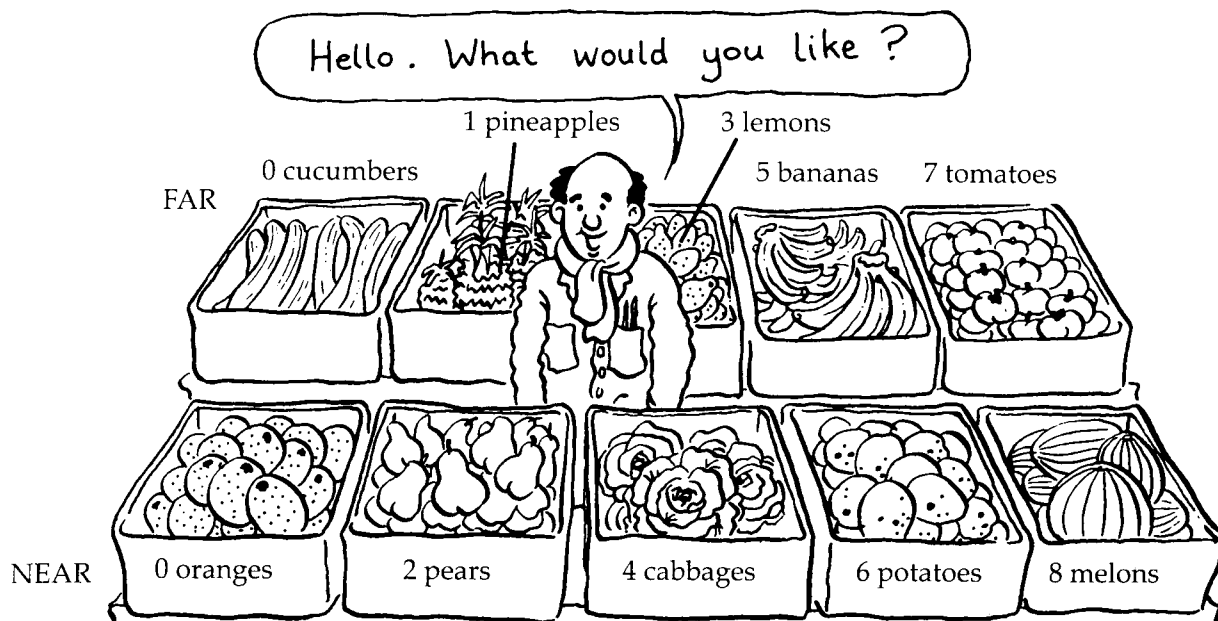
A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **this** vagy **these** mutató névmással.

- 0 I'd like to buy **this** book, please. How much is it?
- 1 Could you tell me where bus goes, please?
- 2 questions are difficult. Could you help me?
- 3 are mine. Yours are on the table.
- 4 is wonderful! I love a hot bath after work.
- 5 Have you got some cheaper pens? are very expensive.

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **that** vagy **those** mutató névmással.

- 6 Look at clouds. I'm sure it's going to rain.
- 7 Did you enjoy film? I thought it was boring.
- 8 Let's cross the road. taxi is free.
- 9 flats are all very expensive, because they're in the centre of town.
- 10 was beautiful! I was so hungry.

B Nézzük meg ezt a képet.



Tegyük fel kérdéseket a vásárló nevében **How much...?** kérdőszó és **these** vagy **those** névmás használatával.

- 0 *How much are those cucumbers?*
- 0 *How much are these oranges?*
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

C Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet mutató névmásokkal (**this**, **that**, **these**, **those**).

- JIM: It's very pleasant to sit here on ⁰ *this* terrace in the middle of
¹ mountains.
- ANN: Yes, and the food is good. ² grapes are delicious.
- JIM: Delicious, yes, but ³ one's bad. What are ⁴ people over
there eating?
- ANN: Oh, ⁵ is fondue. It's made with cheese. You see, they take one of
⁶ little pieces of bread and then dip it in ⁷ pot with the
cheese in it.
- JIM: We can try ⁸ if we come again.
- ANN: All the local restaurants serve it. So if we don't come back here, we can have it at
⁹ little restaurant in the village.
- JIM: Yes, but in the village you don't have ¹⁰ wonderful view of the
mountains.

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi példákat:



There aren't **many** people in the restaurant.



I don't have **much** money. (= Nincs sok pénzem.)

A **much** (megszámlálhatatlan főnevek előtt) és **many** (megszámlálható főnevek előtt) határozatlan névmás jelentése: sok.

- A **much** és **many** névmást legtöbbször tagadó és kérdő mondatban használjuk. (További információ a 79. fejezetben található.)

*I'm so hungry, but we don't have **much** food in the house. (= nincs itthon sok ennivaló)*

*Do **many** tourists come here?*

*Is there **much** snow in the mountains?*

*How **much** luggage have you got?*

*How **many** times have you been to London?*

2 A **much/many** névmás középfokú alakja: **more** (= több):

*John has got two biscuits, but he wants two **more**.*

*We have some food, but we need some **more**.*

A **some more** és **any more** (= valamivel több, még egy kis...) gyakori szókapcsolat:

A: *Would you like **some more** toast?*

B: *No, thanks. I don't want **any more**. But I'd like **some more** orange juice.*

Figyelem! A **some more** kijelentő mondatban, az **any more** kérdő és tagadó mondatban használható.

3 A **much/many** (=sok) és a **more** (= több) használata:

- **much** – megszámlálhatatlan főnevekkel:
*much food much luggage much snow
much time much money*

Figyelem! Annak ellenére, hogy a pénzt meg lehet számolni, a **money** főnevet megszámlálhatatlannak tekintjük.

Ugyanez vonatkozik a **luggage** (= csomag) szóra is.

(A megszámlálhatóságra vonatkozó tudnivalókat a 70. fejezetben találjuk.)

- **many** – megszámlálható főnevekkel:
*many things many books many records
many people many tourists
many times (= sokszor)*

Figyelem! A **time** főnév 'idő' jelentésben megszámlálhatatlan, de megszámlálható, ha azt jelenti, 'alkalom'.

- **more** – megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnevekkel egyaránt:
more toast/juice more glasses (= több pohár)

- A **much/many/more** főnév nélkül, önállóan is használható:

*How **much** did that coat cost? (= Mennyibe került az a kabát?)*

A: *That cake was delicious.*

B: *Would you like some **more** (cake)?*

Gyakorlatok

A Írjuk a főnevek elé a **much** vagy **many** névmást.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 0 How much money? | 6 How cigars? | 14 How times? |
| 0 How many films? | 7 How sugar? | 15 How information? |
| 0 not many people | 8 How buses? | 16 How toast? |
| 1 How snow? | 9 How books? | 17 not news |
| 2 How tables? | 10 How food? | 18 not exams |
| 3 How cats? | 11 How cups? | 19 not luggage |
| 4 How petrol? | 12 How watches? | 20 not children |
| 5 How advice? | 13 How homework? | 21 not museums |

B Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a következőkkel: **much, many, more, how much, how many**.

- 0 A: *How **many** CDs has your sister got?*

B: *She hasn't got **many** I've got **more** than she has.*

- 1 A: *Is there cheese in the fridge?*

B: *No, and there aren't eggs, either.*

- 2 A: money do you earn?
B: Not , but I earn than my brother.
- 3 A: Do you have homework?
B: Yes, because there aren't days before the exams.
- 4 A: food do we need?
B: We haven't got vegetables, so we need to buy some
- 5 A: Is there luggage in the coach?
B: There aren't big suitcases, but there are a lot of small ones.
- 6 A: toast do you want? pieces?
B: Two please, and without butter.
- 7 A: spoonfuls of sugar do you take?
B: No sugar, thank you. I don't usually eat sugar.
- 8 A: Are there letters in the post?
B: No, there's not news today.

C Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a **much**, **many**, vagy **more** határozatlan névmásokkal.

- JENNY: Is that bag heavy? Have you got ⁰ **many** books in it?
- STEVE: Only three, but I don't have ¹ to do this weekend, so I want to buy some ² tomorrow.
- JENNY: I want to buy a magazine. You know, a magazine with lots of pictures and not ³ words. I don't have ⁴ time to read at the moment. We're so busy at the office. We have a lot of projects and there aren't ⁵ people who can do them.
- STEVE: How ⁶ hours a day do you work?
- JENNY: Eight hours at the office and then I often do two ⁷ hours at home.
- STEVE: How ⁸ do you earn? Do you get a good salary?
- JENNY: Not bad, but I don't get ⁹ holidays. Some people get a lot ¹⁰
- STEVE: How ¹¹ days do you get at Christmas?
- JENNY: Five, and three weeks in the summer.
- STEVE: That's quite good. And remember: if we have longer holidays, we need ¹² money to pay for them!

D Pipáljuk ki a hibátlan mondatokat (✓), a hibás mondatok mellé pedig tegyük ikszet (X).

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 0 I don't have many work to do today | X |
| 0 Do you have many meetings this week? | ✓ |
| 1 We haven't got many information about the conference. | ..... |
| 2 We need some more people in our department. | ..... |
| 3 I've got any more paperwork to do this afternoon. | ..... |
| 4 Have you got any more holiday time this year? | ..... |
| 5 I haven't got many time, I'm in a hurry. | ..... |
| 6 Is there many news in your department this week? | ..... |
| 7 I haven't done much today. | ..... |
| 8 Are there much people off sick in your department? | ..... |

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatot:



She's got a lot of luggage. (= Sok csomagja van.)
(a lot of = nagy tömegű vagy nagy számú)

A beszélt nyelvben állító mondatban **much/many** helyett inkább az **a lot of** vagy **lots of** kifejezést használjuk.

There's a lot of information in this book.

(= Sok információ van ebben a könyvben.)

(NEM: ~~*There's much information in this book.*~~)

I bought a lot of new books today.

(NEM: ~~*I bought many new books today.*~~)

A lot of students work in the holidays.

A **much/many** névmást állító mondatban a **so/very/too much/many** szókapcsolatban, illetve az írott nyelvben használhatjuk:

There is so much time left.

Britain has many problems.

2 Az **a lot of / lots of** kifejezés megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnevek előtt egyaránt állhat:

a lot of luggage

a lot of information

a lot of books a lot of students

a lot of things a lot of people

3 A **lot of** után a megszámlálható főnév többes számban, a megszámlálhatatlan pedig egyes számban áll, és a létigét vagy jelen idejű igét is eszerint egyeztetjük:

A lot of students work ... (NEM: ~~*... works ...*~~)

There is a lot of information ... (NEM: ~~*... are ...*~~)

4 Nézzük meg az alábbi példákat az **a few** és **a little** névmás használatára:



She has a little luggage.

(= Van egy kevés csomagja.)

She has a few bags. (= Van néhány táskája)

Az **a few** és **a little** használható a **more** szóval:

Would you like a little more coffee? (= Kérsz még egy kis kávé?)

Az **a few** és az **a little** használata:

► **a little**: megszámlálhatatlan főnevek előtt:

I have a little money, but I don't have much.

(= Van egy kis pénzem, de nem sok.)

► **a few**: megszámlálható főnevekkel

Can you wait a few minutes, John? (= Tudsz várni néhány percet?)

Mindkettő használható főnév nélkül is:

A: *Have you got any money?*

B: *Sorry. I only have a little (money).*

6 Az alábbiakban felsorolunk néhány gyakran használt megszámlálhatatlan főnevet:

coffee	milk	cheese	cake
water	bread	money	advice
sugar	news	luggage	homework
tea	toast	information	

Figyelem! A **news** (= hír) szó végén az **s** nem a többes szám jele. A szónak nincs többes száma.

This is good news. (= Ez jó hír.)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő, email-üzenetekből vett mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal.

0 I've invited ⁰ **a few friends** (few/friends) to my house tonight. Would you like to come?

1 (Lots/things) have happened since we last met.

2 Sorry for taking so long. I've had (lot/messages) to answer.

3 I saw Mary for (few/minutes) yesterday and she was fine.

4 I'm afraid I can't come tonight. I've got (lots/jobs) to do.

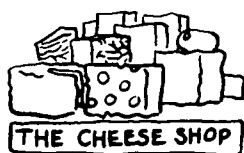
5 I'm going away for (few/days) and I'll contact you when I get back.

6 I understand that you're having (few/problems) at the moment.

B Mit látunk a képeken? Írjuk le **a lot of**, **a few** vagy **a little** használatával.



0 *a few pens*



1



2



3



4



5



6



7

C A következő kérdésekben a **some** határozatlan névmást cseréljük ki az **a few** vagy **a little** névmásra.

- 0 Would you like some coffee? *Would you like a little coffee?*
- 1 Can I get you some biscuits?
- 2 Can I make some sandwiches for you?
- 3 Do you want some more cheese?
- 4 Can I bring you some more cake?
- 5 Do you want some milk in your tea?
- 6 Would you like some more sugar in your coffee?

D Állapítsuk meg, hogy helyesen használták-e az aláhúzott szavakat a következő mondatokban. Pipáljuk ki a hibátlan mondatokat, a helytelenül használt szavakat pedig húzzuk át és írjuk melléjük a helyes megoldást.

- 0 There ~~is~~ are a lot of tall buildings in New York.
- 0 I often have lunch with a few ✓ friends.
- 1 A lot of people travels to work by car.
- 2 She only has a little luggage with her.
- 3 We need a little tomatoes for this meal.
- 4 There are a lot of news on TV in Britain.
- 5 My grandfather gives me a little money every week.
- 6 Can you give me a few water, please?
- 7 A lot of children use computers in school.
- 8 Are you hungry? Can I make you a little toast?



All, most, some, none

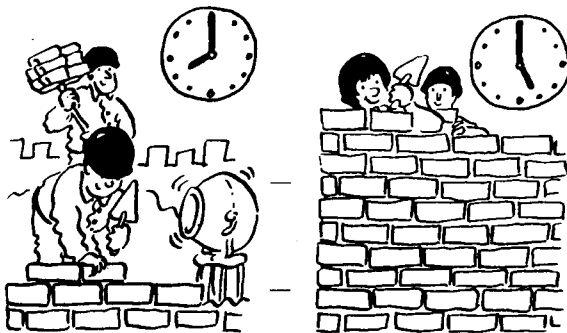
- 1 **all**(= mind)/**most**(= legtöbb)/**some** (= néhány) + főnév

A fenti szerkezetet akkor használjuk, amikor emberekről vagy dolgokról általában beszélünk:

*She thinks that **all sports** are boring.*
***Most cities** have a lot of shops.*
*In **some countries** life is very hard.*

Az **all**, a **most** és a **some** után nem kell **of**:
***Most people** take exams during their lives.*
 (NEM: ~~Most of people~~ ...)

- 2 Az **all** használható a **morning/afternoon/evening/night/day/week/year** (pl. **all afternoon**) szavakkal, a jelentése: 'az egész', 'elejétől a végéig'.



*They work hard **all day**.*
*I stay in bed **all morning** on Saturdays.*

- 3 Az **all**, a **most**, a **some** és a **none** (= egy sem) használható a következő szerkezetben is:

**all/most
some/none** } + **of + the/my/his/this** + főnév

Akkor használjuk, amikor bizonyos, meghatározott dolgokról vagy emberekről beszélünk:

*He spends **all of his** money.*
***Most of my** friends are interested in sport.*
*I know **some of the** people at this party.*
*Try **some of this** cake. It's delicious.*

Figyeljük meg a **none** használatát:

***None of the** students like the new teacher.*
 (= A diákok közül senki sem kedveli az új tanárt.)

A **none** névmás önmagában is tagadást fejez ki, ezért utána már nem használjuk a **not** tagadószót. Az angol nyelvben rendszerint nincs kettős tagadás.

Az **of** előjárószo a fenti mondatokból ki is hagyható:

*He spends **all his** money.*

- 4 **all/most/some/none + of + it/them**

A fenti szerkezetet akkor használhatjuk, ha a főnév, amelyre az **it** vagy **them** vonatkozik, már előzőleg elhangzott:

*It's lovely food, but I can't eat **all of it**.*
 (**it** = food)
*It's hard to find a hotel; **most of them** are full.*
 (**them** = the hotels)
*That cake looks nice. Can I have **some of it**?*
 (**it** = the cake)

Gyakorlatok

- A** Az alábbi táblázatból láthatjuk, hogy melyik tárgyat szeretik (☺) vagy nem szeretik (☹) egyes diákok. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a következőkkel: **all of**, **most of**, **some of**. Használjuk a **the** névelőt, ahol szükséges.

	History	Maths	French	English	Biology	Art
Alice	☺	☺	☹	☺	☺	☺
Bill	☺	☹	☹	☹	☹	☺
Carol	☺	☺	☺	☺	☺	☺
David	☹	☹	☺	☺	☹	☺

- 0 Alice likes *most of the* subjects. None of the children dislike *all of* them.
 1 children like French and them don't like it.
 2 David likes subjects and Carol likes them.
 3 children like English and them like French.
 4 Bill doesn't like subjects but he likes them.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal.

all	all the	none of the	some	some of the
-----	---------	-------------	------	-------------

- 0 *All* European children have to go to school.
 0 The classroom is empty because *all the* children are outside.
 1 We can't buy anything today because shops are closed today.
 2 We like that restaurant. food is expensive, but everything is very good.
 3 people say he's the best tennis player in the world, but I don't agree.
 4 That's a terrible shop. assistants are very helpful.
 5 Bill's very lazy. He reads the newspaper morning.
 6 phones here are working. Has anyone got a mobile?
 7 It's a wonderful trip. You have day to see the sights.
 8 IMPORTANT NOTICE: passengers must have a valid ticket.
 9 If students can answer the teacher's questions, she explains the point again.
 10 We can't sit down. chairs are wet.
 11 cars use petrol and others use diesel.
 12 This light works time, but not always.

C Egészítsük ki a következő mondatokat a megadott kifejezésekkel.

all of the	all of it	all of them
most of the	most of it	most of them
none of the	none of it	none of them

- 0 The people in the audience didn't understand the jokes and *none of them* laughed.
 1 songs they played were familiar, but one or two were new.
 2 This is an interesting play. takes place in an apartment, although there is one scene in a shop.
 3 tickets were sold as soon as they went on sale and so thousands of people were disappointed.
 4 Before this, she has written four novels but have been successful.
 5 He has made 15 films. have been comedies but he has also made one or two more serious films.
 6 It is a very complicated film and is easy to follow.
 7 The performance was not well received. Some people didn't watch and left before the end.
 8 This is a terrible CD and songs are any good.
 9 Everything he produces seems to succeed. He has written four novels and have been bestsellers.



Határozatlan névmások – something, anybody, nothing

- 1 **something/anything** (= valami)
somebody/anybody (= valaki)
someone/anyone (= valaki)
somewhere/anywhere (= valahol)

- 2 A **something, somebody, someone** és **somewhere** névmásokat rendszerint állító mondatban használjuk:

Something is burning.

I'm going to have something to eat.

Somebody told me that it was a good film.

She lives somewhere in the north.

- 3 Az **anything, anybody, anyone** és **anywhere** tagadó és kérdő mondatban használható:

I didn't know anyone at the party. (= Senkit nem ismertem az összejövetelen.)

I couldn't find my bag anywhere. (= Sehol nem találtam a táskámat.)

Did you understand anything she said? (= Értettél valamit abból, amit mondott?)

- 4 **nothing** (= semmi)
nobody (= senki)
no one (= senki)
nowhere (= sehol)

- 5 A **nothing, nobody, no one** és **nowhere** állító mondatokban használható:

Nothing makes Joe unhappy. (= Joe-t semmi nem teszi boldogtalanná.)

There's nothing I want to watch on TV. (= Semmi nincs a tévében, amit nézni akarok.)

Nobody was there when I arrived. (= Senki sem volt ott, amikor odaértem.)

There is nowhere that I would prefer to live.
 (= Nincs olyan hely, ahol jobban szeretnék élni.)

Figyelem! A fenti mondatokban az ige mindig állító alakban van (**makes, want, was, is**), mivel az angol nyelvben nincs kettős tagadás. (A magyar 'senki nem szeret', angolul **nobody likes**, NEM ~~nobody doesn't like~~.)

- 6 Figyeljük meg az **everything, everybody, everyone** és **everywhere** használatát:

Everything is ready. (NEM: ~~all things~~)

Everybody likes music. (NEM: ~~all people~~)

- 7 Az **else** (= egyéb, más) névmás állhat **something, anybody, nowhere** stb. után:

Let's talk about something else. (= Beszéljünk valami másról.)

I don't like Ian but I like everybody else.

There is nowhere else I can look for it.

- 8 A **something, anything** stb. után melléknév is állhat:

Have I said something wrong? (= Valami rosszat mondtam?)

Have you met anybody nice here?

- 9 Amikor az eddig tárgyalt névmások (**something, anybody/one** stb.) a mondatban az alany szerepét töltik be, utánuk az ige egyes szám harmadik személyben áll:

Everybody likes children.

Gyakorlatok

- A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott névmásokkal.

something	anything	everything	nothing
somebody	anybody	everybody	nobody
somewhere	anywhere	everywhere	

- Don't go *everywhere* by car, walk sometimes.
- Find who will do exercise with you.
- If you haven't got to exercise with you, join a club.
- In most towns, there is that provides good fitness classes.
- If you sit around and do all day, you will feel tired and depressed.
- Remember that if you want to be fit, you must do about it yourself.
- can suddenly become very fit; you have to take it slowly.
- Lots of people don't do to stay fit, and this can cause them problems.

- 8 If you haven't got at home to exercise, go to a gym.
 9 The best fitness clubs have you could possibly need in order to get fit.
 10 should do some exercise regularly.

B Válasszuk ki a megfelelőt a zárójelben megadott szavak közül.

- 0 I'm afraid I *don't know* (know/don't know) anything about this subject.
 0 I rang the doorbell but nobody *was* (was/wasn't) in.
 1 I asked a lot of people, but nobody (knew/didn't know) the answer.
 2 I (know/don't know) anything about computer programming.
 3 I (ate/didn't eat) anything for lunch yesterday.
 4 Nothing interesting (happens/doesn't happen) in this town.
 5 He loves football. Nothing else (is/isn't) important to him.
 6 She (said/didn't say) anything about her plans for the future.

C Alakítsuk át a következő mondatokat a zárójelben megadott határozatlan névmás és az eredeti mondatban szereplő melléknév vagy az **else** névmás használatával.

- 0 A strange thing happened yesterday. (something)
Something strange happened yesterday.
 0 Let's listen to some different music. (something)
 Let's listen to *something else*
 1 Is there an interesting programme on TV tonight? (anything)
 Is there on TV tonight?
 2 You won't find better food in any other place. (anywhere)
 You won't find better food
 3 Is there a cheap place we can go for lunch? (anywhere)
 Is there we can go for lunch?
 4 Let's sit in a different place. (somewhere)
 Let's sit
 5 I'd like a hot drink. (something)
 I'd like to drink.

D Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet **some-, any-, every-** vagy **no-** előtagú határozatlan névmással.

- DENNIS: Are you reading ⁰ *anything* interesting at the moment?
 SARAH: Yes, ¹ lent me a novel last week and I'm really enjoying it.
 DENNIS: What is it about?
 SARAH: It's about ² who goes to visit Australia. She's adventurous and wants to go
³ alone, but a few days after she arrives, ⁴ terrible
 happens to her. While she is travelling across Australia, she loses ⁵ –
 including her passport and her money. She doesn't know ⁶ who can help
 her and she hasn't got ⁷ to stay.
 DENNIS: What happens then?
 SARAH: I'm not going to tell you ⁸ else! You should read the book yourself.
 DENNIS: I think I'll read ⁹ that's not so depressing.
 SARAH: No, read it. You'll enjoy it. ¹⁰ that I know likes it.

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:



- (i) She gave **her brother** the newspaper.
 (ii) She gave **the newspaper** to her brother.

A **newspaper** mindkét mondatban az a dolog, amelyre a cselekvés irányul. A magyar nyelvtani elemzés szerint a **newspaper** (= újságot) mindkét mondatban tárgy, a **her brother** (= bátyjának) részeshatározó. A magyarban részeshatározónak tekintett mondatrészt az angolban 'indirect object'-nek, 'közvetett tárgy' nevezük.

2 További példák (i):

	+ SZEMÉLY (indirect object) (részeshatározó)	+ DOLOG (direct object) (tárgy)
She gave	her brother	a shirt.
He sent	me	a letter.
I showed	him	my passport.
Jane lent	Frank	some money.
He offered	her	a job.
I cooked	them	a meal.
I fetched	her	a plate.
I got	you	a magazine.
I made	you	a coffee.
He sold	me	his car.
She showed	us	the photos.
You told	me	a lie.
I took	John	the books.
They brought	Mary	a clean knife.

3 További példák (ii):

	+ DOLOG (direct object) (tárgy)	+ SZEMÉLY (indirect object) (részeshatározó)
She gave	a shirt	to her brother.
I sent	postcards	to my friends.
I showed	my card	to the clerk.
She lent	some money	to her friend.
He offered	the chocolates	to the others.
I took	the books	to John.

Ha az 'indirect object' (részeshatározó) a tárgy ('direct object') után következik, előtte a **to** előljáró áll. Az ilyen mondatokban gyakran fordulnak elő a következő igék: **give, send, show, lend, offer, take.**

Azokban az esetekben, amikor azt fejezzük ki, hogy valakinek megteszünk valamit, a **for** előljárószót használjuk. Gyakori igék ilyen mondatokban: **cook, fetch, get** (= elhoz vagy beszerez), **buy, bring.**

	+ DOLOG (direct object) (tárgy)	+ SZEMÉLY (indirect object) (részeshatározó)
We cooked	a meal	for everybody.
He fetched	the newspaper	for his father.
I got	your book	for you.
She bought	some toys	for them.
They brought	a clean knife	for Mary.

Gyakorlatok

A Tegyük helyes sorrendbe a mondatrészeket. (A mondathoz egyetlen szót se adjunk hozzá.)

0 (He/lent/his car/Mark)
He lent Mark his car.

1 (a cigarette/Jim/She offered)

2 (Mary/his holiday photographs/He showed)

3 (them/an invitation/Did you send/?)

4 (a birthday present/Did you buy/her/?)

B Rendezzük át az előző gyakorlat mondatait **to** vagy **for** előjárószo hozzáadásával.

- 0 He lent *his car to Mark.*
- 1 She offered
- 2 He showed
- 3 Did you send
- 4 Did you buy

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal.

- 0 She wrote a letter. (me) *She wrote me a letter.*
- 1 They sent an invitation. (us)
- 2 Sheila gave a present. (to Mike)
- 3 I made a sandwich. (her)
- 4 Tom bought a newspaper. (for Sally)
- 5 My uncle sold his camera. (me)
- 6 She left a message. (for you)
- 7 Mary sent some flowers. (them)
- 8 Did you take the money? (to the bank)

D Tim és Lucy tegnap este étteremben vacsorázott. Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal a példa alapján. Mindegyik cselekvésre két mondatot írjunk.

- 0 (The waiter/give/the menu.)
(her) *The waiter gave her the menu.*
(to Lucy) *The waiter gave the menu to Lucy.*
- 1 (The waiter/fetch/some wine.)
(them)
(for them)
- 2 (The waiter/show/the bottle.)
(him)
(to Tim)
- 3 (The chef/cook/a special meal.)
(them)
(for them)
- 4 (The waiter/give/the bill.)
(Tim)
(to Tim)
- 5 (Lucy/lend/some money, because he didn't have enough to pay the bill.)
(Tim)
(to Tim)
- 6 (The waiter/bring/their coats.)
(them)
(for them)

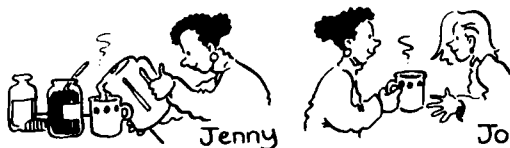
A visszaható névmás – reflexive pronouns (myself, yourself stb.)

1 Nézzük meg a táblázatot:

SZEMÉLYES NÉVMÁS		VISSZAHATÓ NÉVMÁS
ALANYI ALAK	TÁRGYI ALAK	
I	me	myself
you	you	yourself
he	him	himself
she	her	herself
it	it	itself
we	us	ourselves
you	you	yourselves
they	them	themselves

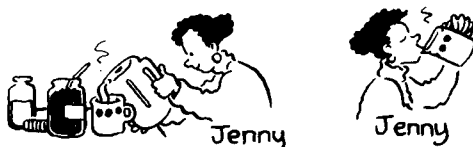
2 Hasonlítsuk össze a mondatokat:

(i)



Jenny made Jo a cup of coffee.
(Jenny készített Jo-nak egy csésze kávé.)

(ii)



Jenny made **herself** a cup of coffee.
(Jenny készített magának egy csésze kávé.)

A visszaható névmás (**myself, yourself stb.**) a mondat alanyára utal:

*She hurt **herself** when she fell off the chair.* (= Megütötte magát, amikor leesett a székről.)

*I looked at **myself** in the mirror.* (= Megnéztem magamat a tükörben.)

*She made **herself** a cup of tea.*

*She made a cup of tea for **herself**.*

A visszaható névmással hangsúlyozhatjuk, hogy az alany saját maga végzi a cselekvést:

*We made the cake **ourselves**.* (= Saját magunk készítettük a süteményt. – nem valaki más)

*Peter built the house **himself**.* (= Peter saját maga építette a házat. – senki nem segített neki)

Az **enjoy** (= élvez) ige tárgya visszaható névmás is lehet:

*They **enjoyed** the party.*

*They **enjoyed themselves** (at the party).* (= Jól érezték magukat (a bulin).)

3 Az **each other** (= egymást) használata:

*Tom and Sue were talking to **each other**.* (= Tom és Sue beszélt egymással. – Tom beszélt Sue-hoz és Sue Tomhoz.)

*We like **each other** very much.* (= Nagyon szeretjük egymást. – Én szeretem őt, ő szeret engem.)

Hasonlítsuk össze a **themselves** és az **each other** használatát:

*Alan and Ruth took these photographs **themselves**.*
(Alan és Ruth saját maguk csinálták ezeket a fényképeket.)

*Alan and Ruth took photographs of **each other**.* (= Alan és Ruth lefényképezték egymást.)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **myself, yourself stb.** visszaható névmással.

- I cooked **myself** a meal and then I watched television.
- I'm sure Sara will enjoy on her trip.
- I cut while I was preparing the vegetables.
- We amused by playing cards while we were waiting for the plane.
- The visitors made some sandwiches.
- Did you hurt when you were playing football, Mick?
- Alan cooked a meal when he got home.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat visszaható névmással és a zárójelben megadott szavakkal.

- (Be careful with that knife or you/cut/.)
Be careful with that knife or **you'll cut yourself**.
- (It was a very nice trip and we/enjoy/very much.)
It was a very nice trip and we

- 2 (I/burn/while I was taking the dish out of the oven.)
I while I was taking the dish out of the oven.
- 3 (He didn't have lessons. He/teach/.)
He didn't have lessons.
- 4 (I think I/buy/a new coat tomorrow.)
.....
- 5 (She/make/a sandwich and ate it in the kitchen.)
..... and ate it in the kitchen.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megfelelő visszaható névmással.

- 0 Did you paint the room *yourself* ? ~ Yes, it took me three days to do it.
- 1 If you won't help me, I'll have to do it all
- 2 She makes all her clothes
- 3 The students organized the concert
- 4 We painted the whole house
- 5 He typed the letter and then he posted it.

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat visszaható névmással és az igék megfelelő alakjával.

- 0 (She is a very successful singer. She/write/all her songs/.)
She is a very successful singer. *She writes all her songs herself.*
- 1 Could you post this letter for me? ~ (No, I'm sorry, I won't have time. You/have/to post it/.)
No, I'm sorry, I won't have time.
- 2 (Nobody helped us, so we/carry/all our luggage/.)
Nobody helped us, so
- 3 (This is an excellent photograph./you/take it/?)
This is an excellent photograph.
- 4 (She was wearing a dress that she/make/.)
She was wearing a dress that
- 5 (I hope you like the present. I/choose/it/.)
I hope you like the present.
- 6 (Do you like this meal? I/invent/the recipe/.)
Do you like this meal?

E Egészítsük ki a mondatokat visszaható névmással vagy az **each other** kifejezéssel.

- 0 They spent the whole evening arguing with *each other*
- 0 Their house is very beautiful; they designed it *themselves*
- 1 Mary met John in April, but they didn't see again until July.
- 2 They're not friends; in fact, they don't like at all.
- 3 Don't ask me to help you. You must do it
- 4 We didn't buy it A friend bought it for us.
- 5 I could hear two people shouting at
- 6 We're working in the same office now, so Ron and I see every day.



Van, vannak – there is, there are

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:

There's a big market near the river; it's very good for fruit and meat.

There are two buses on Sunday; they both go to the station.

A **there is/there are** (= van/vannak) szókapcsolat általában a mondat elején áll. Akkor használjuk, amikor egy személy vagy dolog meglétéről a beszéd folyamán még nem esett szó. Ha újra említjük ugyanazt a dolgot, akkor már az **it (the big market)**, illetve többes számban a **they** névmással (**two buses**) utalunk rá.

Néhány további példa:

There's a good programme on Sunday; it gives all the sports news. (programme → it)

There are two schools here; they're both new. (schools → they)

2 A **there is/are** szerkezetet használhatjuk annak meghatározására, hogy valahol hányan vannak. Nézzük meg az alábbi kérdéseket és válaszokat:

A: *How many people are there in your class?*

B: *There are about twenty.*

A: *Is there a restaurant here?*

B: *Yes, there's one in the next street.*

A számnév után használhatjuk az **of us, of them** stb. szerkezetet:

There are twelve of us. (NEM: We are twelve.)
(= Tizenketten vagyunk.)

3 Amikor az időjárásról beszélünk, az **it** névmás a mondat alanya ige vagy melléknév előtt. Főnév előtt a **there's, there are** áll.

it + ige: *It rains/snows a lot in winter.*

it + melléknév: *It's foggy/sunny/windy/cloudy.*

there + főnév: *There's a lot of fog/cloud.*

4 A **there** névmás mellett a létige (**be**) bármelyik alakja állhat:

There weren't any compact discs 20 years ago.

A: *Have there been any problems this year?*

B: *Yes, there have.*

There used to be a park here.

There may be some eggs in the fridge.

5 Nézzük meg az alábbi példákat az **it takes** (= valamennyi ideig tart) kifejezéssel:

It takes seven years to become a doctor. (= Hét év alatt lesz valakiből orvos.)

A: *How long does it take to make bread?*

B: *It takes several hours (to make bread).*

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a következőkkel: **there's, there are, it's, they're**.

0 *There are* two cinemas in our town; *they're* both near my flat.

1 one train on Sundays; an express train.

2 two national holidays this month, and
both on a Friday.

3 three trees in our garden, but not very tall.

4 a big lake in the park; very deep.

B Adjunk választ a következő kérdésekre **there are ... of** és a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével.

0 A: How many people are there in your group?

B: (eight/us) *There are eight of us.*

1 A: How many teams are there in the competition?

B: (six/them)

2 A: How many students are there in your class?

B: (twenty/us)

3 A: How many boys are there in the school orchestra?

B: (twelve/them)

C Alakítsuk át a mondatokat **it**, **it's** vagy **there's** használatával.

- 0 There's a lot of snow in December.
(snows a lot) *It snows a lot in December.*
- 0 It's quite cloudy this morning.
(quite a lot of cloud) *There's quite a lot of cloud this morning.*
- 1 There's a lot of rain in April.
(rains a lot)
- 2 It's foggy on the motorway this morning.
(fog on the motorway)
- 3 There are a lot of clouds in the mountains.
(very cloudy)
- 4 It's very windy on the west coast.
(a lot of wind)

D Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet **it**, **they** vagy **there** és a létige megfelelő alakjával, vagy az **it takes** szókapcsolattal, állító vagy kérdő formában.

- JANE: 0 *Is it* easy to get to your house from the airport?
- ALICE: Well, 0 *there are* several ways you can do it.
- JANE: 1 a bus service into the city?
- ALICE: Yes, 2 plenty of buses. 3 quite frequent.
- JANE: How long 4 by bus?
- ALICE: About 40 minutes. 5 taxis too, but 6 quite expensive.
- JANE: But 7 quicker by taxi, won't it?
- ALICE: Not necessarily. 8 always a lot of traffic near the airport. Sometimes 9 over an hour to get from there to here. I think the train is the best idea.
- JANE: Oh, 10 a train I can get?
- ALICE: Yes, 11 a train service from the airport. 12 quite new. 13 quite easy to find it – 14 signs in the airport terminal.
- JANE: 15 a good service?
- ALICE: Yes, 16 trains every 20 minutes into the city. 17 not usually too crowded. And 18 only about 15 minutes to the Central Railway Station. I'll meet you there. 19 not far from my home.
- JANE: Good. Where exactly shall we meet?
- ALICE: 20 two entrances. Go to the one under the big clock and I'll meet you there.

E Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **there** és a megadott szavakkal. Mindegyik szót illetve szókapcsolatot csak egyszer használjuk.

have been **is** may be used to be was will be

- 0 *There is* an accident on this road almost every day.
- 1 Last year a terrible fire at that factory.
- 2 Next Monday at 7 p.m. a meeting of the committee.
- 3 When I was young, a lot more cinemas than there are now.
- 4 Since 1900 two world wars.
- 5 a late-night bus, but I'm not sure if there is.



A melléknév – adjectives (new, big, wonderful, American stb.)

- 1 A melléknévvel a dolgok vagy személyek tulajdonságairól beszélhetünk. Néhány példa:

old small friendly rich cheap

Nézzük meg a következő mondatokat:

*I've got an **old** table in my kitchen.*

*My home town is **small** and **friendly**.*

*We always have lunch in a **cheap** restaurant.*

- 2 A melléknév alakja sohasem változik. A melléknévnek nincs többes száma:

*a **rich** man a **rich** woman two **rich** men*

- 3 A melléknév (a mondatban jelző) a főnév előtt áll:

MELLÉKNÉV + FŐNÉV
<i>I have a beautiful cat.</i>

A melléknév a létigével a mondat állítmányát alkothatja:

be + MELLÉKNÉV
<i>They are hungry.</i>

A **be** helyett néha a következő igéket használjuk:

look (= valamilyennek látszik) **seem** (= valamilyennek látszik) **feel** (= valahogy érzi magát) **taste** (= valamilyen ízű) **smell** (= valamilyen szagú) **sound** (= valahogy hangzik)

Néhány példa:

*She **looks** **happy**.*

*This cheese **tastes** **wonderful**.*

*I **feel** **cold**. (= Fázom.)*

- 4 Ha a főnév előtt két vagy három melléknév követi egymást, általában nem teszünk vesszőt, és az **and** kötőszót sem használjuk:

*He's a **nice old** man.*

*a **large round red** face*

Amikor a főnév előtt két azonos típusú melléknév (pl. színek neve) áll, az **and** kötőszóval kötjük azokat össze. Három azonos típusú melléknévnél az első után vesszőt teszünk, a második után pedig az **and** kötőszót:

*a **blue and yellow** scarf*

*a **red, white and blue** flag*

- 5 Ha több melléknév követi egymást, a megfelelő sorrend a következő:

MÉRET + KOR + FORMA + SZÍN + NEMZETISÉG + ANYAG

a big new car					
a small square black box					
an old French silk tie					

Nézzük a példákat:

*a **horrible** **yellow** shirt a **beautiful** **old** villa*

Ha a melléknévvel véleményünket fejezzük ki (pl. **wonderful**), az mindig megelőzi a többi melléknévet:

wonderful	great	fantastic
beautiful	nice	good
strange	funny	(un)friendly
horrible	awful	bad

Az anyagneveket gyakran használjuk jelzőként:

*a **cotton** shirt a **silver** ring a **plastic** bag*
(NEM *a shirt of cotton*) (NEM *a ring of silver*)

- 6 Néhány gyakran előforduló nemzetiséget jelentő melléknév:

American	Greek	Russian
Australian	Hungarian	Scottish
Chinese	Irish	South African
Dutch	Italian	Spanish
English	Japanese	Swedish
French	Polish	Turkish
German	Portuguese	Welsh

Gyakorlatok

- A Anna múzeumban járt, és a következőket írta a képekről. A szövegben az első melléknévet aláhúzta – húzzuk alá a többi tizenkilencet is.

This modern picture is strange. It's like the old picture next to it, but in the new painting the sky is green and the trees are blue. It seems frightening. My favourite picture is one of a large, square room by a Dutch artist. An elegant man sits on a wooden bench in a corner. He has a small black dog at his feet. The dog looks sleepy. Through the open window you can see bright sunshine. When I look at this picture I feel warm and happy.

B Egészítsük ki az idegenvezető mondatait a megadott melléknevekkel.

British	busy	careful	enjoyable	free	good	late	long	old
popular	tall	valuable						

Ladies and gentlemen! This is Covent Garden. It's a ⁰ popular place for ¹ people and for tourists from abroad. We want you to have an ² visit so the coach waits here a ³ time. We get on it again at twelve o'clock, in the coach park behind the ⁴ tower you can see over there. Covent Garden is in fact an ⁵ market but today it is a place where there is ⁶ entertainment – you don't have to pay to see anything. But be ⁷! Like all ⁸ places, Covent Garden has pickpockets, so look after your money and your ⁹ possessions like cameras. Have a ¹⁰ time and please don't be ¹¹ for the coach.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

look (x3)	feel (x2)	taste	smell	sound (x2)
-----------	-----------	-------	-------	------------

- 0 Have one of these apples. They taste delicious!
- 1 That music terrible. What is it?
- 2 You thirsty. Have a drink.
- 3 Those flowers look nice and they good too. What are they?
- 4 Is Jane ill? She tired.
- 5 Close the door, please. I cold.
- 6 It's hot, I'm on holiday and I happy!
- 7 That new picture wonderful in your dining-room.
- 8 Do you know where that song comes from? It Spanish.

D A következő mondatokban az aláhúzott melléknevek sorrendje hibás lehet. Pipáljuk ki a hibátlan szókapcsolatokat, a hibásakat pedig írjuk le helyesen.

- 0 She always wears a gold small ring.
.....
small gold
- 0 I have an old Italian painting in my living room.
✓
.....
- 1 I need my cotton green shirt and my brown leather shoes.
.....
- 2 George has a Spanish modern villa near the sea. He goes there every summer.
.....
- 3 I live in an old white house near the river. I've got a black large dog!
.....
- 4 There's an interesting Polish young student in my class.
.....
- 5 Let's have lunch in the big Japanese new restaurant in the centre of town.
.....
- 6 I carry all my books in a red plastic bag.
.....

E Írjuk le helyes sorrendben a zárójelben megadott szavakat.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| 0 (a/town/beautiful/little)
<i>a beautiful little town</i> | 5 (a/large/building/white) |
| 1 (a/day/pleasant/sunny) | 6 (a/bird/big/grey) |
| 2 (a/smile/big/nice) | 7 (a/woman/thin/tall) |
| 3 (a/large/coffee/black) | 8 (a/small/car/blue) |
| 4 (a/old/coat/horrible) | 9 (a/story/little/strange) |

F Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben lévő melléknevekkel és – ha szükséges – az **and** kötőszóval.

- 0 The Greek flag is *blue and white* . (blue/white)
- 0 Throw those *awful old* shoes away. (awful/old)
- 1 I need a cup of coffee. (good/strong)
- 2 Mike's new flat is very (light/spacious)
- 3 Come and sit by the fire. You look (cold/tired)
- 4 The star of the show is a girl. (beautiful/young)
- 5 This lemonade tastes really (nice/refreshing)
- 6 The Davisons have got a house in the country. (lovely/old)
- 7 In my opinion, photographs are often more effective than colour (black/white)
- 8 You look hungry! Some soup will make you feel better. (good/hot)
- 9 A man lives in that house. (poor/old)
- 10 Kate's got three kittens. (sweet/little/black/white)

G Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknevekkel. Ügyeljünk a helyes szórendre.

- 0 We have lunch in a *nice little Chinese* restaurant every Saturday. (Chinese/little/nice)
- 1 Michael Jackson sometimes wears a suit. (silk/white/fantastic)
- 2 Sandra drives a car. (old/American/big)
- 3 Kate keeps her money in a purse. (leather/small/brown)
- 4 'Casablanca' is a film. (wonderful/black/old/white)
- 5 Polly lives next door to a girl. (Irish/friendly/young)
- 6 Archaeologists look for things like statues. (prehistoric/wooden/strange)
- 7 Clare has a ring. (new/wonderful/diamond)

- 8 I don't like the dress in this picture.
(wedding/short/funny/pink)
- 9 Look what's under the bed! A sock.
(nylon/old/green/horrible)
- 10 Let's take down the dirty old plastic lampshade and put this
lantern in its place. (paper/beautiful/Japanese/new)

H Keressük meg az egyes főnevekhez tartozó, nemzetiséget jelentő melléknevet, és egészítsük ki a mondatokat, ahogy a példa mutatja.

Names:			Nationalities:		
Mykonos	<i>Il Trovatore</i>	Alfred Nobel	Dutch	Italian	German
The Taj Mahal	Sherlock Holmes	vodka	Scottish	Indian	Chinese
Macbeth	Vincent van Gogh	A Volkswagen	Greek	Russian	French
Salamanca	Gérard Depardieu	Batman Forever	Swedish	English	American
Chang			Spanish		

- 0 *Batman Forever* is an *American* film.
- 1 is a car.
- 2 is a city.
- 3 was a king.
- 4 is an opera.
- 5 was a artist.
- 6 is an building.
- 7 is a island.
- 8 is a drink.
- 9 was a chemist.
- 10 is a actor.
- 11 was an detective.
- 12 is a surname.

I A fenti mondatok közül néhányat írjunk le újra, a megadott melléknevekkel kiegészítve. Ügyeljünk az **a/an** névelő megfelelő használatára.

fantastic terrible boring beautiful typical intelligent

- 0 *Batman Forever is a fantastic American film.*
- 1
2
3
4
5
6



A számnév – numbers (three, third)

1 Nézzük a példákat:

I have **three** cats.

She lives on the **third** floor.

A **three** tőszámnév.

A **third** sorszámnév.

2 Nézzük meg a táblázatot:

TŐSZÁMNÉV	SORSZÁMNÉV
1 one	1st first
2 two	2nd second
3 three	3rd third
4 four	4th fourth
5 five	5th fifth
6 six	6th sixth
7 seven	7th seventh
8 eight	8th eighth
9 nine	9th ninth
10 ten	10th tenth
11 eleven	11th eleventh
12 twelve	12th twelfth
13 thirteen	13th thirteenth
14 fourteen	14th fourteenth
15 fifteen	15th fifteenth
16 sixteen	16th sixteenth
17 seventeen	17th seventeenth
18 eighteen	18th eighteenth
19 nineteen	19th nineteenth
20 twenty	20th twentieth
21 twenty-one	21st twenty-first
22 twenty-two	22nd twenty-second

30 thirty	30th thirtieth
40 forty	40th fortieth
50 fifty	50th fiftieth
60 sixty	60th sixtieth
70 seventy	70th seventieth
80 eighty	80th eightieth
90 ninety	90th ninetieth

100	a/one hundred
101	a/one hundred and one
200	two hundred
1000	a/one thousand
3000	three thousand
1,000,000	a/one million
4,000,000	four million
\$4,000,000	four million dollars
100th	hundredth
101st	hundred and first
1000th	thousandth
1,000,000th	millionth

3 Figyeljük meg, hogyan írjuk, és hogyan mondjuk a dátumot:

13th June: **The thirteenth of June.**

June the thirteenth.

1994: *Nineteen ninety-four.*

Így írjuk: 26 March 2005 (26.3.05)

Így mondjuk: *The twenty-sixth of March, two thousand and five*

Gyakorlatok

A A zárójelben lévő számok mellett egy hibás és egy hibátlan átírás van. Pipáljuk ki a helyeset, és húzzuk át a hibásat.

0 (116)	a hundred sixteen	a hundred and sixteen ✓
1 (49)	fourty-nine	forty-nine
2 (600)	six hundred	six hundreds
3 (4th)	fourth	forth
4 (12th)	twelvth	twelfth
5 (\$2,000)	two thousand dollars	two thousands dollars
6 (23rd)	twenty-three	twenty-third
7 (78)	eighty-seven	seventy-eight
8 (8th)	eightth	eighth
9 (17)	seventeen	seventeenth
10 (5th)	fiveth	fifth
11 (7,000,000)	seven million	seven millions
12 (9th)	ninth	nineth
13 (30th)	thirteenth	thirtieth
14 (395)	three hundred and ninety-five	three hundred ninety-five

B Írjuk le betűvel a következő számokat.

- 0 (211) two hundred and eleven
 1 (462)
 2 (20th)
 3 (1st)
 4 (12th)
 5 (9,000,000)
 6 (310)
 7 (8th)
 8 (111)

- 9 (14)
 10 (2nd)
 11 (5,000)
 12 (68)
 13 (34th)
 14 (150)
 15 (3rd)
 16 (25th)
 17 (19th)

C Fejezzük be a mondatokat a példa és a táblázat alapján.

- 0 John lives in flat forty on the fourth floor.
 1 Charles
 2 Maria
 3 Diana
 4 Michael
 5 Peter
 6 Jane
 7 Ann
 8 Oliver

Floor 7	FLAT 72 PETER
Floor 6	FLAT 61 OLIVER
Floor 5	FLAT 54 MICHAEL | FLAT 59 ANN
Floor 4	FLAT 40 JOHN
Floor 3	FLAT 37 Diana
Floor 2	FLAT 23 CHARLES | FLAT 25 JANE
Floor 1	FLAT 11 MARIA

D Egészítsük ki a kérdésekre adott válaszokat a zárójelben megadott információval. Írjuk a dátumokat végig betűvel.

A: When were you born?

B: I was born on ⁰ the thirteenth of October, nineteen seventy (13.10.70).

A: When did you go to secondary school?

B: In ¹ (1981).

A: And when did you leave secondary school?

B: Seven years later. My final exam was on ² (16.6.88).

A: Did you start university in the same year?

B: Yes, on ³ (29th September).

A: Did you spend three or four years there?

B: Well, I left in ⁴ (1992). That's four years.

A: And your first job? When was that?

B: I started work in an office on ⁵ (10.1.93).

A: Did you enjoy it? How long did you stay?

B: It was terrible! I left two months later, on ⁶ (9th March).

A: What did you do then?

B: I went to America. I spent two years in New York. I returned to England in ⁷ (1995).



Melléknevek és határozószók – adjectives and adverbs

1



It was cold.



*It was **very** cold.*

A melléknevek (pl. **cold**) elé határozószót tehetünk (pl. **very**), amellyel a melléknév jelentését nyomatékosítjuk.

Néhány ilyen határozószó:

very (= nagyon) **extremely** (= különösen)
really (= igazán)

*We were **very** tired after the trip.*

*I felt **extremely** nervous before the exam.*

*I'm **really** angry with you. (= nagyon mérges)*

A határozószóval tompíthatjuk is a melléknév jelentését:

fairly (= meglehetősen, eléggé)
quite (= eléggé, egészen)

*Our car is **fairly** old.*

*The meal was **quite** nice.*

2 Egyes melléknevek valamilyen tulajdonság legnagyobb mértékét fejezik ki:

freezing (= rettenetesen hideg)

enormous (= óriási)

Az ilyen melléknevek jelentését nem nyomatékosíthatjuk **very**, **fairly** és **extremely** típusú határozószóval.

Helytelen: *It's **very** freezing today.*

Ezeknél a mellékneveknél az **absolutely** határozószót használhatjuk nyomatékosításra:
*It's **absolutely** freezing today.*

A **really** határozószó bármilyen melléknév jelentését erősíti:

*It's **really** cold today.*

*It's **really** freezing today.*

Bizonyos tulajdonságok legnagyobb mértékét kifejező melléknevek:

freezing	boiling
enormous	marvellous
awful	terrible
impossible	perfect
brilliant	essential

3 A főnevek jelentős részének is lehet melléknévi szerepe – amikor két főnév áll egymás mellett a mondatban, az első az azt követő főnév tulajdonságát jelölheti, tehát annak jelzője lehet:

	FŐNÉV	+	FŐNÉV
a	cardboard		box
a	cassette		recorder
a	cheque		book
an	alarm		clock

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő mondatokat a **really** vagy **quite** határozószóval.

- The film was **really** good. I enjoyed it a lot.
- It's cold outside, but not very cold.
- It isn't a wonderful book, but it's good.
- The tickets were expensive – they cost much more than I expected.
- This programme is popular in my country; millions of people watch it.
- He's good at his job, but he sometimes makes bad mistakes.
- The meal was nice, but it wasn't worth the money.
- It's dangerous to drive so fast in such terrible weather conditions.
- I'm not a very good tennis player, but I am good.
- They're all intelligent students, and they will all pass their exams easily.
- The company that I work for is big, but it's not enormous.

B A következő párbeszédben a zárójelben megadott határozószók közül csak az egyiket használhatjuk az adott mondatban. Válasszuk ki, melyik az.

ERIC: Did you have a good weekend?

CAROL: Saturday was ⁰ **absolutely** (very/absolutely) perfect, though Sunday was ¹ (really/very) terrible. On Saturday morning we watched my sister take part in an ice-skating competition and she was ² (fairly/absolutely) brilliant. In the evening we celebrated at an Italian restaurant and I had a ³ (really/very) huge pizza. And then we saw a horror movie and it was ⁴ (really/absolutely) frightening. Wonderful!

ERIC: And Sunday?

CAROL: Well, it was ⁵ (extremely/absolutely) cold, and the heating stopped working. So we were ⁶ (absolutely/very) freezing all day.

C Alkossunk szókapcsolatokat a táblázat A illetve B oszlopában lévő szavakból, és írjuk ezeket a megfelelő kép alá.

A	table	tennis	paper	coat
	photograph	door	soup	coffee
	road	air	music	telephone

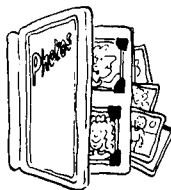
B	cup	court	pot	book
	handle	sign	hanger	hostess
	system	bowl	lamp	album



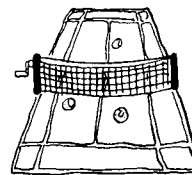
0 **a table lamp**



1



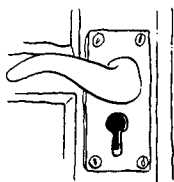
2



3



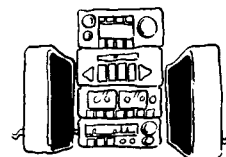
4



5



6



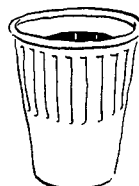
7



8



9



10



11

D A következő mondatok közül húzzuk át azokat, amelyekben helytelenül alkalmazott határozószó + melléknév szókapcsolat van.

0 ~~Sally has an extremely marvellous voice. I'm sure she could be a professional singer.~~

1 We had a really hot, dry summer last year.

2 It's very essential for you to take your passport with you when you fly to Athens.

3 Dave's parents are quite rich. They live in a really big house.

4 I was quite nervous before I saw the dentist, but she soon reassured me.

5 There was a fairly terrible accident on the M3 motorway late last night.



- 1 Nézzük meg, hogyan fokozzuk a mellékneveket:



The Plaza Hotel is *cheaper than* the Excelsior.
The Excelsior Hotel is *bigger than* the Plaza.
The Excelsior is *more expensive than* the Plaza.
The Plaza Hotel is *smaller than* the Excelsior.

- 2 A **cheaper** és a **more expensive** a melléknév középfokú alakja.

Így képezzük a középfokot:

- Egy szótagú melléknevek

ALAPFOK	KÖZÉPFOK
old	older
long	longer
nice	nicer
new	newer
slow	slower
fat	fatter
hot	hotter
big	bigger

- két vagy több szótagú melléknevek:

famous	more famous
difficult	more difficult
careful	more careful
expensive	more expensive

(DE: narrow **narrower**
polite **politer**)

- **-y-ra** végződő melléknevek:

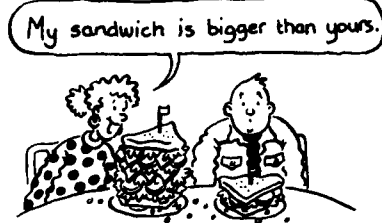
happy	happier
hungry	hungrier

- rendhagyó fokozású melléknevek:

good	better
bad	worse
much/many	more
little	less
far	farther (= távolabbi)
	further (= további)

(További tudnivalók a melléknév fokozásáról a 364. oldalon a G táblázatban találhatók.)

- 3 Összehasonlításkor a melléknév + **than** (= mint) szerkezetet használjuk:



Tom is *richer than* Paul.
Paris is *more beautiful than* London.
My new car is *better than* my old one.

- 4 Ha az összehasonlítást nyomatékosítani akarjuk, a **much** vagy az **a lot** szavakkal tehetjük:

London is *much/a lot bigger than* Edinburgh.
(= London jóval nagyobb, mint Edinburgh.)
J.S. Bach is *much/a lot more famous than* his sons.
(= J.S. Bach sokkal híresebb, mint a fiai.)

Gyakorlatok

- A Írjuk le a következő melléknevek középfokú alakját.

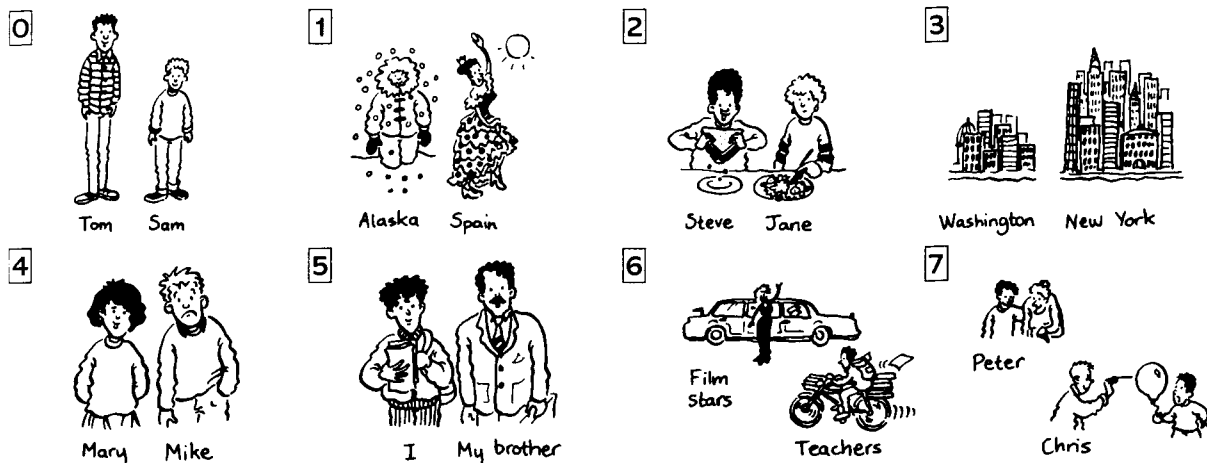
- 0 cold *colder*
- 1 big
2 careful
3 expensive
4 good
5 fat
6 famous
7 new

- 8 modern
9 young
10 cheap
11 delicious
12 rich
13 long
14 hungry
15 nice

- 16 happy
 17 difficult
 18 old
 19 beautiful
 20 friendly

- 21 hot
 22 wonderful
 23 bad
 24 small
 25 sad

B Hasonlítsuk össze a képeken látható személyeket vagy dolgokat a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével.



- 0 (be/tall) *Tom is taller than Sam.*
 1 (be/cold)
 2 (be/hungry)
 3 (be/small)
 4 (be/happy)
 5 (be/young)
 6 (be/rich)
 7 (be/friendly)

C Hasonlítsuk össze a táblázatban szereplő hajókat a zárójelben lévő szavak segítségével. Használjuk a **much** vagy a **lot** kifejezést, amikor jelentős különbségről van szó.

Boats	Length	Top speed	Price
Queen Anne	14 metres	35 knots	£9,000
Red Devil	6 metres	72 knots	£23,000
Jolly Jim	4 metres	28 knots	£6,000

- 0 (big) The Red Devil is *bigger than* the Jolly Jim.
 0 (slow) The Queen Anne is *much slower than* the Red Devil.
 1 (cheap) The Jolly Jim is the Queen Anne.
 2 (small) The Jolly Jim is the Queen Anne.
 3 (fast) The Red Devil is the Jolly Jim.
 4 (expensive) The Red Devil is the Queen Anne.
 5 (big) The Queen Anne is the Jolly Jim.
 6 (slow) The Jolly Jim is the Queen Anne.
 7 (expensive) The Queen Anne is the Jolly Jim.
 8 (small) The Jolly Jim is the Red Devil.



A melléknév fokozása. Teljesítő – superlative adjectives (the oldest, the most famous)

1 Olvassuk el az alábbi telefonbeszélgetést:

A: Tourist Information. Can I help?

B: Yes, please. I'm coming to Wentbridge this weekend, and I'm looking for a good hotel.

A: Well, the Scotsman is **the oldest** hotel in Wentbridge, but it's also **the most expensive**. The Castle is **the most beautiful**. The Prince is **the newest** and **the biggest** ...

2 Az **oldest** (= legrégebbi), **most expensive** (= legdrágább), **newest** (= legújabb) felsőfokú melléknévek. Az egy szótagú melléknévek és sok két szótagú melléknév felsőfokú alakját az **-est** végződéssel képezzük, a többinél pedig a **most** előtagú összetett alakot használjuk.

Nézzük meg az alábbi táblázatot:

ALAPFOK	FELSŐFOK
cheap	the cheapest
big	the biggest
sad	the saddest
famous	the most famous
difficult	the most difficult
hungry	the hungriest

A következő melléknévek fokozása rendhagyó:

good	the best
bad	the worst
much/many	the most
little	the least
far	the farthest/the furthest (= a legtávolabbi/a legtovábbi)

(További tudnivalók a melléknév fokozásáról, a 364. oldalon a G táblázatban találhatók.)

3 A felsőfokú melléknév előtt általában a **the** névelő áll:

London is **the biggest** city in England.

The Taj Mahal is **the most beautiful** building in the world.

A felsőfokú melléknév előtt állhat birtokos névmás vagy **'s** birtokos szerkezet is:

Russians consider Tolstoy **their greatest** writer.

The Thames is **England's longest** river.

Ha valamilyen hely megnevezése követi a felsőfokú melléknévet, az **in** előjárószo áll előtte:

... **the richest** man in Europe. (NEM: ... ~~of~~ Europe.)

A felsőfokban álló melléknév után nem feltétlenül szükséges valamilyen főnevet tenni: George and Mary have three children. Mike is **the oldest**.

A: Which table did you buy?

B: **The most expensive**. (= A legdrágábbat.)

4 Az **ever** (= valaha) határozószó gyakran szerepel olyan mondatokban, amelyekben a melléknév felsőfokban, az ige pedig Present Perfect alakban áll:

That was **the best** film I've ever seen.

(= Az volt a legjobb film, amit valaha láttam.)

A: How was your holiday?

B: Fantastic! Iceland is **the most beautiful** country I've ever visited.

A **little** (= kevés) szó fokozása rendhagyó. A **less** jelentése 'kevesebb, kevésbé', a **least** jelentése 'a legkevesebb, a legkevésbé'

Silver is **less** expensive than gold. (Az ezüst kevésbé drága, mint az arany.)

It was **the least** expensive ring in the shop. (Ez a gyűrű volt a legkevésbé drága az üzletben.)

Figyelem! Ha a **little** melléknév jelentése 'kicsi', középfoka **smaller** (= kisebb), felsőfoka **smallest** (= a legkisebb).

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknévek felsőfokú alakjával és a **the** névelővel, ha szükséges.

After Russia, Canada is ⁰ (large) **the largest** country in the world, and its lakes, mountains and rivers make it one of ¹ (interesting) places in the world. Great Bear Lake is ² (big) Canadian lake, and ³ (deep) Lake is Great Slave Lake. Canada's ⁴ (long) river is Mackenzie River. Although Niagara Falls, on the border with America, is ⁵ (spectacular) and (popular)

waterfall for tourists, Della Falls is ⁷ (high) Mount Logan in Yukon Territory is the highest and ⁸ (famous) mountain in Canada. The weather is extreme too. ⁹ (low) temperature ever recorded in this country was -63 degrees Celsius at a place called Snag, and Canada's ¹⁰ (dry) town is Medicine Hat, where the rainfall is so low that you cannot measure it!

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott információk alapján.

young old
Jane – Claire – Sally

- 0 Claire is *older than* Jane.
Of the three girls, Sally is *the oldest*

cheap expensive
rubies – emeralds – diamonds

- 5 Emeralds are rubies.
6 Of these three stones, diamonds are

small big
domestic cats – panthers – lions

- 1 Panthers are lions.
2 Domestic cats are members of the cat family.

short long
Thames – Rhine – Amazon

- 7 The Thames is the Rhine.
8 Of these three rivers, the Amazon is

cold hot
Sweden – France – Kenya

- 3 Sweden is France.
4 Of the three countries, Kenya is

C Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben lévő szavak segítségével. Használjuk a **the** + felsőfok és a Present Perfect + **ever** szerkezetet.

- 0 (This is/cold/place/I/visit) *This is the coldest place I've ever visited.*
1 (It's/big/ship/I/see)
2 (He's/rich/man/I/meet)
3 (It was/difficult/exam/I/do)
4 (It was/sad/film/I/see)
5 (She's/happy/person/I/meet)
6 (It's/beautiful/flat/I/see)
7 (This is/hot/country/I/visit)
8 (It's/small/dog/I/see)

D A következő mondatok mindegyikében hiba van. Húzzuk át a hibás szót, és a helyes megoldást írjuk a mondat mellé.

- 0 The Plaza is cheaper ~~that~~ the Excelsior. *than*
1 Mexico City is bigger than London.
2 Platinum is most expensive than gold.
3 I think this song is gooder than the first one.
4 Mary is happier than she was yesterday.
5 Footballers are famouser than rugby players.
6 Tiger Woods is a best golfer in the world.



Melléknevek és határozószók – adjectives and adverbs (quick, quickly); a határozószók fokozása (more carefully)

1	MELLÉKNÉV	HATÁROZÓSZÓ
	quick	quickly
	careful	carefully
	easy	easily

- 2 A melléknév rendszerint valamilyen személy vagy dolog tulajdonságára utal, tehát a főnevet egészíti ki:

	MELLÉKNÉV	+	FŐNÉV
	<i>She's a quick</i>		<i>worker.</i>

A határozószó általában az igét egészíti ki, és a cselekvés vagy történés módját, idejét vagy egyéb körülményeit határozza meg:

	IGE	+	HATÁROZÓSZÓ
	<i>She works</i>		<i>quickly.</i>

További példák :

Melléknév + főnév: *English is an easy language.*

Ige + határozószó: *You can learn English easily.*

Melléknév + főnév: *He's a careful driver.*

Ige + határozószó: *He drives carefully.*

- 3 Melléknévből **-ly** végződésű határozószót képezhetünk:

slow → slowly bad → badly

Ha a melléknév **-y**-ra végződik, az **y** a **-ly** képző előtt **-i**-re változik:

happy → happily easy → easily

Egyes melléknevek határozószóként is szerepelhetnek minden alakváltozás nélkül:

MELLÉKNÉV	HATÁROZÓSZÓ
hard	hard (= kemény keményen)
fast	fast (= gyors gyorsan)
late	late (= késő későn)

Melléknév: *He's a fast runner.*

Határozószó: *He runs fast.*

A **good** melléknévnek megfelelő határozószó a **well** (= jól):

She's a good player. She plays well.

(További tudnivalók a határozószóról a 364. oldalon a H táblázatban találhatók.)

- 4 A mondatok szórendje általában a következő:

	IGE (ÁLLÍTMÁNY)	HATÁROZÓ
	<i>She sings</i>	<i>beautifully.</i>

	IGE (ÁLLÍTMÁNY)	TÁRGY	HATÁROZÓ
	<i>He ate</i>	<i>his food</i>	<i>slowly.</i>

- 5 Középfokban a **more** szót tesszük a határozószó elé:

carefully → more carefully

You should do your work more carefully.

Please drive more slowly.

A **well** középfoka **better**, a **badly** középfoka **worse**:

She speaks Arabic better than me.

Pollution is getting worse.

A **fast** középfoka **faster**, a **hard** középfoka **harder**:

Could you walk faster? We're in a hurry.

You will have to work harder in future.

Gyakorlatok

- A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavak egyikével.

- The train was very (slow/slowly) and I arrived late.
- The journey took a long time because the train went very (slow/slowly).
- Mrs Green went (quick/quickly) back to her office.
- I'm afraid I can't give you an (immediate/immediately) answer; I need to think about it first.
- The work that the builders did for us was very (bad/badly).

- 5 The builders did the work for us very (bad/badly).
- 6 She organized the party very (good/well), and everybody enjoyed it.
- 7 Everybody said that the party was very (good/well).
- 8 She wrote a (polite/politely) letter asking the company to give her the money back.
- 9 She wrote to the company and asked them (polite/politely) to give her the money back.

B Képezzünk határozószót a zárójelben megadott melléknevekből, és írjuk be a szövegbe.

After work Mrs Proctor drove home ⁰ *quickly* (quick). She parked the car ¹ (careful) in the garage and opened the front door ² (quiet). She didn't want Jack to hear her. She found Jack in his room playing ³ (happy) on his computer. She looked ⁴ (angry) at him. 'Jack, you've got exams next week. You should be studying ⁵ (hard) for them. You didn't do ⁶ (good) in the last exams but if you prepared for exams ⁷ (proper), you could ⁸ (easy) get better marks.' 'Connie doesn't prepare for exams and she did ⁹ (brilliant) last time,' said Jack. 'In any case, you have to write ¹⁰ (neat) and do everything ¹¹ (perfect) because if you don't, they don't give you the marks. And they don't give you enough time. You know that I write ¹² (slow) and in the exams you have to write ¹³ (fast). Teachers just don't treat slow writers very ¹⁴ (kind).' 'Jack,' said his mother, 'you always have an excuse, but you'll certainly do ¹⁵ (bad) in the exams if you keep playing those computer games.'

C Alakítsuk át a mondatokat a melléknév helyett határozószót használva.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 0 Peter is a bad tennis player. | <i>Peter plays tennis badly.</i> |
| 1 He's a dangerous driver. | He drives |
| 2 She's a fast swimmer. | She swims |
| 3 Martin is a good cook. | ..... |
| 4 I'm a slow writer. | ..... |
| 5 She's a brilliant chess player. | ..... |
| 6 Sheila is a hard worker. | ..... |
| 7 They aren't quick learners. | ..... |

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknevekből képzett középfokú határozószóval.

- 0 You must do your work *more carefully* (careful) in future.
- 1 He has run the 100 metres (fast) than any other athlete in the world this year.
- 2 Everyone else did the test (good) than me.
- 3 You can travel (cheap) at certain times of the year.
- 4 He plays (confident) than he did in the past.
- 5 I'm sorry I've made so many mistakes. I'll try (hard) in future.
- 6 You will be able to sit (comfortable) in this chair.
- 7 This aspirin isn't working. My headache is getting (bad)
- 8 The roads are very wet. You should drive (slow)

Összehasonlítás – comparison (as ... as)

- 1 Az **as** + melléknév + **as** szerkezettel két személy vagy dolog hasonlóságára utalhatunk:



*The chair is **as expensive as** the table.* (= A szék ugyanolyan drága, mint az asztal.)

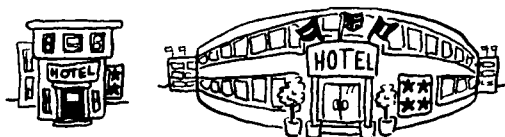
*You're **as old as** me.* (= Annyi idős vagy, mint én.)

Ha a hasonlító szerkezet után személyes névmás van, akkor a névmás tárgyi alakját használjuk: **as me/as him/as her/as us/as them**), NEM: **as I/as he/as she** stb.

*She's **as strong as** him.* (NEM: ... **as he**.)

*I'm **as fast as** them.* (NEM: ... **as they**.)

Ha két tárgy vagy személy különbözőségéről beszélünk, a **not as ... as** (= nem olyan, mint) szerkezetet használjuk:



*The two star hotel isn't **as big as** the four star hotel.*
*I'm **not as clever as** her.*

- 2 Az **as ... as** szerkezetet határozószóval is használhatjuk (pl. **as well as**):

*Jean cooks **as well as** Tom.*

*He couldn't run **as quickly as** Maria.*

(A határozószókról további tudnivalók a 90. fejezetben találhatók.)

- 3 Az **as many** + többes számú főnév + **as** (= annyi, mint) szerkezettel két dolog mennyiségének egyezésére utalhatunk:

*Jane has got **as many friends as** Mary.*

A **not as many ... as** (= nem annyi, mint) jelentése: két dolognak nem azonos a mennyisége:

*I don't have **as many books as** you.*

- 4 Az **as much** + megszámlálhatatlan főnév + **as** szerkezettel ugyancsak két dolog mennyiségét hasonlítjuk össze (pl. **as much money as**). A megszámlálhatatlan főneveknek nincs többes számuk (pl. **money, work, luggage, traffic**):

*Helen earns **as much money as** Colin.*

*Jack doesn't do **as much work as** me.*

Figyelem! A **money** megszámlálhatatlan főnév (A megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan főnevekről bővebb információ a 70. fejezetben található.)

Gyakorlatok

- A A példa alapján írjunk hasonlító mondatokat az **as ... as** szerkezettel.

0 Sweden is bigger than Britain.

Britain isn't **as big as** Sweden.

1 The other students learn more quickly than me.

I don't learn the other students.

2 You're very angry and I'm very angry also.

I'm you.

3 The seats at the front are more expensive than the seats at the back.

The seats at the back aren't the seats at the front.

4 Central Park in New York is bigger than Hyde Park in London.

Hyde Park in London isn't Central Park in New York.

5 Her last film was very good and her new film is also very good.

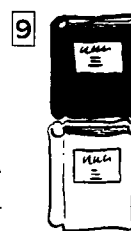
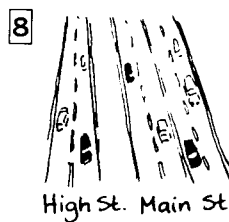
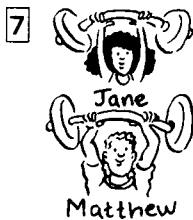
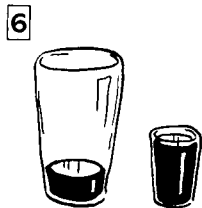
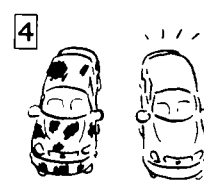
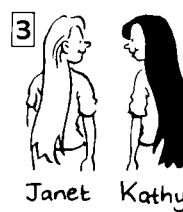
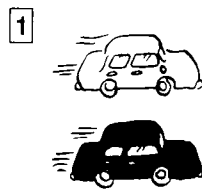
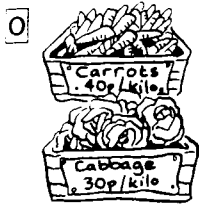
Her new film is her last film.

6 The other students work harder than him.

He doesn't work the other students.

B Egészítsük ki a képekhez tartozó mondatokat az **as ... as** szerkezet és a megadott szavak segítségével. Minden szót csak egyszer használjunk.

long clean fast fresh tall big ~~cheap~~ strong wide full



- 0 The carrots aren't **as cheap as** the cabbages.
- 1 The black car is going the white car.
- 2 The footballers aren't the basketball players.
- 3 Janet's hair is Kathy's hair.
- 4 The car on the left isn't the car on the right.
- 5 The flowers on the right aren't the flowers on the left.
- 6 The big glass isn't the little glass.
- 7 Jane is Matthew.
- 8 High Street isn't Main Street.
- 9 The black book is the white book.

C A zárójelben megadott információ alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat **as much ... as** vagy **as many ... as** használatával.

- 0 (I've got about 50 books. Jack's got about 100.)
I haven't got **as many books as** Jack.
- 0 (You've done a lot of work. I've done a lot of work also.)
I've done **as much work as** you.
- 1 (Alan earns a lot of money. Sheila only earns a little.)
Sheila doesn't earn Alan.
- 2 (George has been to five countries. I've also been to five countries.)
I've been to George.
- 3 (You've had five jobs. I've only had two.)
I haven't had you.
- 4 (Tom has a lot of luggage. Jane has a lot of luggage too.)
Jane has Tom.
- 5 (Mary answered most of the questions. I only answered about half.)
I didn't answer Mary.
- 6 (Ruth spent £50. I also spent £50.)
I spent Ruth.



Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a melléknév fokozása (88–91. fejezet)

- A** A táblázatban található információ segítségével egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknevek középfokú alakjával és a **than** elöljárószóval.

	Alison	Bernard
Height:	1.6m	1.75m
Age:	30	26
Income:	£15,000 per year	£70,000 per year
Family:	2 brothers	1 brother and 2 sisters
House:	small	very big

- 0 Alison is **shorter than** (short) Bernard.
- 1 Bernard is (tall) Alison.
- 2 Alison is (old) Bernard.
- 3 Bernard is (rich) Alison.
- 4 Alison's income is (low) Bernard's.
- 5 Bernard's family is (big) Alison's.
- 6 Alison's house is (small) Bernard's.

- B** Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknevek középfokú alakjával és a **than** elöljárószóval.

- 0 I think that Formula One is **more interesting than** (interesting) tennis.
- 1 This question is (easy) the last one.
- 2 I'm a good player, but Eric is (good) me.
- 3 The group's first record was (successful) their second record.
- 4 We both played well, but he was (lucky) me.
- 5 Your car is (powerful) mine.
- 6 This computer is (useful) that one.

- C** Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknevek felsőfokú alakjával.

- 0 Anna is the **youngest** (young) person in her class.
- 1 We stayed in (bad) hotel in the whole city.
- 2 People say that it is (funny) film of the year.
- 3 What is (tall) building in the world?
- 4 Her teachers say that she is (good) student in the school.
- 5 This is (expensive) camera in the shop.
- 6 Many people say that Venice is (beautiful) city in the world.

- D** Pótoljuk a hiányzó részeket a zárójelben megadott melléknevek közép- vagy felsőfokú alakjával és ennek megfelelően a **than** elöljárószóval vagy a **the** névelővel.

- 0 A: Why did you choose that hotel? It's a long way from the centre of town.
B: I chose it because it was **cheaper than** (cheap) the hotel in the centre.
- 0 A: Shall we sit in the living-room?
B: Yes, it's **the warmest** (warm) room in the house.
- 1 A: Did you enjoy being a student?
B: Yes, they were (happy) years of my life.

- 2 A: Is he famous in this country?
B: Yes, he's (famous) any other singer.
- 3 A: I'm not a very good cook.
B: I'm sure I'm (bad) you. I can't cook anything well.
- 4 A: Do you like this programme?
B: Yes, I think it's (good) programme on TV.
- 5 A: What did you have for dinner?
B: I chose (expensive) dish on the menu.
- 6 A: How is your new course going?
B: It's (difficult) the last one I took.
- 7 A: What's the weather going to be like today?
B: They say that today is going to be (wet) yesterday.
- 8 A: Are you happy in your new flat?
B: Yes, it's (comfortable) my last one.

E Írjunk hasonlító mondatokat a példa alapján.

- 0 (a pearl ring/a diamond ring) **expensive**
A diamond ring is more expensive than a pearl ring.
- 1 (India/Scotland) **hot**
.....
- 2 (physics/geography) **difficult**
.....
- 3 (living in a city/living in the country) **stressful**
.....
- 4 (a kilometre/a mile) **long**
.....
- 5 (Edinburgh/London) **big**
.....
- 6 (Italian films/American films) **good**
.....
- 7 (travelling by train/travelling by plane) **slow**
.....
- 8 (Michael Jackson/Madonna) **famous**
.....

F Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a példa alapján.

- 0 **Chemistry** is *the most difficult* subject we study at school. (difficult)
- 1 is band I've ever heard. (good)
- 2 is film star I've ever seen. (beautiful)
- 3 is book I've ever read. (bad)
- 4 is I've ever been from home. (far)
- 5 is film I've ever seen. (sad)
- 6 is subject we study at school. (interesting)

G Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott melléknevek közép- vagy felsőfokú alakjával. (Felsőfoknál ne feledkezzünk meg a **the** névelőről.)

- 0 I think Helen is much *nicer* (nice) than her sister.
- 0 Susie is *the prettiest* (pretty) baby I've ever seen.
- 1 Mary says that (happy) time of her life was when she was a little girl.
- 2 Tom has lost weight. He used to be a lot (fat) than he is now.
- 3 Malta is (small) state in the European Union.
- 4 After a day on the ski slopes I felt (hungry) than I had ever felt before.
- 5 Travelling by bus is (cheap) than travelling by train, but I find the train (comfortable).
- 6 Sally has just passed her test, but she is already a (good) driver than her father.
- 7 I've always found twentieth century literature (interesting) than nineteenth century literature.
- 8 The Caprice is (expensive) restaurant in town.

H Egészítsük ki ezt a földrajzi vetélkedőn elhangzott párbeszédet a zárójelben megadott melléknevek megfelelő alakjával.

- SUE: Ready? Right, first question. What is the ⁰ *highest* (high) mountain in the world?
- SAM: That's easy. Mount Everest.
- SUE: Good. Now, is the Nile ¹ (long) than the Amazon?
- SAM: I'm not sure. I think the one is about as ² (long) as the other.
- SUE: Yes, geographers do not agree, but in any case they are the ³ (long) rivers in the world. Now, is Australia as ⁴ (big) as the United States?
- SAM: Yes, in fact it's ⁵ (big), I think.
- SUE: No, although it often looks ⁶ (big) on maps, in fact it's ⁷ (small). Now, where are the most active volcanoes in the world?
- SAM: I don't know. New Zealand?
- SUE: A bit ⁸ (close) to Europe than that. Indonesia. Finally, where is the ⁹ (salty) sea in the world?
- SAM: That's easy. It's the Dead Sea in Israel.
- SUE: Very good! You're the ¹⁰ (good) competitor this week.

I Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott határozószók középfokú alakjával.

- 0 Ruth isn't a bad cook, but her husband cooks *better* than she does. (well)
- 1 We all pushed, but we couldn't get the car to start. 'Push!' Mike shouted. (hard)
- 2 The school choir sang in this year's concert than I've ever heard them sing before. (well)
- 3 Laura treated Tony badly when she went out with him, but she treated Paul even! (badly)
- 4 After the accident, Sandra finally started driving (carefully)
- 5 Can you walk a bit? You walk too fast for me! (slowly)
- 6 The nightingale sings than any other bird. (beautiful)
- 7 Anna is often late for work, but this morning she arrived much than usual, and the manager asked her to go and see him. (late)

- 8 George has a gift for speaking foreign languages. He seems to learn them than the rest of us. (easily)

J Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az **as ... as** szerkezettel és a megadott melléknevekkel. Minden szót csak egyszer használjunk.

cold expensive rich amusing tall big hard old

- 0 My flat has four rooms. Janet's flat has six.
My flat isn't **as big as** Janet's.
- 0 I am about 160cm tall. So is John.
John is **as tall as** me.
- 1 The temperature today is -2°centigrade – the same as yesterday.
Today is yesterday.
- 2 Sonia has £5,000 in the bank, but Amy has £30,000.
Sonia isn't Amy.
- 3 The red dress costs £80. The black one costs the same.
The black dress is the red one.
- 4 Platinum is harder than gold.
Gold isn't platinum.
- 5 Mary sometimes makes us laugh, but Sue tells really funny jokes!
Mary isn't Sue.
- 6 Diana is eighteen. So is her friend James.
Diana is James.

K Egészítsük ki a mondatokat az **as much** vagy **as many** szókapcsolattal.

- 0 I drink about five cups of coffee every day, and so does Pam.
Pam drinks **as much** coffee as me.
- 0 Sue has six cousins. George has six, too.
George has **as many** cousins as Sue.
- 1 I worked all day, but Dave stopped at lunch time.
Dave didn't do work as me.
- 2 Tony and Liz both watch television for about three hours every day.
Tony watches television as Liz.
- 3 I took two chocolates from the box, but he took a handful!
I didn't take chocolates as him!
- 4 Mark buys two new CDs every week, and so does Jane.
Jane buys new CDs as Mark.
- 5 Dan's house is full of books, but we've only got a few.
We haven't got books as Dan.
- 6 Alan makes a lot of long phone calls, and so does Clare.
Clare makes long phone calls as Alan.



-ed vagy -ing végű melléknevek (frightened, frightening)

1 Hasonlítsuk össze a **frightened** és a **frightening** melléknevet:

Az **-ed** végződésű melléknév az emberben keltett érzésre utal:



ALANY

Ann was very **frightened**.

Az alany (**Ann**) az, aki megijedt.

Az **-ing** végződésű melléknév az adott érzést kiváltó személyre vagy dologra utal:



ALANY

The ghost was very **frightening**.

A mondat alanya (**the ghost**) váltotta ki az ijedséget.

2 Hasonlítsuk össze az alábbi mondatokat:

*We are all **surprised** by the news.*
*I was very **tired** at the end of the journey.*
 (= Fáradt voltam az utazás végére.)
*He was **excited** by the way the game ended.*
*I'm **interested** in your idea. (= Érdekel az ötleted.)*
*The students were **bored** during the lesson.*
 (= A diákok unatkoztak az órán.)
*Were you **disappointed** by the film?*
*I wasn't nervous before the exam; I was **relaxed**.*
*The children were **entertained** by three clowns.*
*Jack was totally **convinced** by Ann's explanation.*

*The news is **surprising**.*
*The journey was very **tiring**.*
 (= Az utazás fárasztó volt.)
*The end of the game was **exciting**.*
*Your idea is **interesting**. (= Érdekes az ötleted.)*
*The lesson was **boring**. (= Az óra unalmas volt.)*

*Was the film **disappointing**?*
*I went for a **relaxing** walk.*
*The clowns were **entertaining**.*
*Ann's explanation was totally **convincing**.*

Az **-ing** végződésű melléknév lehet a létigével alkotott állítmány része, de lehet főnév előtt álló jelző is. Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

*The **journey** was very **tiring**.*
*It was a very **tiring journey**.*

Gyakorlatok

A Válasszuk ki a megfelelőt a zárójelben megadott melléknevek közül.

- It was a terrible play and I was **bored** (bored/boring) from start to finish.
- I'm very (excited/exciting) because I'm going to New York tomorrow.
- Are you (surprised/surprising) or were you expecting this news?
- I'm reading a very (interested/interesting) book at the moment.
- I've had a very (tired/tiring) day at work today and I want to go to bed.
- Most people were (surprised/surprising) that he won the championship.
- I'm (bored/boring). Let's go out for a cup of coffee somewhere.
- Visit our (excited/exciting) new shop!
- His speech was very long and very (bored/boring).

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott melléknevekkel. Minden szót csak egyszer használjunk.

bored interested surprising amusing confused boring amused
confusing surprised **interesting**

- 0 Your idea is very **interesting** Tell me more about it.
- 1 He told me a very story. I laughed and laughed.
- 2 This is a terribly book. Nothing happens in it.
- 3 She's in politics and often talks about it.
- 4 The map was and I got lost.
- 5 She was because she had nothing to do all day.
- 6 Everyone else thought it was funny, but she wasn't
- 7 Could you repeat that, please? I'm a bit because it was very complicated.
- 8 It is that she failed the exam, because she's a good student.
- 9 Everyone was by the sudden noise.

C Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott melléknevekkel.

bored boring confusing convinced convincing disappointed **entertained**
entertaining frightened interesting relaxed surprised surprising

- CRAIG: What sort of films do you like?
- LIZ: When I go to the cinema, I like to be ⁰ **entertained**
- CRAIG: And what sort of films do you find ¹?
- LIZ: Well, I like films that tell a good ² story. And I mean a story that you can follow, not the sort that goes backwards and forwards in time. I find those very ³ And I'm ⁴ when I watch a horror film. I usually close my eyes when the horror starts.
- CRAIG: Yes, but if the story is too simple, surely you get ⁵ because you know exactly what's going to happen.
- LIZ: I don't mean that. If something is intelligible, it's not necessarily ⁶ Often good stories have ⁷ events or endings – things that you can't possibly know at the beginning.
- CRAIG: For me the most important thing is that the actors must be ⁸ so that you really believe that they are the person they are acting.
- LIZ: If that's true, I imagine that you are ⁹ most of the time because, well, for example, Harrison Ford is always Harrison Ford. I'm never ¹⁰ that he's somebody else.
- CRAIG: Yes, but it's often not important in his films because they're escapist – if you're feeling tense about work or something, you have a good laugh and you come out feeling ¹¹ and happy with the world.
- LIZ: I'm ¹² that you like his films. Although the special effects are good, the story is always terribly simple.
- CRAIG: He's not my favourite, but his films are not bad.

1 Nézzük meg a példát:



The case is **too heavy**. He can't carry it.

A **too** jelentése: több, mint ami egy bizonyos helyzetben kívánatos vagy megfelelő.

2 A **too** használata:**too + MELLÉKNÉV:**

*I don't want to go out. I'm **too tired**.* (túl fáradt)

too many + FŐNÉV TÖBBES SZÁMBAN:

*I couldn't find her at the concert because there were **too many people** there.* (túl sok ember)

too much + MEGSZÁMLÁLHATATLAN FŐNÉV:
(pl. **too much work/money/food/noise/salt/information/time/bread**)

*Our teacher gives us **too much work**.*
(= A tanár túl sok munkát ad.)

3 A **too** használható **to + főnévi igenév** szerkezetben is:

*She's **too young to drive**.*

(= Túl fiatal ahhoz, hogy vezessen.)

Ebben a szerkezetben a **for** előjárósó is használható:

*It's **too cold for us**.*

*It's **too cold for us to swim**.*

4 Nézzük meg az alábbi példákat:



This case is **big enough**. I can put all my clothes into it.

The small case isn't **big enough**.

Az **enough** jelentése: annyi, amennyire szükség van. A **not enough** jelentése: kevesebb, mint amennyire szükség van.

5 Az **enough** használata:**MELLÉKNÉV + enough:**

*Is your room **warm enough**?* (elég meleg)

enough + FŐNÉV TÖBBES SZÁMBAN:

*I've got **enough potatoes**, thanks.* (elég krumpli)

enough + MEGSZÁMLÁLHATATLAN FŐNÉV:

*I can't talk to you now. I haven't got **enough time**.* (= Nincs elég időm.)

6 A **not ... enough + to + főnévi igenév** szerkezettel azt mondjuk meg, hogy valaki miért nem csinálhat valamit:

*She isn't **old enough to drive**.*

Ebben a szerkezetben a **for** előjárósót is használhatjuk:

*It's not **warm enough for us**.*

*It's not **warm enough for us to swim**.*

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **too** vagy **enough** és a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával.

- I can't eat this soup because it's **too hot** (hot).
- We couldn't buy the tickets because we didn't have **enough money** (money).
- We didn't buy the car because it wasn't **big enough** (big).
- I couldn't see her because it was (dark).
- I can't decide what to do because I haven't got (information).
- You can't change the situation now. It's (late).
- Have you had (food), or would you like some more?
- He did badly in the exam because he was (nervous).
- Slow down! You're driving (fast).
- He shouldn't play in the team because he isn't (good).
- I haven't got (clothes). I must buy some more.

B Írjunk mondatokat a példa alapján **too** vagy **enough** és a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával.

0 I can't drink the coffee because there's a lot of sugar in it. (There's/sugar/coffee)
There's too much sugar in the coffee.

0 If we walk to the station, it takes ten minutes. We've got fifteen minutes. (We've got/time/walk to the station.)
We've got enough time to walk to the station.

1 I can't read all the books that I've got. (I've got/books/read.)

2 We can't go for a walk because it isn't warm. (It isn't/warm/go for a walk.)

3 You can't move on those buses because there are a lot of people on them. (There are/people/on those buses.)

4 I've got £10 and the CD costs £15. (I haven't got/money/buy the CD.)

5 We've got three players and the game needs four players. (We haven't got/players/for the game.)

C Kapcsoljuk össze a mondatokat **too** vagy **enough** + főnévi igenév (pl. **to do, to go**) használatával.

0 Clare couldn't sleep. She was too worried.
Clare was too worried to sleep.

0 I can't go on holiday. I haven't got enough money.
I haven't got enough money to go on holiday.

1 I can't do any more work. I'm too tired.

2 Judy won't pass the exam. She hasn't worked hard enough.

3 Clive can't play basketball. He's too short.

4 His girl-friend couldn't go to the party. She was too ill.

5 David couldn't pay the bill. He didn't have enough money.

6 Shall we go to the beach? Is it hot enough?

7 I can't see you tonight. I'm too busy.

8 I don't want to go home. It's too early.

9 Chris couldn't repair the car. He didn't have enough tools.

10 I didn't visit all the museums. I didn't have enough time.



Gyakoriságot kifejező határozószók – adverbs of frequency (always, never stb.)

- 1 Nézzük meg, mit hányszor, hány napon csinál Jane egy évben:

She has a cup of tea at breakfast	365
She goes to the cinema	10
She walks to work	0
She goes swimming	52
She goes on holiday	2

Így is megfogalmazhatjuk:

She **always** has a cup of tea at breakfast.

She **sometimes** goes to the cinema.

She **never** walks to work.

She goes swimming **every week**.

She goes on holiday **twice a year**.

- 2 A következő határozószók a cselekvés gyakoriságára utalnak:

0%	never	70%	often
5%	hardly ever	80%	normally
10%	rarely	90%	usually
30%	sometimes	100%	always

(Az **often** szóban **t** hangot nem ejtünk.)

Az **always**, **usually** stb. határozószók a mondatban a **be** vagy a segédige (pl. **have**, **must**) után állnak:

He **is always** late.

I've **often** been to Spain for my holidays.

You **must never** swim after a big meal.

Ha az állítmány nem **be** vagy valamilyen több tagból álló igealak, akkor ezek a határozószók a főige elé kerülnek:

I **usually walk** to work.

She **rarely reads** a newspaper.

Never és **hardly ever** mellett a **not** tagadószt nem használjuk:

I **never watch** TV at weekends.

(= Hét végén soha nem nézek tévét.)

I **hardly ever drink** coffee.

(= Szinte soha nem iszom kávét.)

Figyelem! Az angol mondatban nincs kettős tagadás. A **never** (soha) és a **hardly ever** (szinte soha) önmagában is tagadást fejez ki, tehát a következő szerkezet nem helyes: **never don't drink** vagy **hardly ever don't watch!**

- 3 Ha pontosan megmondjuk, milyen gyakran csinálunk valamit, a következő határozószókat használjuk:

every ...	once a ...	twice/two times a ...
three times a ...	four times a ...	

Ezek általában a mondat végén állnak.

Néhány példa:

I run round the park **every day**.

I play tennis **once a week**.

She drinks coffee **three times a day**.

I go skiing **once a year**.

He drives to London **twice a month**.

Gyakorlatok

- A Helyezzük el a mondatban a zárójelben megadott szavakat.

- 0 I work late at the office.

(often) **I often work late at the office.**

- 1 You must lock the front door when you leave.

(always)

- 2 Steve and Jill play tennis.

(twice a month)

- 3 I eat a sandwich for lunch.

(usually)

- 4 I go to jazz concerts at the weekend.

(sometimes)

- 5 My teacher gives me a lot of homework.

(every day)

- 6 We see our Mexican friends.

(hardly ever)

- 7 They go to Morocco for their holidays.
(often)
- 8 Bill and Marie go to the theatre.
(four times a year)
- 9 They are at home in the evening.
(rarely)

B A táblázat és a példa alapján alkossunk gyakoriságot kifejező mondatokat Liz és Ken tevékenységeivel kapcsolatban.

		10%	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	100%
0 walk to work	Liz										
	Ken										
1 get up early	Liz										
	Ken										
2 watch TV	Liz										
	Ken										
3 take a taxi	Liz										
	Ken										
4 have supper at home	Liz										
	Ken										

- 0 *Liz sometimes walks to work. Ken never walks to work.*
- 1
2
3
4

C Írjunk mondatokat John rendszeres tevékenységeiről a táblázat és a zárójelben lévő szavak segítségével.

	day	week	month	year
swimming		2		
a newspaper	1			
his mother			3	
a shower	2			
abroad				1
sister				3
tennis		4		

- 0 (He/go/swimming) *He goes swimming twice a week.*
- 1 (He/buy/a newspaper)
- 2 (He/phone/his mother)
- 3 (He/have/a shower)
- 4 (He/go/abroad)
- 5 (He/visit/his sister)
- 6 (He/play/tennis)

- 1** A **here** határozószó arra a helyre utal, ahol a beszélő van, a **there** egy attól távolabbi helyre. Kötetlenebb stílusban mondhatjuk azt is, hogy **over here**, illetve **over there**.

*I'll stay **here** with the camera; you go **over there**.*

Helyet jelentő határozószók: **abroad**, **ahead**, **away**, **back**, **left**, **right**, **upstairs**, **downstairs**, **nearby**, **inside**, **out**, **outside**, **forward(s)**, **backward(s)**, **sideways**.

*Mary is **abroad** but she's coming **back** soon. Go **upstairs** and turn **left** and you'll see the bathroom.* (= Menj fel ...)

Figyelem! Az **abroad** (= külföldön, külföldre), az **upstairs** (= fenn, fel) és a **forwards** (= előre) elé nem teszünk elöljárószót: *She went **abroad** – NEM ~~to abroad~~; She went **upstairs** – NEM ~~to upstairs~~; The people moved **forwards** to see the stars arrive. – NEM ~~to forwards~~.*

Az **outside** nem csak azt jelenti, hogy egy épületen kívül, hanem azt is, hogy valahol a közelben, pl. a kertben; az **out** jelentése, hogy nincs otthon, illetve nincs benn a munkahelyén; az **away** pedig azt, hogy sem otthon nincs, sem a munkahelyén, pl. egy időre elutazott:

A: *Where is everybody?*

B: *Your mother's **outside**, working in the garden; your brother's gone **out**, to the cinema, I think; and granny's gone **away** for the week.*

- 2** Ha irányt adunk meg, a következő határozószókat használhatjuk: **straight on**, **on/to the left/right**, **up/down/along** (this road, stb.), **as far as** (the corner, stb.) (ld. 101. fejezet):

*Go **along this road**. You'll see a church **on the left**, but continue **straight on**. Walk **as far as the church** (= a templomig) **on the right**. Turn left and the station is in front of you.*

Figyelem! Az **as far as** jelentése: '-ig', de csak helyhatározói értelemben, pl. **as far as the corner** = a sarokig, időhatároként nem. NEM: *as far as ten o'clock*. HELYESEN: **till ten o'clock**.

- 3** A cselekvés helyének meghatározására az az elöljárószót használhatjuk: **at school/work/home**, irányával kapcsolatban pedig a **to**-t: **to school/work**. Figyelem: a **home** elé nem kell **to**, pl. *She is going **home**.* (= Hazafelé megy.) Ha valaki nincs a munkahelyén, hiányzik, mert például beteg, az **off** elöljárószót használhatjuk: **off work/school**:

*My children are **at school** and my wife is **at work**. I take Mary **to school** in the car, but she comes **home** by bus.*

*A lot of people are **off work** with flu.*

- 4** Sorrendet a következő határozószókkal nevezünk meg: **first**, **second**, **third** stb. (ld. 86. fejezet), **last** vagy **lastly** vagy **finally** (= végül). *To make a phone call: **first**, insert the coins; **second**, dial the number, **third**, keep your call brief; **last**, take any money that is left.*

Több egymás után következő cselekvés leírását kezdhethetjük a **first** szóval, majd a **then**, **next**, **afterwards** és **after that** kifejezéseket használhatjuk:

*We went shopping. **First** we bought some bread; **then** we went to the fruit market, **after that** we had a coffee; and **finally** we got some pizzas.*

Gyakorlatok

- A** Egészítsük ki a következő telefonbeszélgetést a megfelelő szóval vagy kifejezéssel.

JOE: It's Joe here. Can I speak to Sara or Craig, please?

PHIL: I'm sorry. Sara's ⁰ in work/off work/at work today. She's got a bad cold. And Craig's gone ¹ ahead/to abroad/abroad. He's decided to visit the Barcelona branch.

JOE: Really? But I was ² there/here/in there last week. When is he ³ inside/back/backward?

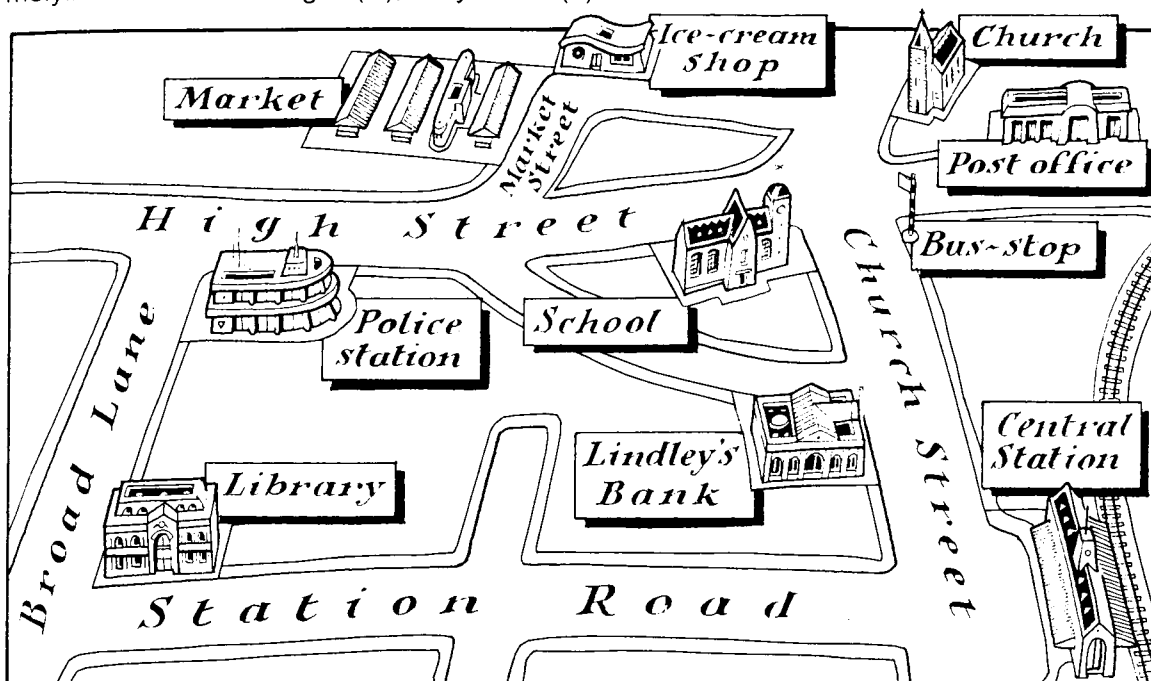
PHIL: Well, I don't know how long he's staying there, but I'm sure he'll be ⁴ there/here/away in London again fairly soon.

JOE: What about Susie? Is she ⁵ home/over here/there?

PHIL: Um, no. She's not here. She's not ⁶ at work/off work/to work either today, I'm afraid. Her kids are both ⁷ from school/off school/at school, so she's looking after them.

JOE: Tell me, are you the only member of staff who came ⁸ to work/to the work/at work this morning?

- 3 A következő szöveg egy rendőrségi jegyzőkönyv részlete. A térkép segítségével jelöljük meg, hogy melyik aláhúzott állítás igaz (✓), melyik nem (X).



We took the train to Central Station. ⁰ Outside there is a bus-stop, but we decided to ⁰ walk along Church Street. First, ¹ we called at a bank, Lindley's Bank, I think. And then ² we walked as far as the church. ³ Before the church we noticed a school on the right. ⁴ At the church we turned right and ⁵ saw the market straight ahead. ⁶ Nearby there was an ice-cream shop where we bought two ice-creams. Then ⁷ we walked back to the station along Market Street.

0...X... 0...✓... 1..... 2..... 3..... 4..... 5..... 6..... 7.....

- 3 Az előző gyakorlatban szereplő térkép és a megadott kifejezések segítségével egészítsük ki a következő útbaigazításokat.

ahead along (x2) along this road as far as (x4) left on the left (x3)
on the right (x3) right (x2) straight on

A: Can you tell me how to get to the post office please?

B: Yes, walk ⁰ along this road, Church Street, ¹ the school. The school is ² Turn ³ and the post office is ⁴

A: Excuse me. Is there a police station near here?

B: Yes, walk ⁵ – it's called Station Road. Don't take the first road on the right. Walk ⁶ the library ⁷ Turn ⁸ Walk along Broad Lane ⁹ the next road – and you'll find the police station ¹⁰

A: Which is the best way to the market please?

B: Go ¹¹ this road – it's called Church Street – and you will see a school ¹² Go ¹³ , ¹⁴ the church ¹⁵ Turn ¹⁶ and you will see the market straight ¹⁷



A határozó helye a mondatban

- 1** A határozó három helyen állhat a mondatban: az alany előtt, az állítmány előtt, vagy a mondat végén.

Sometimes I play classical music.

I sometimes play classical music

I play classical music sometimes.

A határozót nem tehetjük a tárgy elé:

I play sometimes classical music.

Nem minden határozó állhat a három hely bármelyikén.

- 2** Rendszerint azok a határozók állnak az ige előtt, amelyek

- ▶ kételyt, meggyőződést vagy bizonyosságot fejeznek ki – pl. **probably, certainly, definitely** stb.:

They will probably take the train.

- ▶ (megközelítő) mértéket jelölnek – pl. **quite, almost, nearly** stb.:

Molly nearly had an accident.

- ▶ gyakoriságot fejeznek ki (ld. 95. fejezet), vagy a cselekvés vagy esemény idejére utalnak – pl. **soon, once, still, recently, immediately, suddenly, eventually, just** (= éppen), **already** (ld. 19. fejezet):

I once had a trip in a helicopter.

Tim suddenly realized that he was in danger.

- ▶ egy szó vagy mondat jelentését hangsúlyozzák – pl. **also, even, just** (= csak, egyszerűen), **only**:

I've only passed two subjects.

A fent említett határozók a létige (**am/is/are/was/were**) után állnak a mondatban:

He is probably from Milan.

We were also very hungry.

- 3** A módhatározó – amely azt határozza meg, hogy valami hogyan vagy milyen minőségben történik – (pl. **well, badly, quickly, slowly, carefully, hard** stb.) általában a tárgy után áll:

You must clean the shoes carefully.

Mike's sister read her poem perfectly.

Ha nincs a mondatban tárgy, akkor a módhatározó a főige után következik:

They walked slowly towards the town.

Mary sings beautifully.

They slowly walked towards the town.

- 4** A mondat végén álló **too** (= is, állítás után) és **either** (= sem, tagadásnál) a mondatban említett mindkét lehetőségre utal:

Jenny sings and she plays the piano, too.

(= Jenny énekel is, zongorázik is.)

I don't eat meat and I don't eat eggs, either.

(= Nem eszem húst sem, és tojást sem.)

Az **either... or** (= vagy... vagy) szerkezet segítségével két lehetőséget fogalmazunk meg (ld. 131. fejezet):

Either they're not at home or they can't hear the phone. (= Vagy nincsenek otthon, vagy nem hallják a telefont.)

Either you love me or you leave me.

(= Vagy szeretsz, vagy elhagysz.)

- 5** A több szóból álló időhatározók, mint pl. **in the morning, last Saturday, during the holidays**, stb. vagy a mondat elején, vagy a mondat végén állnak:

Last Saturday Mary earned twenty pounds.

Mary earned twenty pounds last Saturday.

Ugyancsak a mondat végén állnak az egyéb, több szóból álló határozók: **to the market, under the trees, with a knife** stb.

The scouts put their tents under the trees.

Mrs Owen opened the letters with a knife.

A különböző határozók sorrendje a mondatban a következő:

módhatározó, helyhatározó, időhatározó

The children were playing happily in the garden.

Susan worked hard yesterday.

We went to France last summer.

Gyakorlatok

- A** Írjuk át a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott határozószó beillesztésével.

0 (probably) They will take the train. They *will probably take* the train.

1 (definitely) She comes from Leeds. She Leeds.

2 (often) Philip was in trouble. Philip trouble.

3 (suddenly) We noticed that Timmy wasn't with us. We with us.

4 (certainly) Mrs Jackson is very helpful. Mrs Jackson helpful.

- 5 (recently) They have changed the traffic signals. They the traffic signals.
- 6 (eventually) Anne will understand the problem. Anne the problem.
- 7 (just) Those boys are terrible. Those boys terrible.
- 8 (never) I take the car into town. I into town.
- 9 (almost) Penny won the race. Penny the race.
- 10 (already) The actors were on the stage. The actors on the stage.

B Alkossunk mondatokat a megadott szavakkal. Ügyeljünk a helyes szórendre.

- 0 (hard/ worked/ yesterday) Susan worked hard yesterday.
- 1 (all day/ have/ well/ worked) They
- 2 (after lunch/ in the sea/ swam) The children
- 3 (during the night/ heavily/ rained) It
- 4 (before supper/ did/ in my room/ my homework) I
- 5 (better/ last week/ played) Our team
- 6 (differently/ in Scotland/ do/ things) They
- 7 (outside the cinema/ patiently/ waited) The young people
- 8 (for half an hour/ in the bathroom/ was) My son
- 9 (breakfast/ have/ in the dining room/ never) We
- 10 (almost/ missed/ the train/ yesterday) Alan

C Egészítsük ki a következő szöveget a megfelelő kifejezéssel.

Bath is ⁰ in the south west of England an interesting city/ an interesting city in the south west of England. Thousands of tourists ¹ in the summer visit it/ visit it in the summer. Some of them ² will just visit/ will visit just the 'Roman Baths' but most tourists ³ will also take a look/ will take also a look at the 'Royal Crescent', a row of historical houses. After that, they can either ⁴ walk through slowly/ walk slowly through one of Bath's beautiful parks like the 'Royal Victoria Park' with its botanical gardens, or ⁵ drink tea elegantly/ drink elegantly tea in the eighteenth-century 'Pump Room'! The writer Jane Austen ⁶ once lived in the centre/ lived in the centre once of the city, and wrote the two novels *Persuasion* and *Northanger Abbey* in Bath. There's also a classical music festival in May and June but note that ⁷ people sometimes buy/ people buy sometimes tickets a year in advance. Outside Bath, you can visit the unusual 'American Museum' or you ⁸ just can drive/ can just drive around the countryside. Bath is ⁹ an important UK tourist attraction definitely/ definitely an important UK tourist attraction, so you may need to book your hotel in advance.

D Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

- 1 Margaret biztosan dublini.
- 2 Azonnal felhívtuk az orvost telefonon.
- 3 Vagy alszanak még, vagy elmentek a boltba.
- 4 Anna nem beszél spanyolul, és franciául sem.
- 5 István augusztus óta egy irodában dolgozik.
- 6 Az unokatestvéreim soha nincsenek otthon vasárnap.
- 7 Tracy nem tud énekelni, és még táncolni sem tud.
- 8 A távcsővel tisztán láttuk az állatokat.



Ilyen, olyan – so, such

A **so** és a **such** szavakkal a melléknév jelentését hangsúlyozzuk. Hasonlítsuk össze a kettőt:

1

So

*Helen got all the answers right. She is **so** clever.*

A **so** melléknév vagy határozószó előtt állhat. Melléknév előtt csak akkor, ha a melléknév után nem áll főnév.

*This tea is **so**
Tom's feet are **so***

MELLÉKNÉV
*sweet!
big!*

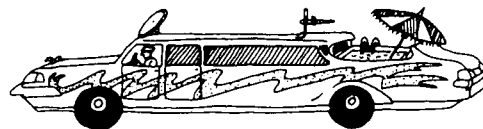
*They get up **so**
Maria sang **so***

HATÁROZÓSZÓ
*late.
beautifully!*

Such

*Helen got all the answers right. She is **such a** clever person.*

A **such a/an** szerkezet melléknév + egyes számú főnév előtt áll. A **such** (a/an nélkül) többes számú főnevek (pl. **feet**) és megszámlálhatatlan főnevek (pl. **food**) előtt áll:



*It was **such an***

*He has **such***

*That was **such***

MELLÉKNÉV	FŐNÉV
<i>amazing</i>	<i>car!</i>
<i>big</i>	<i>feet!</i>
<i>excellent</i>	<i>food.</i>

(A megszámlálhatatlan főnevekről szóló tudnivalók a 360. oldalon a B táblázatban találhatók.)

2

A **so** a **many/much** határozatlan névmás előtt is állhat:

➤ **so many** + többes számú főnév:

*There were **so many people** in the shop.*

➤ **so much** + megszámlálhatatlan főnév:

*We had **so much work** to do.*

A **such** az a **lot of** kifejezéssel is használható:

➤ **such a lot of** + többes számú főnév:

*There were **such a lot of people** in the shop.*

➤ **such a lot of** + megszámlálhatatlan főnév:

*We had **such a lot of work** to do.*

3 A **so** és a **such** segítségével valaminek a következményét is kifejezhetjük:

*It was **so** dark
He arrived **so** late,*

KÖVETKEZMÉNY
***that** we didn't see him.
he missed his train.*

*It was **such a** dark night
It was **such a** lovely day,*

KÖVETKEZMÉNY
***that** we didn't see him.
we went to the beach.*

Gyakorlatok

A Két kamaszlány kedvenc énekéséről beszélget. Egészítsük ki a szöveget a **so, such** vagy **such a/an** használatával.

EVE: I think he's got ⁰ **such a** lovely smile.

ANN: And his eyes are ⁰ **so** beautiful.

EVE: And he's got ¹ lovely hair.

ANN: And the way he moves about on the stage – that's ² sexy.

EVE: What about his hands? He's got ³ wonderful hands!

ANN: And ⁴ voice! ⁵ incredible voice!

MOTHER: And you two buy ⁶ many of his records that he must be incredibly rich as well.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **such** vagy **such a/an** használatával.

- 0 Edinburgh is *such a* wonderful city.
- 1 Motorbikes are dangerous machines.
- 2 I love skiing. It's exciting sport. But it's a dangerous sport, too.
- 3 My cousin had terrible accident. He almost died.
- 4 I like these new dresses. They are pretty colours.
- 5 We had wonderful meal. The food was excellent.
- 6 Susan Strange is interesting writer.

C Alkossunk mondatokat **so**, **such**, **such a/an** és a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igeidő használatára.

- 0 I can't believe that Tom is only thirteen. (He/have/grow/tall)
He has grown so tall!
- 0 I never believe those boys. (They/be/always/tell/stupid lies)
They are always telling such stupid lies!
- 1 I enjoy John's cooking. (He/be/creative cook)
.....
- 2 I can't hear anything. (Those people/be/make/much noise)
.....
- 3 Fred won three prizes. (He/be/lucky)
.....
- 4 Sara always looks lovely. (She/wear/pretty clothes)
.....
- 5 We had three ice-creams each! (They/be/delicious)
.....
- 6 I don't smoke. (It/be/unhealthy habit)
.....

D Alakítsuk át a mondatokat **so ... that** használatával a példa alapján.

- 0 We decided not to phone them because it was very late.
It was *so late that we decided not to phone them.*
- 1 Sally didn't finish the exam because she worked very slowly.
She worked
.....
- 2 We didn't buy the camera because it was very expensive.
The camera was
.....
- 3 Paul didn't go out because he was very tired.
Paul was
.....
- 4 Peter couldn't see the holes because they were very small.
The holes were
.....
- 5 I couldn't finish the food because there was too much of it.
There was
.....
- 6 She couldn't interview everybody because there were too many people.
There were
.....

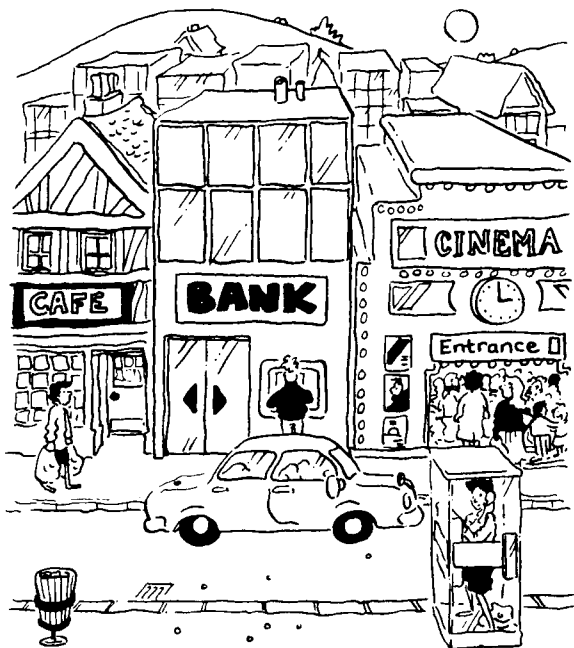


Helyet jelölő előjárósók – prepositions of place (in, on, under stb.)

- 1 A következő előjárósók segítségével helyet határozhatunk meg:

in on at under behind outside
near between in front of above
next to/beside opposite

- 2 Nézzük meg a képet és a példamondatokat:



There is a woman **in** the phone box.
There are people **outside** the cinema.
The people are **on** the pavement.
There is a clock **above** the cinema entrance.
The cinema entrance is **under** the clock.
The bank is **next to/beside** the cinema.

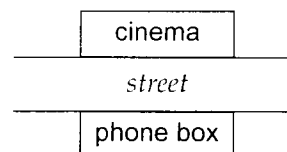
The phone box is **opposite** the cinema.
The bank is **between** the cinema and the café.
There is a hill **behind** the town.
The car is **in front of** the bank.

- 3 ► **next to/beside, near** (= mellett, a közelében)

A B C

A is **next to/beside** B.
A and B are **near** C.

- **opposite** (= szemben)



The phone box is **opposite** the cinema.

Figyelem! Az **opposite** (= szemben) után nem áll még egy előjárósó, **NEM** ~~opposite with/to~~ the cinema, **HANEM** **opposite the cinema**.

- **at**

Az **at** előjárósó után a főnév előtt általában határozott névelő (**the**) áll: **at the bus stop, at the cinema**.

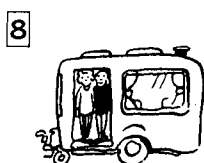
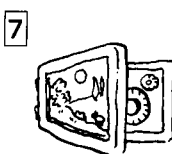
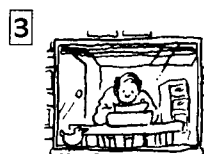
Vannak azonban olyan főnevek, amelyek előtt nem használunk névelőt: **at work** (= a munkahelyén), **at home, at school**:
Ruth is at work, Jane's at school, and I'm at home.

- **on**

*He works on the third floor.
Don't walk on the grass!*

Gyakorlatok

- A** A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat előjárósóval.



- 0 The file is on the desk.
- 1 She's her parents.
- 2 Do you like the picture the door?
- 3 He works an office.
- 4 The car is parked my house.
- 5 Where's the waste-paper basket? ~ It's the desk.
- 6 The woman John on the plane has got a big hat.
- 7 The safe is the picture.
- 8 They live a caravan.
- 9 A young man with long hair is the man with no hair.

B Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott előljárószókkal.

in front next on (x 2) at (x 2) ~~in~~ above under near

My name is Mike. I live ⁰ in Manchester in England. I have a flat
¹ the fifth floor of an apartment block. My friend Paul lives
² me in a flat ³ the sixth floor. I know that he's
⁴ home now, because I can hear his music!

Hi! I'm Sue. I live in Flat 22 and my sister lives ⁵ to me in Flat 23.
 I'm a secretary and because I live ⁶ my office, I can walk there in
 the morning. I start work ⁷ the office at nine o'clock.

I'm Pete. I'm not happy. There's a train tunnel ⁸ my house, and a
 very busy road ⁹ of it. I'm always tired because I don't sleep very
 much.

C Az alábbi képet leíró állításokban lévő előljárószók használatában tévedés lehet. Javítsuk ki a hibákat, illetve pipáljuk ki a hibátlan mondatokat.

- 0 There is a TV under on the table.
- 0 There is a dog on ✓ the floor.
- 1 The dog is behind the table.
- 2 The cat is next to the flowers.
- 3 The keys are beside the flowers.
- 4 The flowers are in the vase.
- 5 There is a big book in front of the flowers.
- 6 There is a picture under the table.
- 7 The cat is above the table.
- 8 There is a bird on a cage.





Időt jelölő elöljárószók – prepositions of time (in, on, at stb.)

1 Az **in, on, at** elöljárószót időhatározóban is gyakran használjuk.

- Az **in** elöljárószót akkor használjuk, ha napszakokról, hónapokról, évszakokról vagy évekről beszélünk:
in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening
in January, in February, in March
in the spring, in the summer, in the autumn,
in the winter
in 1542, in 1868, in 1995

- Az **on** elöljárószót akkor használjuk, amikor valamilyen napról vagy dátumról beszélünk:
on Wednesday, on Thursday evening
on Christmas Day, on her birthday
on April 9th (Kiolvasva: on April the 9th
VAGY on the 9th of April)

- Az **at** elöljárószóval napszakról, étkezésről vagy étkezési időpontokról beszélhetünk:
at 11 a.m., at three o'clock
at breakfast, at lunch-time, at tea-time,
at dinner

A következő szókapcsolatokban is **at** elöljárószót használunk:

at night, at the weekend
at Christmas, at Easter

2 Az **in, on** és **at** elöljárószó helyett a következő szavak is használhatóak:

this	next	last	every
------	------	------	-------

I'm going home { *in April.*
this April.

I'm playing tennis { *on Wednesday.*
next Wednesday.

She left { *at the weekend.*
last weekend.

He visits Jane { *on Saturday.*
every Saturday.

Figyelem! This, next last és every előtt nem áll elöljárószó. NEM: ~~in this week~~, HANEM *this week* (= ezen a héten), NEM ~~on every Saturday~~, HANEM *every Saturday* (= minden szombaton).

3 A **from ... to ...** (= ...-tól ...-ig) szerkezettel időtartamot fejezünk ki:

The museum is open from 10 a.m. to 6 p.m.
She's staying here from Sunday to Tuesday.
We have a tea-break from 3.30 to 4 p.m.

A **from** elöljárószóval alkotott szókapcsolat önállóan is állhat:

I will be in Paris from Wednesday.

Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday
in Paris		

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a következő mondatokat **in, on** vagy **at** elöljárószóval.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 0 I went to Turkey <i>in</i> July. | 5 I was born 1970. |
| 1 We must leave five o'clock. | 6 I never work the weekend. |
| 2 We'll have a break the afternoon. | 7 We can play tennis the summer. |
| 3 She's arriving Monday. | 8 School starts September 5th. |
| 4 It's very cold here night. | 9 I'll see you lunch-time. |

B Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott szavakkal.

two o'clock	summer	1990	winter	weekend	Saturday	birthday
-------------	--------	------	--------	---------	----------	----------

ANN: Are you going on holiday in the 0 *summer* ?

TOM: No, but I went skiing in Italy in the 1 , and I'm going to America at the 2 I'll be in New York on 3 ; then I'm travelling south to Texas. What about you? Are you going away this year?

ANN: Yes. In fact, I'm flying to Morocco at 4 tomorrow.

TOM: Really? It's a wonderful country. I was there in 5

ANN: Just think! I'll be on a Moroccan beach on my 6 !

C Olvassuk el a következő levelet. Ahol az aláhúzott szavakat helyesen használták, pipáljuk ki, ahol nem, húzzuk át, és írjuk le a helyes megoldást.

Dear Ina

How are you? The weather isn't very good here, but it's always very cold in⁰ ✓ the winter here. It certainly gets very cold at the 0 ~~at~~ night. It will be Christmas soon. We often go to my grandparents on¹ Christmas – we went last² year and the year before, but in this³ year we're staying at⁴ home.

Suzanne was 21 the last⁵ month. We went out at⁶ her birthday and at⁷ dinner she told us she was getting married. We were all really surprised.

I'm hoping to see you in the⁸ summer. Are you still going to come over on next⁹ June? Let me know.

Lynn

D Ebbe a táblázatba a következő napokra (**today, this week**) és hónapokra (**in December, next year**) tervezett programokat írtuk.

0 (play/volleyball) →	the afternoon	5 (visit/Egypt) →	December
1 (meet/Steve) →	Wednesday morning	6 (get/married) →	January 10th
2 (go/to the bank) →	10 a.m., Friday	7 (go/to Mexico) →	the spring
3 (go/sailing) →	the weekend	8 (learn/to ski) →	April
4 (start/a new job) →	next Monday	9 (buy/a new boat) →	next year

Alkossunk mondatokat a táblázatban megadott kifejezésekkel folyamatos jelen (**I'm doing**) és a szükséges elöljárószók (**in, on** stb.) használatával.

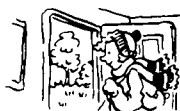
- | | |
|---|---------|
| 0 <i>I'm playing volleyball in the afternoon.</i> | 5 |
| 1 I | 6 |
| 2 I | 7 |
| 3 | 8 |
| 4 | 9 |

E Fejezzük be a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott információ segítségével.

- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| 0 (2 → 3) | The shop is closed <i>from 2 to 3</i> |
| 0 (Friday →) | She will be on holiday <i>from Friday</i> |
| 1 (June → August) | The beach is busy |
| 2 (ten o'clock →) | I'll be at the sports centre |
| 3 (March →) | The new motorway will be open |
| 4 (Monday → Friday) | We work |
| 5 (1991 → 1994) | He lived in Kenya |
| 6 (January →) | She will be in Hong Kong |

Mozgást és irányt jelölő elöljárószók – prepositions of motion and place (into, out of stb.)

1 Elöljárószókkal mozgást vagy irányt is kifejezhetünk:



She walked **out** of the house.

I ran **into** the station to catch the train.
I'm flying **to** Italy tomorrow **from** London Heathrow.



He jumped **over** the wall.

She walked **under** the bridge.

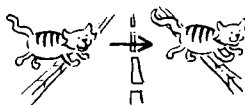


She put the flowers **on(to)** the table.

Then she took them **off** the table.



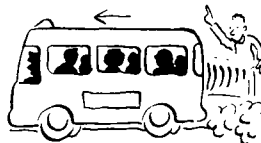
We walked **through** the gate.



The cat ran **across** the road.



We walked **along** (= végigsétált) the path.



The bus went **past** the bus stop without stopping.

He ran **up** the steps and knocked on the door.
We cycled **down** the hill.



He ran **between** two players and scored a goal.



She walked **towards** the house.

She got **on** the bus and he got **off** the bus. DE He got **in(to)** the car. He got **out of** the car.



He ran **round** the track.
(= Körbefutotta a pályát.)

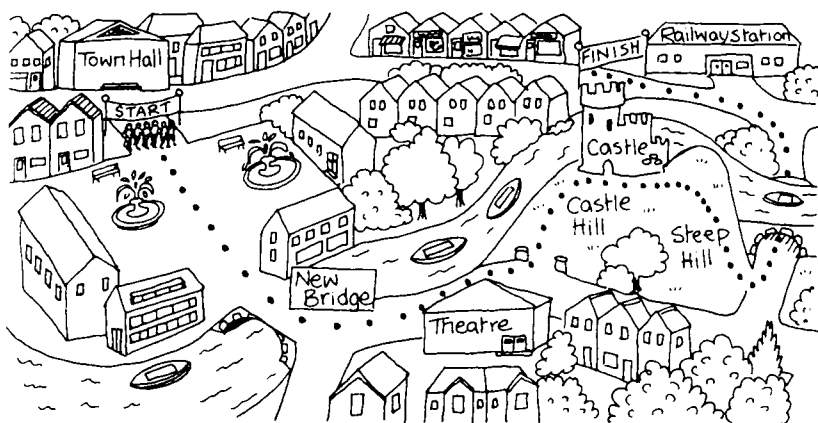
Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott elöljárószókkal. Minden szót csak egyszer használjunk.

under to through down between along out of into
across over up

- 0 She walked **along** the road that goes to the farm.
- 1 She swam the pool from one side to the other.
- 2 We ran the hill until we reached the bottom.
- 3 I climbed the stairs to the top of the building.
- 4 The dog hid the table, so that we couldn't see it.
- 5 I jumped the sea and swam to the boat.
- 6 The horse jumped the last fence and won the race.
- 7 The vase is the photograph and the clock.
- 8 The rain came the roof and into the house.
- 9 I walked the house and went to my car.
- 10 I went the shops and bought some food.

B A kép segítségével, amely egy futóverseny útvonalát ábrázolja, egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott előjárószókkal.

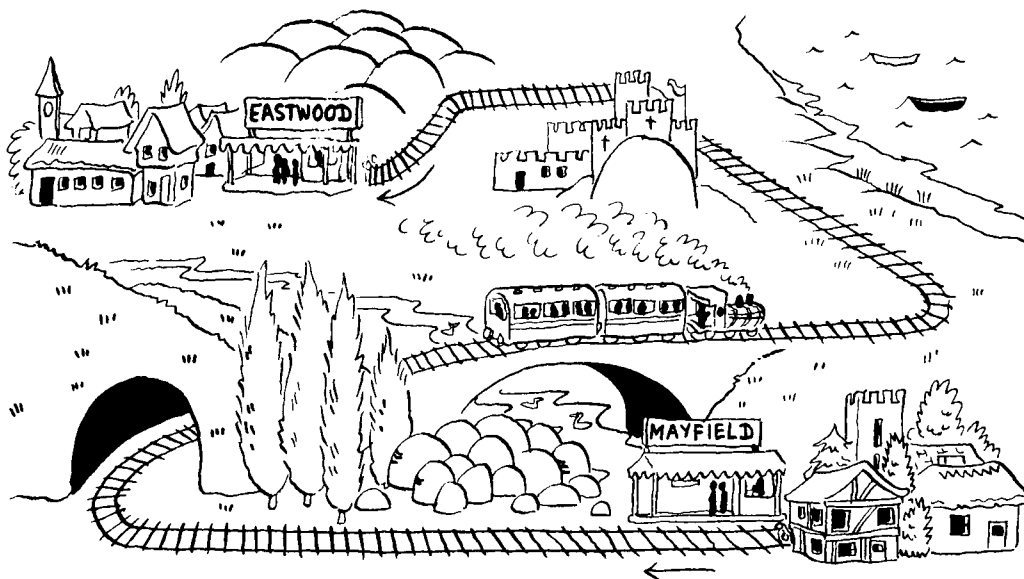


across
along
at
down
in front of
past
from
under
through
up

The race starts ⁰ at the Town Hall. The runners go ¹ the Town Hall and they run ² the main square, to the river. Then they run over New Bridge and they go ³ the road beside the river for about 200 yards. They go ⁴ the theatre and ⁵ Castle Hill. They turn right ⁶ the Castle, and they go ⁷ Steep Hill. Then they go ⁸ the tunnel ⁹ the river, and they finish at the station.

C Nézzük meg az alábbi képet és egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott előjárószókkal.

into
over
past (x2)
on
towards
from
to
through
round
off
along

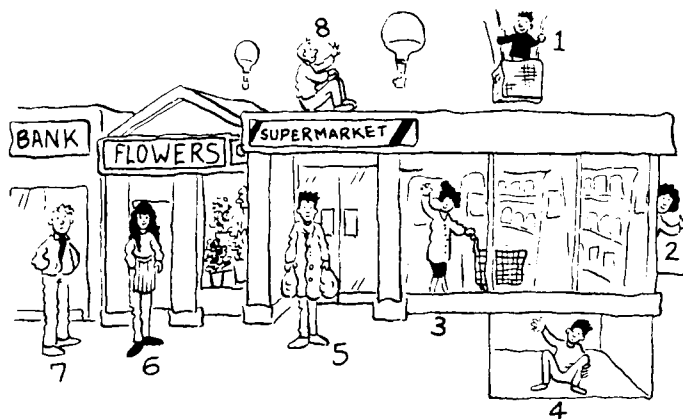


Tourists from many different countries visit Mayfield. While they are there, they can enjoy a railway trip ⁰ from Mayfield ¹ Eastwood. They get ² the train at the little station in Mayfield. First the train runs ³ rocks and tall trees and then suddenly it goes ⁴ a tunnel. It takes two minutes to go ⁵ the tunnel. The train then goes ⁶ the river and runs ⁷ the coast; at one point it goes ⁸ a castle on a hill. Then the train turns inland and travels ⁹ the distant hills, but soon it turns again and stops at the station in Eastwood. And that's where the tourists get ¹⁰ the train. They can then spend a pleasant afternoon walking ¹¹ Eastwood.

A Hol tartózkodnak a képen látható személyek? Írjuk a számokat a megfelelő kifejezés mellé.

- 0 in the supermarket
- 1 on the supermarket
- 2 under the supermarket
- 3 behind the supermarket
- 4 in front of the supermarket
- 5 next to the supermarket
- 6 near the supermarket
- 7 above the supermarket

3



B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **in**, **on** vagy **at** előjárószóval.

- 0 Peter lives *in* Turkey.
- 1 There were some beautiful pictures the walls of their living-room.
- 2 The children play the grass the park.
- 3 Does this bus stop the railway station?
- 4 The books were a box a shelf the garage.
- 5 Ecuador is South America; it lies the equator.
- 6 The gun was the pocket of a dress that was hanging the cupboard.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott előjárószókkal.

into (x3) onto (x2) to out of off

- 0 The march started in the park. From there we marched *to* the Town Hall.
- 1 The tiger escaped from its cage and jumped the lake. It took a long time to get it the lake and back its cage.
- 2 Stupidly, Simon drove his car the beach and then he couldn't move it, because the wheels sank the sand. He needed eight people to push it the beach and back the road.

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a kép alapján.



- 0 There is a road *beside* the river.
- 1 There are some boats the river.
- 2 The Town Hall is the theatre.
- 3 The post office is the theatre.
- 4 The theatre is the Town Hall.
- 5 The post office is the theatre and the police station.

E Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott elöljárószókkal. Minden szót csak egyszer használjunk.

behind outside in front of out of under over next to on ~~into~~ through

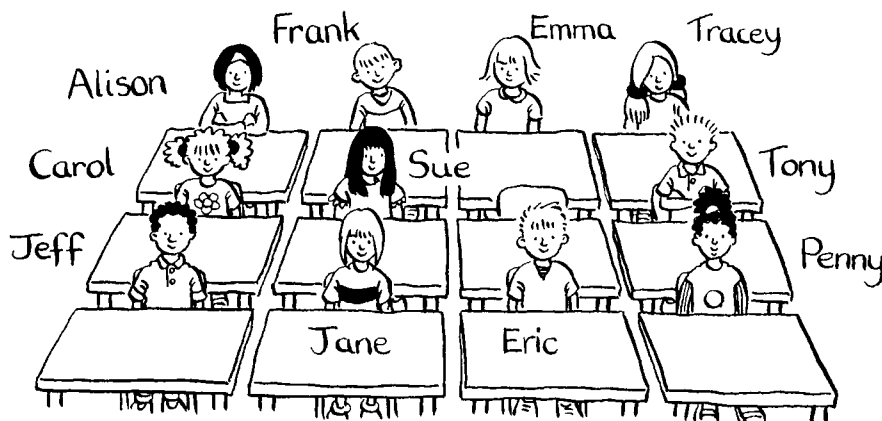
- 0 He picked up the money and put it *into* his pocket.
- 1 The man in the seat me was very tall and I couldn't see the game.
- 2 I keep a lot of useless things on the floor the bed.
- 3 She got the pool after a few minutes because the water was very cold.
- 4 I always like to sit the window on aeroplanes, so that I can look at the view.
- 5 Henry kicked the ball and it went the window and into the kitchen.
- 6 He was me, so I didn't see him.
- 7 The book you need is the bottom shelf.
- 8 The ball went my head, and I couldn't catch it.
- 9 The manager told me to wait her office because she was busy.

F Fejezzük be a mondatokat a naptár lapja és a zárójelben megadott kérdések segítségével. Minden mondatban használjunk elöljárószót.

April	1999
20	Monday
10 a.m.	Interview Kate Bell in the London office

- 0 (the year?) I interviewed Kate *in 1999*
- 1 (the month?) I interviewed Kate
- 2 (the date?) I interviewed Kate
- 3 (the day?) I interviewed Kate
- 4 (the part of the day?) I interviewed Kate
- 5 (the time?) I interviewed Kate
- 6 (the season?) I interviewed Kate

G Adjunk rövid választ a kérdésekre a kép alapján.



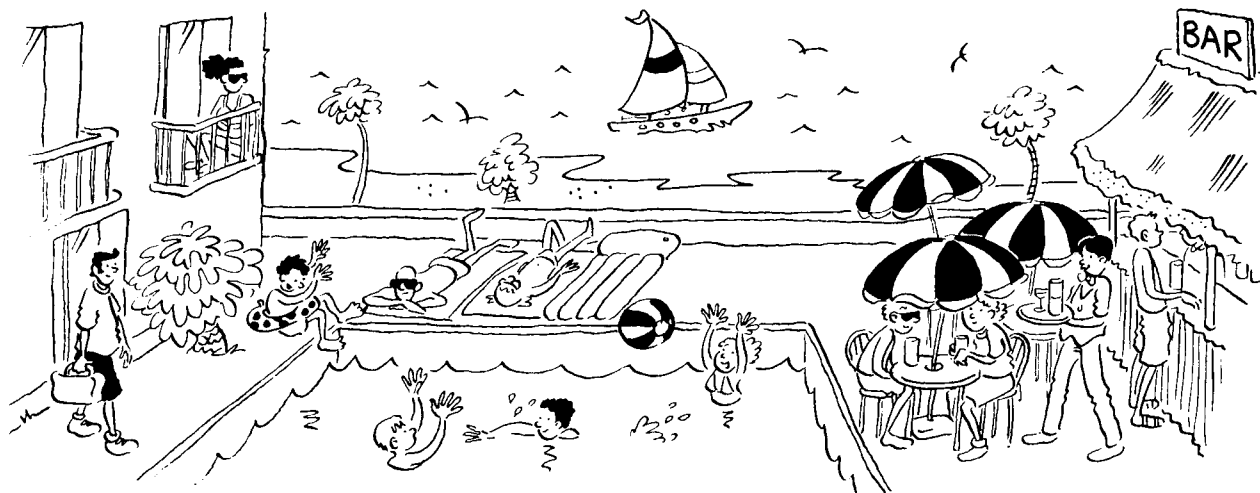
- 0 Who's sitting behind Sue? *Frank*
- 0 Who's sitting in front of Emma? *Nobody*
- 1 Who's sitting next to Alison?
- 2 Who's sitting in front of Carol?
- 3 Who's sitting behind Tracey?
- 4 Who's sitting between Jeff and Eric?
- 5 Who's sitting beside Tony?
- 6 Who's sitting behind Penny?

H Egészítsük ki a következő beszélgetést a megadott előjárószókkal. Az egyik üres helyre semmilyen előjárószó nem szükséges.

outside from (x2) in (x2) ~~under~~ opposite at

JULIE: Is this seat free?
 KEVIN: Yes. I'll move my bag and put it ⁰ *under* the seat in front.
 JULIE: Thank you. This is the train for Chester, isn't it?
 KEVIN: Yes, it is.
 JULIE: Thank goodness! I've got an interview ¹ this afternoon ² the law school there.
 KEVIN: Oh yes, I know it. It's right ³ the centre, ⁴ the museum.
 JULIE: Do you live in Chester?
 KEVIN: No, I live in Eccleston. It's a small village ⁵ Chester.
 JULIE: What do you do?
 KEVIN: I'm a trainee teacher ⁶ a large secondary school. Some of the students come ⁷ the city and the others come ⁸ the surrounding villages.
 JULIE: It's August so you must be on holiday now.
 KEVIN: Yes, that's right, but next term starts soon.

I A kép alapján állapítsuk meg, hogy melyik állítás igaz, és melyik hamis.



- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| 0 There's a boat sailing across the bay. | <i>Igaz</i> |
| 0 There is an airbed in the pool. | <i>Hamis</i> |
| 1 The pool is between the hotel and the bar. | ..... |
| 2 There are three people in the pool. | ..... |
| 3 We can see some tables behind the bar. | ..... |
| 4 A man is standing at the bar. | ..... |
| 5 A child is jumping out of the pool. | ..... |
| 6 Some people are sunbathing beside the pool. | ..... |
| 7 A man is walking into the hotel. | ..... |
| 8 A waiter is taking drinks from the table. | ..... |
| 9 A woman is sitting on her balcony. | ..... |

Javítsuk ki az előző gyakorlat hamis állításait a megfelelő elöljárószóval.

- 0 There is an airbed beside the pool......
1
2
3
4

Pipáljuk ki a hibátlanul használt elöljárószókat a következő mondatokban, a hibákat pedig javítsuk ki.

- 0 I live in London. ✓.....
0 John lives ~~on~~ Paris. in.....
1 When you want to see a film, you often wait out the cinema.
2 Mary is not in home today.
3 We can sit on the beach and watch the boats.
4 She works on Room 36 on the third floor.
5 We can play on Saturday on the afternoon.
6 The train must go along three tunnels.
7 The man opened the door and walked into the shop.
8 Move those books of that table and take them at Mary.
9 They arrived in Tuesday on lunch-time.
10 They walked through the fields towards the village.

Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

- 1 Találkozzunk a stadionnál a meccs előtt!
2 A templom mellett laksz?
3 A bank a postával szemben van.
4 Csütörtökön este nyolckor érkezem.
5 A boltok reggel 9-től este 8-ig tartanak nyitva ebben a városban.
6 Hét végén otthon szoktál lenni?
7 Judy a születésnapján leutazott a tengerhez.
8 A postás az ajtón kívül áll.
9 A koncert végén valaki leesett a színpadról.
10 Ha a konyhába akarsz menni, menj át ezen a szobán!

- 1** Az **in** elöljárószóval öltözékre, ruhára is utalhatunk:

*Jane is the woman **in** a red dress.*
*I went to the interview **in** my new suit.*
*It was a sunny day, and everyone was **in** summer clothes.*
*Are you allowed to go to work **in** jeans?*
*We saw some soldiers **in** uniform.*

- 2** Testrészekhez kapcsolódó tulajdonságokat általában **with** elöljárószóval említhetünk:

*A small boy **with** red hair came into the shop.*
 (= Egy vörös hajú kisfiú jött be az üzletbe.)
*Our teacher is a tall man **with** a beard.*
*Lisa is a pretty girl **with** blue eyes.*
*Jack was talking to a man **with** a big nose.*

Állatok leírásakor is használhatjuk a **with** elöljárószót:

*A rabbit is an animal **with** big ears and a small tail.*

- 3** A **with** segítségével bizonyos dolog egy részéről, külső tulajdonságáról vagy tartozékáról is beszélhetünk:

*They live in a white house **with** a flat roof.*
 (= Lapos tetejű fehér házban laknak.)
*I bought a shirt **with** red stripes.*
*I used the pot **with** the wooden handle.*
*He has a hi-fi **with** very big speakers.*

- 4** A **with** elöljárószót használhatjuk a cselekvés eszközének megnevezésekor:

*You clean your teeth **with** a toothbrush.*
*You open a tin **with** a tin opener.*
*I cleaned the table **with** a cloth.*
*Please eat **with** your knife and fork.*

- 5** Amikor a cselekvés módjára utalunk, a **by** + **-ing** (pl. **by doing**) szerkezetet használhatjuk:

*You start a car **by** turning the key.* (= Az autó a kulcs elfordításával indítható.)
*She learnt French **by** listening to tapes.*
*She became successful in business **by** working very hard.*
*The prisoners escaped **by** climbing over a wall.*

- 6** A **without** + **-ing** szerkezettel bizonyos cselekvés vagy esemény hiányára utalhatunk:

*They left **without** waiting for me.* (= Úgy mentek el, hogy meg sem vártak.)
*She passed the exam **without** doing a lot of work.*
 (NEM ... ~~without to do~~ ...)
*He did the work **without** making any mistakes.*

- 7** Ha járművel való utazásról beszélünk, a **by** elöljárószót használjuk:

*We went to the concert **by** car/**by** bus/**by** train/**by** taxi/**by** bike/**by** plane.*

Ha megmondjuk, melyik vagy milyen autón, az **in** elöljárószót használjuk:

*We went to the concert **in** my car/**in** Ann's car.*

Gyakorlatok

- A** Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **in** vagy **with** elöljárószóval.

- 0 A young man **with** a moustache was driving the car.
- 1 He showed me a photograph of a woman blue eyes.
- 2 We live in a house a green door.
- 3 A lot of businessmen suits were on the train.
- 4 There was a plant big, green leaves in the corner of the room.
- 5 John was walking down the street with a woman a black coat.
- 6 Look at that bull those enormous horns!
- 7 One of the children was a girl long, dark hair.
- 8 A man a hat came into the café.
- 9 Soldiers uniform were standing at the entrance to the building.
- 10 She wanted to buy a computer a screen, a keyboard and a mouse.
- 11 We booked a hotel room a bathroom.
- 12 It was cold, so I went out a coat and scarf.

- 13 We bought a television a big screen.
 14 He arrived for the meeting a grey jacket.

B Keressük meg a számozott mondatok befejezését a jobb oldali oszlopban, és pótoljuk a hiányzó előljárószt.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 0 You must speak to the woman | a a sharp knife. |
| 1 A giraffe is an animal | b sitting in the sun. |
| 2 I want a shirt | c plane. |
| 3 She cleans her teeth | d lots of sugar. |
| 4 They live in a house | e beards. |
| 5 I like my coffee | f my sister's car. |
| 6 We went from Scotland to Canada | g the green skirt. |
| 7 I usually go to town | h breaking a window. |
| 8 You should always cut meat | i four chimneys. |
| 9 They got into the house | j uniform. |
| 10 The soldiers do all their exercises | k salt and water. |
| 11 She has a car | l a very long neck. |
| 12 He dried his hair | m a round collar. |
| 13 You can't make an omelette | n breaking eggs. |
| 14 Some women prefer men | o four-wheel drive. |

- 0 *in (a)*... 1 2 3 4
 5 6 7 8 9
 10 11 12 13 14

C Írjuk át a két mondatot egyetlen mondattal **by** vagy **without** előljárószo + **-ing** használatával.

- 0 He opened the door. He turned the key.
He opened the door by turning the key.
- 1 He repaired the car. He changed some of the parts.

- 2 She answered the question but she didn't read it carefully.

- 3 He left. He didn't say thank you.

- 4 She got the money because she sold her car.

- 5 I threw the letter away. I didn't open it.

- 6 We worked all day and we didn't eat anything.

- 7 He lost weight. He went on a strict diet.

- 8 I went out, but I didn't lock the door.

- 1 Vannak olyan igék, amelyeket általában egy bizonyos elöljárószóval együtt használunk (pl. **for, to, on**):

IGE + ELŐLJÁRÓSZÓ

agree with (= egyetért): *I **don't** agree with you.*

apologize for (= elnézést kér valamiért): *They **apologized** for their late arrival.*

apply for (= folyamodik valamiért): *He **applied** for another job.*

argue about (= vitatkozik valamiről): *They **always** argue about money.*

ask for (= kér/elkér valamit): *Did you **ask** for the bill?* (NEM *Did you ask the bill?*)

believe in (= hisz valamiben): *Do you **believe** in ghosts?*

complain about (= panaszkodik valami miatt): *I **complained** about the bad service.*

depend on (= függ valamitől): *The salary **depends** on your age.* (NEM *from*)

hear about (= hall valamiről): *Did you **hear** about Bill? He won the lottery!*

listen to (= hallgat valamit/valakit): *She **listens** to the radio a lot.*

shout at (= kiabál valakire): *My dad **shouted** at me because I arrived home late.*

think about (= gondolkodik valamin): *It's a difficult decision. I need to **think** about it.*

wait for (= vár valamire): *I was **waiting** for a bus.*

- 2 Nézzük meg a példákat:

- **arrive at/in** (megérkezik valahova):
*We **arrived** at the airport.* (a repülőtérre – adott helyre, pl. egy épületbe)
*We **arrived** in Portugal.* (Portugáliába – valamilyen országba vagy városba)
(NEM *arrive to*)
- **look at** (néz) **look for** (keres):
*Look **at** that strange man over there!*
*I'm **looking** for my diary.*
- **talk to/about** (beszél valakihez/valamiről):
*She was **talking** to some friends.*
*They were **talking** about politics.*

- 3 **Which, where, what, who** vagy **how many** kérdőszóval kezdődő kérdésekben az elöljárószó rendszerint a mondat végére kerül:
*Which school did you go **to**?*
*Where are you **from**?*
*How many jobs have you **applied** for?*

- 4 Sok ige után általában nem áll elöljárószó:

phone/ring (= felhív telefonon):

*He **phoned/rang** me last night.*

(NEM *He phoned/rang to me last night.*)

discuss (= megvitát):

*We often **discuss** sport.*

(NEM *We often discuss about sport.*)

answer (= válaszol):

*She **didn't** answer me.*

(NEM *She didn't answer to me.*)

reach (= megérkezik):

*I **reached** the office at nine o'clock.*

(NEM *I reached to the office at nine o'clock.*)

- 5 Figyeljük meg a különbséget: **pay someone** (= fizet valakinek), **pay for something** (= fizet valamiért) és **pay someone for something** (= valakinek fizet valamiért):
*She **paid** Mr Peters.* (Mr Petersnek)
*She **paid** for the books.* (a könyvekért)
*She **paid** Mr Peters for the books.*
Ha számla kifizetésről beszélünk: **pay a bill**:
*I'll **pay** the bill.*

Nézzük meg az **ask** ige használatát: **ask someone** (= kérdez valakitől valamit), **ask for something** (= kér valamit) és **ask someone for something** (= kér valakitől valamit):
*Who did you **ask**? ~ I **asked** Pat.*
*I **asked** for some water.*
*I **asked** Pat for some water.*
(NEM *I asked some water from Pat.*)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat előjárószóval (**to, for** stb.), ahol szükséges.

- 0 I'm waiting *for* a telephone call.
- 0 We reached the airport after eleven o'clock.
- 1 I'll ask some information.
- 2 Let's listen some music.
- 3 Where do I pay this shirt?
- 4 Let's discuss the arrangements for tomorrow.
- 5 Who's going to pay the taxi driver?
- 6 We paid the bill and left the restaurant.
- 7 I'll phone the theatre and book two tickets.
- 8 The price of the holiday depends when you want to travel.
- 9 He walked out of the room without answering me.
- 10 A lot of people don't agree you.
- 11 I've applied a visa.

B Egészítsük ki a szöveget előjárószókkal, ahol szükséges.

When Jack arrived ⁰ *at* the concert hall, Alice was waiting
¹ him. 'Where have you been?' she asked
² him. 'We can talk ³ that later,' said
 Jack. 'I tried to phone ⁴ you to say that I was going to be late,
 but you were out. Let's go into the concert.' 'OK,' said Alice, 'but, as you were late, you
 have to pay ⁵ the tickets!' 'What?' said Jack, 'All right. I don't
 want to argue ⁶ it, but I don't agree ⁷
 you. It's not fair!'

C Alkossunk kérdéseket a zárójelben megadott szavak és az igének megfelelő előjárószó használatával.

- TIM: What are you doing here, Pam?
- PAM: I'm just waiting.
- TIM: (who/you/wait) ⁰ *Who are you waiting for?*
- PAM: Sara. She's talking to the boss.
- TIM: (what/they/talk) ¹
- PAM: She wants more money.
- TIM: (how much/she/ask) ²
- PAM: I don't know, but she's thinking about looking for a new job.
- TIM: (how many jobs/have/she/apply) ³
- PAM: Five or six, I think. By the way, is that a new walkman that you've got?
- TIM: It's new but it's not mine.
- PAM: And (what/you/listen) ⁴
- TIM: The new Ricky Martin album. It's great!

D Pótoljuk a következő képeslap szövegéből hiányzó elöljárószókat, ahol szükséges.

Dear Sam,

We arrived ⁰ *in* Greece at about eleven o'clock. We got a taxi from the airport to the port, and then we took a lovely little boat to the island. I enjoyed looking ¹ the scenery on the way. When we reached ² the island, we looked ³ our villa but we couldn't find it.

I talked ⁴ a local man, and I asked ⁵ directions. He offered to take us there. When we arrived ⁶ the villa, I offered to pay ⁷ him, but he didn't want any money. The weather's lovely.

I'll ring ⁸ you when we get back from our holiday.

Love,

Tina

E A megadott szavak segítségével írjuk le, mi történik a képeken. Használjunk folyamatos jelent, és az ige után tegyünk elöljárószót, ha szükséges.



- 0 Brian/apply/job in Canada *Brian is applying for a job in Canada.*
- 1 The officer/shout/the soldiers
- 2 The tourists/listen/the guide
- 3 Laura/ask/a glass of water
- 4 The policeman/look/two young men
- 5 Connie/phone/Peter
- 6 Mrs Thomson/pay/the electricity bill

F Egészítsük ki a kérdéseket a megadott igékkel és a hozzájuk tartozó előjárószóval (ha szükséges), majd keressük meg a kérdésekre adott választ, ahogy a példa mutatja.

argue	ask	believe	listen	phone	look	talk
-------	-----	---------	--------	-------	------	------

- 0 What kind of music do you *listen to*
- 1 What do you and your parents
- 2 Are you allowed to your friends whenever you want?
- 3 What kind of job are you going to when you leave school?
- 4 What do you and your friends usually ?
- 5 Do you get pocket money every week or do you just your parents for money when you need some?
- 6 Do you love at first sight?
- a I'm going to try and find a job in computing.
- b I get a fixed amount of pocket money each week.
- c ~~Mostly rap and techno.~~
- d No, I don't. I think it takes time to fall in love.
- e Yes, but I can't stay on the phone too long as it's very expensive.
- f We often don't agree about how late I can stay out.
- g Oh, the usual things – school and our love lives!
- 0c..... 1 2 3 4 5 6

G Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat.

- 1 Vannak emberek, akik nem hisznek az evolúció elméletében.
- 2 Melyik felszolgálóra panaszkodtál?
- 3 Sajnálom, hogy hibáztam.
- 4 Havazott, amikor Skóciába érkeztünk.
- 5 Kivel beszélgettél, amikor találkoztunk?
- 6 Megbeszéltem a problémát a tanárnővel.
- 7 Jim kérdezett valamit, de senki nem válaszolt neki.
- 8 Nyolckor értük el a határt.
- 9 Ki fogja kifizetni az orvost?
- 10 Fred mindig az evésre gondol.
- 11 Tina pénzt kért a bátyjától.
- 12 Melyik rádiót hallgatod?



Melléknév + elöljárószó – adjective + preposition (angry with, afraid of)

- 1 Bizonyos melléktnevek után előljárószó + főnév (vagy névmás) áll:

MELLÉKNÉV + ELŐLJÁRÓSZÓ + FŐNÉV			
I'm	afraid	of	dogs.
She's	good	at	maths.

- angry with** (= mérges valakire): *John is very angry with me.*
annoyed with (= bosszankodik valaki miatt): *I was annoyed with my sister.*
bored with (= un valamit): *I'm bored with grammar!*
brilliant at (= kiváló valamiben): *Jenny is brilliant at maths.*
busy with (= el van foglalta valamivel): *Tom was busy with his work.*
careless with (= gondatlan valamivel): *Bill is careless with his money.*
cruel to (= kegyetlen valakivel): *Ann's mother was cruel to her.*
famous for (= híres valamiről): *France is famous for its cheese.*
fed up with (= torkig van valamivel): *I'm fed up with your behaviour!*
fond of (= kedvel valakit): *Peter is very fond of children.*
frightened of (= fél valamitől): *Our cat is frightened of your dog.*
full of (= tele van valamivel): *The rooms were full of old furniture.*
good at (= jó valamiben): *Are you good at sport?*
grateful for (= hálás valamiért): *They were grateful for our help.*
interested in (= érdeklődik valami iránt): *She's interested in old coins.*
keen on (= lelkesedik valamiért): *He's very keen on chess.*
kind to (= kedves valakivel): *Your sister was very kind to us.*
lucky at (= szerencsés valamiben): *I'm often lucky at games.*
pleased with (= örül valaminek): *Ian was pleased with the result.*

- proud of** (= büszke valamire): *They're proud of their children.*
sure about (= bizonyos valamiben): *Are you sure about her name?*
surprised by (= meg van lepve valami miatt): *I was surprised by her anger.*
worried about (= aggódik valami miatt): *I'm worried about my new job.*

- 2 Vannak olyan melléktnevek, amelyek után előljárószó + **-ing**-es alak áll:

MELLÉKNÉV + ELŐLJÁRÓSZÓ + -ing		
He is	sick of washing	dishes.

- I'm not very good at running.*
Robert is very fond of talking.
Ann is used to working at night.

- 3 Hasonlítsuk össze az alábbi két mondatot:

- Ann is used to working at night.*
Peter used to work at night.

Az első mondat azt jelenti, hogy Ann rendszeresen éjjel dolgozik. A **be used to + -ing** jelentése: megszokta, ezt csinálja. Ezt a szerkezetet múlt és jelen időben is használjuk: *Ann will be/was used to working at night.*

A második mondat a múltat vonatkozik, más igeidőben ez a szerkezet nem létezik. A **used to + főnévi igenév** jelentése: valamikor a múltban csinált valamit, de ma már nem (ld. 28. fejezet).

- 4 Van néhány olyan melléktnevé, amely után az **-ing**-es alak előljárószó nélkül áll:

busy (= el van valamivel foglalta)
no good (= nem érdemes/felesleges)
not worth (= nem éri meg)

- MELLÉKNÉV + -ing-es ALAK**
They were busy getting things ready.
It's no good worrying about the weather.
It's not worth taking the car; we can walk.
 (= NEM ~~worth to take~~)

Gyakorlatok

- A Pótoljuk a hiányzó előljárószókat (pl. **with**, **of**).

- Mary is pleased her exam results. She got good marks in most subjects.
- Thank you very much. I am very grateful your help.
- It was the day of the concert, and everyone was busy the preparations.
- Sandra was very brave. We are very proud her.
- I like geography and I'm very interested history as well.

- 5 We've got plenty of food. The fridge is full things to eat.
 6 John is very clever. He's brilliant physics and chemistry.
 7 Jane doesn't like small animals, but she's very fond horses.
 8 Susan and Jane like sports. They are particularly keen hockey.

B Írjunk kérdés-válasz párokat a zárójelben lévő szavak használatával. Ne feledkezzünk meg a szükséges elöljárószókról (pl. **with, of, at**).

- 0 A: (Jane, why/be/you/angry/Peter?) ~ B: (Because he/be/very careless/his money)
 A: *Jane, why are you angry with Peter?*
 B: *Because he is very careless with his money.*
- 1 A: (be/their daughter/good/school work?) ~ B: (Yes, in fact she/be/brilliant/everything)
 A:
 B:
- 2 A: (Why/be/Mr Bell's dog/afraid/him?) ~ B: (Because he/be/often/cruel/it)
 A:
 B:
- 3 A: (be/Laura/fond/classical music?) ~ B: (Yes, she/be/very keen/Bach, for example)
 A:
 B:
- 4 A: (be/you/pleased/Peter's exam results?) ~ B: (Yes, we/be/very proud/him)
 A:
 B:

C Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott melléknevekkel és a szükséges elöljárószókkal.

busy famous full good interested ~~kind~~
 no good sick used worried worth

- TERRY: How did your job interview go?
 PENNY: All right, I think. The company director was quite ⁰ *kind to* me.
 TERRY: What does the company make?
 PENNY: Clothes. It's ¹ its sports clothes, in fact. I had to wait outside the office for a while because the director was ² talking to some clients. The corridor where I waited was ³ boxes with clothes in them.
 TERRY: And what did he ask you?
 PENNY: He asked me if I was ⁴ maths. I told him that maths was my best subject at school. He asked me if I was ⁵ working under pressure, and I told him that I prefer to be busy at work so that it was no problem. Then he asked me why I was ⁶ changing jobs, and I said that I was ⁷ working hard for so little pay. I'm a bit ⁸ that answer now; perhaps it wasn't the best thing to say.
 TERRY: It's ⁹ thinking about it now. What do you think your chances are?
 PENNY: I'm not sure but I think it's ¹⁰ going to an interview from time to time because it gives you practice.

Egyes főnevek bizonyos előjárószókkal állandó kifejezéseket alkotnak.

- 1 Az **at** a következő állandó kifejezésekben fordul elő: **at best/worst, at most/least, at first, at last, at the beginning/end of:**

At worst we'll have to wait a week.

(= Legrosszabb esetben egy hetet várnunk kell.)

The credits are at the end of the film.

Sebesség megadásakor is az **at** előjárósztót használjuk:

He was going at 90 kilometres an hour.

- 2 A **by** előjárószóval járművön történő utazást fejezhetünk ki: **by car/bike/bus/plane/train stb.** (DE: **on foot**):

She goes to work by bus.

They went to Scotland by car.

Ha megmondjuk, hogy milyen autóval, az előjárósztó **in** lesz:

They went to Scotland in Jane's car.

A **by** előjárószóval arra is utalhatunk, hogy valami milyen módon jut el valahova: **by mail/post/fax/airmail/phone/hand, by cheque** (DE: **in cash**), **by means of:**

We will send the parcel by post/airmail.

You can order tickets by phone.

Do you want to pay by cheque or in cash?

They get information by means of street interviews.

Egyéb kifejezések: **by accident** (= véletlenül), **by chance** (= véletlenül), **by mistake** (= tévedésből).

- 3 A **for** előjárósztó a következő kifejezésekben szerepelhet: **for ever, for example, for sale és for her/Mary's stb. sake:**

The flat next to ours is for sale. (eladó)

I'm only doing this for your sake. (csak a te kedvedért)

- 4 A következő kifejezésekben az **in** előjárósztó szerepel: **in advance, in the beginning/end, in a hurry, in brief/short/conclusion, in charge (of), in connection/contact/touch (with), in control, in danger, in fact, in fashion/style, in favour (of), in focus, in general, in love, in my/your stb. opinion, in order, in pain/tears, in private/public, in progress, in spite of, in time:**

In brief, we need to put the records in order.

In the end they fall in love.

A következőkben is **in** az előjárósztó: **in writing, in ink, in pencil:**

We need permission in writing.

Egyéb kifejezések: **in this/that/any case, in these/some cases, stb.:**

In some cases we have to operate.

- 5 Az **on** előjárósztót a következőkben használhatjuk: **on behalf of, on board, on business/holiday/a trip, on purpose, on strike, on the internet, on (the) television/TV/the radio/the phone, on the contrary, on time, on top/the left/the right (of), on the boat/bus/train/plane, on the whole:**

Mrs Thomas is away on business.

The pilots are on strike.

She always does her homework on the bus.

Figyeljük meg a következőket: **on my own, on your own stb., és by myself, by yourself stb.:**

She decorated the room on her own/by herself.

- 6 Az **out of** az **in** ellentéte: **out of control/danger/fashion/focus/style:**

Nowadays hats are out of style.

(= Ma már nem divat a kalap.)

Az **out of** szerepel még a következő kifejezésekben: **out of date, out of order, out of place, out of reach, out of touch, out of work:**

My sister has been out of work for two months.

- 7 Gyakran használt kifejezések még: **under age, under control, under cover, under pressure, up to date, up to no good, up to two/three stb., months, up to you/him stb., with regard/respect to, within reach, without delay, without doubt, without exception, without fail.**

- 8 Ugyancsak gyakran használt előjárósztó az **except** és az **instead of:**

Everybody came except Brian.

I'm using oil instead of butter.

- 9 Nem feltétlenül használunk előjárósztót, ha súlyról vagy sebességről beszélünk:

Those apples are two pounds a kilo.

Fifty miles an hour. (= NEM in an hour.)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat előjárószókkal.

- 0 They are very much *in* love.
- 1 Everyone came car Peter. He came foot.
- 2 You have to complete the form ink and send it post.
- 3 We're a hurry; we must leave delay.
- 4 my opinion, you should do your homework your own.
- 5 Someone moved the camera accident and so all the photos were focus.
- 6 regard to your different suggestions, I'm favour of the first one.
- 7 Nobody is control of the machines because everybody is strike.
- 8 Jeans used to be fashion. Everybody wore them. But now they're style.
- 9 I heard the radio that the house next door is sale.
- 10 general, I don't like group work. I prefer to work myself.

B Keressük meg a mondatok befejezését.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 0 People under | a the left. |
| 1 My sister has been out of | b date. |
| 2 In Britain they drive on | c TV tomorrow night. |
| 3 Mrs Jackson is away on | d purpose. |
| 4 We arrived just in | e age can't buy cigarettes. |
| 5 By tomorrow your notes must be up to | f work for a month. |
| 6 Mary says she made the mistake on | g time for the film. |
| 7 I don't know who's in | h charge of the sports centre. |
| 8 My mother's going to be on | i business until the end of the week. |

0e..... 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

C Egészítsük ki a következő levélrészletet a megadott szavak és a hiányzó előjárószó használatával.

first holiday once ~~hurry~~ charge ever example mistake

Dear Pete

I've been living in this city for a couple of months now. It's a very busy place and everyone seems to be ⁰ *in a hurry* all the time. Nobody is willing to wait for anything, they want to have it ¹ I see this all the time. ² I was in a restaurant the other day and the man at the next table demanded to speak to the person ³ because he'd been waiting five minutes! When the waiter then brought the wrong meal ⁴ , he went completely mad! ⁵ , I thought I'd like living here but now I've decided it's a good place to visit ⁶ but I wouldn't want to live here ⁷

Rick

A Pótoljuk a hiányzó elöljárószókat, ahol szükséges.

- 0 When I was *on* the train, I met an old friend.
- 0 He visits Jane every Saturday.
- 1 My friends went to the party car but I went foot.
- 2 They came home Christmas.
- 3 I gave her a lift my car.
- 4 We travelled to the airport coach.
- 5 Nobody planned it; it simply happened accident.
- 6 the plane, I sat next to a woman from Dublin.
- 7 We went the car because it was raining.
- 8 Did you see a man curly hair a brown suit?
- 9 I go to work every day the bus.
- 10 We got to the island boat.
- 11 Who paid the bill last Sunday?
- 12 We went for a ride in the countryside our bikes.
- 13 Jim keeps touch his friends email.

B Válasszuk ki a megfelelőt a zárójelben megadott elöljárószók közül.

- 0 (on, in, at) They live *in* a small flat.
- 1 (across, along, through) The train went a long tunnel.
- 2 (at, on, in) We're going skiing Easter.
- 3 (through, by, with) The boys got in breaking a window.
- 4 (at, on, in) Jill's very good languages.
- 5 (at, on, by) Tim usually goes to work foot.
- 6 (in, by, with) We'll have to go Sally's car.
- 7 (with, by, without) The police came in knocking on the door.
- 8 (under, along, across) There's a bridge the river about a mile from here.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott kifejezésekkel.

afraid of believe in busy with grateful for in favour instead of out of order
 in fact in pain on strike on the contrary on their own ~~out of focus~~ without delay

- 0 Part of the photo was *out of focus*
- 1 There were no buses because the drivers were
- 2 Nobody helped them; they prepared the meal all
- 3 My parents were the arrangements for the wedding.
- 4 Jack was unconscious, so at least he wasn't
- 5 I'm not ghosts because I don't them.
- 6 Penny was all the help that she got.

- 7 I didn't get any drinks because the machine was
 8 Take these to the post office immediately,
 9 John says there's no problem, but there are lots of problems.
 10 Mary's older than me; she's five years older.
 11 Some people were against the plan, but most people were
 12 Our meetings are usually on Wednesday, but next week we are going to meet on Tuesday Wednesday.

】 Egészítsük ki a következő levelet a megadott szavakkal és a szükséges elöljárószókkal.

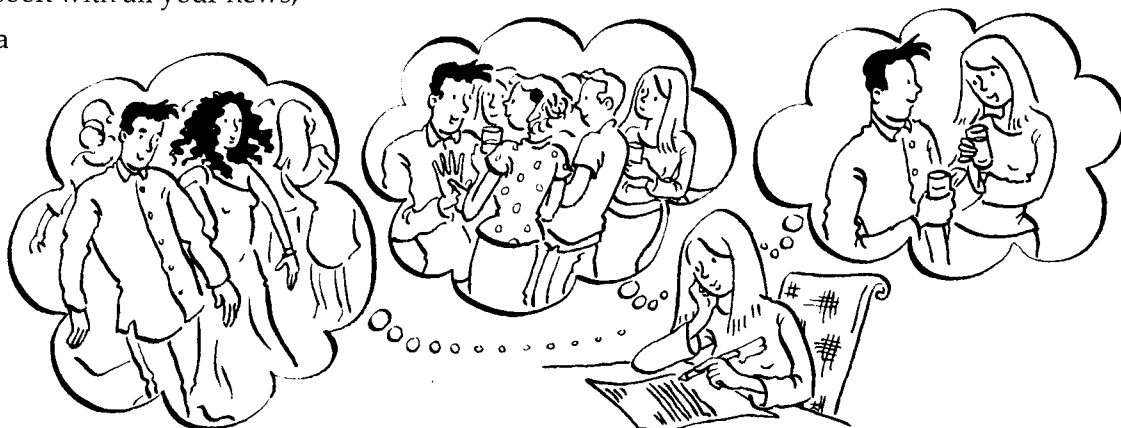
a beautiful dress Africa annoyed asked asked dark hair
 fashion first full interested love me proud
 Richard's party Sunday talked talking taxi the end
 the end think wait

Dear Jane,

Last Saturday I met a wonderful boy ⁰ *at Richard's party*. He was tall,
¹, and he arrived with a pretty girl ², one
 of those long ones that are ³ this year. ⁴,
 I thought she must be his girlfriend. Then I noticed that they didn't stay together. The room was
⁵ people, and he moved around and ⁶
 everybody ⁷, which made me cross. But ⁸
 I managed to join the group of people who were listening to his story about wild animals
⁹ When he finished talking, everybody ¹⁰
 his other adventures. But then he noticed me. 'Hello,' I said, 'I enjoyed the story, but I'm a bit
¹¹ Richard because he hasn't introduced us. My name's Ingrid.' (I was
 quite ¹² myself because I didn't ¹³ him to say
 something first.) Anyway, his name is Robin and we spent the rest of the evening together,
¹⁴ everything: music, sports, films, and so on. We seem to be
¹⁵ the same sorts of things. ¹⁶ of the party, I
¹⁷ his telephone number and I gave him mine. Then I went home
¹⁸ Robin phoned me the next day and we are going to meet again
¹⁹ I'm not sure whether I'm ²⁰ with him, but
 I certainly ²¹ him all the time.

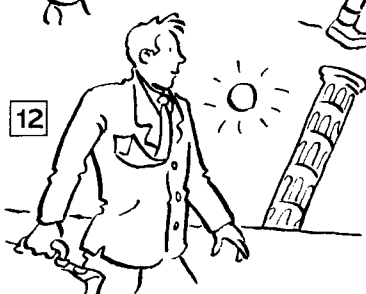
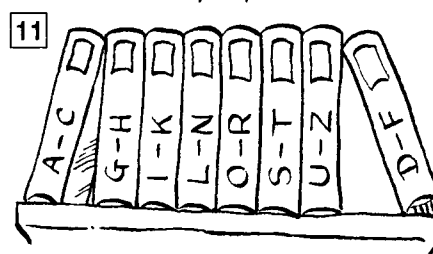
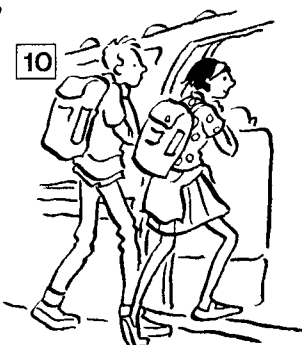
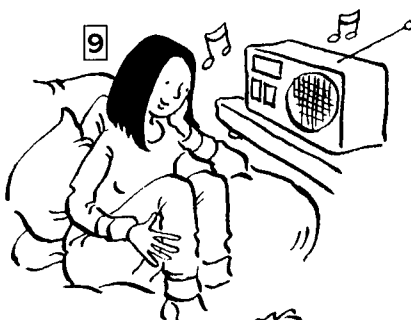
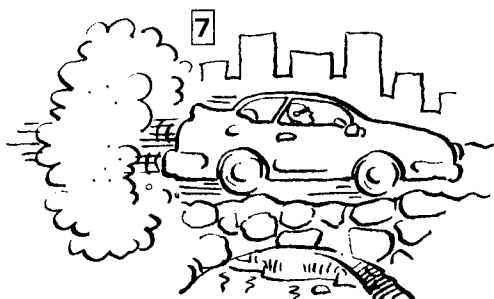
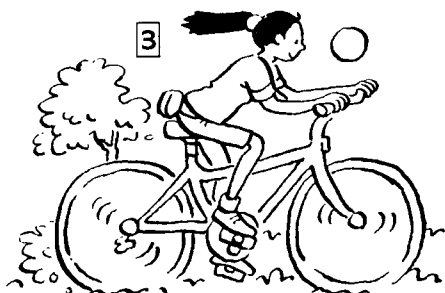
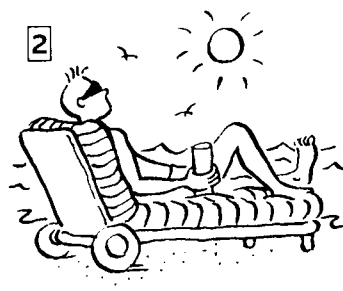
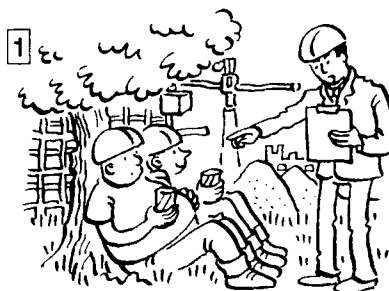
Write soon with all your news,

Pamela



E A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal és a szükséges előjárószókkal.

a cloth a country road a tropical beach arrived business cash cheque control
 danger ~~frightened~~ herself holiday Italy listening order over ninety
 kilometres an hour place reach shouted some trees the garage the bridge
 the ladder the radio time



- 0 Jimmy is *frightened of* big dogs.
- 1 The boss the lazy workmen who were sitting
- 2 Charles was , lying
- 3 Mel was , cycling
- 4 The box was for Timmy, but his sister climbed to get it for him.
- 5 The boat was and the sailors were
- 6 Sally was sitting , cleaning her bike
- 7 The car was going very fast,
- 8 Mary paid but Tom paid
- 9 Gina was one of her favourite singers
- 10 They the station to catch the train.
- 11 Most of the books were but one was
- 12 Terry is this week; he's there

I Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal és a szükséges előjárószókkal.

age a hurry advance apologize bored brilliant example ~~fond~~
 least lucky my car public purpose ~~train~~ used work

- 0 They didn't go by bus; they went *by train*
- 0 I don't like cats but my wife is quite *fond of* them.
- 1 It certainly wasn't an accident. Mary broke the glass
- 2 We had very little time so I told the taxi driver that we were
- 3 My brother hasn't got a job; he's been for six months.
- 4 Sally won fifty pounds last night. She's very cards.
- 5 At first I found London very noisy, but now I'm the noise.
- 6 Jack and Gina didn't say they were sorry. They never anything.
- 7 Some animals, dogs, can hear very well.
- 8 My sister sings very well, but she has never sung
- 9 You'll get half of the money and the rest when the work is finished.
- 10 Pam is only fifteen. She can't buy drinks because she's
- 11 If you want a lift, you can come with me
- 12 All Mike's classmates are coming, so there'll be twenty people at the party.
- 13 Let's do something different. I'm this game.
- 14 Zoli's not very good at science, but he's languages.

I Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat.

- 1 Philip mindig autókról beszél, és ez engem nem érdekel.
- 2 Jack megpályázott egy állást a helyi bevásárlóközpontban.
- 3 A kapunál piros levélszekrény volt, benne néhány levéllel.
- 4 Vacsora közben eldöntöttük, hogy ki fizeti majd a számlát.
- 5 Elegem van Péterből. Nem fogom hallgatni az ostoba történeteit.

- 1 A szenvedő szerkezet a **be** ige megfelelő alakjából és befejezett melléknévi igenévből áll:

am/is/are +	BEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV
Cotton is	grown in the USA.

ÁLLÍTÁS

This programme is shown on TV every Thursday. (= Ez a műsor csütörtökönként megy a tévében.)

TAGADÁS

These computers aren't produced any more. (= Ezeket a számítógépeket már nem gyártják.)

KÉRDÉS

When is breakfast served? (= Mikor szolgálják fel a reggelit?)

(A szabályos befejezett melléknévi igenevek az E táblázatban, a 362. oldalon találhatók, a rendhagyó alakok a 363. oldalon, az F táblázatban.)

- 2 A szenvedő szerkezet múlt időben a **be** ige múlt idejű alakjából és befejezett melléknévi igenévből áll:

was/were +	BEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV
The data was	put into the computer.

ÁLLÍTÁS

'Romeo and Juliet' was written by Shakespeare. (= A Rómeó és Júliát Shakespeare írta.)

TAGADÁS

The goods weren't delivered yesterday. (= Az árut tegnap nem szállították le.)

KÉRDÉS

When was your camera stolen? (= Mikor lopták el a fényképezőgépedet?)

- 3 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:

CSELEKVŐ:	<i>They sell</i>	TÁRGY <i>cold drinks</i>	<i>here.</i>
SENVEDŐ:	<i>Cold drinks</i>	<i>are sold</i>	<i>here.</i>
	ALANY		

Figyelem! Magyarul a két mondat fordítása ugyanaz. A cselekvő mondat tárgya (**cold drinks**) egyezik a szenvedő mondat alanyával.

These cars are made in Japan.

(= Ezeket az autókat Japánban gyártják.)

Azt nem kell hozzátennünk, hogy ki gyártja:

... ~~by Japanese workers.~~

This castle was built in the twelfth century.

(= Ez a kastély a 12. században épült.)

Nem tudjuk, ki építette.

Így kérdezzük a különböző mondatrészekre:

Where are these cars made?

When was this castle built?

- 4 Nézzük meg az alábbi példákat:

(i) *Alfred Hitchcock was a great film maker.*

He directed this film in 1956.

(ii) *This is a wonderful film. It was directed by Alfred Hitchcock.*

A második mondatban szenvedő szerkezetet használunk, mert a cselekvés tárgya (**a film**) fontosabb a beszélő számára, mint a cselekvő (**Hitchcock**). A cselekvőt ilyenkor **by** előjárószo segítségével nevezhetjük meg.

This film was directed by Hitchcock.

A cselekvő személyre így kérdezhetünk:

Who was this film directed by?

Gyakorlatok

- A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott igék és szenvedő szerkezet használatával. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igeidőre (egyszerű jelen vagy múlt).

build check found hold ~~make~~ produce ~~repair~~ sell speak write

0 Scotch whisky *is made* in Scotland.

0 The car *was repaired* last week.

- 1 The Olympic Games every four years.
- 2 English in many countries.
- 3 'Yesterday' by John Lennon and Paul McCartney.
- 4 Car speeds by radar.
- 5 The Channel Tunnel to connect Britain with Europe.
- 6 Souvenirs at all popular tourist places.
- 7 The first Volkswagen Beetles in 1937.
- 8 *The Times* newspaper in 1785.

B Tegyük fel kérdéseket az előző gyakorlat mondataira.

- 0 Where *is Scotch whisky made?*
- 0 When *was the car repaired?*
- 1 How often
- 2 Where
- 3 Who
- 4 How
- 5 Why
- 6 Where
- 7 When
- 8 When

C Alakítsuk át a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet és a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával.

- 0 We sell tickets for all shows at the Box Office. (Tickets for all shows/sell/at the Box Office)
Tickets for all shows are sold at the box office.
- 1 Edison invented the electric light bulb. (The electric light bulb/invent/by Edison)
.....
- 2 Someone painted the office last week. (The office/paint/last week)
.....
- 3 Several people saw the accident. (The accident/see/by several people)
.....
- 4 Where do they make these video recorders? (Where/these video recorders/make)
.....
- 5 Six countries signed the agreement. (The agreement/sign/by six countries)
.....

D Válasszuk ki a megfelelőt az aláhúzott szerkezetek közül.

Fiat ⁰ started/was started by a group of Italian businessmen in 1899. In 1903, Fiat ¹ produced/was produced 132 cars. Some of these cars ² exported/were exported by the company to the United States and Britain. In 1920, Fiat ³ started/was started making cars at a new factory at Lingotto, near Turin. There was a track on the roof where the cars ⁴ tested/were tested by technicians. In 1936, Fiat ⁵ launched/was launched the Fiat 500. This car ⁶ called/was called the Topolino – the Italian name for Mickey Mouse. The company grew, and in 1963 Fiat ⁷ exported/was exported more than 300,000 vehicles. Today, Fiat is based in Turin, and its cars ⁸ sold/are sold all over the world.

- 1 Az alábbiakban példákat láthatunk a szenvedő szerkezet használatára különböző igeidőkben. A szenvedő szerkezet a létige (**be**) megfelelő alakjából és befejezett melléknévi igenévből (pl. **typed, taken**) áll. (További információ a befejezett melléknévi igenévvel kapcsolatban a 362 és 363 oldalon lévő E illetve F táblázatban található.)

Egyszerű jelen:

CSELEKVŐ	Someone types the letters.
SZENVEDŐ	The letters are typed .

Egyszerű múlt:

CSELEKVŐ	Someone took my camera.
SZENVEDŐ	My camera was taken .

Present Perfect:

CSELEKVŐ	She has packed the books.
SZENVEDŐ	The books have been packed .

Past Perfect:

CSELEKVŐ	Bob had paid the bill.
SZENVEDŐ	The bill had been paid .

Folyamatos jelen:

CSELEKVŐ	They are mending the car.
SZENVEDŐ	The car is being mended .

Folyamatos múlt:

CSELEKVŐ	They were building it.
SZENVEDŐ	It was being built .

will, can, must stb.:

CSELEKVŐ	We will finish the job.
SZENVEDŐ	The job will be finished .
CSELEKVŐ	We must do the work.
SZENVEDŐ	The work must be done .

Jövő – **be going to**:

CSELEKVŐ	They are going to wash the car.
SZENVEDŐ	The car is going to be washed .

Future Perfect:

CSELEKVŐ	At this time next week, they will have announced the news.
SZENVEDŐ	At this time next week, the news will have been announced .

A szenvedő szerkezetű mondat magyar fordítása többnyire megegyezik a cselekvő mondat fordításával, ha az alany **somebody** (= valaki).

Ha az alany **he/she**, pl. *She has packed the books.* – *The books have been packed.* a lehetséges fordítás: 'Becsomagolta a könyveket.' illetve 'A könyveket becsomagolták.'

Ha az alany **they**, a magyar mondat fordítása többes szám harmadik személlyel történik. Pl. *They are mending the car* (= Az autót javítják). Segédigék esetében is a többes szám harmadik személy használata javasolt. *The job will be finished* (= A munkát be fogják fejezni).

- 2 Ha a szenvedő mondat alanya egyes számban van, akkor a létige is egyes számú, ha többes számú az alany, a létige is többes számba kerül.

	LÉTIGE	
The house	is	being built.
The houses	are	being built.

- 3 Így alkotunk kérdést szenvedő szerkezetű mondatokból:

Are the letters typed?
Have the books been packed?
Where is the car being mended?
When will the job be finished?
Must the work be done today?

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék és szenvedő szerkezet használatával.

- 0 Bread *is made* (someone makes) from flour.
- 0 I was at school when these houses *were being built* (someone was building).
- 1 Cakes (someone makes) from flour.
- 2 We lived in a caravan while our house (someone was building).
- 3 These letters (someone must type) before five o'clock.
- 4 All the windows (someone has cleaned) this week.
- 5 These cups (someone broke) when we arrived.
- 6 Some money (someone has stolen) from Tom's jacket.

B Tegyük fel kérdést a zárójelben megadott mondatokra.

- 0 (That car was made in Germany.)
Where *was that car made*?
- 1 (Mary was examined by the doctor this morning.)
When?
- 2 (The food will be prepared on Friday.)
When?
- 3 (This window has been broken three times.)
How many times?

C Alakítsuk tagadóvá az előző gyakorlat mondatait.

- 0 That car *was not made in Germany.*
- 1 Mary
- 2 The food
- 3 This window

D Alakítsuk szenvedővé a következő mondatokat. Használjuk a **by** előjárószt is.

- 0 Your manager must write the report.
The report *must be written by your manager.*
- 1 The French team has won the silver medal.
The silver medal
- 2 A woman was training the guard dogs.
The guard dogs
- 3 People of all ages can play this game.
This game
- 4 The secretary sent a reply.
A reply
- 5 Two different teachers have marked the exams.
The exams
- 6 A police car is following that green van.
That green van

E Egészítsük ki a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet és a zárójelben megadott igék használatával.

- 0 The castle *was built* (build) in 1546.
- 0 These mountains can *be seen* (see) from a great distance.
- 1 The repairs must (finish) by tomorrow.
- 2 The decision already (take).
- 3 The letters will (post) tomorrow morning.
- 4 White wine can (make) from red grapes.
- 5 The accident happened while the cars (load) onto the lorries.
- 6 The letters (type) at this very moment.
- 7 When I reached the front of the queue, the last ticket already (sell).
- 8 I'm not sure what's happened to Peter but he might (take) to hospital.
- 9 Everything must (finish) before tomorrow.
- 10 We can't go into that room today because the walls (paint).
- 11 The new models will (deliver) next week.
- 12 It is only twenty-four hours after the robbery, and the thieves already (catch).

F A következő jelentésből szeretnénk kihagyni, hogy név szerint melyik alkalmazott milyen tevékenységet végez a vállalati ünnepség előkészítésével kapcsolatban. Írjuk át a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet használatával.

Mrs Jones approved the plan for the centenary celebrations on 12 March. She appointed three people to carry out the work. We completed the first stage last week: Branstons delivered the decorations last Monday and Jill has stored the boxes in Office 23. I have ordered the food and drink and Tamoko is writing the main speech in both English and Japanese. We will decorate two of the departments next Wednesday and we will decorate the Sales Department on Thursday. In this way we will have decorated all the departments before the big day. On Friday, the caterers must prepare the dining room during the morning and the workers must stop all the machines at 12.30. The caterers will serve the lunch at one o'clock.

- 0 The plan for the centenary celebrations *was approved on 12 March.*
- 1 Three people
- 2 The first stage
- 3 The decorations
- 4 The boxes
- 5 The food and drink
- 6 The main speech
- 7 Two of the departments
- 8 The Sales Department
- 9 All the departments
- 10 On Friday the dining room
- 11 All the machines
- 12 The lunch

G Tegyük fel kérdéseket az előző gyakorlat szenvedő szerkezetű mondataira a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével.

- 0 (When/ the plan) *When was the plan approved?*
- 1 (How many people/ to carry out the work)
- 2 (When/ the first stage)
- 3 (When/ the decorations)
- 4 (Where/ the boxes)
- 5 (Who/ the main speech/ by)
- 6 (When/ the Sales Department)
- 7 (When/ the dining room)
- 8 (What time/ lunch)
- 9 (Who/ the lunch/ by)

H Olvassuk el a következő szöveget, amely a Lambridge városában folyó közúti munkálatokról szól.

The city engineers are redesigning London Road. Workers from the Parks Department are turning Central Square into a children's playground and planting trees along all the central roads. The highway engineers are installing new street lamps. They are also extending the bus station and building a new car park.

A szöveg alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet és folyamatos jelen használatával anélkül, hogy a cselekvő személyét említenénk.

- 0 Changes *are being made* to the centre of the town.
- 1 London Road
- 2 Central Square into a children's playground.
- 3 Trees along all the central roads.
- 4 New street lamps
- 5 The bus station
- 6 A new car park

I Fordítsuk le a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet használatával.

- 1 Befejezték a múzeum felújítását.
- 2 Mikor javították meg az autót?
- 3 Sok munkás meghalt, mialatt a Panama-csatornát építették.
- 4 Ezt a ruhát nem szabad forró vízzel mosni.
- 5 Ki írta ezeket a verseket?
- 6 A könyveket nem tették dobozba.
- 7 Nem vehetem fel a fekete cipőmet, mert éppen javítják.
- 8 Melyik építész tervezte ezt az épületet?
- 9 Ezt az ajtót minden este be kell zárni.
- 10 Az összes képet a nővéred fényképezte?
- 11 Hova tették ki a vizsgaeredményeket?
- 12 Mire a pincér odajött, a nagybátyám már kifizette a számlát.

- 1 Egyes igék után (az angol nyelvtan szerint) két tárgy áll a szenvedő szerkezetű mondatban:

TÁRGY + TÁRGY
élőlény + élettelen tárgy
<i>They gave Diana a camera for her birthday.</i> (= Dianának egy fényképezőgépet adtak a születésnapjára.)

Eben az esetben a két szó bármelyike lehet a szenvedő mondat alanya.

(Figyelem! Az ilyen mondatokban az élőlényt jelentő tárgy a magyarban részeshatározó.)

ÉLŐLÉNY	ÉLETTELEN TÁRGY
<i>Diana was given</i>	<i>a camera for her birthday.</i>

ÉLETTELEN TÁRGY	ÉLŐLÉNY
<i>A camera was given to</i>	<i>Diana for her birthday.</i>

Ha az élőlényt jelentő főnév konkrét személy (pl. **Diana**), akkor ez lesz a szenvedő mondat alanya. További példák:

The Prime Minister was asked a lot of questions.
Sylvester Stallone is paid a lot of money.
Were you told the price?

A következő igék esetében gyakori a két tárgy:

**pay offer sell promise tell teach
show send**

- 2 Nézzük meg a következő mondatot:

*She told **Mark to be quiet**.* (= Azt mondta Marknak, hogy legyen csendben.)

A mondat szerkezete: alany + létige + **to** + főnévi igenév (ld. 18. fejezet). Ez a típusú szenvedő szerkezet gyakran fordul elő utasítást, kérést vagy engedélyt kifejező igékkel. A létige bármilyen igeidőben lehet:

SZEMÉLY + SZENVEDŐ ALAK + to + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
<i>Mark was told to be quiet.</i>

További példák:

I was asked to give a speech.

The children were warned not to touch the fire.

Will we be allowed to leave early?

- 3 Nézzük meg a következő mondatot:

*I left the car for two minutes and the radio **got stolen**!* (= Két percre hagytam ott a kocsit, és a rádiót ellopták.)

A köznyelvben használják a **get** + befejezett melléknévi igenév szerkezetet, de nem minden esetben. Többnyire akkor, ha valami váratlan vagy kellemetlen esemény történik:

A: *What happened to the window?*

B: *It **got broken** when we were playing football.*
*James **got thrown out** of the restaurant because he was rude to the waiter.*

Gyakorlatok

- A Írjuk át a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezettel. Az új mondatot kezdjük a megadott szavakkal.

- A relative gave Peter fifty pounds for his birthday.
Peter *was given fifty pounds for his birthday.*
- The company will pay you eight pounds an hour.
You
- An agency has offered Pamela a better job.
Pamela
- In the oral exam an examiner will ask you ten questions.
In the oral exam you
- One of the teachers told the pupils their results.
The pupils
- A guide showed us the house where Shakespeare was born.
We
- Three months ago somebody promised my father a rise in salary.
Three months ago my father

B A következő táblázat egy tábor első napjának programját mutatja:

		MORNING	AFTERNOON
		Windsurfing	Tennis
Introductory talk	0	Safety at the camp	4 The rules of the game
Distribution of equipment	1	Life jackets	5 Rackets and balls
Demonstration	2	How to raise the sail	6 How to serve correctly
Lesson	3	The basics of windsurfing	7 How to do a back-handed return

A nap végén a táborlakók összegzik, hogy mi történt. Írjunk szenvedő szerkezetű mondatokat a táblázat és a zárójelben megadott igék segítségével.

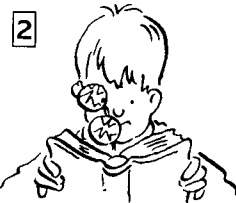
- 0 (tell about) *We were told about safety at the camp.*
- 1 (give)
- 2 (show)
- 3 (teach)
- 4 (tell)
- 5 (give)
- 6 (show)
- 7 (teach)

C Az alábbi helyzetekben valaki utasítást vagy tanácsot ad a másiknak. A példa alapján írjunk mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavak és szenvedő szerkezet használatával.

- 0 'You must take a different route,' the police officer said to us.
(We/tell) *We were told to take a different route.*
- 1 'You should go to the dentist's, Jane,' said the boss.
(Jane/advise)
- 2 'Please come back later, Mr Bridges,' said the secretary.
(Mr Bridges/ask)
- 3 'You can do the exercise in pairs,' the teacher said to the pupils.
(The pupils/allow)
- 4 'Don't go near the dogs,' the lady said to the boys.
(The boys/warn/not)
- 5 'Remember to confirm your reservation,' the travel agent said to me.
(I/remind)

D A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat a táblázatban szereplő kifejezésekkel, **got** és szenvedő szerkezet használatával.

(soak)	by a bee
(steal)	so he couldn't read
(sting)	in a rainstorm
(break)	at the airport
(tear)	in a fight



- 0 Fred's pocket *got torn in a fight.*
- 1 Mary's camera
- 2 Timmy's glasses
- 3 Bill's clothes
- 4 Sally



A műveltető szerkezet – causative (have something done)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatot:

- ▷ *Mary and Tom repaired their car.*
(= Mary és Tom megjavították a kocsijukat.)
A mondatból megtudjuk, hogy Mary és Tom maguk javították meg a kocsit.

Most figyeljük meg a következő mondatot, amelyben a **have something done** (= valamit elvégeztet) műveltető szerkezet szerepel:

- ▷ *Jenny and John had their car repaired.* (= Jenny és John megjavíttatták a kocsijukat.)
Ez a mondat azt jelenti, hogy Jenny és John szükségesnek látta a javítást, és ezt valaki mással elvégeztették.

2 További példák:

IGE	+	TÁRGY	+	BEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV
▷ <i>I have mended</i>		<i>my bike.</i>		
▷ <i>I have had</i>		<i>my bike</i>		<i>mended.</i>

- ▷ *Sheila is going to cut her hair.* (le fogja vágni)
▶ *Sheila is going to have her hair cut.*
(le fogja vágtatni)
- ▷ *She washes her car every Sunday.* (lemossa)
▶ *She has her car washed every Sunday.*
(lemosatja)
- ▷ *I must clean my suit this week.*
(ki kell tisztítanom)
- ▶ *I must have my suit cleaned this week.*
(ki kell tisztíttatnom)
- ▷ *I'll mend that broken window.*
(meg fogom javítani)
- ▶ *I'll have that broken window mended.*
(meg fogom javíttatni)

3 Kérdő és tagadó mondatban a do segédigét használjuk:

I don't have my teeth checked very regularly.
(nem ellenőriztetem)

Where did you have your hair cut? (vágattad)

4 A műveltető szerkezetben have helyett a get ige is használható:

I must get my suit cleaned.

Gyakorlatok

A Fejezzük be a mondatokat műveltető szerkezet használatával. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igeidőre.

- 0 Tom's windows were dirty, but he didn't have time to clean them himself.
Last Saturday, Tom *had his windows cleaned*.
- 1 The shop delivers Mary's food to her house for her.
Mary
- 2 The shop developed Fred's holiday photos in an hour.
Fred in an hour.
- 3 The hairdresser cuts Rachel's hair about twice a year.
Rachel about twice a year.
- 4 Last week, the optician checked Mr Stone's eyes.
Last week, Mr Stone
- 5 Mrs Frost's doctor says to her: 'When you come next week, I'll check your blood pressure.'
Next week, Mrs Frost
- 6 Last week, the garage serviced Jane's car.
Last week, Jane
- 7 A builder is going to mend the roof on our house.
We on our house.

B A reklámfeliratok és a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével alkossunk műveltető mondatokat arról, hogy ezek a feliratok milyen gondolatot ébresztenek az arra haladóban. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igeidő használatára.

- 0 WE REPAIR ALL KINDS OF BOOTS AND SHOES. (I/must/my brown boots/repair)
That reminds me. *I must have my brown boots repaired.*
- 1 LET US CLEAN YOUR CARPETS AND CURTAINS. (They/their carpets/clean/there)
My parents use that company.
- 2 CAN WE CHECK YOUR OIL AND TYRES? (I/must/the tyres on my car/check)
That reminds me.
- 3 WE MAKE KEYS OF ALL TYPES. (I/ought to/a new key/make/for the front door)
I'd almost forgotten.
- 4 OUR SPECIALITY: PAINTING HOUSES AND FLATS. (our flat/paint)
I don't think I can afford to
- 5 WE MEND WATCHES AND CLOCKS. (I/my watch/mend/there last week)
That shop isn't expensive.
- 6 WE TEST YOUR EYES FREE. (My husband/his eyes/test/there last winter)
Ah, yes!
- 7 WE REMOVE ALL KINDS OF STAINS FROM CLOTHES. (I/that coffee stain/remove)
Wonderful! I'll take my suit there and

C Írjunk kérdéseket a **have** vagy **get (something done)** szerkezet segítségével.

- 0 A Where *do you have your shoes mended?* ?
B I have my shoes mended at that shop next to the post office.
- 0 A Where *did you get your eyes tested?* ?
B I got my eyes tested at General Optics.
- 1 A When ?
B We had the house decorated this summer.
- 2 A Where ?
B I get my photos developed at Waltons.
- 3 A Where ?
B I had my suit cleaned at Allclean.
- 4 A Where ?
B I got my passport photos taken at the post office.

D Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

- 1 Festetnünk kellene a lakást.
- 2 Mary megvizsgáltatta a szemét a kórházban.
- 3 Hol vágattad le a hajad?
- 4 A király és a királyné portrét festetett magáról.
- 5 Jövő nyáron kitapétáztatjuk a lakást?
- 6 Mr Jones virágokat ültetett a kertjébe.
- 7 Elkészítettük a fényképeket az új útlevelünkhöz.



Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a szenvedő és a műveltető szerkezet (108–11. fejezet)

A A zárójelben megadott szavakból írjunk mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet és egyszerű múlt használatával.

- 0 (St. Paul's Cathedral/complete/in 1710) *St. Paul's Cathedral was completed in 1710.*
- 0 (The first radio signals/send/across the Atlantic in 1901) *The first radio signals were sent across the Atlantic in 1901.*
- 1 (The planet Pluto/discover/in 1930)
- 2 (Two atomic bombs/drop/on Japan in 1945)
- 3 (Slavery/abolish/in the United States in 1863)
- 4 (The first Apple computers/produce/in the 1970s)
- 5 (The Eiffel Tower/build/a hundred years ago)
- 6 (The first jet planes/make/in Germany)
- 7 (The Taj Mahal/build/in the 17th century)
- 8 (In 1957 millions of pounds/steal/from a train in England)
- 9 (Queen Elizabeth/crown/in 1953)
- 10 (In the old days, horses/use/for transport)
- 11 (The first books/print/in the 15th century)
- 12 (London/destroy/by fire in 1666)

B Alakítsuk át a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezet és a **by** előljárószo használatával.

- 0 Picasso painted Guernica. *Guernica was painted by Picasso.*
- 1 Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin.
- 2 Agatha Christie created the detective Hercule Poirot.
- 3 Verdi composed *La Traviata*.
- 4 Ian Fleming wrote the *James Bond* books.
- 5 Alexander Bell invented the telephone.
- 6 Frank Whittle designed the jet engine.
- 7 Steven Spielberg directed *Jurassic Park*.
- 8 Leonardo da Vinci painted the *Mona Lisa*.

C Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott igékkel, szenvedő szerkezet és folyamatos múlt használatával.

arrange erect ~~make~~ paint put down sweep test

When I got to the railway station, I was surprised to see that preparations⁰ *were being made*
for a royal visit. The floor¹ and the main entrance
² a brighter colour. The loudspeakers³ and a
bandstand⁴ A red carpet⁵ and flowers
⁶ in vases. Everybody was very busy.

D Alakítsuk át a mondatokat szenvedő szerkezetté a cselekvő személy megnevezése nélkül.

0 They asked John a lot of difficult questions.

John *was asked a lot of difficult questions.*

1 They gave Mary some flowers.

Mary

2 They offered Jane a wonderful job.

Jane

3 He will give all the children a present.

All the children

4 Somebody sent me a strange letter.

I

5 They will pay Mrs Jenkins over five hundred pounds.

Mrs Jenkins

6 Her parents have promised Ann a bicycle for her birthday.

Ann

7 They gave Enrico Fermi the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1938.

Enrico Fermi

8 They didn't tell us the truth.

We

E Írjunk egész mondatokat a következő szalagcímekből szenvedő szerkezet és Present Perfect használatával.

0 FAMOUS FOOTBALLER ARRESTED

A famous footballer has been arrested.

1 FOUR BRIDGES DESTROYED IN FLOODS

.....

2 DISCOTHEQUE CLOSED BY POLICE

.....

3 THREE PICASSO PAINTINGS SOLD FOR TWO MILLION DOLLARS

.....

4 FILM STAR HURT IN CAR CRASH

.....

5 BONES DISCOVERED IN LONDON CELLAR

.....

6 DRUG DEALER SENT TO PRISON

.....

7 TWO SINGERS ACCUSED OF STEALING

.....

8 TOWER OF PISA STRUCK BY LIGHTNING

.....

9 GIRL ATTACKED BY SAVAGE DOG

.....

F Egészítsük ki a rövid párbeszégeket a megadott igékkel, műveltető szerkezet és **be going to** vagy egyszerű múlt használatával.

- 0 A: Your hair's very long.
B: I know. I *am going to have it cut* tomorrow. (cut)
- 0 A: Those are professional photos of you, aren't they?
B: Yes, I *had them taken* when I left school. (take)
- 1 A: Your shoes have got holes in them.
B: I know. I tomorrow. (mend)
- 2 A: I like Claudia's dress.
B: She specially. It was very expensive. (make)
- 3 A: I don't think your computer's working properly.
B: No, it isn't. I next week. (check)
- 4 A: That's a portrait of your mother, isn't it?
B: Yes, she when she was 18. (paint)
- 5 A: The clock's working again, isn't it?
B: Yes, we last week. (repair)
- 6 A: Perhaps you get headaches because there's something wrong with your eyes.
B: Yes, I later this week. (test)

G Pamela állásinterjún vett részt egy londoni cégnél. Egészítsük ki beszámolóját a megadott kifejezésekkel. Használjuk a zárójelben lévő igéket múlt idejű szenvedő szerkezetben.

a lot of questions a cup of coffee ~~around the offices~~ to do a test by two managers
the money for my travel expenses to ask questions about the job and conditions
that there were over 100 applicants for the job

- 0 I (show) *was shown around the offices*, which were very modern.
- 1 I (give), although I was so nervous I couldn't drink it.
- 2 I (interview)
- 3 I (ask)
- 4 I (made) which was quite difficult.
- 5 I (allow)
- 6 I (tell)
- 7 I (offer) as I had come on the train from Oxford.

H Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék, szenvedő szerkezet és a megfelelő igeidő használatával.

- 0 The children's names (check) *are checked* every morning.
- 0 These projects (must, finish) *must be finished* today.
- 1 Last year the school trip (organize) by the students themselves.
- 2 There is a bomb scare. The students are outside at the moment because the rooms (search)
.....
- 3 Our P. E. teacher is a well known athlete. So far this year she (interview)
..... on the radio three times.

- 4 Our school has finally got new science laboratories. They (start)
when I first came to this school three years ago, and they (finish)
only last month.
- 5 We are going to have a photography competition and the winning picture (publish)
..... next month in the local newspaper.
- 6 Someone has been playing around with the computers and now they (can't/open)
..... without a special password.
- 7 The teacher asked which of us had broken the window, but it (break)
by one of the window cleaners.
- 8 We produced a school magazine last term. All the articles (write) by
the students.
- 9 During the trip tomorrow you (accompany) by a guide.
- 10 The situation might change because in six months' time a new government (have/elect)
.....

I Egészítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő szenvedő alakjával.

The Beetle was the original Volkswagen and ⁰ *was* first *produced* (produce)
in 1935. It ¹ (design) by Ferdinand Porsche and it ² (intend) to
be a popular car (Volkswagen means 'people's car'). Between the 1930s and the 1990s the
basic design ³ not (change) although many details
⁴ (improve). It was indeed a very popular car: millions ⁵
(sell) during this period. In the 1990's the Beetle ⁶ completely
(redesign) and this 'New Beetle' ⁷ first (see) at the Geneva
Motor Show in 1998. But it is more expensive than the 'people's car' and sales
⁸ now (count) in thousands, not millions. It ⁹
still (consider) to be a German car but the new design ¹⁰ in
fact (produce) in California and the car ¹¹ (build) in Mexico.

I Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

- 1 Milyen gyakran etetik az állatokat ezen a tanyán?
- 2 Ezeket a leveleket ma postázni kell.
- 3 A fegyvert eltüntették, mielőtt a rendőrség megérkezett.
- 4 A nyertesek nevét holnap fogják bejelenteni.
- 5 Majd megmutatják neked, hogyan kell bánni a mérgekgígyókkal.
- 6 Nem mondták, hogy hozz magaddal edzőcipőt?
- 7 Kérjük a turistákat, hogy ne fényképezzenek a múzeumban!
- 8 Miért bocsátották el Pétert a munkahelyéről?
- 9 Sokba került elkészíttetni a meghívókat?
- 10 A múlt héten megjavíttattam az órát.

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

I like **listening** to music.

(= Szeretek zenét hallgatni.)

(Az igék **-ing** végződésű alakjáról a 361. oldalon a D táblázatban találunk további tudnivalókat.)

Bizonyos igék (pl. **like**) után használhatjuk az ige **-ing** végződésű alakját:

like/dislike	enjoy	love	} + -ing
hate	keep	finish	
mind	give up	imagine	
admit	deny	suggest	
		avoid	

She doesn't like cooking.

He dislikes washing up.

Do you enjoy driving?

They love living in a village.

I hate going to the dentist.

He keeps saying the same things.

(= Egyfolytában ugyanazt mondja.)

Have you finished eating?

Suddenly she stopped talking.

I don't mind waiting.

(= Nem bánom, ha várni kell.)

I gave up smoking last month.

(= A múlt héten abbahagytam a dohányzást.)

Imagine being famous for a day; it'd be great!

He admitted stealing the bicycle, but denied damaging it.

He suggested going to the cinema.

(= Azt javasolta, hogy menjünk moziba.)

(NEM ~~He suggested to go.~~)

He will do anything to avoid cleaning his room.

Figyelem! Magyarra az ilyen mondatokat főnévvel (Befejezted az evést?), főnévi igenévvel (Szeretnek falun lakni.) vagy összetett mondat (Azt javasolta, hogy menjünk moziba.) is fordíthatjuk.

2 go + -ing

A **go + -ing** szerkezettel például sportolásról, időtöltésről, vásárlásról beszélhetünk (**go shopping**):

We often go skiing in the winter.

Let's go swimming this afternoon.

She goes dancing at weekends.

I'm going shopping this afternoon.

A **come + -ing** szerkezetet is használhatjuk:

Do you want to come camping with us?

Figyelem! A **camping** nem főnév, hanem a **camp** (= kempingezik') ige **-ing** végződésű alakja. Amit magyarul kempingnek nevezünk, az angolul **camp (site)**.

3 Az előző példákban az **-ing** végződésű alak a mondat tárgya. Ez az alak azonban alany is lehet, különösen akkor, ha a mondat állítmánya a **be** ige + névszó szerkezet:

Smoking is bad for you.

Swimming keeps you healthy.

Driving can be dangerous.

Planning takes time.

Az **-ing** végződésű alaknak lehet tárgya vagy határozója, valamint állhat előtte jelző is:

Smoking cigarettes is bad for you.

Swimming regularly keeps you healthy.

Driving a car fast can be dangerous.

Careful planning takes time.

4 Az **-ing** alak feliratokban is gyakran szerepel:
NO PARKING HERE (= Parkolni tilos!)
SMOKING FORBIDDEN (= Tilos a dohányzás!)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott első ige jelen vagy múlt idejű alakjával és a második ige **-ing**-es alakjával.

- She **likes playing** (like/play) tennis, but she **doesn't like watching** (not/like/watch) it.
- The buses (stop/run) at midnight.
- I (not/mind/listen) to his problems.
- He's not very good at playing chess, so he (keep/lose).
- She (enjoy/go) to other countries and she (like/meet) new people.

- 5 When the police questioned him, he (admit/rob) the bank.
 6 They usually (finish/eat) at about 8.30 in the evening.
 7 We were bored, so John (suggest/go) to the cinema.
 8 I (give up/study) Chinese. It was too difficult!

A képek alapján írjuk le, mit csinált John a múlt héten. Használjuk a **go** igét és a megfelelő ige **-ing-es** alakját.

dance
shop
sail
swim
ski
cycle

0



Monday

1



Tuesday

2



Wednesday

3



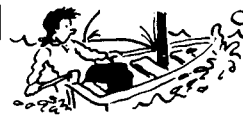
Thursday

4



Friday

5



Saturday

- 0 On Monday **he went shopping.** 3 On Thursday
 1 On Tuesday 4 On Friday
 2 On Wednesday 5 On Saturday

Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **like/not like** + a zárójelben megadott ige + **-ing** használatával.

- 0 She **doesn't like working** (work) here. She hates this job.
 1 I (live) in this town. I have lived here for many years.
 2 I (get up) so early every morning, but I have to do it.
 3 I (watch) television all the time; I think it's a waste of time.
 4 Mary (lie) on the beach when she's on holiday. She is too lazy to go on trips.
 5 Jane (go) to parties; she always enjoys them.
 6 Bruce (cook), so he often eats in restaurants.

Egészítsük ki a filmrendező és a színész beszélgetését a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

DIRECTOR: So you want to be a film star.

SALLY: Oh, I don't know. I can't really ⁰ **imagine being** (imagine/be) a film star. But I've always ¹ (love/act) in plays at school.

DIRECTOR: I see that you're seventeen so you've probably ² (finish/grow) by now. You see, I'm looking for someone who is not too tall.

SALLY: No, I'm not very tall. When I was young I ³ (dislike/be) small for my age, but now I just ⁴ (avoid/think) about it.

DIRECTOR: OK. Would you ⁵ (mind/read) the speech that you have prepared?

SALLY: Right: 'I'm leaving. Once I loved you but now I hate you and I ⁶ (hate/live) like this. You ⁷ (keep/tell) me you love me but it's not true. You're a liar. A man like you always ⁸ (deny/have) affairs with other women, but I know your tricks.'

DIRECTOR: Thank you. That was nice. I ⁹ (enjoy/listen) to you. You obviously ¹⁰ (like/put) a lot of feeling into the words.



A főnévi igenév – infinitive (I want to go, I can go)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

I want

to + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
to buy

 some stamps.

A következő igék után **to** + főnévi igenév szerkezetet (**to do**, **to start** stb.) használunk:

want	decide	}	+ to + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
agree	promise		
forget	offer		
hope	plan		
arrange	try		
refuse	learn		
manage	mean		
pretend	deserve		
seem	afford		

She **agreed to lend** him some money.
 He **forgot to book** the tickets.
 I'm **hoping to get** a new bike soon.
 I've **arranged to play** tennis tonight.
 He **refused to come** to the party.
 The ship **managed to avoid** the rocks.
 She **pretended not to hear** me.
 He **seems to have** a lot of money.
 They've **decided to start** a new company.
 You **promised to help** me.
 She **offered to do** the washing-up.
 We're **planning to go** away this weekend.
 He's **trying to learn** French.
 John **learned to use** the computer in a week.
 Sorry, I **didn't mean to hurt** you.
 That film **deserved to win** a prize!
 I **can't afford to go** on holiday this year.

2 Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

He can

FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
speak

 Spanish.

A **can** módbeli segédige. A módbeli segédigék után az ige **to** nélküli főnévi igenévi alakját (**do**, **speak**, **see** stb.) használjuk:

will ('ll)	should	may	} + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
might	can	could	

I'll **see** you soon. I **won't forget**.
 Where **should** I **sit**?
 We **may go** by train.
 It **might rain**.
 Can I **park** here?
 I **couldn't hear** her.
 We **must pay** now. (NEM: ~~We must to pay~~ ...)

3 would rather + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV

Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:

I don't want to go to the cinema. I **would rather go** to a pizzeria. (= Inkább a pizzériába mennék.)

A **would rather** szerkezettel azt fejezzük ki, hogy valamit szívesebben csinálnánk; ez vonatkozhat a jelenre vagy a jövőre. Az összevont alak: **'d rather**.

I'd **rather go** to a pizzeria. (NEM ~~I'd rather to go~~)

A tagadó alak: **'d rather not**:

I'd **rather not go** out tonight; I'm tired.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben lévő főnévi igenév megfelelő alakjával (**to**-val vagy **to** nélkül).

- You can't **smoke** (smoke) here. Smoking is not allowed in this building.
- I'm sorry I forgot (phone) you yesterday. I was very busy.
- Don't worry. The exam may not (be) very difficult.
- He didn't mean (break) the window. It was an accident.
- It's not a very good film. You won't (enjoy) it.
- She didn't want (wait) any longer, so she left.
- When are you planning (eat) tonight?
- She couldn't (reply) because she didn't know what to say.
- Where would you rather (go) – to the cinema or to a club?
- It was difficult but I managed (save) enough money for a new car.
- They might not (receive) the letter until next week.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat úgy, hogy jelentésük hasonló legyen a zárójelben lévő mondat jelentéséhez.

- 0 (I don't think it's a good idea to argue with him.)
I don't think you should *argue with him*.
- 1 (I won't be able to come to the meeting on Friday.)
I can't
- 2 (I'm meeting some friends tonight.)
I've arranged
- 3 (Your eyes are closed but I know you are not asleep.)
I know you are pretending
- 4 (It's important that you lock the door when you go out.)
Don't forget
- 5 (Perhaps we'll go out for a meal this evening.)
We may
- 6 (You said that you would lend me the money.)
You promised
- 7 (I'd like to do a course in Art History.)
I want
- 8 (He said, 'I'll pay the bill'.)
He offered
- 9 (She studied very hard and won the first prize.)
She deserved
- 10 (I asked him to help me but he said no.)
He refused
- 11 (Perhaps he'll phone you tomorrow.)
He might
- 12 (It's possible that Tom won't be angry with you.)
Tom might not
- 13 (I don't want to watch TV. Let's listen to music.)
I'd rather than watch TV.

C Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a zárójelben lévő főnévi igenév megfelelő alakjával (**to**-val vagy **to** nélkül).

- CHARLIE: I want ⁰ *to do* (do) something interesting this weekend. Can we
¹ (do) something together?
- CAROL: Well, I've arranged ² (go) on a trip to the coast with some friends. Do
you want ³ (come) with us?
- CHARLIE: Yes, that sounds good. When are you planning ⁴ (leave)?
- CAROL: Well, we've decided ⁵ (start) early in the morning tomorrow, and I've
promised ⁶ (take) the others in my car. We're hoping
⁷ (reach) the coast by lunchtime. So, you must
⁸ (meet) me here at 6.30 a.m.
- CHARLIE: OK, good. I won't ⁹ (be) late.



Ige + to vagy -ing – verb + to or -ing (I love to dance, I love dancing)

- 1** Vannak olyan igék, amelyek után egyaránt használható a **to** + főnévi igenév szerkezet és az **-ing** alak is.

*My sister **promised to help** me.*

*Have they **finished painting** the garage?*

- 2** Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:

*It **started to rain**.*

*It **started raining**.*

A két mondat pontosan ugyanazt jelenti. Az alábbi igék esetében sincs lényeges különbség a kétféle szerkezet jelentése között:

begin continue hate intend like love prefer start
--

Ha a **like** ige jelentése 'szeret', inkább az **-ing** szerkezettel használjuk:

*I **like meeting** new people.*

A **like + to + főnévi igenév** szerkezettel azt fejezzük ki, hogy valamit helyesnek tartunk:

*I **like to go to the gym at least twice a week**.*

A **would hate/like/love/prefer** után a **to + főnévi igenév** szerkezetet használjuk.

Hasonlítsuk össze az alábbi mondatokat:

*She **likes painting**.*

*She **would like to be an artist**.*

*Peter **hates washing up**.*

*Peter **would hate to work in a restaurant**.*

Ha valamit ajánlunk vagy kérünk, a **would like + főnévi igenév** szerkezetet használjuk, amely azt jelenti, hogy valaki valamit szeretne vagy akar:

***Would you like to come for dinner?** (ajánlat)*

***I'd like to leave work early, please.** (kérés)*

- 3** A következő igék esetében az **-ing** alak és a **to + főnévi igenév** szerkezet között jelentésbeli különbség van, tehát nem mindegy, hogy melyiket használjuk:

try remember forget stop

- *I **tried to lift** that heavy stone.*

(= Megkíséreltem felemelni azt a nehéz követ)

*If you can't read where you are, **try sitting** nearer the window.* (= Ha nem tudod elolvasni ott, ahol vagy, próbáld azt, hogy közelebb mész az ablakhoz.)

- *I **stopped working**.* (= Abbahagytam a munkát.)

*I **stopped to have** a cigarette.* (= Megálltam, hogy rágyújtsak.)

- ***Remember to go to the bank.*** (= Ne felejts el elmenni a bankba!)

*She **remembers going to the bank**.* (= Emlékszik, hogy volt a bankban.)

- ***Don't forget to phone** Mrs Grey.*

(= Ne felejtsd el Mrs Grey-t felhívni!)

*I'll **never forget visiting** Disneyland.*

*I'll **never forget seeing** that rainbow.*

(= Soha nem fogom elfelejteni, hogy láttam azt a szivárványt/ellátogattam Disneylandbe.)

A **remember** és **forget** ige után az **-ing** alak a múltat utal, olyasmire, ami már megtörtént (*seeing that rainbow, visiting Disneyland*).

Gyakorlatok

- A** Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

- I can't imagine *living* (live) in the country.
- We've decided (go) to the beach.
- I stopped (play) tennis when I got married.
- I meant (buy) some butter, but I forgot.
- Did you promise (take) the children to the zoo?
- Have the men started (repair) the roof yet?
- I'd love (visit) China.
- You shouldn't avoid (talk) about your problems.
- Peter refused (help) us.
- Would you prefer (pay) now or later?
- I couldn't afford (live) in London.

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék **-ing** vagy **to + főnévi igenévi** alakjával.

- 0 'You say that I've met Janet, but I can't remember her.'
I can't remember **meeting** (meet) Janet.
- 1 Please remember that you must buy some stamps.
Please remember (buy) some stamps.
- 2 We wanted to open the door, but we couldn't.
We tried (open) the door.
- 3 We saw an accident, so we got out of the car and checked that everyone was all right.
We stopped (check) that everyone was all right.
- 4 John met Madonna once. He'll never forget it.
John will never forget (meet) Madonna.
- 5 Sheila intended to phone Peter, but she forgot.
Sheila forgot (phone) Peter.
- 6 Jenny had a headache. She took an aspirin, but it didn't help.
Jenny tried (take) an aspirin for her headache.
- 7 Be quiet! Don't talk any more!
Stop (talk)!
- 8 I have a special soap that will probably get your hands clean.
Try (wash) your hands with this special soap.
- 9 It will not be easy to do all the work today.
We'll try (finish) the work before tonight.
- 10 I stayed in Jane's flat while she was on holiday. I remembered that I had to feed her cats.
I remembered (feed) Jane's cats while she was on holiday.
- 11 Remember that you must invite Mary to the party next week.
Don't forget (invite) Mary to the party next week.
- 12 You work too hard. It's bad for you and you must stop it.
You must stop (work) so hard.
- 13 I was walking along the street. I saw some lovely shops so I looked in the windows.
I stopped (look) in the shop windows.

C Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

- 1 Mary szeret külföldön dolgozni.
- 2 Próbáltuk kinyitni az ablakot, de a levegő nem lett frissebb.
- 3 Meleg estén a szüleim jobban szeretnek a kertben üldögdélni.
- 4 Bill egy éve hagyta abba a dohányzást.
- 5 Sohasem fogom elfelejteni, hogy átutaztam a Szaharán.
- 6 Semmi nincs vacsorára. Elfelejtettem bevásárolni.
- 7 A bátyám nagyon szeretne Finnországba utazni.
- 8 Próbálj meg eljönni a hangversenyre! Csodálatos lesz!
- 9 Nincs meg a kulcsom, de nem emlékszem, hogy ott hagytam volna valahol.
- 10 Jim szeret focizni, de nem szereti mások játékát nézni.
- 11 Ne felejts el levelet írni a nagybátyádnak!
- 12 Nagyon szeretek a belvárosban sétálni és kirakatot nézni.



Ismétlő gyakorlatok: ige + to vagy -ing (113–15. fejezet)

A Az első mondatban lévő információ segítségével fejezzük be a második mondatot. Ügyeljünk az ige megfelelő alakjának használatára (**to do, doing**).

- 0 The boss asked Helen to work late, but she refused.
Helen refused *to work late*.
- 0 'You'll have to wait half an hour. Do you mind?'
'Do you mind *waiting half an hour?*'
- 1 Peter took the money. He admits it.
Peter admits
- 2 'Could you lend me five pounds?' asked Jim. 'OK, here you are,' Irene replied.
Irene agreed
- 3 Philip met the King when he was young. He remembers it.
Philip remembers
- 4 Brenda wears glasses, but she hates it.
Brenda hates
- 5 'Have you made a decision yet, Sharon?' ~ 'Yes, I have. I'm going to accept the job.'
Sharon has decided
- 6 'Did you buy some butter, Eric?' ~ 'Oh, no. I forgot.'
Eric forgot
- 7 'Does Harry still smoke?' ~ 'No, he gave it up a year ago.'
Harry gave up
- 8 Terry doesn't argue with his colleagues. He avoids it.
Terry avoids
- 9 Shirley isn't going to move house. She can't afford it.
Shirley can't afford
- 10 'You moved all the furniture. How did you manage it?'
'How did you manage?'

B Egészítsük ki Janet és Sharon beszélgetését a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

- JANET: What do your children ⁰ *want to do* (want/do) when they leave school?
- SHARON: Well, Ann ⁰ *enjoys writing* (enjoy/write), so she's ⁰ *hoping to work*
(hope/work) for a newspaper. But I don't know about Paul. He ¹
(give up/study) months ago. He seems to ² (enjoy/do) nothing
now. He doesn't ³ (deserve/pass) his exams. And he
⁴ (refuse/listen) to us, when we tell him to
⁵ (keep/study).
- JANET: With our children, in the past, if we ⁶ (offer/help) them, they
always ⁷ (promise/study) hard. Nowadays if they
⁸ (want/talk) to us, that's fine, but I've learnt to
⁹ (stop/ask) them questions. I suppose they
¹⁰ (dislike/listen) to my suggestions. They

11 (seem/think) that they don't 12
 (need/study) hard, but one day they'll 13 (have/find) a job.

C Alkossunk mondatokat az adott szavakkal. Ügyeljünk a helyes alakok használatára.

- 0 Jill/ deserves/ get/ fat because she never/ stops/ eat.
Jill deserves to get fat because she never stops eating.
- 1 Pam has suggested/ go/ to the theatre but I was hoping/ not/ spend/ any money this weekend.

- 2 Saul/ keeps/ complain/ about his cough but has he tried/ drink/ hot lemon?

- 3 I'd rather/ not/ do/ the shopping today; I don't / mind/ do/ it tomorrow on my own.

- 4 Betty has arranged/ see/ the doctor; she wants/ ask/ about her headaches.

- 5 I plan/ go/ alone because I don't like/ visit/ museums with other people.

- 6 She admits/ tell/ him what had happened, but she didn't mean/ hurt him.

- 7 Phil didn't deserve/ pass/ the exam so he shouldn't/ complain.

- 8 When you've finished/ do/ your homework, we'll/ go/ shop

- 9 Can you/ imagine/ live/ in the middle of the desert ?

- 10 We'll be able to go/ ski/ if we manage/ save/ some money.

D Liz és Martin nyári terveiről beszélget. Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott igék megfelelő alakjával (**do**, **to do**, **doing**).

argue ask do go (x2) lend promise sit spend talk think walk
--

- LIZ: What would you like 0 *to do* next summer?
- MARTIN: You keep 1 the same question. You seem to forget that you
 promised 2 to the Alps with me. You know how I enjoy
 3 in the mountains. And Uncle Ben has offered
 4 us his tent.
- LIZ: I haven't forgotten 5 to you about it but I don't remember
 6 anything. Personally, I'd rather
 7 to a beach somewhere.
- MARTIN: You know that I hate 8 on beaches. I don't want
 9 two weeks looking at the sea.
- LIZ: OK. Let's stop 10 about it now, and let's try
 11 of something that we can do together.

E Alakítsuk át a mondatokat a példa alapján. Használjuk a megadott igék és a mondatban szereplő ige megfelelő alakját.

admit ~~deny~~ forget go keep may offer promise should stop try

0 'I didn't take the book,' said Jim.

Jim *denied taking the book.*

1 'I'll come home early,' said Ann.

Ann home early.

2 Tom makes the same mistake again and again.

Tom the same mistake.

3 'Oh, I didn't write down the number,' said Sam.

Sam down the number.

4 Fred drove fast until he had an accident. Now he drives slowly.

After his accident, Fred fast.

5 Perhaps Jane will phone this evening.

Jane this evening.

6 'I'll make the salad if you like,' said Tony.

Tony the salad.

7 'Yes, I broke the plate,' said Sara.

Sara the plate.

8 They make skiing trips several times every winter.

They often in the winter.

9 It's a good idea for young children to sit near the front.

Young children near the front.

10 'I drank a lot of water,' said Penny, 'but I was still thirsty.'

Penny a lot of water but she was still thirsty.

F Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával (**to do, doing**).

0 A: Why didn't you tell me you couldn't come?

B: I tried *to tell* (tell) you, but when I phoned, you had already left.

1 A: Why are you so angry?

B: I forgot (pay) the gas bill and they've cut off the gas!

2 A: Have you seen Peter lately?

B: Yes, I saw him in town the other day and stopped (have) a chat with him.

3 A: Yesterday I was talking to someone from California who says she knows you.

B: I can't remember (meet) anyone from California.

4 A: Aren't you and Simon friends any more?

B: I don't know. He's stopped (talk) to me but I don't know why.

5 A: How do you feel about winning the 100 metres?

B: It's fantastic! I don't think I'll ever forget (cross) the finishing line!

6 A: Is there a Chinese restaurant in town?

B: I don't know. Have you tried (look) in the Yellow Pages?

7 A: Make sure you post that letter. It's really important.

B: Don't worry. If I keep it in my hand, I'll remember (post) it.

8 A: It's only eleven o'clock. Why are we going to the club so early?

B: It's very popular. We tried (get in) after midnight last weekend, but it was already full.

G Moira választ ír levelezőpartnerének. Egészítsük ki a levelet vagy a főnévi igenévvel **to**-val vagy **to** nélkül, vagy pedig az **-ing** alakkal.

'It was nice to hear from you. You asked me to tell you about myself, so I will! To begin with, I don't like ⁰..... **cooking** (cook). And I hate ¹..... (wash) up. I can't ²..... (drive), but I'm planning ³..... (learn) next year! I gave up ⁴..... (smoke) ten years ago. What else can I ⁵..... (tell) you? I go ⁶..... (dance) on Saturdays. I've recently decided ⁷..... (get) fit. ⁸..... (Jog) regularly makes me feel better and I don't mind ⁹..... (jog) in the rain, but I don't like ¹⁰..... (cycle), and I love ¹¹..... (eat) chocolate! If you want me to continue, you'll have to write back! (But I'd rather ¹²..... (hear) about you.)'

H Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

- 1 A szüleim továbbra is azt mondják, hogy egyetemre kell mennem.
- 2 A nővéred abbahagyta a dohányzást?
- 3 Tavaly nyáron majdnem minden nap mentünk úszni.
- 4 Hány éves korodban tanultál meg síelni?
- 5 A portás úgy tett, mintha aludna.
- 6 Nem szabad elfelejtenünk kenyeret venni.
- 7 Abba tudná hagyni egy percre a munkát, kérem?
- 8 Ha nem tudsz elaludni, próbálj meg bárányokat számolni!
- 9 Emlékszem, hogy valahova letettem az útlevelem, de képtelen vagyok megtalálni.
- 10 Kerültük, hogy az anyja betegségéről beszéljünk.

I Fordítsuk le a következő szöveget.

Anna tizenhatodik születésnapján elhatározta, hogy befejezi az iskolát. Nagyon szeretett tanulni; nem ez volt a probléma. Nem tetszett neki, hogy mindig a szüleitől kér pénzt. Amikor beszélt velük elhatározásáról, először hallani sem akartak róla. Azt mondták, hogy nincs sok pénzük, de viszonylag jól élnek, és remélik, hogy Anna egyetemen tanul majd tovább.

Ezután Anna mamája így folytatta: – Nem kell aggódnod, hogy fizetünk azért, hogy tanulhass! Mindenünk megvan, amire szükségünk van.

Anna ezt válaszolta: – Nem akarok hálátlan lenni, de el szeretném kerülni, hogy bármiben is tőletek függjek. Szeretnék pénzt keresni. Ne nyugtalankodjatok! Találok olyan munkát, amely lehetővé teszi, hogy tanuljak esténként. Folytatni akarom a tanulást.

Végül Anna szülei megértették, hogy miért akarja otthagyni az iskolát, elfogadták döntését, és megígérték, hogy segítenek neki megfelelő állást találni.



Mire való? (What's it for? ~ It's for making bread.)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi párbeszédet:

A: *What's this machine for?*

(= Mire való ez a gép?)

B: *It's for making bread.* (NEM *for make*)

(= Kenyér készítésére.)

A **What is it for?** kérdés a dolgok, eszközök rendeltetésére kérdez (tehát arra, hogy valami mire használható). A válaszban a **for + -ing** szerkezetet használhatjuk:

This is a machine for killing mosquitoes.
(szúnyogirtásra)

This stuff is used for cleaning the floor.
(a padló tisztítására)

2 Nézzük meg az alábbi párbeszédet:

A: *What does he need my camera for?*

(= Mire kell neki az én fényképezőgépem?)

B: *He needs it for his work.*

(= A munkájához van rá szüksége.)

A **what ... for?** (= miért/mi célból?) szerkezettel a cselekvő szándéka, illetve a cselekvés rendeltetése iránt is érdeklődhetünk. A válaszban a **for + főnév** szerkezetet használhatjuk:

A: *What did he go to the shops for?*

(= Miért ment az üzletbe?)

B: *He went to the shops for some fruit.*

(gyümölcsért)

I buy the newspaper for the sports news.

(= Az újságot a sport hírek kedvéért szoktam megvenni.)

3 Nézzük meg a következő párbeszédet:

A: *What does he need my camera for?*

B: *He needs it to take some photos.*

(= Hogy csináljon néhány fényképet.)

Amikor a cselekvés céljáról beszélünk, a **to + főnév** igenév szerkezetet is használhatjuk:

A: *What has Tim gone to the shops for?*

B: *He's gone to buy some fruit.*

(hogy gyümölcsöt vegyen)

(NEM *for buy*; NEM *for to buy*)

A: *Why did John phone the police?*

B: *He phoned them to tell them about the burglar.*

(NEM *for tell*; NEM *for to tell*)

Gyakorlatok

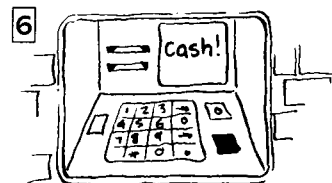
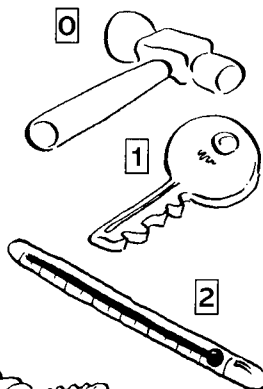
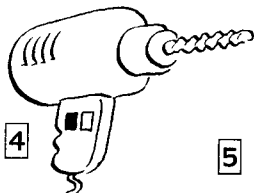
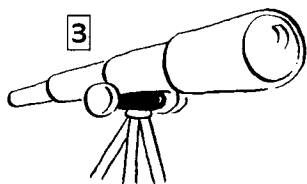
A Írjuk le, mire használhatók a képeken látható tárgyak az A és B oszlopban lévő kifejezések segítségével.

A

drill – tool
cashpoint – machine
hammer – tool
telescope – instrument
answerphone – machine
thermometer – instrument
key – thing

B

look at the stars
get money
lock doors
record telephone messages
measure temperature
knock in nails
make holes



0 *A hammer is a tool for knocking in nails.*

1

2

3

- 4
 5
 6

B Alkossunk kérdés-válasz párokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal. A kérdésben a **What ... for?**, a válaszban pedig a **for + főnév** szerkezetet használjuk.

- 0 A: (/did/Tom/go/to the park/?) *What did Tom go to the park for?*
 B: (He/go/to the park/some fresh air) *He went to the park for some fresh air.*
 1 A: (/does/Mary/want/the money/?)
 B: (She/want/the money/a train ticket)
 2 A: (/does/Philip/want/the flour/?)
 B: (He/want/the flour/a cake)
 3 A: (/did/Bill/go/to the butcher's/?)
 B: (He/go/to the butcher's/some sausages)
 4 A: (/does/Helen/want/the polish/?)
 B: (She/want/it/her shoes)
 5 A: (/did/Alison/go/to the library/?)
 B: (She/go/to the library/a book on India)
 6 A: (/did/Jane/buy/a newspaper?)
 B: (She/buy/a newspaper/the football results)

C Írjuk át az előző gyakorlatban szereplő válaszokat a megadott igék **to + főnévi igenévi** alakjának használatával.

borrow buy (x2) clean get make see

- 0 Tom *went to the park to get some fresh air.*
 1 Mary
 2 Philip
 3 Bill
 4 Helen
 5 Alison
 6 Jane

D Javítsuk ki a következő mondatokban talált hibákat.

- 0 This machine is for make bread. *This machine is for making bread.*
 1 For what did he come?
 2 A bus is for carry passengers.
 3 She went to the post office for to buy some stamps.
 4 The mayor came for give the prizes.
 5 The woman jumped into the river to saving the child.
 6 I'm training hard for to get fit.
 7 This is a computer program for make three-dimensional drawings.
 8 Can I use your pen for signing this letter?

1 Figyeljük meg az alábbi példákat:

My father likes people to come early. (= Az apám szereti, ha az emberek korán jönnek.)
Sue wanted John to dance.
 (= Sue azt akarta, hogy John táncoljon.)
I've invited Tom to have dinner with us.
 (= Meghívtam Tomot, hogy vacsorázzon velünk.)
We'll need somebody to collect the tickets.
 (= Szükségünk van valakire, aki elhozza a jegyeket.)

A szerkezet a következő:

	IGE	+ TÁRGY	+ to + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
Sue	wanted	John	to dance.
Sue	wanted	him	to dance.

Főnév helyett a személyes névmás tárgyi alakja (**me, her, him, us** stb.) is állhat:

Sue wanted him to dance.
My mother taught us to swim.

Ebben a szerkezetben a következő igéket használhatjuk: **allow, bribe, cause, dare, enable, encourage, expect, force, get, help, invite, leave, like, love, need, prefer, teach, want**; valamint azokat az igéket, amelyekkel kérést, tanácsot és parancsot vezetünk be (ld. 127. fejezet).

2 Figyeljük meg, hogy az igeidőt a mondatban az első ige mutatja, a második mindig **to** + főnévi igenév alakban marad:

Yesterday I invited Tom to have supper.

(**invited** – egyszerű múlt)

I often invite Tom to have supper.

(**invite** – egyszerű jelen)

I will invite Tom to have supper.

(**will invite** – jövő)

3 Hasonlítsuk össze az alábbi mondatokat:

We saw a woman come out of the bank.

(= Láttuk, hogy kijön egy nő a bankból.)

We saw the crowds coming out of the stadium.

(= Láttuk, amint a tömeg kifelé jön a stadionból.)

Az első mondatban a cselekvés tényét állapítjuk meg (tehát azt, hogy a cselekvés megtörtént), míg a másodikban a cselekvés folyamatára utalunk (tehát arra, hogy a cselekvés már elkezdődött, és az adott pillanatban még tartott).

Mindkét szerkezetet nagyon gyakran használjuk érzékelést kifejező igékkel (**feel, hear, notice, watch** stb.):

I heard a car crash.

(lejátszódott esemény – a kocsí ütközött)

I heard the children singing.

(folyamat – abban a pillanatban, amikor hallottam, a cselekvés éppen tartott)

Sally felt the table move. (megtörtént esemény – a beszélő a mozgás tényére utal)

The manager watched the men packing the radios. (folyamat – a beszélő számára lényegtelen, hogy a cselekvés befejeződött-e vagy sem)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavakkal. Ügyeljünk a helyes igeidő és a névmások megfelelő alakjának használatára.

- 0 They don't know/what/cause/that train/crash/last week
 They don't know *what caused that train to crash last week.*
- 0 The next time I see Cilla/I/invite/she/have/a meal with us.
 The next time I see Cilla *I'll invite her to have a meal with us.*
- 1 I gave John the general idea and/I/leave/he/think/about the details.
 I gave John the general idea and
- 2 I know they work quite well but now/I/want/they/work/harder.
 I know they work quite well but now
- 3 We had a match last Saturday but/the terrible weather/force/we/cancel/it.
 We had a match last Saturday but
- 4 If you want to play bridge/I/get/my mother/teach/you.
 If you want to play bridge

5 I didn't want to take the money but/they/persuade/I/take/it.

I didn't want to take the money but

B Egészítsük ki a szöveget a zárójelben lévő ige megfelelő alakjával és a megadott szavakkal, tárgy + to + főnévi igenév szerkezet használatával.

a teacher/come her/learn him/play people/say someone/teach
~~us/be~~ us/go (x2) us/play (x2) us/practise us/watch

My name is Helen. I have a brother called Peter and a sister called Anne. Our parents

0 **want us to be** (want) musicians. When we were young, my mother
1 (teach) the piano. When we were a bit older and we
2 (need) us different instruments, my parents
3 (want) to a music school. I thought that was all right, but Peter said
that he 4 (prefer) to our house. Anne didn't like the idea of a teacher at
all so my parents 5 (help) the flute. Now she likes to play and in fact
she plays well. My parents 6 (expect) every day except Sunday – on
Sunday they 7 (allow) television and so on. They also
8 (encourage) to concerts and they always
9 (get) when we have visitors. Anne likes to play for people now and
she 10 (love) that she plays well. Peter is not so keen and my parents
have to 11 (bribe) for visitors because he's a bit shy.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a helyzetnek megfelelő igealak (do vagy doing) használatával.

0 Tim dropped his pen. I saw what happened.

I saw **Tim drop his pen.**

0 The children often play in the garden. When Jill came home, she heard them.

When Jill came home, she heard **the children playing in the garden.**

1 In autumn the leaves fall from the trees. I noticed this on my walk.

It was early November. On my walk I noticed
2 It wasn't a big earthquake. The ground shook once.

We felt
3 Tom signed his name in the presence of a policeman.

A policeman watched
4 It rained heavily all night and the water ran down the road all day.

When I woke that morning, I heard
5 We waited a long time but suddenly the door opened.

Suddenly we saw
6 A policeman guards the Prime Minister's house.

When I walked past, I noticed
7 The lightning struck a tree. John saw it.

John saw
8 The workers repaired the road last Saturday. I watched them for a few minutes.

For a few minutes I watched



A feltételes mondat 1. típusa – first conditional (If I am...)

1 Figyeljük meg:

If	+	EGYSZERŰ JELEN	+	EGYSZERŰ JELEN
<i>If I eat too much,</i>				<i>I feel bad.</i>
(= Ha sokat eszem, rosszul érzem magam.)				

Ez a szerkezet (**if** + egyszerű jelen + egyszerű jelen) olyan cselekvés vagy esemény kifejezésére használható, amely a mellékmondatban (**if...**) szereplő feltételnek mindig megfelel. Az ilyen feltételes mondatot általános feltételnek (zero conditional) nevezhetjük:

If I don't get enough sleep, I feel tired.
(= Ha nem alszom eleget, fáradt vagyok.)

2 A tagmondatok sorrendje felcserélhető:

EGYSZERŰ JELEN	+	if	+	EGYSZERŰ JELEN
<i>I feel bad</i>				<i>if I eat too much.</i>
Figyeljük meg, hogy az if előtt nincs vessző.				

3 Most nézzük meg a következő szerkezetet:

If	+	EGYSZERŰ JELEN	+	will/won't
<i>If I am late,</i>				<i>she'll be angry.</i>
(= Ha elkésem, mérges lesz.)				

Ezt a szerkezetet (**if** + egyszerű jelen + egyszerű jövő) akkor használjuk, amikor a cselekvés vagy esemény a mellékmondatban (**if...**) szereplő feltétel teljesülésekor meg fog történni.

A feltételes mellékmondatban egyszerű jelent, a főmondatban **will/won't** segédigét és **to** nélküli főnévi igenevet használunk. A feltételes mondatnak ezt a típusát valószínű feltételnek (first conditional) nevezhetjük:

LEHETŐSÉG A JÖVŐBEN	+	EREDMÉNY
<i>If we don't hurry,</i>		<i>we won't finish.</i>

4 A tagmondatok sorrendje itt is felcserélhető:
She'll be angry if I'm late.

5 Figyelem! Az **if** kezdetű feltételes mellékmondatban nem használhatjuk a **will/won't** alakokat:

NEM: *If I will be late, she'll be angry.*

6 Ha az eredmény csak valószínű, a **might** (NEM **will**) segédigét használjuk:

If it's hot, we might go to the beach.
(= Ha meleg lesz, talán lemegyünk a tengerpartra.)

7 Az **if ... not** szerkezet helyett használhatjuk az **unless** (= hacsak nem) kötőszót is:

We will go to the mountains on Saturday unless it rains. (= if it doesn't rain.)
Unless you pay for the broken window, I'll phone the police. (= If you don't pay ...)

Gyakorlatok

A Az adott tények alapján alkossunk feltételes mondatokat **if** + egyszerű jelen + egyszerű jelen szerkezettel, mindkét tagmondatban a **you** általános alanyt használva.

0 Doctors treat people who are ill.

If you're a doctor, you treat people who are ill.

1 Vegetarians don't eat meat.

If you're a vegetarian,

2 People who live in a hot country don't like cold weather.

If you live

3 Teachers have to work very hard.

If you're a teacher,

4 People who do a lot of exercise stay fit and healthy.

If you

5 Mechanics understand engines.

If you're a

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával (a feltételes mondat 1. típusának szabályai szerint).

If you ⁰ **study** (study) hard, you ⁰ **will pass** (pass) your exams. If you ¹ (pass) your exams, you ² (be) able to go to technical college. You ³ (get) professional training if you ⁴ (go) to technical college. If you ⁵ (get) professional training, companies ⁶ (want) to employ you. You ⁷ (get) a good job if companies ⁸ (want) you. If you ⁹ (get) a good job, you ¹⁰ (be) able to afford a nice house.

C A fenti szöveg mondatait alakítsuk át tagadóvá.

If you ⁰ **don't study** hard, you ⁰ **won't pass** your exams. If you ¹ your exams, you ² able to go to technical college. You ³ professional training if you ⁴ to technical college. If you ⁵ professional training, companies ⁶ to employ you. You ⁷ a good job if companies ⁸ you. If you ⁹ a good job, you ¹⁰ able to afford a nice house.

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **will** vagy **might** segítségével.

- 0 If it rains this weekend, we **will** definitely stay at home.
- 0 If the weather is fine this weekend, we **might** go for a drive in the country but we haven't decided yet.
- 1 Jack is quite sure what he wants to do; if he gets a good degree, he become a university professor.
- 2 'Where is Jane going for her holidays this year?' ~ 'She isn't sure, but if she can afford it, she go to South Africa.'
- 3 The manager has made up his mind; if John is fit, he play in the match on Sunday.
- 4 I haven't decided yet; I buy a car if I get a salary increase, or I move to a new flat.

E Írjuk át az aláhúzott mellékmondatot a zárójelben megadott kötőszó használatával.

- 0 They won't let her in to the concert unless she has a ticket.
(if) They won't let her in **if she doesn't have a ticket**.
- 0 We won't go and see that film if you don't want to.
(unless) We won't go and see that film **unless you want to**.
- 1 The doctor will not see you if you do not telephone first.
(unless) The doctor will not see you
- 2 You can't go and stay at the Johnsons' unless they invite you.
(if) You can't go and stay at the Johnsons'
- 3 You can't be a sailor unless you can swim.
(if) You can't be a sailor
- 4 Our team will be in trouble if we don't win on Saturday.
(unless) Our team will be in trouble

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatokat:

TÉNY: *He doesn't work hard. So he doesn't do well.* (= Nem dolgozik keményen. Így nem is megy neki jól.)

És most nézzük meg ezt a másik mondatot:

If + EGYSZERŰ MŰLT	+ would/'d
<i>If he worked harder,</i>	<i>he would do better.</i>
(= Ha keményebben dolgozna, jobban boldogulna.)	

Az **if + egyszerű múlt + would + to** nélküli főnévi igenév szerkezetet akkor használjuk, amikor a cselekvés vagy esemény a mellékmondatban (**if...**) szereplő feltétel teljesülése esetén megtörténhet. A feltételes mellékmondatban egyszerű múltat, a főmondatban **would/wouldn't** segédigét és **to** nélküli főnévi igenevet használunk. A feltételes mondatnak ezt a típusát lehetséges feltételnek (second conditional) nevezhetjük:



I'd buy a new car if I had enough money. (= Új autót vennék, ha lenne elég pénzem. – Nem veszek új autót, mert nincs elég pénzem, de ha lenne, vehetnék.)

Figyeljük meg, hogy az **if** előtt nincs vessző.

2 A cselekvés vagy esemény valószínűsége a feltétel szempontjából lényegtelen:

If + EGYSZERŰ MŰLT + would/'d

If I won a lot of money, I'd buy a big house.
(= Ha sok pénzt nyernék, vennék egy nagy házat.)

3 Tagadáskor a mellékmondatban az egyszerű múlt tagadó alakját (**didn't live**), a főmondatban a **wouldn't** alakot használjuk:

If I didn't live in Hungary, I'd like to live in America. (= Ha nem Magyarországon élnék, akkor Amerikában szeretnék élni.)
If more people used public transport, there wouldn't be so much pollution.

4 **Would** helyett **could** vagy **might** segédige is használható:

If I didn't have other plans, I could come with you.
(= ... el tudnék menni veled.)
If he told someone his problems, he might feel better. (= ... talán jobban érezné magát.)

5 Az **if** kötőszó után a létige alakja minden személyben lehet **were** (akkor is, ha az alany **I/he/she/it**):

If I were (VAGY was) a racing driver, I'd drive for Ferrari. (= Ha autóversenyző lennék, akkor a Ferrari csapatban versenyeznék.)
If he were (VAGY was) taller, he could join the police. (= Ha magasabb lenne, beállhatna rendőrnek.)

A közvetlen stílusú beszélt nyelv elfogadja a **was** használatát is.

6 Az **If I were you** (= Ha a helyedben lennék) kifejezésben a köznyelv is általában a **were** alakot használja:

If I were you, I'd go to the police. (NEM was)

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat.

- If Sally lived in Brighton, *she would be* (she/be) near her parents.
- Fred would read more if *he didn't work* (he/not/work) so hard.
- If Elizabeth didn't have to work in the evenings, (she/go) to concerts.
- Susan wouldn't go to work by car if (she/live) near a train station.
- Alan wouldn't be overweight if (he/not/eat) so much.
- If Peter didn't live in a flat, (he/have) a dog.

- 5 Pam would definitely learn French if (she/get) a job in France.
 6 If Mark wanted to be healthy, (he/not/smoke).

B A következő állítások a közeli jövőre vonatkoznak.

It is unlikely that astronauts will visit Mars.
~~It is unlikely that governments will stop buying guns.~~
 It is unlikely that doctors will find a cure for cancer.
 It is unlikely that they will discover oil in Ireland.
 It is unlikely that young people will stop listening to pop music.

A fenti állítások és a példa alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat.

- 0 If **governments stopped buying guns**, the world would be safer.
 1 If, the Irish would be very happy.
 2 If, this terrible disease would disappear.
 3 If, the popular music industry would disappear.
 4 If, we would learn a lot about the planet.

C Egészítsük ki a feltételes mondatokat az állítások alapján. Használjuk a zárójelben megadott szavakat is.

- 0 People don't do enough exercise, so there is a lot of heart disease.
 (more, less) If people **did more exercise**, there **would be less heart disease**.
 1 There are too many cars. The city is very polluted.
 (fewer) If there, then the city wouldn't be so polluted.
 2 People drive too fast, so there are a lot of accidents.
 (more slowly) If people, then there would be fewer accidents.
 3 People watch too much TV, so they don't have much time for reading.
 (more) If people watched less TV, they
 4 People have bad teeth because they eat too many sweets.
 (fewer) People would have better teeth if they
 5 Not enough people travel by bus, so the roads are crowded.
 (more) If, then the roads would be less crowded.

D Kapcsoljuk össze az első és második oszlopban lévő tagmondatokat. Az üres helyekre írjuk be a zárójelben megadott szavak megfelelő alakját.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 0 If cats didn't have (not/have) very good eyes, | a if nobody (commit) any crimes. |
| 0 I would live (live) in a big house | b if there (be) more public transport. |
| 1 If chameleons (not/can) change colour, | c if I were/was (be) rich. |
| 2 Life on earth (disappear) | d they (not/can) protect themselves. |
| 3 People (not/use) their cars so much | e they couldn't (not/can) see in the dark. |
| 4 If everybody (live) a healthier life, | f if the sun (not/exist). |
| 5 The police (not/have) much work | g we (not/need) so many hospitals. |

0 **e** 0 **c** 1 2 3 4 5



Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a feltételes mondat 1. és 2. típusa (119–20. fejezet)

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat egy-egy szóval, ahol szükséges.

- 0 If you heat water to 100 degrees, it boils.
- 0 Mary *will* be happy if she wins a prize tomorrow.
- 0 If I get a better job, I *might* change my car, but I'm not sure.
- 1 If Jill had the chance to visit America, she definitely go.
- 2 If my cousins visit us this weekend, we'll go to the zoo.
- 3 We won't be able to have a holiday we save more money.
- 4 Switzerland lose its winter tourism if it was a flat country.
- 5 If people taller, everybody would play basketball.
- 6 Shakespeare would work in Hollywood if he alive today.
- 7 Mary is not doing well at school. She won't pass her exams she studies harder.
- 8 If I you, I'd take an aspirin.
- 9 This machine is easy to operate if you follow the instructions.
- 10 If drivers were more careful, there be so many accidents.
- 11 If Anne in a bad mood, it's impossible to speak to her.
- 12 If we all work hard, we finish the project today, but it's not certain.
- 13 I would enjoy trips abroad if I speak different languages, but I can't.
- 14 It's not a good idea to swim if you very tired.
- 15 If you eat all the cakes, there be any for other people.
- 16 Jim lives in a flat, but if he live in a flat, he'd have a cat.
- 17 I wouldn't say anything, if I you.
- 18 If you tell John a secret, he never tells anybody.

B A volt diákok osztálytalálkozóra készülnek. Az alábbi táblázatból láthatjuk, hogy ki mikor érne rá.

	Friday (1p.m.)	Saturday (1p.m.)	Sunday (1p.m.)
Amanda	Yes	No	?
Robert	No	Yes	Yes
Carol	?	Yes	No
Paul	No	?	Yes

A táblázat alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **will/will not** vagy **might be able to** szerkezet és a **come** ige használatával.

- 0 If the meeting is on Saturday, Robert and Carol *will be able to come.*
- 0 If the meeting is on Sunday, Amanda *might be able to come.*
- 1 If the meeting is on Friday, Amanda
- 2 If the meeting is on Saturday, Paul
- 3 If the meeting is on Sunday, Carol
- 4 If the meeting is on Friday, Robert
- 5 If the meeting is on Sunday, Amanda

Egészítsük ki a párbeszédeket a zárójelben megadott szavakkal. Használjunk egyszerű jelentet illetve **will/won't** segédigét.

0 A: We must be at the airport at two o'clock.

B: Well, if **we take** (we/take) a taxi at one o'clock, **we won't be** (we/not/be) late.

1 A: I'd like a newspaper.

B: Well, (I/buy) one for you if (I/go) to the shop later.

2 A: Has John phoned yet?

B: No, and if (he/not/phone) this afternoon, (I/phone) him this evening.

3 A: Is Fiona there, please?

B: No, but if (you/want) to leave a message, (I/give) it to her.

4 A: Is Tim going to pass his exam?

B: Well, (he/fail) if (he/not/work) harder.

5 A: Could I have some information about this year's concerts, please?

B: Yes, if (you/fill in) this form, (I/send) it to you in the post.

Pamela pályaválasztási tanácsadónál járt. Egészítsük ki a beszélgetést a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

ADVISOR: What is your present situation?

PAMELA: Well, I'm twenty years old. I finished school so I have the school certificate but the marks are not very good.

ADVISOR: I see. If you ⁰ **were** (be) a couple of years younger, I'd suggest that you repeat the year to get better marks. Now, I'm not sure. If I suggested going back to full-time study now, what ¹ (you/say)?

PAMELA: Well, I ² (think) about it, of course, but I've been working for two years and I think it ³ (be) difficult to study again.

ADVISOR: I understand, but if you ⁴ (study) with people of your own age, it's not really like school.

PAMELA: Well, one thing is certain. If it ⁵ (be) anything like my school, then I wouldn't want to go there.

ADVISOR: The problem these days is that if you ⁶ (not/have) higher qualifications, it's difficult to get a skilled or responsible job.

PAMELA: OK. What would my job chances be if I ⁷ (go) back to school?

ADVISOR: Now, listen. If you ⁸ (not/have) the school certificate, then I'd definitely recommend school. But in your case, it ⁹ (be) much better if you tried technical college, for example.

PAMELA: All right, if that was my decision, what ¹⁰ (I/can) do there?

ADVISOR: Well, computer skills, for example. That ¹¹ (help) you to get a better job. Of course, if that doesn't appeal to you, we ¹² (have) to think of something else.

PAMELA: OK. If you ¹³ (think) it's a good idea, I think I ¹⁴ (give) it a try.

E Egészítsük ki a feltételes mondatokat **will** vagy **might** segítségével és a megfelelő ige használatával.

0 'Are you going to London tomorrow?' ~ 'Yes, perhaps, if I get up early enough.'

If I get up early enough tomorrow morning, I *might go to London.*

0 'Will Gary bring his new CD to the party?' ~ 'Yes, of course, if he comes.'

If Gary comes to the party, he *will bring his new CD.*

1 'Will you see Peter this morning?' ~ 'Perhaps, if I catch the early train.'

If I catch the early train this morning, I

2 'Will your parents let me stay the night?' ~ 'Yes, perhaps, if they're in a good mood.'

If my parents are in a good mood, they

3 'Will they let you into that club in jeans?' ~ 'No, definitely not.'

If you wear jeans, they

4 'Will this shop give us a discount on these books?' ~ 'Yes, if we show our student cards.'

If we show our student cards, this shop

5 'Will Sarah get into university?' ~ 'Yes, definitely, if she works hard this year.'

If Sarah works hard this year, she

F Mi történne, ha... ? Alkossunk 2. típusú feltételes mondatokat a megadott szavakkal.

0 win/the lottery/put the money in the bank.

If I won the lottery, I'd put the money in the bank.

1 meet/Tom Cruise/ask him for his autograph.

2 become/a film director/live in Hollywood.

3 see/a UFO/sell my story to a newspaper.

4 grow/to be two metres tall/be a basketball player.

5 be/famous film star/like to make a film with Robert de Niro.

6 marry/somebody very rich/give up my job.

G A következő mondatok mindegyikében van hiba. Írjuk át a mondatokat hibátlanul.

0 If it will rain tomorrow, I won't go jogging.

If it rains tomorrow, I won't go jogging.

0 If John phones tonight, I'll go out with him, but it depends how I feel when he calls.

If John phones tonight, I might go out with him, but it depends how I feel when he calls.

1 I'm warning you. You will get stomach ache if you will eat too many apples.

I'm warning you. You

2 People would fall off the earth if there is no gravity.

People

3 I'll walk out if I won't like the concert this evening.

I

- 4 If you will do a lot of exercise, you get hungry.
If you
- 5 You can't drive a taxi unless you had a special licence.
You
- 6 I don't like big cities. If I lived in the USA, I hadn't a flat in New York.
I don't like big cities. If I
- 7 You never know. If we do the lottery this week, we will become millionaires!
If we
- 8 You're English, but if you are French, where would you like to live?
You're English, but if you
- 9 If you didn't live in Italy, where will you live?
If you

A krimik és kalandregények sokszor elég kiszámíthatóak. A kitalált könyvcímek alapján írjunk 1. típusú feltételes mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavak használatával.

- 0 Inspector Green and the Missing Diamond
If Inspector Green *looks* (look) for the diamond, he *will find* (find) it.
- 1 Harry Hathaway and the Chicago Mystery
Harry Hathaway (solve) the mystery if he (follow) the clues.
- 2 Miss Morcroft and the Case of the Dead Horse
If Miss Morcroft (accept) the case, she (discover) why the horse died.
- 3 Beth Buchanan and the Bad Boxer
Beth Buchanan (win) if he (fight) the bad boxer.
- 4 G. G. Rogers and the Brussels Murders
If G. G. Rogers (investigate) the murders, he (bring) the murderer to justice.
- 5 Liam Langley and the International Gang
If Liam Langley (find) the Gang, he (return) to England a hero.
- 6 Detective Smedley and the Lost Little Boy
The little boy's parents (be) very pleased if Detective Smedley (solve) the mystery.

Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat.

- 1 Angliában nem lesz elég víz, ha nem esik sok eső a következő télen.
- 2 Jim nem tud moziba jönni velünk, hacsak nem adunk neki kölcsön egy kis pénzt.
- 3 Ha nem kérsz bocsánatot, többé nem állok veled szóba.
- 4 Anyám azt mondja, hogy ha takarékoskodom, talán elég pénzem lesz a nyaraláshoz.
- 5 Ha lehetne a Holdra utazni, én is elmennék.
- 6 A helyedben senkinek sem mondanám el, mi történt.
- 7 Rendezhetnénk pikniket, ha jobb lenne az idő.
- 8 Ha szépen kérnéd, apa talán kölcsönadná a kocsiját.
- 9 Ha az emberek nem vezetnének ilyen gyorsan, nem lenne ennyi baleset.



A feltételes mondat 3. típusa – third conditional (If he had been...)

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatot:

TÉNY: *I didn't hear my alarm clock. So I didn't arrive at school on time.* (= Nem hallottam az ébresztőórát, így nem értem be időben az iskolába.)

És most a következőt:

If + PAST PERFECT	+ would have/'d have + PAST PARTICIPLE (az ige 3. alakja)
<i>If I had heard my alarm clock,</i>	<i>I would have arrived on time.</i>

(= Ha hallottam volna az ébresztőórát, időben érkeztem volna.)

Az **if + Past Perfect** illetve **would have + ige 3. alakja** szerkezetet akkor használjuk, amikor az említett cselekvés vagy esemény már nem történhet meg, de elképzeljük, mi lett volna, ha megtörténik. A feltételes mondatnak ezt a típusát lehetetlen feltételnek (third conditional) nevezhetjük:

TÉNY: *Jane didn't come on her usual train. So I didn't see her.*

If Jane had come on her usual train, I would have seen her. (= Ha Jane a szokásos vonattal jött volna, akkor láttam volna.)

Tagadáskor a főmondatban a **wouldn't have + 3. alak szerkezetet**, a mellékmondatban a **Past Perfect** tagadó alakját (**hadn't + 3. alak**) használjuk:

John F. Kennedy wouldn't have died in 1963 if he hadn't gone to Dallas. (= John F. Kennedy nem halt volna meg 1963-ban, ha nem ment volna Dallasba.)

I would have phoned you if I hadn't lost your phone number. (= Felhívtalak volna, ha nem vesztettem volna el a telefonszámodat.)

I wouldn't have gone to the museum if I had known it was shut. (= Nem mentem volna a múzeumba, ha tudtam volna, hogy zárva van.)

2 Would helyett could vagy might segédige is használható:

If you had told me, I could have helped you.
(= ... tudtam volna segíteni.)

John might have come to the party if you had asked him nicely.

(= John talán eljött volna az összejövetelre ...)

Gyakorlatok

A Olvassuk el a következő történetet.

In May 1992 Ellen lost her job in London. She didn't have much money in the bank, so she was very worried. She looked in the newspapers and she saw an advertisement for a job as a translator from German into English. She didn't speak German very well, so she didn't apply for it. In June, she heard about some teaching jobs abroad because a friend phoned to tell her about them. She phoned the company, and they asked her to go for an interview with the director. Ellen thought the interview went badly, but in fact the director was happy with the interview and offered Ellen a job in Spain. However, Ellen couldn't start at once because she didn't know any Spanish. She took a course to learn the language. She was good at languages and she made rapid progress. So by September she had a new job, and she still had a little money left in the bank.

A zárójelben megadott szavakból alkossunk 3. típusú feltételes mondatokat.

0 (If Ellen/have/a lot of money in the bank, she/not/be/so worried)

If Ellen had had a lot of money in the bank, she wouldn't have been so worried.

0 (If she/not/look/in the newspapers, she/not/see/the advertisement)

If she hadn't looked in the newspapers, she wouldn't have seen the advertisement.

- 1 (If she/speak/German very well, she/apply/for the job)
.....
- 2 (If her friend/not/phone, she/not/hear/about the teaching jobs)
.....
- 3 (If she/not/contact/the company, they/not/ask/her to go for an interview)
.....
- 4 (If the interview/go/badly, the director/not/offer/ Ellen a job)
.....
- 5 (If Ellen/know/some Spanish, she/start/at once)
.....
- 6 (If she/not/be/good at languages, she/not/make/rapid progress)
.....

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben közölt tények alapján.

- 0 (Sam didn't get the job as translator because he failed the exam.)
Sam *would have got the job as a translator if he hadn't failed* the exam.
- 1 (Alan lost our phone number, so he didn't phone us.)
If Alan our phone number, he
..... us.
- 2 (Sally broke her leg, so she didn't go on holiday.)
If Sally her leg, she
on holiday.
- 3 (We didn't make a cake because we forgot to buy any eggs.)
We a cake if we to
buy some eggs.

C A példa alapján írjunk 3. típusú feltételes mondatokat az adott helyzetekhez.

- 0 'Why didn't you eat your dinner, Mark?' ~ 'Because I had a big lunch at Joe's house earlier.'
Mark *would have eaten his dinner if he hadn't had a big lunch at Joe's house earlier.*
- 1 'I thought you were going to the concert last night, Deborah.' ~ 'I wanted to, but I had a lot of homework.'
Deborah
- 2 'Didn't you get some new trainers, Nick?' ~ 'No, the shop was closed.'
Nick
- 3 'You said you would come home early, Tom.' ~ 'Yes, but there was a bus strike.'
Tom
- 4 'Didn't you have volleyball practice, Michael?' ~ 'No, the coach was ill.'
Michael
- 5 'Why didn't you send the letter, Peter?' ~ 'I didn't have a stamp.'
Peter
- 6 'Didn't you buy some new books, Diane?' ~ 'No, I lent all my money to Terry.'
Diane

1 Nézzük meg a példát:



(= Bárcsak tudnál beszélni!)

A **wish** + egyszerű múlt szerkezettel azt fejezzük ki, hogy jó lenne, ha valami másképp lenne, mint ahogy van. (A 120. fejezetben található hasonló szerkezet: **if** + egyszerű múlt.)

I live in London, but I wish I lived in the country.
(= Londonban élek, de bárcsak valahol vidéken élnék.)

He wishes he didn't live in London. (= Azt szeretné, ha nem lakna Londonban.)

Jane wishes she knew German. (= Jane azt kívánja, bárcsak tudna németül.)

2 A **wish** ige után a létige alakja írott nyelvben minden személyben **were**, de a mai beszélt nyelvben **I/he/she/it** alany mellett a **was** alakot is használjuk:

He wishes he was/were younger. (= Azt szeretné, ha fiatalabb lenne.)

3 A **wish** után a **would** ('d) segédige használata elégedetlenséget és a dolgok megváltoztatására irányuló erős vágyat fejezhet ki:

I wish they'd stop playing their music! (= Bárcsak abbahagynák a zenélést!)

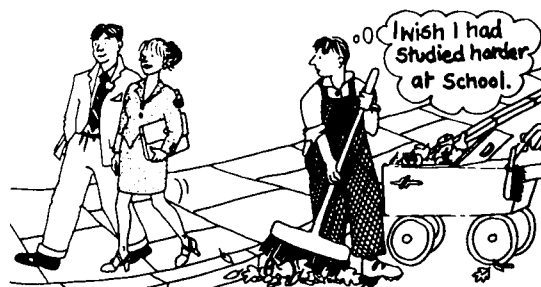
I wish the phone would ring. (= Bárcsak megszólalna a telefon!)

Ha nem elégedetlenségről vagy türelmetlenségről van szó, a **hope** + egyszerű jelen szerkezettel utalhatunk reményeinkre:

We hope they come early tomorrow. (= Remélem, holnap korán jönnek.)

Sally's parents hope she passes her exams. (= Sally szülei remélik, hogy átmegy a vizsgán.)

4 Nézzük meg ezt a példát:



(= Bárcsak keményebben dolgoztam volna az iskolában!)

A **wish** + Past Perfect szerkezet a múltban lezárult eseménnyel kapcsolatos vágyat fejez ki – ilyenkor azt kívánjuk, hogy ami történt, bárcsak ne úgy történt volna:

I woke up very late this morning. I wish I had gone to bed earlier last night. (= Nagyon későn ébredtem fel ma reggel. Bárcsak korábban feküdtem volna le tegnap este!)

Tagadáskor a Past Perfect tagadó alakját (**hadn't** + 3. alak) használjuk:

Many people wish that John F. Kennedy hadn't gone to Dallas. (= Sokan azt kívánják, bárcsak ne ment volna John F. Kennedy Dallasba.)

5 Az **I wish... / he/she wishes...** szerkezet helyett az **if only** (= bárcsak) kifejezést is használhatjuk:

If only I was rich! (= Bárcsak gazdag lennék!)

If only he'd studied harder! (= Bárcsak jobban tanult volna!)

Gyakorlatok

A Írjunk a következő állításokhoz megjegyzést az **I wish** szerkezet segítségével.

0 You don't have a driving licence.

I wish I had a driving licence.

0 You can't type.

I wish I could type.

1 You don't have good eyesight.

I wish

2 You can't speak German.

I wish

3 You don't have a degree.

I wish

4 You are not eighteen.

I wish

3 Alkossunk mondatokat a megadott szavak és a **wish ... would** szerkezet használatával.

- 0 Why are those boys following me?
I/they/go away. *I wish they would go away.*
- 1 Why don't you concentrate when I'm talking?
I/you/listen more carefully.
- 2 Why are those children making so much noise?
I/they/play more quietly.
- 3 Why are you wearing that ridiculous hat?
I/you/take it off.
- 4 Why hasn't the neighbours' party finished?
I/they/go to bed.

4 Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a példa alapján. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igealak használatára.

- 0 Paul smokes. Paul wishes he *didn't smoke.*
- 0 Peter didn't see the film. Peter wishes he *had seen* the film.
- 1 Jill didn't tell the truth. Jill wishes she the truth.
- 2 Ann can't afford a new coat. Ann wishes she a new coat.
- 3 Tim bites his nails. Tim wishes he his nails.
- 4 Bill stayed in bed all morning. Bill wishes he in bed all morning.
- 5 Penny lives on the coast. Penny wishes she on the coast.
- 6 Jack didn't buy a ticket. Jack wishes he a ticket.
- 7 Frank doesn't dance well. Frank wishes he well.
- 8 Carol invited Tom. Carol wishes she Tom.

5 Egészítsük ki a mondatokat úgy, hogy az adott helyzethez kapcsolódó kívánságot fejezzenek ki.

- 0 Ian wasted his time at school; now he's sorry.
Ian wishes he *hadn't wasted his time at school.*
- 0 I would like to have curly hair.
If only I *had curly hair!*
- 1 Sally regrets that she spent all her money.
Sally wishes
- 2 You don't listen to what I say.
If only you
- 3 Lesley would like to have a better job.
Lesley wishes
- 4 Philip regrets that he ate so much icecream.
Philip wishes
- 5 We are sorry that we didn't take an umbrella.
If only we

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakkal. Ügyeljünk az igék megfelelő alakjának használatára.

- 0 If Mary *works* (work) in the library, she probably knows my sister.
- 1 Sebastian wishes he (not/be) called Sebastian.
- 2 I live in a flat but if I (live) in the country, I (have) a couple of dogs.
- 3 It was lucky that we met Sara. We (not/know) where to go if we (not/meet) her.
- 4 You (be) able to go on the trip next week unless you (pay) by Saturday.
- 5 When the rain started, I got very wet. I (not/get) so wet if I (take) an umbrella with me.
- 6 A drop of blood should sink in water. If it (float), you (be) probably anaemic.
- 7 If Terry's girlfriend (not/live) so far away, he (not/have) such a big telephone bill.
- 8 If I (be) you, I (not/touch) those wires.

B Alkossunk 2. típusú feltételes mondatokat a következő állítások alapján.

- 0 Petra doesn't go to the theatre because she doesn't live in London.
Petra would go to the theatre if she lived in London.
- 0 Jane has a good job so she can save for her holidays.
If Jane didn't have a good job, she couldn't save for her holidays.
- 1 Philip does a lot of sport so he's very fit.
If
- 2 Angie doesn't eat fish because she's allergic to it.
..... if
- 3 Sally reads the newspaper so she knows the latest news.
If
- 4 We can't go out because it's so cold.
..... if
- 5 Peter likes French films because he understands the language.
..... if
- 6 Kate has a lot of headaches so she buys a lot of aspirins.
If
- 7 Colin can't go to the cinema because he doesn't have a lot of spare time.
..... if
- 8 The US is a powerful country so people know the President's name.
If

C Olvassuk el az alábbi beszámolót, majd a szöveg alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat 3. típusú feltételes szerkezetekkel.

I had a day off work last Saturday so I went to watch a football match at the Redbridge sports centre. Gilford, the visiting team, had only ten players so they asked if anyone was prepared to play. I offered to play, but I needed some size eleven boots. They said they had a pair, so I was able to play.

The missing player was the goalkeeper so I played in goal. I saved two penalties, so Gilford won the match. The Redbridge goalkeeper didn't play very well, so the Redbridge captain asked me to play in the next match.

That's the good news, but the bad news is that the match finished late so I was late leaving. In fact, I was such a long time at the sports centre that the police gave me a parking fine. However, my mother offered to pay the fine because she was pleased about the football match.

- 0 If I *hadn't had* a day off last Saturday, I *wouldn't have gone* to watch a football match.
- 1 The Gilford players if anyone was prepared to play if they eleven players.
- 2 If they a pair of size eleven boots, I to play.
- 3 I in goal if the missing player the goalkeeper.
- 4 If I two penalties, Gilford the match.
- 5 The Redbridge captain me to play in the next match if the club goalkeeper very well.
- 6 I late leaving if the match late.
- 7 If I such a long time at the sports centre, the police me a parking fine.
- 8 My mother to pay the fine if she pleased about the football match.

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat megfelelő igealakokkal.

- 0 Pam smokes. Pam wishes she *didn't smoke*.
- 0 Peter didn't see the film. Peter wishes he *had seen* the film.
- 1 Tom didn't go to bed early. Tom wishes he to bed early.
- 2 Sara can't afford a holiday. Sara wishes she a holiday.
- 3 Simon lives in a tiny flat. Simon wishes he in a tiny flat.
- 4 Anne lent her car to Bob. Anne wishes she her car to Bob.
- 5 Peter can't play the piano. Peter wishes he the piano.
- 6 Karen didn't wait for her sister. Karen wishes she for her sister.
- 7 Mrs Thomas changed jobs. Mrs Thomas wishes she jobs.
- 8 Jack doesn't speak German. Jack wishes he German.

E A következő beszélgetés egy művelődési ház vezetője és pénzügyi tanácsadója között zajlik. A táblázatban található adatok segítségével egészítsük ki a párbeszédet 2. típusú feltételes szerkezet, **would**, **could** vagy **might** segédige és a zárójelben megadott igék használatával.

What members want	What some members agree to	What members don't want
Find a local sponsor More table tennis tables Improve the disco lighting Find a DJ Open longer at the weekend	Increase price by 50% Close weekday afternoons	Increase price by 100%

MANAGER: What could we do to improve things?

ADVISOR: For a start, you could increase the price of membership. It is very cheap compared with other things that young people do, and if you ⁰ *increased* (increase) it by, say, 50%, you ⁰ *would have* (have) more money to spend on improvements. Most people think it isn't expensive – not many ¹ (complain) unless you ² (put) it up by 100% or more. Another way to get more money is to find a local sponsor. If you ³ (be) willing to accept a few adverts, and if you ⁴ (find) a local business that was interested, you ⁵ (have) even more money to spend.

MANAGER: Right. If we ⁶ (have) more money, what changes ⁷ (improve) things most?

ADVISOR: Well, personally, I would start with the indoor sports facilities. If you ⁸ (buy) a couple of new table tennis tables, people ⁹ (not/have) to wait so long for a game, so everybody ¹⁰ (get) more practice and, possibly, you ¹¹ (find) a champion among the members.

MANAGER: OK. And what would you do to improve our weekly disco session?

ADVISOR: First, I would install some better lighting. I also think that if you ¹² (ask) among the members, you ¹³ (find) somebody to be a DJ. If you ¹⁴ (find) a good DJ, people ¹⁵ (enjoy) the sessions a lot more.

MANAGER: What about opening times?

ADVISOR: At the moment you open six days a week, afternoon and evening. But very few people come on weekday afternoons. If you ¹⁶ (not/open) on weekday afternoons, nobody ¹⁷ (care). You ¹⁸ (save) on electricity and then you ¹⁹ (open) longer at weekends. I think a lot of people ²⁰ (be) happier if you ²¹ (stay) open longer on Saturdays and Sundays.

F Egészítsük ki a beszélgetést a zárójelben megadott igék megfelelő alakjával.

MRS HILL: What time did you come home last night?

TONY: Oh, I don't know. At about one o'clock, I think.

MRS HILL: It was after three o'clock.

TONY: I didn't say the exact time because it's always the same: if I ⁰ *tell* (tell) the truth, you ⁰ *get* (get) cross with me.

MR HILL: Why don't you go out earlier and come home earlier?

TONY: Nothing opens early. If I went out earlier, I ¹ (not/see) anyone I know.

MRS HILL: But what about school work? If you ² (stay) out till three o'clock, you ³ (not/get) up until midday.

MR HILL: And you ⁴ (be) tired for the rest of the day.

TONY: But I'm doing all right at school. I passed all my exams last term. The headmaster ⁵ (phone) you if I ⁶ (not/pass) everything.

MRS HILL: But these days a pass isn't enough. If you just ⁷ (have) passes, you ⁸ (not/get) a good job when you leave school. If somebody ⁹ (have) better marks than you, they ¹⁰ (get) the job. And if you only ¹¹ (have) poor marks, there ¹² (always/be) someone better than you.

TONY: But school is so boring. If I ¹³ (not/go) out at the weekend, my whole life would be boring.

MR HILL: The way you speak to us! If I ¹⁴ (speak) to my parents like that when I was your age, they ¹⁵ (not/let) me go out for a week. And they ¹⁶ (not/give) me any pocket money, either.

TONY: If grandad ¹⁷ (be) still alive, I ¹⁸ (ask) him. I'm sure he wasn't as bad as you say.

MRS HILL: If you ¹⁹ (not/stop) contradicting your father, things ²⁰ (get) worse.

TONY: OK, I promise to believe you and to work harder at school. Is that better?

MRS HILL: Well, it's a start.

G Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat.

- 1 Ha vidéken vagy, több csillagot látsz az égen.
- 2 Tom segíteni fog, ha megkéred.
- 3 Ha a helyedben lennék, bevennék egy aszpirint.
- 4 Tisztábbak lennének a folyóink, ha jobban vigyáznánk rájuk.
- 5 Ha a hét végén jobb lett volna az idő, kimentünk volna a strandra.
- 6 Ha Sally beszélne nyelveket, idegenvezető lehetne.
- 7 Bárcsak ne lennének ilyen szigorúak a szüleim!
- 8 Jó lenne, ha a testvéreim nem költöztek volna el.
- 9 Ha Péter óvatosabb lett volna, nem történt volna baleset.
- 10 A nővérem adott volna pénzt, ha kérünk tőle.

- 1 Amikor a beszélő szavait nem szó szerint idézzük, és az eredeti szöveget bizonyos szerkezeti változtatással (pl. szórend, igeidő) közvetítjük, függő beszédről (reported/indirect speech) beszélünk.

EREDETI MONDAT	FÜGGŐ BESZÉD
Egyszerű jelen 'I live in a small flat,' she said.	→ Egyszerű múlt She said (that) she <i>lived</i> in a small flat.
Folyamatos jelen 'I'm leaving on Tuesday,' I said.	→ Folyamatos múlt I said (that) I <i>was leaving</i> on Tuesday.
Egyszerű múlt Present Perfect 'I learned a lot,' he said. 'Mr Jackson has left,' she said.	→ Past Perfect He said (that) he <i>had learned</i> a lot. She said (that) Mr Jackson <i>had left</i> .
will 'I'll help you,' she said.	→ would She said (that) she <i>would help</i> me.
am/is/are/going to 'We're going to be late,' I said.	→ was/were/going to I said (that) we <i>were going to be</i> late.
can 'I can't find my money,' he said.	→ could He said (that) he <i>couldn't find</i> his money.

Ha a függő beszédben idézett mondat röviddel a függő beszédben történő megismétlés előtt hangzott el, az igeidőt nem kell megváltoztatni. A bevezető ige (**say, tell** stb.) lehet akár jelen, akár múlt időben:

She *says/said* she *lives* in a small flat.

He *says/said* he *can't find* his money.

- 2 A **that** (= hogy) kötőszó használata nem feltétlenül szükséges függő beszédben:
She said (**that**) she knew the answer.

- 3 Figyelem! A magyar nyelvben az igeidőt nem változtatjuk meg, amikor valakinek a szavait megismétljük, csak a személyes névmásokat. Amikor az ilyen mondatokat magyarra fordítjuk, vigyázzunk, hogy a **said** stb. kezdetű mondatot követő mellékmondatban az egyszerű múlt időt ne múlt időnek, hanem jelen időnek fordítsuk. **She said she lived ...** = 'Azt mondta, hogy ... lakik.' NEM: 'lakott'; **He said he couldn't ...** = 'Azt mondta, hogy nem találja' NEM: 'nem találta'. A **would** fordítása: 'fog': **She said she would ...** = 'Azt mondta hogy ... fog ...'

- 4 Hasonlítsuk össze a **say** és a **tell** igék használatát a következő mondatokban:

She **said** (that) she lived in a small flat.

She **told me** (that) she lived in a small flat.

(= Azt mondta nekem, ...)

A '**say something (to someone)**' szerkezet helyes, a '**say someone something**' helytelen.

She said she was going to be late.

(NEM: ~~She said me she was ...~~)

I said that I disagreed with him.

(NEM: ~~I said him that I ...~~)

A **tell someone something** szerkezet helyes, a **tell something** nem.

He told **me** he was happy. (NEM: ~~He told he was happy.~~)

He told **me** that he would pay me immediately.

(NEM: ~~He told that he would ...~~)

She told **Fred** she was going to meet someone.

(NEM: ~~She told that she was going ...~~)

Gyakorlatok

- A** Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **said** vagy **told** igealakokkal.

- 0 She *said* she wasn't feeling very well.
- 1 Alex me that he would buy the tickets.
- 2 They that the train was going to be late.
- 3 She him that she was very angry with him.
- 4 She him that she couldn't help him.
- 5 Who you that I was leaving? It's not true!
- 6 They us that they were leaving in the morning.







- 7 He that he didn't know what was wrong with the car.
 8 She she had four sisters.
 9 She me that Tom worked in a factory.
 10 He me that he was a doctor, but he
 Anna that he was a dentist.

B Írjuk át a következő beszélgetést függő beszédbe.

NICOLE: How long have you been in France?	CLAUDIA: Six weeks.
NICOLE: Are you enjoying your stay?	CLAUDIA: Yes, I'm enjoying it a lot.
NICOLE: Have you been here before?	CLAUDIA: Yes. I've been to France many times.
NICOLE: What are you doing here?	CLAUDIA: I'm on holiday.
NICOLE: Are you staying in a hotel?	CLAUDIA: No, I'm staying with some friends.
NICOLE: Where do they live?	CLAUDIA: They have a flat in the city centre.
NICOLE: How long are you staying?	CLAUDIA: I'm leaving in March.
NICOLE: Can you speak French very well?	CLAUDIA: No, I can't. I'm going to have some lessons.
NICOLE: I'll teach you.	

- 0 Claudia said *that she had been* in France for six weeks.
 1 Claudia said her stay a lot.
 2 Claudia said to France many times.
 3 Claudia said on holiday.
 4 She said with some friends.
 5 She said a flat in the city centre.
 6 She said in March.
 7 She said French very well.
 8 She said some lessons.
 9 Nicole said Claudia.

C A képek alapján írjuk le függő beszédben, hogy ki mit mondott, amikor a repülőtéren ellenőrizték az útlevelét.

<p>0</p> 	<p>1</p> 	<p>2</p> 	<p>3</p> 	<p>4</p> 
<p>0 He said <i>that he was visiting friends.</i></p> <p>1 She said 2 He said 3 They said 4 She said 5 They said</p>				<p>5</p> 

1 Tételezzük fel, hogy Mary elmondja Jane-nek:

'I love Tom.' Jane azt mondja Susannak:

Mary says (that) she loves Tom.

Jane pedig megmondja Tomnak:

Mary says (that) she loves you.

Végül Mary közli Tommal:

I told Jane (that) I love you.

A fenti három mondat függő beszédben van.

A személyes névmás függő beszédben

értelmszerűen megváltozik (pl. 'I' → 'she',

'Tom' → 'you' stb.)

2 Tételezzük fel, hogy Mary és Tom reggel az autóbuszmegállóban búcsúzik egymástól.

Mary ezt mondja: *'I'll meet you here at seven o'clock.'*

Tom ezt mondja a barátjának az irodában:

Mary says she'll meet me at the bus station at seven o'clock.

Ha Mary ezt mondja: *'I'll come to your house at seven o'clock'*, Tom, már otthon, ezt mondja a barátjának:

Mary says she'll come here at seven o'clock.

A személyes névmás ezekben a mondatokban is megváltozott. ('you' → 'me'; 'I' → 'she')

3 Másnap Mary ezt mondja a barátnőjének: 'I saw Jane yesterday, and I've seen Tom three times this week.'

A barátnő valaki másnak elmondja:

Last Friday Mary said (that) she had seen Jane the day before, and she had seen Tom three times that week.

A 'yesterday' megváltozik, 'the day before' (= az előző napon) lesz belőle, a 'this week' (= ezen a héten) 'that week' (= azon a héten) lesz. (Egyéb, a függő beszédben bekövetkező változásokkal kapcsolatos tudnivalók a 125. fejezetben találhatók.)

Figyeljük meg, hogy a változtatások nem feltétlenül, automatikusan következnek be, a helyzettől is függnek, amelyben a beszélgetés történik:

A leggyakoribb változások:

AZ EREDETI	A MEGVÁLTOZOTT NÉVMÁS, IGE VAGY HATÁROZÓ
I; we me; us my; our here yesterday tomorrow come, bring this	she, he; they her, him; them her, his; their there the previous day/day before the next/following day go, take that

Gyakorlatok

A Olvassuk el a következő párbeszédet, majd pótoljuk a hiányzó névmásokat (illetve az egyik esetben főnevet) a függő beszédben írt szövegben.

SARA: I'm not happy. I think things between us are going badly.

JOE: I still love you, but I think you've changed.

SARA: You're not nice to me any more.

JOE: I've heard rumours about you.

SARA: I don't believe you.

JOE: I think you're seeing someone else.

SARA: Yes, I've been out with Tony a couple of times. I feel happy with him.

JOE: But he's not in love with you.

SARA: I'm too young to have just one boyfriend. I want to be free.

Sara begins the story: I wasn't happy. I told Joe ⁰ thought things between
¹ were going badly. He said ² still loved ³ but
⁴ thought that ⁵ had changed. I told him that ⁶ wasn't
 nice to ⁷ any more. He said ⁸ had heard rumours about
⁹ and I said that ¹⁰ didn't believe ¹¹

Tony continues: Joe said he thought Sara was seeing someone else. Sara said that she had been out
 with ¹² a couple of times and that ¹³ felt happy with ¹⁴
 Joe said that ¹⁵ was not in love with ¹⁶ Sara said that ¹⁷
 was too young to have just one boyfriend and that ¹⁸ wanted to be free.

Fejezzük be a táblázat jobb oldali oszlopában lévő mondatokat függő beszéddel a bal oldali oszlopban található információ alapján.

Original situation	Reporting situation
0 Place: Paris Date: Summer, 1995 Jane said, 'I've been here for six months.'	Place: London Date: 2001 Jane told me that <i>she'd been there for six months.</i>
1 Place: London Date: 20 April 1999 Ken said, 'We're leaving tomorrow.'	Place: London Date: 2001 Ken said that
2 Place: London Date: 22 May 1999 Sally said to Tom, 'I can't marry you.'	Place: London Date: 2001 Sally told Tom that
3 Place: New York Date: July, 1996 Bill said to Ella, 'I'll write to you every day.'	Place: London Date: 2000 Bill told Ella that
4 Place: London Zoo Date: June 1998 Alice said to me, 'I often come here.'	Place: My home Date: 2001 Alice told me that
5 Place: London Date: June, 1999 Anne said, 'My brother is going to visit me.'	Place: Paris Date: 2000 Anne said that
6 Place: Madrid Date: 16 June 2000 Derek said, 'We arrived here yesterday.'	Place: London Date: 12 July 2000 Derek said that
7 Place: New York Date: 18 May 2000 Bill said, 'I've been here for a week. I'm staying at the Dickens Hotel.'	Place: London Date: 10 June 2000 I saw Bill in New York last month. He told me that and that

1 Kérést többféle módon is kifejezhetünk:

SARAH: 'Please wait a minute, Tom.'

SARAH: 'Tom, could you wait a minute, please?'

Mindkét kérés függő beszéddé való alakításakor az **ask** igét használjuk:Sarah **asked** Tom to wait a minute. (= Sarah arra kérte Tomot, hogy várjon egy percet.)**2** Utasítást is többféle módon adhatunk:

'Stand up, John.' 'You must work harder.'

Utasítást vagy kevésbé udvarias kérést a **tell/told** igével tehetünk függő beszédbe:He **told** John to stand up.

(= Azt mondta Johnnak, hogy álljon fel.)

3 A következőképpen adunk tanácsot:

'You ought to stop smoking, Jane.'

'You should get married, Peter.'

Ezekben a mondatokban függő beszédben az **advise** (= tanácsol) igét használhatjuk:He **advised** Jane to stop smoking. (= Azt tanácsolta Jane-nek, hogy hagyja abba a dohányzást.)**4** Az **ask**, **tell** és **advise** ige használata függő beszédben:

	IGE	+ TÁRGY	+ to + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
Sarah	asked	Tom	to wait.
She	told	him	to stand up.
He	advised	Jane	to stop smoking.

Az ige + tárgy + **to** + főnévi igenév szerkezetet az alábbi igékkel használhatjuk:

advise	ask	tell	order
persuade	remind	forbid	warn

5 Ha tiltó mondatot alakítunk függő beszéddé (**Don't laugh**), utasítást stb. a **not + to + főnévi igenév** szerkezetet használjuk:

	IGE	+ TÁRGY	+ not + to + FŐNÉVI IGENÉV
Sarah	told	Tom	not to laugh.*
They	warned	Ian	not to borrow money.
I	reminded	John	not to be late.

(*NEM ... *to not laugh*.)**6** Vannak olyan igék, amelyeket nem használhatunk függő beszédben, és nem állhat utánuk tárgy. Néhány példa:IGE + **to** + FŐNÉVI IGENÉVHe **refused to help** me.

(= Visszautasította, hogy segítsen.)

She **promised not to be late.**

(= Megígérte, hogy nem fog elkésni.)

IGE + ELŐJÁRÓSZÓ + **-ing**We **apologized for being late.**

(= Elnézést kértünk a késésért.)

IGE + **-ing**He **suggested going to the cinema.**

(= Azt javasolta, hogy menjünk moziba.)

She **denied taking the money.**

(= Tagadta, hogy elvitte volna a pénzt.)

IGE + **that** + MELLÉKMONDATHe **complained that the food was cold.**

(= Panaszkodott, hogy az étel hideg.)

Gyakorlatok**A** Egészítsük ki a kifejezéseket a megfelelő szó kiválasztásával.

- Beth asked me to help / helping her.
- I've told Tim cleaning / to clean his shoes.
- Jack denied to break / breaking the window.
- The teacher reminded them to bring / bringing their dictionaries.
- Mum warned us not to speak / speaking to strangers.
- I persuaded my parents letting / to let me go to the disco.
- The doctor advised me to eat / eating more fruit.
- My cousin refused apologizing / to apologize for hitting me.

B Válaszoljunk a kérdésekre a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével a példa alapján. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igeidő (egyszerű múlt) és a **not** tagadószó használatára.

- 0 A: Did you tell the children to clean the car? B: (Yes, but I/tell/to use too much water.)
Yes, but I told them not to use too much water.
- 1 A: Did you ask Bill to come to the meeting? B: (Yes, and I/tell/to be late.)
- 2 A: Did the doctor tell your sister to keep warm? B: (Yes, and she/warn/to go outside the house.)
- 3 A: Did you ask Michael to post the letters? B: (Yes, and I/tell/to forget the stamps.)
- 4 A: Did the policeman advise everyone to stay indoors? B: (Yes, and he/tell/to go near the windows.)

C Alakítsuk át a mondatokat függő beszéddé a zárójelben megadott igék segítségével.

- 0 Fred said, 'Anne, would you lend me five pounds, please?'
 (ask) *Fred asked Anne to lend him five pounds.*
- 1 I said to John, 'Remember to phone Sally.'
 (remind)
- 2 Anna said to Barbara, 'I'll help you with your homework.'
 (offer)
- 3 Paul said, 'I'm sorry I broke the window.'
 (apologize)
- 4 She said, 'Children, stay away from the water.'
 (warn)
- 5 Mark said, 'Let's go out for a pizza.'
 (suggest)
- 6 I said, 'I'll phone as soon as I arrive.'
 (promise)

D Egészítsük ki a függő beszéddé alakított mondatokat a megadott igék és a megfelelő névmás segítségével. (Minden igét csak egyszer használjunk.)

advise ask order remind tell warn

- 0 The official said to Gerry, 'Go to Room 23.' The official *told him to go* to Room 23.
- 1 'Girls, you mustn't touch these wires. It can be dangerous,' said the guide.
 The guide the wires.
- 2 'The bus is all right, Anne, but it's better for you to take the train,' we said.
 We the train.
- 3 'Bring the money, Simon. Don't forget,' Mrs Walters said.
 Mrs Walters the money.
- 4 'This is the police,' the voice said. 'Spectators must leave at once.'
 The police at once.
- 5 I said, 'Please come in, Mr Tufnell.' I in.

- 1 Eldöntendő (yes/no) kérdésben a **be** ige megfelelő alakját (pl. **is, are**) vagy segédigét (pl. **do, can, have**) használunk:

'Are	ALANY they	English?'
'Can	John	type?'

A függő kérdés főmondatában az **ask** igét használjuk, a mellékmondatot pedig az **if** vagy **whether** (= vajon) kötőszóval kapcsoljuk a főmondathoz:

She asked if	ALANY they	were English.
She asked if	John	could type.

VAGY:

She asked **whether** they were English.
She asked **whether** John could type.

A függő kérdés nem kérdő szerkezet, tehát szórendje megegyezik az állító mondat szórendjével: alany, állítmány stb.

- 2 A kiegészítendő kérdés kérdőszóval kezdődik (**who, what, where** stb.):

'Where	does	ALANY Ann	live?'
'Why	has	Jane	gone?'

A függő kérdés főmondatában itt is az **ask** igét használjuk, az összetett mondat kötőszava az eredeti kérdőszó lesz. Itt is állító szórendet használunk.

They asked where	ALANY Ann	lived.
She asked why	Jane	had gone.

- 3 Nézzük meg a következő szerkezetet: **ask someone if, where, stb.:**

The manager **asked me if** I could type.

(= A főnök megkérdezte, tudok-e gépelni.)

They **asked him where** Sarah lived.

(= Megkérdezték tőle, hol lakik Sarah.)

- 4 Figyeljük meg, hogy amikor egy kérdést függő kérdéssé alakítunk, általában megváltoztatjuk az igeidőt (ld. 125. fejezet):

'Can John swim?'

He asked if John **could** swim.

Figyelem! A magyar fordításban az igeidő nem változik: **could swim**= tud-e úszni.

A leggyakoribb igeidő változások:

- jelen → múlt: **am/is** → **was are** → **were**
is living → **was living** **live** → **lived**
 - Present Perfect → Past Perfect: **has gone** → **had gone**
 - egyszerű múlt → Past Perfect: **arrived** → **had arrived**
 - segédigék: **will** → **would** **can** → **could**
- Gyakran más szavakat is megváltoztatunk:

'Have **you** finished, Mike?'

She asked Mike if **he** had finished.

- 5 Az **asked** helyett mondhatjuk, hogy **wanted to know** vagy **wondered**:

She **wanted to know** if they were English.

She **wondered** why Jane had gone.

Gyakorlatok

- A** Alkossunk függő kérdést a zárójelben megadott kérdésekből, a függő kérdéseket pedig alakítsuk át egyenes kérdéssé. A mondatok végére tegyünk pontot vagy kérdőjelet.

- 0 (Did they come?) She asked **if**..... they had come ∴.
- 1 (Do you speak English?) They asked me I spoke English ...
- 2 (I wanted to know why he had taken my key.) did you take my key ...
- 3 (How many people came to the party?) I asked people had come to the party ...
- 4 (Does Ann work on Saturdays?) I asked Ann worked on Saturdays ...
- 5 (Can we meet tomorrow?) I asked we could meet tomorrow ...
- 6 (I asked what he had done.) has he done ...
- 7 (Was Tom born in 1965 or 1966?) I asked them Tom was born ...

- 8 (Why has Jane gone home?) I wondered Jane had gone home ...
 9 (Where do you go for your holidays?) I wanted to know they went for their holidays ...
 10 (Is Bill coming to the party, Jane?) I asked Jane Bill was coming to the party ...

B Fordítsuk le a kérdéseket, majd a zárójelben megadott szavak segítségével írjunk függő kérdést.

- 0 Hova ment Anna? *Where has Anna gone?*
 (ask) *I asked where Anna had gone.*
 1 Jim gyakran jár focizni?
 (wonder)
 2 Mit ettek a gyerekek?
 (she/want to know)
 3 Hova megy Mark?
 (wonder)
 4 Mikor jön a következő busz?
 (ask)
 5 Hány tanuló jön az utazásra?
 (Sara/wonder)
 6 Mary beszél franciául?
 (wonder)
 7 Miért vett Vicky új biciklit?
 (ask)
 8 Hol dolgozik Péter?
 (wonder)

C Steven Ellis betört egy bankba. A rendőrség Steven egyik elfogott cinkostársának a következő kérdéseket tette fel a kihallgatáson:

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 0 How long have you been out of prison? | 4 Do you know Steven Ellis? |
| 1 Have you worked since then? | 5 How long have you known Steven? |
| 2 Does your sister give you money? | 6 Have you seen Steven recently? |
| 3 Who else gives you money? | |

A következőkben a rendőrfelügyelő a kihallgatásról számol be. Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a fenti kérdések átalakításával.

- 0 I asked him *how long he had been out of prison*, and he replied that he had left prison six months ago.
 1 Then I asked him He told me that he hadn't found a job.
 2 I asked him, and he said she gave him some money, but not very much.
 3 Then I asked him He replied that nobody else did.
 4 I asked him, and he said that he and Steven were friends.
 5 So I asked him, and he said that he had known him for six years.
 6 Then I asked him, and he said that he couldn't remember.



Ismétlő gyakorlatok: a függő beszéd (125–8. fejezet)

A Alakítsuk át a következő mondatokat függő beszéddé.

0 Paul said: 'Atlanta is a wonderful city.'

Paul said (that) Atlanta was a wonderful city.

1 Ruth said: 'I go jogging every morning.'

2 Anna said: 'Jenny isn't studying for her exams.'

3 Jim said: 'I can't swim.'

4 Jane said: 'Mary works in a bank.'

5 Jim said: 'I'm staying with some friends.'

6 Mike said: 'I've never been to Russia.'

7 Ella said: 'Tom can't use a computer.'

8 Jill said: 'Everybody must try to do their best.'

9 Rachel said: 'Jane may move to a new flat.'

10 Bill said: 'I'll stay at home on Sunday.'

B Írjuk át a mondatokat függő beszéddé a példa alapján.

0 Andy said: 'Julie, I love you.'

Later, Julie said to her sister: Andy said that *he loved me.*

1 Anna said: 'You can rely on me, Tom.'

Later, Tom said to his brother: Anna said that

2 Susan said: 'Jane, your mother has been very kind.'

Later, Jane said to her mother: Susan said that

3 Mary said: 'Jenny is staying with me, Peter.'

Later Peter said to Jenny: Mary said that

4 The teacher said: 'Class! You're making too much noise.'

Later, the pupils said to their parents: The teacher said that

5 Mark said: 'John may come to your party, Andrew.'

Later, Andrew said to John: Mark said that

C Írjuk át a zárójelben megadott mondatokat a **say** ige helyett **tell** használatával.

0 (Norman said to Rosa (that) he would be late.)

Norman told Rosa (that) he would be late.

1 (She said to him (that) she liked his paintings.)

2 (You said to me (that) you liked that film.)

3 (Tom said to Ann (that) he felt ill.)

4 (She said to Bill (that) she was leaving.)

5 (I said to you (that) I couldn't find it.)

6 (Mary said to him (that) she would send the letter.)

7 (We said to them (that) we would arrive at six.)

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott igék megfelelő alakjával az idézett mondat alapján. Minden igét csak egyszer használjunk.

advise apologize ask ~~deny~~ offer remind promise ~~say~~ tell warn

0 'I come from Scotland.'

Ian *said he came* from Scotland.

0 'We didn't steal the apples.'

They *denied stealing* the apples.

1 'You should leave early.'

The attendant us early.

2 'Remember to collect your shoes.'

Gary his wife her shoes.

3 'Please take a seat.'

The lawyer us a seat.

4 'Let me drive you home.'

Mrs Proctor me home.

5 'I'm sorry I dropped the plate.'

The waiter the plate.

6 'I live in Edinburgh.'

Ian us in Edinburgh.

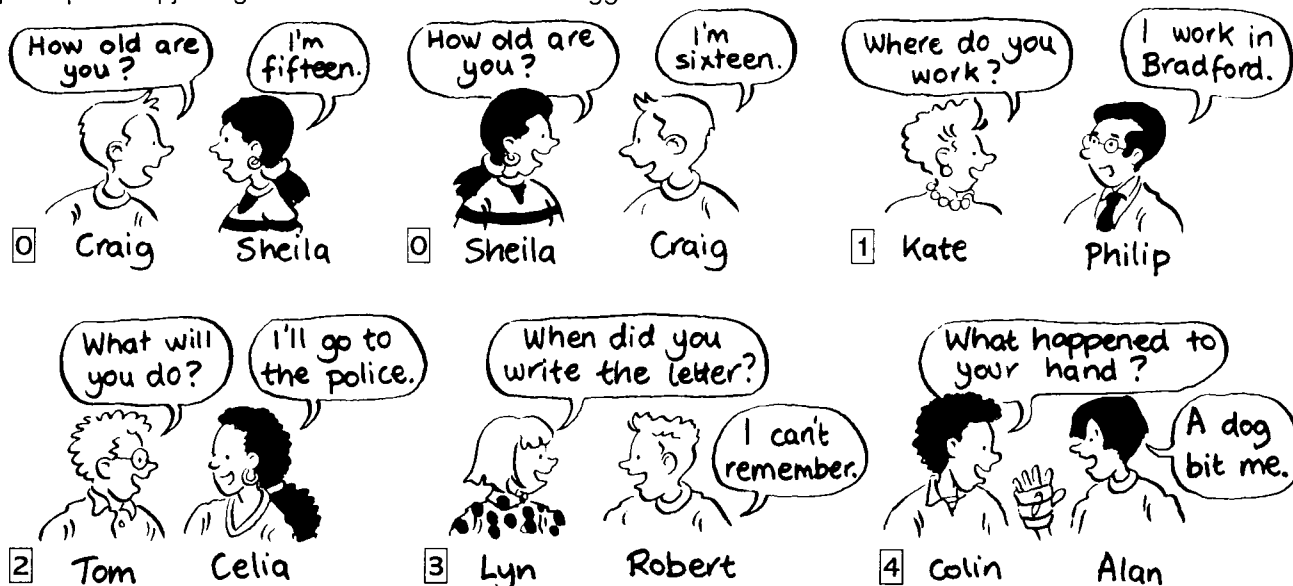
7 'I'll send the money immediately.'

My cousin the money immediately.

8 'Don't touch the wires, children. They're dangerous.'

Mrs Mackay the children the wires.
She said they were dangerous.

E A képek alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat függő beszéddel.



- 0 Craig *asked* Sheila *how old she was* and she said that *she was fifteen*
- 0 Sheila *asked* Craig *how old he was* and he told *her that he was sixteen*
- 1 Kate Philip and he said that
- 2 Tom Celia and she told
- 3 Lyn Robert and he told
- 4 Colin Alan and he told

F Olvassuk el a következő párbeszédet, amely egy diáklány és a munkaközvetítő alkalmazottja között zajlott. Ezután egészítsük ki Julie barátnőjének írt levelét.

- WOMAN: Good morning. What can I do for you?
- JULIE: Good morning. I want to find a job for the summer. Do you have anything?
- WOMAN: Have you thought about what kind of job you'd like?
- JULIE: Well, I have a friend who's going to be an au pair in Quebec. I'd like to do that.
- WOMAN: All right, fill in this form, please. Now, you'll probably need French to work in Quebec. Can you speak French?
- JULIE: Yes, I studied it for five years at school.
- WOMAN: Good. Do you have any experience as an au pair?
- JULIE: I've done a lot of baby-sitting.
- WOMAN: Well, I'll probably be able to get you something, but I can't guarantee you anything. I'll phone you in a couple of weeks. In the meantime, it would be a good idea for you to ask about insurance. Most importantly, don't go to Canada without the promise of a job. It's too risky.
- JULIE: Thank you. I'll speak to you in a couple of weeks then. Goodbye.

Dear Wendy,

How are you? I hope you're well.

Yesterday I went to a job agency and I spoke to a very nice woman. I told her that
0 *I wanted* a summer job and I asked her 0 *if she had* anything. She asked
me what kind of job 1 and I told her 2 an au pair in
Quebec. She asked me 3 a form and then she asked me 4
French. I said 5 it for five years at school and she seemed happy with that.
She asked me 6 experience as an au pair and I told her 7
a lot of baby-sitting. She said 8 me something but she 9
anything. She told me 10 in a couple of weeks. She advised me
11 insurance and warned me 12 Canada without the
promise of a job. So for the moment that's all my news, but I hope I'll know something
definite soon. It's very exciting!

Why don't we go together? Write soon and tell me what you think.

Love,

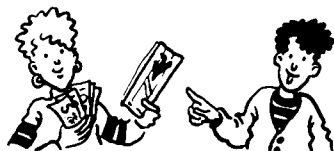
Julie

G Fordítsuk le a mondatokat.

- 1 Jim azt mondta, hogy nem tud új autót venni.
- 2 Miért mondtad az ellenőrnek, hogy nincs jegyed?
- 3 Az orvos azt tanácsolta apámnak, hogy ne dolgozzon olyan sokat.
- 4 Pamela megkért, hogy menjek el a bankba.
- 5 A tűzoltók azt mondták, hogy mindenki elhagyta az épületet.
- 6 Kérjük meg Tonyt, hogy segítsen.
- 7 Jack megkérdezte, hogy mikor küldtem el a levelet.
- 8 Néhány barátom mondta, hogy a következő héten meglátogat.
- 9 Kati azt kérdezte, hogy telefonált-e valaki.
- 10 Megkérdeztem a rendőrt, merre van a múzeum.

- 1 Az **and** (= és) és a **both ... and** (= is ... is) kötőszavakkal két hasonló dolgot kapcsolunk össze:

She is tired. She is hungry.
 She is tired **and** hungry.
 She is **both** tired **and** hungry.



We found **both** our tickets **and** our money.

- 2 A **but** (= de), a **however** (= azonban) és az **although** (= habár) kötőszavakkal két dolog különbségét mutatjuk meg:

He swims. He doesn't play tennis.
 He swims, **but** he doesn't play tennis.

- A **but** előtt vesszőt teszünk:
*I live in Bristol, **but** I work in London.*
- A **however** az előző mondatban foglaltakkal ellentétes közlést vezet be:
*I live in Bristol. **However**, I work in London.*
 (= Bristolban lakom, viszont Londonban dolgozom.)
- Az **although** állhat a mondat elején, és két tagmondat között is:
***Although** I live in Bristol, I work in London.*
 (= Noha Bristolban élek, ...)
*I work in London **although** I live in Bristol.*

A **however** és az **although** formálisabbak, mint a **but**, és inkább az írott nyelvben használatosak.

- 3 A **so** (= így, ezért) az adott helyzetet és annak az eredményét kapcsolja össze:

HELYZET	EREDMÉNY
I'm tired.	I'm going to bed.
I'm tired, so I'm going to bed.	

*They were late, **so** they missed the train.*

Gyakorlatok

- A** Kössük össze a mondatokat a **both ... and** szerkezet használatával.

0 Jane owns a shop. She owns a restaurant.

*Jane owns **both** a shop **and** a restaurant.*

1 This restaurant is cheap. It is good.

2 Christine bought a dress. She bought a jumper.

3 They play volleyball. They play tennis.

4 The film was funny. It was exciting.

- B** Egészítsük ki a következő szöveget az **although**, **but**, **though**, **however** vagy **so** kötőszó használatával.

The United States, Canada and Australia have a majority of English speakers, ⁰ **but** there are also speakers of many other languages in all three countries. In the US there has been a lot of immigration from Spanish-speaking countries ¹ many US citizens speak English and Spanish. ² Australia is an enormous country, all Australians speak English with the same accent. ³, there are also more than 200 Aboriginal

languages. Not many people speak these languages today ⁴ In most of Canada, English is the official language. ⁵, in the province of Quebec, the official language is French. There are always arguments about who speaks the best English. British people sometimes say: "Americans don't speak proper English. We usually understand them, ⁶"

C Írjuk át a mondatokat **however** vagy **although** használatával, a példa alapján.

- 0 There were a lot of clouds. However, the climbers decided to continue.
Although there were a lot of clouds, the climbers decided to continue.
- 0 Although the team is playing very badly, we still have the same manager.
 The team is playing *very badly. However, we still* have the same manager.
- 1 Although there is a good train service, Victor insists on going to work by car.
 There is a insists on going to work by car.
- 2 We read the instructions carefully. However, we didn't understand them.
 understand them.
- 3 The police searched all day. However, they didn't find the body.
 find the body.
- 4 Although Tom's grandmother had a lot of money, she didn't leave any of it to him.
 Tom's grandmother leave any of it to him.

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **but** illetve **so** kötőszóval.

- 0 The film was very long, *but* it was interesting.
 *so* we got home late.
- 1 The restaurant is very expensive, the food is terrible.
 only rich people go there.
- 2 I'm studying hard, I don't have much free time.
 I'm not making much progress.
- 3 I've got her address, I can write to her.
 I haven't got her phone number.
- 4 We wanted to swim, we went to the seaside.
 the sea was too cold.
- 5 They didn't have any money, they wanted to eat in a restaurant.
 they couldn't go to a restaurant.

E Egészítsük ki a szöveget a megadott szavakkal.

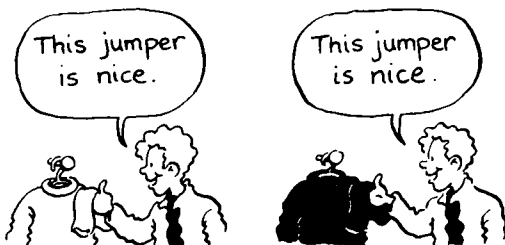
although and both but however so (x2)

Thank you for your letter ⁰ *and* the cheque. You asked me to buy a T-shirt
¹ you didn't say what size. Please let me know soon ²
 I have plenty of time to find a nice one. ³ I have difficulty when people
 speak to me, I am really enjoying my stay in Scotland because ⁴ the
 weather and the people are kind to me. ⁵, I'm not too happy with the
 food, ⁶ I sometimes have a pizza in an Italian restaurant.

Andrea

Both (... and); either (... or); neither (... nor)

- 1 A **both** (= mindkettő), az **either** (= egyik, valamelyik) és a **neither** (= egyik sem) segítségével két dologról vagy két személyről beszélünk. Nézzük meg az alábbi példát a **both ... and** kötőszavakkal:



Both the white jumper and the black jumper are nice. He doesn't know which one to buy.
(= Mind a fehér, mind a fekete pulóver szép.)
Így is mondhatjuk: *Both jumpers are nice.*
(= Mindkét pulóver szép.)

- 2 Nézzük meg a példát az **either ... or** (= vagy ... vagy) használatára. Az **either** szót nem feltétlenül kell beletenni a mondatba:
Chris will visit us on (either) Monday or Tuesday.
(= Chris vagy hétfőn, vagy kedden fog minket meglátogatni.)
Jeff's company is going to send him to (either) Australia or India, but he doesn't know which.

Az **either** tagadó mondatban is használható:
Jeff hasn't been to either country. (= Jeff egyik országban sem járt. – a kettő közül)
Figyelem! Ha az igét tagadjuk (**hasn't been**), további tagadás a mondatban már nem lehetséges, tehát **either**, NEM **neither**.

- 3 Nézzük meg a **neither ... nor** (= sem ... sem) használatát:



Neither the black jacket nor the white jacket fitted her. (= Sem a fekete, sem a fehér dzseki nem volt jó rá.)

Így is mondhatjuk: *Neither jacket fitted her.*
(= Egyik dzseki sem volt jó rá.)

Figyelem! A **neither** és a **neither ... nor** után az ige állító alakban van (**fitted**), mert a tagadást a **neither** és a **nor** fejezi ki:

NEM: *Neither jacket didn't fit her.*
Jeff hasn't been to neither country.

- 4 A **both**, **either** és **neither** kötőszavakat így is használhatjuk:

both either neither	of	the my his these	+ FŐNÉV TÖBBES SZÁMBAN
---------------------------	----	---------------------------	---------------------------

IGE TÖBBES
SZÁMBAN

Both of these suitcases are heavy.

I haven't seen either of the films.

IGE EGYES VAGY
TÖBBES SZÁMBAN

Neither of his sisters was/were there.

Így is mondhatjuk:

both/either/neither + of + them/us

He has two cars, but neither of them works.
(= Két autója van, de egyik sem működik.)

A **both**, az **either** és a **neither** önállóan, főnév nélkül is használható, ha kiderül a szövegkörnyezetből, kiről/miről van szó:

A: *What do you think of the two cars?*

B: *I like both.* (= Mind a kettő tetszik.)

C: *Well, I don't like either.* (VAGY: *I like neither.*)
(= Egyik sem tetszik.)

Gyakorlatok

- A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **either** vagy **neither** kötőszóval.

- I'm going to buy **either** the green shirt or the blue shirt.
- She lent me two books, but I haven't read of them.
- John looked at Jim, but they didn't speak. of them said anything.
- of the two jobs seemed very attractive, so I didn't apply for of them.

- 4 You can have fish or chicken for dinner.
- 5 There were two films on TV, but of them looked very interesting.
- 6 I haven't seen James or Julie this week, and of them has phoned me.
- 7 I looked for my bag in the living-room and in the kitchen, but it wasn't in room.
- 8 I rang two friends, but of them was at home. They had gone out.
- 9 You can catch the number 12 bus or the number 15 bus to the city centre.
- 10 She didn't get of the jobs she applied for.
- 11 I asked two people, but of them could give me directions.
- 12 We can see the film tonight or tomorrow night.

B A táblázatban megadott információ alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **both of them** vagy **neither of them** szókapcsolattal.

	Grand Hotel	Landmark Hotel
It has a swimming pool.	✓	✓
It is in the city centre.	✓	✓
It costs more than £100 a night.	✗	✗
It offers lower prices at weekends.	✓	✓
It organizes tours of the city.	✗	✗
It accepts credit cards.	✓	✓
It meets guests at the airport.	✗	✗

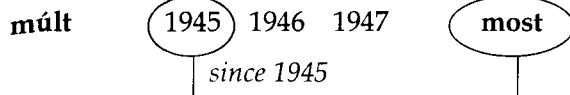
- 0 **Both of them** have swimming pools.
- 1 are in the city centre.
- 2 costs more than £100 a night.
- 3 offer lower prices at weekends.
- 4 organizes tours of the city.
- 5 accept credit cards.
- 6 meets guests at the airport.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **both/either/neither + of + us/them** (pl. **neither of us**) szerkezettel.

- 0 I went to the concert with Mary, but **neither of us** enjoyed it very much because it was very boring.
- 1 There are two flights we can catch to New York. Both flights cost the same amount, so we can choose
- 2 I played two games against Harry, and I lost because he is a much better player than me.
- 3 I saw Jane and Alison walking down the street and I waved at them, but saw me because they were talking.
- 4 I looked at George, and George looked at me. Then started to laugh because it was such a funny situation.
- 5 A man spoke to us but could understand him, so we didn't answer.
- 6 Tim and I wanted to go to the game, but could get tickets, so we watched it on TV.
- 7 I wanted to buy a new camera. There were two cameras in the shop that I liked, but they were very expensive. I couldn't afford, so I didn't buy anything.
- 8 Ann and I worked very hard all day. were very tired in the evening, so we didn't go out.
- 9 We went into two restaurants, but were full. We couldn't get a table at either.

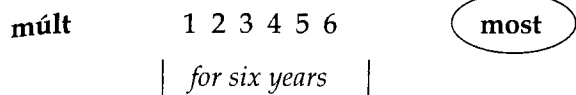
- 1** A **since** (= óta) elöljárószó után időpont (pl. **6 o'clock, yesterday**), évszám (pl. **1945**) vagy esemény (pl. **the end of the war**) állhat:
There hasn't been a world war since 1945.
Things have changed a lot since the end of the war.

A **since** + időpont szerkezettel olyan cselekvésre vagy eseményre utalunk, amely az említett időpontban kezdődött, és a beszéd pillanatában még tart, vagy éppen most ért véget:



A **since** elöljárószóval alkotott szerkezet mellett általában Present Perfect (**have changed**) áll. Ha az időpontot mellékmondatként nevezzük meg, a mellékmondatban egyszerű múltat (**ended**) használunk:
Things have changed a lot since the war ended.

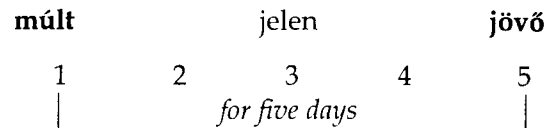
- 2** A **for** elöljárószó bizonyos időtartamra (pl. hat évig) utal, és a **How long?** kezdetű kérdésre válaszol:
A: *How long did the war continue?*
B: *The war continued for six years.*



Az előző példában az ige egyszerű múltban van (**continued**), de a **for** elöljárószó más típusú mondatokban is használható, és más igeidő is állhat mellette: jelen, jövő vagy Present Perfect.

A: *How long is Mary staying?*

B: *She's staying for five days.* (= Öt napig.)



It will probably snow for several hours.

- 3** Amikor az időtartam kezdetéről és végéről beszélünk, a **from ... to ...** (= ...-tól ...-ig) (NEM: **since**) elöljárószót használjuk:
The war lasted from 1939 to 1945.
- 4** Az **ago** (= valamennyi idővel ezelőtt) névutóval alkotott szókapcsolat előtt egyszerű múltat használunk:
A: *When did the Second World War start?*
B: *It started over sixty years ago.*
- 5** Az alábbi mondatokban a **first** azt jelenti, 'először', a **last** jelentése 'utoljára':
Jane and Bill first met ten years ago.
The planet Pluto was first seen in 1940.
A: *When did you last visit Scotland?*
B: *I last visited Scotland two years ago.*

Gyakorlatok

- A** Válaszoljunk a kérdésekre a megadott időhatározókkal az összes lehetséges módon. A cselekvő személye (**they**) minden mondatban más emberekre vonatkozik.

for three years	for three years	from 1980 to 1989	in 1999	in 1999
since 1996	since the war	six months ago		

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| When did they live in Japan? | 0 They lived in Japan <i>in 1999</i> |
| | 1 They lived in Japan |
| | 2 They lived in Japan |
| How long have they lived here? | 3 They have lived here |
| | 4 They have lived here |
| | 5 They have lived here |
| When did they come here? | 6 They came here |
| | 7 They came here |

B Egészítsük ki a Winston Churchillről szóló mondatokat **ago**, **for**, **first**, **from** vagy **to** és a megadott adatok használatával.

Born 1874	Chancellor of the Exchequer 1924–29
Army officer 1895–1899	Prime Minister 1940–45, 1951–55
Member of Parliament 1900–1915, 1916–1965	Died 1965

Churchill was born over 130 years ⁰ *ago*..... He was in the army ¹
 4 years, ² 1895 ³ 1899. He ⁴ became an M.P. in
 1900. He was Chancellor of the Exchequer (Finance Minister) ⁵ 5 years. He
⁶ became Prime Minister over 60 years ⁷ and was Prime
 Minister ⁸ a total of 9 years. He died over 40 years ⁹

C Alkossunk mondatokat a zárójelben lévő szavakkal az adott információ alapján **for**, **since** vagy **ago** használatával. Ügyeljünk a megfelelő igeidőre.

- 0 I haven't seen Bill since his birthday. That was four months ago.
 (I/not/see/Bill/four months) *I haven't seen Bill for four months.*
 (I/last/see/Bill/four months/) *I last saw Bill four months ago.*
- 1 We haven't spoken to Jane since her accident. That was two weeks ago.
 (We/not/speak/to Jane/two weeks)
 (We/last/speak/to Jane/two weeks/)
- 2 Helen last visited Rome twenty years ago when she was a student.
 (Helen/not/visit/Rome/twenty years)
 (Helen/not/visit/Rome/she/be/a student)
- 3 Mary got married two years ago. We haven't seen Mary since her wedding.
 (We/last/see/Mary/two years/)
 (We/not/see/Mary/two years)
 (We/not/see/her/she/get/married)

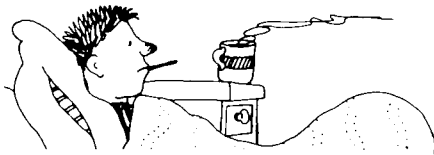
D Olvassuk el a következő szöveget.

The film *The Storm* was made in 1972. The stars were Anna Strong and Douglas Wild; they had never met before. The film took eleven months to make, from January to November 1972, and it cost a lot of money. Luckily, it was an enormous success and it was shown in cinemas from 1972 to 1977. Anna and Douglas met for the last time in 1992; they did not see each other again as Anna died in a car accident in 1993.

A szöveg alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat.

- 0 A: When *was* *The Storm* *made* ?
 B: It *was made* over thirty years *ago*
- 1 A: Anna and Douglas first meet?
 B: They in 1972, when they made *The Storm*.
- 2 A: did the film take to make?
 B: It eleven months to make, January to November.
- 3 A: When Anna and Douglas meet?
 B: They last in 1992.
- 4 A: has Anna been dead?
 B: She dead 1993.

- 1 A cselekvés okára a **why** (= miért) kérdőszóval kérdezzünk, a kérdésre pedig a **because** (= mert) kötőszóval kezdődő mondatral válaszolhatunk.



Jack's in bed **because of his flu.**
(= ... mert influenzás.)

A: **Why** didn't you go out?

B: (We didn't go out) **because** it was raining.
(= ... mert esett az eső.)

Okhatározói mellékmondatban az **as** és **since** (= mivel) kötőszókat is használhatjuk.
*It was raining on Tuesday. **As/Since** it was raining, we didn't go out.*
(= Mivel esett az eső, ...)

A **because of** (= miatt) után főnév áll (pl. **flu, storm, noise**):

*Jack's in bed **because of his flu.**
We couldn't go out **because of the storm.**
I couldn't sleep **because of the noise.***

- 2 Az **in case** jelentése 'hátha' 'arra az esetre, ha':

*I'm taking an umbrella **in case** it rains.*
(= Viszek ernyőt, hátha esik/esni fog.)
*I'll phone John now, **in case** he wants to come with us.*

- 3 A **so** (= így, ezért) kötőszó után a cselekvés vagy esemény következményét közöljük:

*I was in a hurry, **so** I took a taxi.*
(= Siettem, ezért ültem taxiba.)
*Jack has got the flu, **so** he's in bed.*
*The weather was terrible, **so** we couldn't go out.*
*My neighbours were having a party and making a lot of noise, **so** I couldn't sleep.*

- 4 A **so that** (= azért, hogy) segítségével a cselekvés célját adjuk meg:

*I took a taxi **so that** I would arrive on time.*
(= Azért ültem taxiba, hogy idejében odaérjek.)
*I listen to the news in the morning **so that** I know what's happening in the world.*
*Tom goes jogging every day **so that** he won't get fat.* (= ... hogy ne hízzon meg.)
*I took a taxi **so that** my friends would not have to wait for me.*
A főnévi igenév + **to** szerkezettel is célt fejezhetünk ki (ld. 117. fejezet).

Gyakorlatok

- A Alakítsuk át a mondatokat a példák alapján.

- 0 Tom didn't want to go out because he had a cold.
Tom didn't want to go out because of *his cold.*
- 0 Take some money because you might need to take a taxi.
Take some money in case *you need to take a taxi.*
- 0 John and I asked for a drink because we were thirsty.
John and I were thirsty , so *we asked for a drink.*
- 1 Mary went to bed because she was tired.
..... , so
- 2 I couldn't sleep because it was so hot.
..... the heat.
- 3 Jill doesn't like apples, so she doesn't eat them.
..... because

- 4 The streets were crowded because of the football match.
 there was a football match.
- 5 I'll give Jane a key to the house because she might get home before me.
 in case

B Fejezzük be a mondatokat **because**, **in case** vagy **so** kötőszó és a megfelelő tagmondat segítségével.

I'll take a book to read	I want to lose weight	there is a power cut this weekend
they had to wait for the next one	his passport was out of date	she's at home

- 0 They missed one bus, *so they had to wait for the next one.*
- 1 I don't know where my sister is, but I'll try phoning her
- 2 I'm eating less these days
- 3 Peter had trouble at the airport
- 4 It's a long journey,
- 5 We've bought some candles

C Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet a megadott szavakkal.

because (x2)	because of	in case	since	so (x2)	so that	to (x2)	why (x2)
--------------	------------	---------	-------	---------	---------	---------	----------

CATHY: Hello, Jenny! What are you doing here?

JENNY: I'm looking for some walking shoes.

CATHY: And ⁰ *why* is that?

JENNY: ¹ tomorrow is a big day for me. I'm taking a group of visitors up the highest hill in Derbyshire. They're in England ² learn English, but I suggested this trip ³ they can see our countryside as well. They liked the idea but they want to practise their English at the same time ⁴ I've invited some English friends as well.

CATHY: And ⁵ are you the leader?

JENNY: ⁶ my experience, of course! No, ⁷ be serious, it's ⁸ I suggested it.

CATHY: And ⁹ you suggested it, you have to do the work. But I know that you're not very experienced, ¹⁰ you might get lost.

JENNY: That's possible, but don't worry. I'm taking two good maps ¹¹ that happens.

D A következő mondatok némelyikében hiba van. Pipáljuk ki a hibátlan mondatokat, a hibákat pedig javítsuk ki.

- 0 A: Why are they tired? ✓
 B: Because ~~that~~ their long journey. *of*
- 1 I can't come tomorrow, so that I came today.
- 2 Take a sandwich with you in case you get hungry.
- 3 Julie had to go to the shops so she needed something for lunch.
- 4 A: Why are you here?
 B: I'm here for have a medical examination.
 A: Well, since you're here, so we can check your teeth as well.

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi példát:

John married a woman.

*John married a woman **who works in his office.***

(= John feleségül vett egy nőt, aki az irodájában dolgozik.)

A **who** vagy **that** vonatkozó névmással kezdődő mellékmondatban fontos információt közlünk a személyről, akire a névmás utal. Az ilyen típusú jelzői mellékmondatot, amely meghatározza, hogy melyik vagy milyen személyről van szó, kijelölő jelzői mellékmondatnak (defining relative clause) nevezzük. A mellékmondat előtt – a magyarral ellentétben – nem teszünk vesszőt.

További példák:

*Have you met Jackie? She's the girl **that sits next to Mike in class.***

(= Ő az a lány, aki Mike mellett ül.)

*The people **who live downstairs** are from Scotland.* (= ... akik a földszinten laknak ...)

2 Ha élettelen dologról vagy állatról beszélünk, a **which** vagy **that** névmást használjuk:

*He took the job **which paid the highest salary.***

(= Azt az állást választotta, amely a legmagasabb fizetést biztosítja.)

*Animals **that live in the desert** must conserve water.* (= Az olyan állatoknak, amelyek a sivatagban élnek ...)

3 Nézzük meg az alábbi mondatot:

*I know a man **whose wife won a million pounds on the lottery.*** (= Ismerek egy embert, akinek a felesége egy millió fontot nyert a lottón.)

A jelzői mellékmondatban a **whose** (= akinek a ...) vonatkozó névmást is használhatjuk. A **whose** általában élőlényre vonatkozik.

*The man **whose dog bit me** didn't apologize.*

(= A férfi, akinek a kutyája megharapott, nem kért elnézést.)

4 A **where** (= ahol) névmással helyre utalunk:

*I know a good restaurant **where you can eat very cheaply.*** (= Ismerek egy jó éttermet, ahol nagyon olcsón lehet enni.)

Ha valamilyen helyről beszélünk, három lehetőség van: **where**, **that** vagy **which**, vagy csak egy elöljárószó:

*The shop **where** he works is going to close.*

(= Az üzlet, ahol dolgozik ...)

*The shop (**that/which**) he works **in** is going to close.* (= Az üzlet, amelyben dolgozik ...)

Gyakorlatok

A Kapcsoljuk össze a mondatokat **who** vagy **which** névmás használatával.

0 We chose the hotel. It seemed to be the nicest.

*We chose the hotel **which seemed to be the nicest.***

1 She spoke to the man. He was standing next to her.

2 I read the letters. They came in the morning post.

3 He likes the other people. They work in his office.

4 She's that singer. She was on television last night.

5 Next week there is a festival. It takes place in the village every summer.

B Egészítsük ki a párbeszédet **who**, **which** vagy **where** vonatkozó névmással.

CAROL: Did you watch *Schooldays* last night? It's a new series ⁰..... *which*..... started last night.
DAVID: No, I didn't see it. Was it good?
CAROL: Yes. It was about a group of friends ¹..... were at school together. Well, Rupert ...
DAVID: Who was Rupert?
CAROL: He was an old student of the school ²..... had become a doctor. He went to a party ³..... he met a lot of people ⁴..... had been at school with him many years before. They talked about their schooldays and their lives since then. Then suddenly, Rupert looked across at the dance floor ⁵..... he saw an old girl-friend ⁶..... was dancing with John ...
DAVID: Don't tell me any more. It's getting too complicated!

C Kapcsoljuk össze a mondatokat **who** vagy **which** használatával.

- 0 The person phoned. He didn't leave a message.
The person who phoned didn't leave a message......
1 The bus goes to the airport. It leaves every twenty minutes.
.....
2 The picture was hanging near the door. It was horrible.
.....
3 The instructor taught me how to drive. He was very patient.
.....
4 The girl was sitting next to me. She started talking to me.
.....
5 The children sang in the choir. They were very good.
.....
6 The racing car went over some oil on the track. It crashed.
.....

D Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **who**, **which** vagy **where** és a megadott kifejezések használatával.

belongs to the Queen	Shakespeare was born
chooses the cabinet ministers	there is a lot of street entertainment
is famous for its street market	was married to Prince Charles
led Britain during the Second World War	wrote Hamlet and many other plays
many famous poets are buried	

- 0 The Prime Minister is the person *who chooses the cabinet ministers.*.....
1 Balmoral is a castle in Scotland
2 Westminster Cathedral is a church
3 Shakespeare is the author
4 Stratford on Avon is the town
5 Princess Diana was the woman
6 Portobello Road is a road in London
7 Churchill is the Prime Minister
8 Covent Garden is a place

1 Figyeljük meg a következő mondatokat:

Jane is the woman

ALANY
who
She

 came for dinner.

(= Jane az a nő, aki ebédre jött.)

Nézzük meg ezt a példát:

Jackie is the girl

TÁRGY
who
her.

 you kissed last week.

(= Jackie az a lány, akit a múlt héten megcsókoltál.)

Ebben a példában a **who** névmás a mellékmondat tárgya.

Amikor a **who**, **which** vagy **that** névmás a mellékmondat tárgya, akkor a vonatkozó névmás elhagyható:

Jackie is the girl you kissed last week.

Nézzünk meg egy hasonló példát:

The radio **that** I bought broke after only a week.
(= A rádió, amit vettem, már egy hét múlva elromlott.)

VAGY: The radio I bought broke after only a week.

2 Figyeljük meg:

You were **talking** to a girl. I think I know **her**.
I think I know the girl **who** you were **talking** to.
(= Azt hiszem, ismerem azt a lányt, akivel beszélgettél.)

VAGY: I think I know the girl you were **talking** to.

A **who**, **which** és **that** akkor is kihagyható a mondatból, ha az igéhez előjárószo tartozik (**to**). Figyeljük meg az előjárószo helyét a mondatban.

3 Ha a **who** névmás a mellékmondat tárgya, a **whom** alakot is használhatjuk, de a mai beszélt nyelvre ez nem jellemző:

She is the girl **whom** you kissed. (= Ő az a lány, akit megcsókoltál.)

4 A szükséges előjárószt hivatalos (elsősorban írott) nyelvben a **which** névmás elé is tehetjük – **that** névmást ezzel a szórenddel nem használhatunk:

The job **for which** he applied was in Canada.
(= Az állás, amelyet megpályázott, Kanadában volt.) (NEM: ~~The job for that he applied~~ ...)

A mai beszélt nyelv a következő szórendet használja:

The job (that) he applied for was in Canada.

Gyakorlatok

A Kapcsoljuk össze a mondatokat **who**, **which** vagy **that** névmás használatával.

0 She chose the books. She wanted to buy them.

She chose the books that she wanted to buy.

1 We ate the sandwiches. Jack made them.

2 I'm doing some work. I have to finish it today.

3 She's an old woman. I often see her when I go to the shops.

4 He's an actor. A lot of people like him.

5 It's a magazine. I read it sometimes.

6 She was wearing a red dress. She wears it for parties.

B A zárójelben megadott információ alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **that** vonatkozó névmás használatával.

- 0 (Jack made a table. It's not very strong.)
The table **that Jack made** is not very strong.
- 1 (I read about a new computer. I had seen it on TV.)
I read about the new computer
- 2 (Jane made a cake. Nobody liked it.)
Nobody liked the cake
- 3 (I was waiting for a bus. It didn't arrive.)
The bus didn't arrive.
- 4 (My sister wrote an article. The newspaper is going to publish it.)
The newspaper is going to publish the article
- 5 (I was talking to an old lady. She was 103 years old.)
The old lady was 103 years old.
- 6 (Mary sent me a letter. It was very funny.)
The letter was very funny.

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a **who** vagy **that** névmással, de csak ahol szükséges.

- 0 The match we saw was boring.
- 0 Did I tell you about the people **who** live next door?
- 0 The horse **that** won the race belongs to an Irish woman.
- 1 I love the ice-cream they sell in that shop.
- 2 The book I'm reading is about jazz.
- 3 The woman came to see us was selling magazines.
- 4 We'll go to a restaurant has a children's menu.
- 5 The factory closed last week had been there for 70 years.
- 6 Have you read about the schoolgirl started her own business and is now a millionaire?
- 7 Jane says that the house Tom has just bought has a beautiful garden.

D Állapítsuk meg, hogy hol szükséges a következő párbeszédben **who** illetve **that** névmást használni. Ahol a névmást feleslegesnek tartjuk, húzzuk ki.

PAULA: Have I shown you my holiday photos yet, Bob?

BOB: What? Oh ... well, I haven't got much time ...

PAULA: Come on, just a quick look. This is the hotel ⁰ ~~that~~ we stayed at. Isn't it lovely?
And these are the people ⁰ who stayed in the room next to us.

BOB: Very nice. What's that?

PAULA: Oh, that's the restaurant where we usually had dinner. And here's a picture of the waiter ¹ who always served us.

BOB: Great! What a lot of photos you took!

PAULA: Well, we saw so many wonderful things. Look! Here's an old castle ² that we went to look at, and this is the guide ³ who showed us around it.

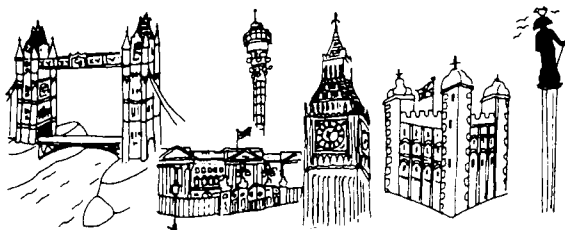
BOB: Well, you're certainly a keen photographer.

PAULA: Oh yes. Everyone ⁴ who I've shown them to says I have a gift for it.

BOB: That's great Paula, but now I really must run ...

PAULA: But Bob, you can't! There are three more packets ⁵ that you haven't looked at yet!

1 Nézzük meg az alábbi két mondatot:



- ▷ London is the capital of the United Kingdom.
- ▷ London, **which has over 6 million inhabitants**, is the capital of the United Kingdom.

A **which has over 6 million inhabitants** mellékmondat információt ad Londonnal kapcsolatban, de ahhoz, hogy a várost meghatározzuk, erre a kiegészítő információra nincs szükségünk – a főmondat enélkül is érthető. Ezt a mellékmondatot értelmező jelzői mellékmondatnak (non-defining relative clause) nevezzük, és vesszővel választjuk el a főmondatától. A **that** névmást itt nem használhatjuk.

2 A **which** vonatkozó névmással élettelen dolgokra és állatokra utalunk:

*Fred sold his computer, **which he no longer needed**, to his cousin.* (NEM: ... ~~that he no longer needed~~ ...)
*In the summer we stay in my uncle's house, **which is near the sea**.*

3 Ha a mellékmondat személyre utal, a **who** vonatkozó névmást használjuk (a **that** névmást nem):

ALANY
*Umberto Eco, **who** wrote *The Name of the Rose*, is a university professor.*
 (= Umberto Eco, aki 'A rózsza neve' című könyvet írta, egyetemi tanár.)

Ha a névmás a mellékmondat tárgya, **who** helyett a **whom** névmást is használhatjuk (ez a mindennapi beszélt nyelvre nem jellemző):

TÁRGY
*My boss, **who** (VAGY **whom**) I last saw before Christmas, is very ill.*

4 A **whose** névmást értelmező jelzői mellékmondatban is használhatunk:



*Marilyn Monroe, **whose real name was Norma Jean**, was born in Los Angeles.*

5 Amikor a névmás nem egy szóra, hanem a főmondatban megfogalmazott tényre vonatkozik, mindig a **which** névmást használjuk:

*Ann did not want to marry Tom, **which** surprised everybody.*
 (= Ann nem akart hozzámenni Tomhoz, ami mindenkit meglepett.)
 Ebben az esetben a **which** arra a tényre utal, hogy Ann nem akart hozzámenni Tomhoz.

Gyakorlatok

A Alkossunk összetett mondatokat a példa alapján. A mellékmondatban **who** vagy **which** vonatkozó névmás és az aláhúzott mondatrész szerepeljen.

- 0 Mont Blanc is between France and Italy. It is the highest mountain in the Alps.
*Mont Blanc, **which is between France and Italy**, is the highest mountain in the Alps.*
- 0 Arnold Schwarzenegger was born in Austria. He became one of the most successful actors in Hollywood.
*Arnold Schwarzenegger, **who was born in Austria**, became one of the most successful actors in Hollywood.*
- 1 The sun is really a star. It is 93 million miles from the earth.

- 2 John F. Kennedy died in 1963. He was one of the youngest American Presidents.

- 3 Mel Gibson is from Australia. He is a famous Hollywood actor.

4 The 1996 Olympics were held in Atlanta. It is in the southern state of Georgia, USA.

B Alkossunk összetett mondatokat a **who**, **which** vagy **whose** névmás és a zárójelben megadott mondat segítségével.

0 Walt Disney. (He created Mickey Mouse.) He started the most successful animation company in the world.

Walt Disney, who created Mickey Mouse, started the most successful animation company in the world.

1 Football. (It first started in Britain.) It is now one of the most popular sports worldwide.

2 Margaret Thatcher. (She was the Prime Minister of Britain for eleven years.) She studied science at Oxford University.

3 Michelangelo. (He lived until he was ninety.) He was one of Italy's greatest artists.

4 Michael Jackson. (His brothers and sisters were also singers.) He is now one of the richest solo artists in the world.

5 The Nile. (It runs through several countries.) It is the longest river in Africa.

6 Gandhi. (He helped secure India's independence.) He was assassinated in 1948.

7 Elephants. (They are found in Africa and India). They are hunted for their ivory.

8 Bill Clinton. (His wife is a brilliant lawyer.) He became President of the USA in 1993.

9 The Beatles. (Their music is still popular.) They were probably the most famous pop group in the world.

10 Brands Hatch. (It is not far from London.) It is famous for its motor races.

C Egészítsük ki a következő – Lewis Carrollról szóló – szöveget a **who**, **which** vagy **whose** vonatkozó névmással.

Alice in Wonderland,⁰ **which** is one of the most popular children's books in the world, was written by Lewis Carroll,¹ real name was Charles Dodgson. Carroll,² had a natural talent as a story-teller, loved to entertain children, including Alice Liddell,³ father was a colleague of Carroll's at Oxford University. One day Carroll took Alice and her sisters for a trip on the River Thames,⁴ flows through Oxford. After the trip, Carroll wrote in his diary that he had told the children a wonderful story,⁵ he had promised to write down for them. He wrote the story, illustrated it with his own drawings, and gave it to the children. By chance, it was seen by Henry Kingsley,⁶ was a famous novelist, and he persuaded Dodgson to publish it.

A Alkossunk összetett mondatokat a példa alapján. Használjuk a **who, which, that, whose** vagy **where** vonatkozó névmást, ahol szükséges.

0 Mary found a watch. It belongs to my brother.

Mary found the watch that belongs to my brother.

0 They were listening to a song. I recognized it.

I recognized the song they were listening to.

1 Jack applied for a job. He didn't get it.

Jack didn't

2 A girl is talking to your brother. Do you know her?

Do you know

3 The boys laughed at a joke. Paula didn't like the joke.

Paula didn't

4 A man was looking for his dog. I helped him.

I helped

5 A stranger paid for the drinks. Bill thanked him.

Bill thanked

6 I asked for a CD. The shop didn't have it.

The shop didn't

B Egészítsük ki B mondatait a **who, which** vagy **whose** vonatkozó névmással, és keressük meg a mondatok folytatását a jobb oldali oszlopban.

0 A: There are two towns called Birmingham.

B: I know. I mean the one *which*

a started the famous prizes.

1 A: There are several sorts of grapes.

B: I know. I mean the sort

b first name was Audrey.

2 A: There were eight English kings called Henry.

B: I know. I mean the one

c became a film star.

3 A: There were two film stars called Hepburn.

B: I know. I mean the one

d was made in black and white.

4 A: There were several Swedes called Nobel.

B: I know. I mean the one

e ~~is in the United States.~~

5 A: There are several films called *Hamlet*.

B: I know. I mean the one

f is used to make champagne.

6 A: There were two writers called Dumas.

B: I know. I mean the one

g is used in racing.

7 A: There are different kinds of horses.

B: I know. I mean the sort

h had six wives.

8 A: Charlie Chaplin had several daughters.

B: I know. I mean the daughter

i wrote *The Three Musketeers*.

0 e 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

C Egészítsük ki a következő meghatározásokat a **who**, **which** vagy **where** névmással és a megfelelő kifejezéssel.

allows you to see distant objects	makes people laugh	people eat	people go to dance
sells meat	takes photos	tells you the time	writes newspaper articles
you can buy almost anything	you can see animals	you can use anywhere	

- 0 A camera is a *thing which takes photos*.
- 1 A butcher is a
- 2 A restaurant is a
- 3 A zoo is a
- 4 A comedian is
- 5 A mobile phone is
- 6 A disco is
- 7 A telescope is
- 8 A journalist is
- 9 A hypermarket is a
- 10 A clock is a

D A következő mondatokban hiba van. Húzzuk át a nem megfelelő szót, és írjuk a mondat mellé a helyes megoldást. (Ha a szó helyett nem kell mást használnunk, húzzunk egy vonalat.)

- 0 Mary is the person who ~~she~~ gave me the pen. *—*
- 0 Did you see the man ~~which~~ left early? *who*
- 1 Jill knows a woman who's son works for the government.
- 2 There's a restaurant which you can eat English or Chinese food.
- 3 The number 59 is the bus which it goes to the airport.
- 4 The tall man is the one Mary spoke to him.
- 5 The food we ate it was not very good.
- 6 We got tickets from a man his wife works at the theatre.
- 7 The shoes that I bought them were quite cheap.
- 8 Please take me to someone which can explain what is wrong.
- 9 There's a girl in Anne's class her mother wrote a novel.
- 10 Is there a shop near here which you can buy foreign newspapers?

E Egészítsük ki a következő – Elton Johnról szóló – szöveget a **who**, **which**, **where** vagy **whose** vonatkozó névmással.

Elton John, 0. *who* was born in London in 1947, became one of the world's greatest pop stars in the seventies. Elton, 1. real name is Reginald Kenneth Dwight, was a talented child. He attended the famous Royal Academy of Music, 2. he studied mainly classical music. His father, 3. was an officer in the Royal Air Force, didn't want Reginald to listen to American music, but his mother let him listen to American singers when his father was away. After his studies he joined a band called Bluesology, 4. played in small clubs. The band included John Baldry and Elton Dean, 5. names he borrowed to become 'Elton John'. Soon he met Bernie Taupin, 6. has helped to write many of Elton's most famous songs, like *Candle in the Wind*, 7. Elton sang at the funeral for Princess Diana.

F Kapcsoljuk össze a mondatokat **who**, **which** vagy **whose** névmással.

0 Oxford lies on the River Thames. It is famous for its university.

Oxford, which is famous for its university, lies on the River Thames.

1 Many Scots speak Gaelic. It is very different from English.

2 John Lennon was killed when he was forty years old. He was a pacifist.

3 Joseph Conrad wrote dozens of novels in English. His first language was Polish.

4 The Atlantic and the Pacific are joined by the Panama Canal. It was opened in 1914.

5 The British Prime Minister in the 1980s was Margaret Thatcher. She was known as The Iron Lady.

6 Loch Ness is famous for its monster. It is very deep.

7 Pelé was a famous Brazilian football player. His real name is Edson Arantes.

8 Mark Spitz acted in several films. He won seven Olympic gold medals in 1972.

9 Jules Verne wrote *Around the World in Eighty Days*. It was made into a famous film.

10 Hillary Clinton became a US Senator in 2000. Her husband was the US President.

G Alakítsuk át a mondatokat a példa alapján.

0 The shop where he works is going to close.

The shop (that) he works in is going to close.

0 There was a big fire in the town that they live in.

There was a big fire in the town where they live.

1 They gave us a bedroom that Shakespeare had slept in.

2 The house where my grandmother was born has been sold.

3 Lots of people visit the club that the Beatles sang in.

4 What's the name of the road they live on?

5 Is Leicester one of the places where the coach stops?

6 This is the cupboard that we keep the glasses in.

H Húzzuk alá azt a részt (akár az egész főmondatot), amelyre a **which** névmás vonatkozik.

- 0 Ann did not want to marry Tom, which surprised everybody.
- 0 We wanted to try kangaroo meat, which has very little fat.
- 1 We had to call at the chemist's, which is opposite the bank.
- 2 My cousins didn't say thank you, which annoyed my father.
- 3 We asked for the restaurant's speciality, which is fish cooked in wine.
- 4 The story has many characters, which makes it difficult to follow.
- 5 Dr Talbot is an expert on malaria, which has no real cure.
- 6 Dr Talbot is an expert on malaria, which is why she was invited.

I Alkossunk jelzői mellékmondatot tartalmazó összetett mondatot a megadott szavakból a **who**, **whose** vagy **where** vonatkozó névmás hozzáadásával.

- 0 (again/been/came/hasn't/last/man/month)
The man who came last month hasn't been again.
- 1 (close/going/is/John/shop/to/worked)
The
- 2 (a/died/dog/later/the/prize/week/won)
The
- 3 (any/born/doesn't/exist/house/more/Napoleon/was)
The
- 4 (arrived/following/I/letter/sent/the/week)
The
- 5 (died/going/is/man/remarry/to/wife)
The
- 6 (helpful/I/spoke/to/very/was/woman)
The

J Fordítsuk le a következő mondatokat.

- 1 Az iskolában van egy barátom, akinek a mamája a BBC-nél dolgozik.
- 2 Az emberek, akik a felső emeleten laknak, még nem ismerik a szomszédaikat.
- 3 Ibiza az a hely, ahova sok angol jár nyaralni.
- 4 A motorkerékpárokat, amelyek nagy zajt csapnak, nem engedik be ebbe az utcába.
- 5 A bátyám, aki autószerelő, nem szereti a modern kocsikat.
- 6 Terry megbukott a vizsgán, ami mindenkit meglepett.
- 7 A Kilimandzsáró, amely Tanzániában van, Afrika legmagasabb hegye.
- 8 A ház, ahol lakunk, a tengerparton van.
- 9 Az olyan sofőrök, akik isznak, nagyon veszélyesek lehetnek.
- 10 A férfi, aki az ajtónál áll, egy levelet hozott.
- 11 Mi a címe a könyvnek, amelyet keresel?
- 12 A lány, akivel tegnap megismerkedtél, a nővérem.



Előtagok – prefixes (im-, dis-, over-)

1 Az angolban nemcsak toldalékkal (képzővel), hanem a szó elejéhez ragasztott előtaggal is képezhetünk új szavakat (pl. **practical** – **impractical**, **honest** – **dishonest**). Nézzünk meg néhány gyakran használt előtagot:

2 **dis- im- in- un-**

Ezeket az előtagokat ellentétes jelentésű szavak képzésére használjuk: agree – **disagree** (= egyetért – nem ért egyet); moral – **immoral** (= erkölcsös – erkölcstelen); dependent – **independent** (= valamitől függő – független); lucky – **unlucky** (= szerencsés – nem szerencsés).

További példák:

disadvantage (= hátrány), **disappear** (= eltűnik), **dislike** (= nem szeret), **disapprove** (= helytelenít), **distrust** (= nem bíz benne), **disorganized** (= szervezetlen)

impatient (= türelmetlen), **impossible** (= lehetetlen), **immature** (= éretlen), **imperfect** (= nem tökéletes), **impersonal** (= személytelen)

indirect (= közvetett), **independent** (= független), **inadequate** (= nem megfelelő), **incapable** (= képtelen), **inconvenient** (= kényelmetlen)

unable (= képtelen), **uncertain** (= bizonytalan), **uncomfortable** (= kényelmetlen), **uncommon** (= nem szokásos), **unemployed** (= munkanélküli), **unconscious** (= eszméletlen), **unfair** (= nem tisztességes), **unfortunate** (= szerencsétlen), **unhappy** (= boldogtalan), **unnecessary** (= felesleges), **unfriendly** (= barátságtalan), **unpleasant** (= kellemetlen), **untidy** (= rendetlen), **unusual** (= szokatlan)

3 **over-**

Az **over-** előtag hozzávetőleges magyar jelentése:

- 'felső, fölé' – pl. **overcoat**
- 'át, végig, túl' – pl. **overnight**, **overtake**
- 'túl, túlságosan' – pl. **overbook**, **oversleep**, **overtime**, **overcharge**

4 **under-**

Jelentése:

- 'alatt, alá, kevésbé' – pl. **underground**, **underline**, **undergraduate**, **underwear**, **underdeveloped**
- 'nem eléggé' – pl. **undercooked**, **undervalued**

5 **re-**

Jelentése: 'vissza, újra' – pl. **replay**, **replace**, **rebuild**, **refreshing**, **repay**, **return**, **repeat**.

Gyakorlatok

A Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavak és egy-egy odaillő előtag használatával.

- 0 It was very **unlucky** (lucky) that we lost the match.
- 1 Jim's so (organized) . He's absolutely (capable) of putting anything in the right place.
- 2 The rich countries have everything but the (developed) countries don't have enough to eat, which is so (fair).
- 3 We couldn't get on our flight because the airline had (booked) it. I wrote to complain but all I got back was a standard (personal) letter.
- 4 It's not (common) for (graduate) to leave university without taking a degree.
- 5 My daughters were very (happy) when they came home from the meeting. They said that there was a lot of arguing and the atmosphere became extremely (pleasant).
- 6 When the fog got worse, the planes were (able) to leave and we had to stay in Brussels (night).

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a megadott szavak és **over-** vagy **under-** előtag használatával.

night	graduate	line	ground	charged	booked	time	slept
-------	----------	------	--------	---------	-------------------	------	-------

- 0 The tourists were furious when the manager explained that there were no vacant rooms because the hotel had been overbooked.
- 1 My sister is still an, but she'll probably finish university next year.
- 2 There's an train to Barcelona which leaves at 10.00 in the evening and arrives at 8.00 the next morning.
- 3 Our block of flats has an garage.
- 4 The lecture started at 9.00 a.m., but I and didn't get there until 9.30.
- 5 The teacher asked us to the important parts of the text.
- 6 This bill is for £34, but it should be £29. I think you have me.
- 7 I don't mind working on Sundays as long as they pay me more!

C Egészítsük ki a mondatokat **re-** előtagot tartalmazó szóval.

- 0 On TV on Sunday evenings they always replay the best goals from the weekend's important football matches.
- 1 I didn't understand, so I asked her to what she had said.
- 2 The tyres on your car are very worn. You ought to them.
- 3 I have to the loan to the bank within three years.
- 4 After the Second World War most of Berlin had to be completely

D Keressük meg az alábbi kifejezések párját, és pótoljuk a hiányzó előtagot.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 0 It's getting harder to find work these days. | a Yes, it's definitely cooked. |
| 1 Look at that idiot driver! | b No, they seem to have just appeared. |
| 2 A lot of people don't pay their taxes. | c Don't be so patient! |
| 3 I like an ice-cold drink on a hot summer's day. | d Yes, I know. So many people are <u>un</u> employed. |
| 4 Can't you find your keys? | e Yes, I think they are very honest. |
| 5 This meat is still raw in the middle! | f He's trying to take a lorry on a bend! |
| 6 I really can't wait another minute. | g Me too. It's so freshing. |
- 0 d 1 2 3 4 5 6

E Írjuk át az aláhúzott szavakat a megadott előtaggal kezdődő, azonos jelentésű szavakkal.

- 0 Fiat 500s are quite rare now in Britain.
Fiat 500s are un. common now in Britain.
- 1 The smell from that factory really isn't nice.
The smell from that factory really is un.
- 2 Political commentators are not sure who will win the election.
Political commentators are un. who will win the election.
- 3 I don't like these enormous supermarkets. The service is so cold and unfriendly.
I don't like these enormous supermarkets. The service is so im.
- 4 Andrew is so childish. He behaves more like a young boy than an adult.
Andrew is so im. He behaves more like a young boy than an adult.

- 1 A képzők az adott szóból egy másik szófajhoz tartozó szó képzésére szolgálnak (pl. **comfort** – **comfortable** (= kényelmes), **work** – **worker** (= dolgozó).

Az angolban a következő képzők a leggyakoribbak:

2 -able -ible -ous -ive -y

Ezekkel a képzőkkel melléknévet képezhetünk: **enjoyable** (= élvezetes), **favourable** (= kedvező), **sensible** (= értelmes), **dangerous** (= veszélyes), **famous** (= híres), **poisonous** (= mérgező), **attractive** (= vonzó), **effective** (= hatékony), **hungry** (= éhes), **lucky** (= szerencsés), **rainy** (= esős).

3 -less -ful

Szintén melléknév képzésére szolgálnak: a **-ful** valami meglétére, a **-less** valami hiányára utal – pl. **cheerful** (= vidám), **successful** (= sikeres), **useful** (= hasznos), **wonderful** (= csodálatos), **careless** (= óvatlan), **harmless** (= ártatlan), **hopeless** (= reménytelen), **painless** (= fájdalommentes).

4 -ness -ment -tion/-sion -ance/-ence

Ezekkel a képzőkkel főnevet képezhetünk: **happiness** (= boldogság), **politeness** (= udvariasság), **argument** (= érv), **development** (= fejlődés), **government** (= kormány), **observation** (= megfigyelés), **pollution** (= környezetszennyezés), **selection** (= válogatás), **translation** (= fordítás), **discussion** (= megvitatás), **disappearance** (= eltűnés), **insurance** (= biztosítás), **correspondence** (= levelezés), **patience** (= türelem), **intelligence** (= intelligencia).

5 -an -ian -ist

Nemzetiséget és foglalkozást vagy más tevékenységet jelentő szavak képzésére szolgálnak – pl. **American**, **African**, **Indian**, **Italian**, **Argentinian**, **Russian**, **politician** (politikus), **librarian** (könyvtáros), **musician** (zenész), **scientist** (tudós), **physicist** (fizikus), **artist** (művész), **pacifist**.

6 -er -or

Ezeket a képzőket foglalkozást vagy valamilyen társadalmi szerepet jelentő főnevek képzésére használjuk – pl. **director** (rendező), **actor**, **singer**, **footballer**, **writer**, **painter**, **examiner**, **baby-sitter**, **manager**.

Gyakorlatok

- A A táblázat és a példa alapján egészítsük ki a mondatokat **-er**, **-or**, **-ist** vagy **-ian** képző használatával.

Name	Country	Activity
0 Spielberg	America	directing
1 Pavarotti	Italy	opera singing
2 Gandhi	India	pacifism
3 Enrico Fermi	Italy	science
4 Mandela	South Africa	politics
5 Maradona	Argentina	football
6 Tolstoy	Russia	writing

- 0 Spielberg is an *American director*.
- 1 Pavarotti is an
- 2 Gandhi was an
- 3 Enrico Fermi was an
- 4 Mandela is a

- 5 Maradona was an
 6 Tolstoy was a

B Egészítsük ki a mondatokat a zárójelben megadott szavakból képzett főnevekkel.

- 0 I had an **argument** (argue) with my brother because he insisted that Mozart was a **painter** (paint).
 1 (pollute) is the result of industrial (develop).
 2 If you want to be a (baby-sit) , you'll need a lot of (patient).
 3 Careful (observe) is fundamental in the work of an (art).
 4 As a young man my grandfather was a poorly paid (work), but later he became a (manage).
 5 I would like to work in a job that involved either (translate) or (correspond) with other countries.
 6 The (Govern) has now accepted the United Nations (Declare) of Human Rights.
 7 Before the school trip we had a (discuss) about what sort of (insure) we should have.

C Keressük meg a számozott mondatok második részét, és pótoljuk a hiányzó mondatrészeket a megadott szavakból képzett melléknévvel.

danger	enjoy	fame
hunger	luck	sense

attract	poison	wonder
sand	success	rain

- 0 **Famous** film stars are often
 1 The police warn that it is to drive fast
 2 We couldn't stop eating because we were
 3 I'm not sure whether they are clever or ,
 4 We had a very day at the coast
 5 It's not to eat wild mushrooms
 0 **c** 1 2 3 4 5
 a because we found a beautiful, beach.
 b in weather.
 c physically **attractive** .
 d but their business has been very
 e and the food was
 f if you think they might be

D Egészítsük ki a következő mondatokat **-ful** vagy **-less** végződésű melléknévvel.

- 0 Does it matter whether someone is ugly or **beautiful** (beauty)?
 1 Paul's writing is so (care); it's full of mistakes.
 2 His health is not very good but he's usually quite (cheer).
 3 In Europe mosquitoes are usually (harm).
 4 You have to work hard if you want to be (success).
 5 Mobiles are more (use) than fixed phones.
 6 Those families have lost everything; their situation is (hope).
 7 Everybody likes my mum because she is so (help).
 8 Giving blood is virtually (pain). You hardly feel a thing.

Morfológiai táblázatok

A táblázat A főnév többes száma

	EGYES SZÁM	TÖBBES SZÁM
+ -s A főnevek többsége Többes számban -s végződést kap:	book kilo radio shop tyre	books kilos radios shops tyres
+ -es Az -s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -x végű főnevek -es végződést kapnak:	bus dress glass dish wish beach watch box	buses dresses glasses dishes wishes beaches watches boxes
-y → -ies A mássalhangzó + -y végű főneveknél az -y -ie-re változik:	city family lorry story	cities families lorries stories
-f/-fe → -ves Az -f/-fe helyén többes számban -ves lesz:	leaf life shelf thief	leaves lives shelves thieves
Az -o-ra végződő főnevek többes száma -es:	potato tomato	potatoes tomatoes
Rendhagyó többes számú főnevek:	man woman child foot tooth	men women children feet teeth

B táblázat Megszámlálhatatlan főnevek

A leggyakoribb megszámlálhatatlan főnevek:	ice, water, rain, snow, heat, noise, cotton, glass, petrol, money, luggage, information, work, homework, advice, news, meat, milk, butter, bread, marmalade, food, tea, coffee, sugar, toast, cheese
A megszámlálhatatlan főneveknek nincs többes száma:	petrol (NEM petrols) bread (NEM breads)
A megszámlálhatatlan főnevek előtt nem állhat a/an névelő: de a következő szavakat használhatjuk: some/any, the, much (a many-t nem!), such, my/your/his stb.:	<i>I always have toast and marmalade for breakfast.</i> <i>I'd like some tea, please.</i> the : Look at the snow outside. much : How much luggage have you got? such : We've had such wonderful news.
Néhány főnév lehet megszámlálható és megszámlálhatatlan is:	<i>I heard a noise from downstairs. (megszámlálható)</i> <i>I can't sleep. The neighbours are making so much noise. (megszámlálhatatlan)</i>

C táblázat Present Simple (egyszerű jelen)

	I/you/we/they	he/she/it
+ -s Egyszerű jelenben az ige egyes szám harmadik személyben -s végződést kap:	leave make say work	leaves makes says works
+ -es Az -s végződés a -ss, -sh, -ch, -o vagy -x-re végződő igeéknél (pl. finish, go) -es lesz:	catch finish pass teach do go mix	catches finishes passes teaches does goes mixes
-y → -ies A mássalhangzó + -y végű igeéknél az -y-ból -ie lesz:	fly try carry study	flies tries carries studies

D táblázat Az igeek -ing-es alakja

	FŐNÉVI IGENÉV	IGE + -ing
+ -ing A legtöbb igehez járulhat -ing végződés:	ask go	asking going
-e + -ing A mássalhangzó + -e végű igeéknél az -e kiesik:	hope live take	hoping living taking
-ie → -ying Az -ie-re végződő igeéknél az -ie-ből -y lesz:	die lie	dying lying
A rövid magánhangzót követő rövid mássalhangzóra végződő igeéknél (pl. <i>run, swim, jog</i>) ez a mássalhangzó írásban megkettőződik:	get jog run swim	getting jogging running swimming
Nincs mássalhangzó-kettőzés ► -y vagy -w után (pl. <i>stay</i>), ► amikor az utolsó szótag nem hangsúlyos (pl. <i>LISten, VISit, WONder</i>):	borrow buy draw stay listen visit wonder	borrowing buying drawing staying listening visiting wondering
Az ige végén lévő -l hangsúlytalan szótagban is megkettőződik (pl. <i>TRÁvel</i>):	cancel travel	cancelled travelling

* Mássalhangzók: b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z

Magánhangzók: a e i o u

Szótagok: |hit| = 1 szótag |vi|sit| = 2 szótag |re|mem|ber| = 3 szótag

E táblázat Szabályos igék: múlt idejű alak és befejezett melléknévi igenév

	FŐNÉVI IGENÉV	MÚLT IDEJŰ ALAK	BEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV
+ -ed A legtöbb ige -ed végződést kap:	happen work	happened worked	happened worked
+ -d Az -e -re végződő igék -d végződést kapnak:	live phone	lived phoned	lived phoned
-y → -ied A mássalhangzó + -y végű igéknél az -y -ből -ie lesz:	study try	studied tried	studied tried
A rövid nél magánhangzót követő rövid mássalhangzóra végződő igéknél (pl. <i>stop</i>) ez a mássalhangzó írásban megkettőződik:	grab plan stop	grabbed planned stopped	grabbed planned stopped
Nincs mássalhangzó-kettőzés ► -y vagy -w után (pl. <i>enjoy</i>), ► amikor az utolsó szótag nem hangsúlyos (pl. <i>disCOVer</i> , <i>LISten</i> , <i>Open</i>):	allow enjoy discover listen open	allowed enjoyed discovered listened opened	allowed enjoyed discovered listened opened
Az ige végén lévő -l hangsúlytalan szótagban is megkettőződik (pl. <i>TRAVel</i>):	cancel travel	cancelled travelled	cancelled travelled

* Mássalhangzók: b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z

Magánhangzók: a e i o u

Szótagok: | *hit* | = 1 szótag | *vi* | *sit* | = 2 szótag | *re* | *mem* | *ber* | = 3 szótag

F táblázat Rendhagyó igék: múlt idejű alak és befejezett melléknévi igenév

FŐNÉVI IGENÉV	MÚLT IDEJŰ ALAK	BEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV	FŐNÉVI IGENÉV	MÚLT IDEJŰ ALAK	BEFEJEZETT MELLÉKNÉVI IGENÉV
be	was/were	been	make	made	made
beat	beat	beaten	mean	meant	meant
become	became	become	meet	met	met
begin	began	begun			
break	broke	broken	pay	paid	paid
bring	brought	brought	put	put	put
build	built	built			
burn	burnt	burnt	read	read	read
buy	bought	bought	ring	rang	rung
			run	ran	run
catch	caught	caught			
choose	chose	chosen	say	said	said
come	came	come	see	saw	seen
cost	cost	cost	sell	sold	sold
cut	cut	cut	send	sent	sent
			show	showed	shown/showed
do	did	done	shut	shut	shut
draw	drew	drawn	sing	sang	sung
drink	drank	drunk	sit	sat	sat
drive	drove	driven	sleep	slept	slept
			speak	spoke	spoken
eat	ate	eaten	spend	spent	spent
			stand	stood	stood
fall	fell	fallen	steal	stole	stolen
feel	felt	felt	sweep	swept	swept
find	found	found	swim	swam	swum
fly	flew	flown			
forget	forgot	forgotten	take	took	taken
forgive	forgave	forgiven	teach	taught	taught
			tell	told	told
get	got	got	think	thought	thought
give	gave	given	throw	threw	thrown
go	went	gone/been	understand	understood	understood
grow	grew	grown			
			wake	woke	woken
have	had	had	wear	wore	worn
hear	heard	heard	win	won	won
hide	hid	hidden	write	wrote	written
hit	hit	hit			
hold	held	held			
hurt	hurt	hurt			
keep	kept	kept			
know	knew	known			
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned			
leave	left	left			
lend	lent	lent			
let	let	let			
lose	lost	lost			

G táblázat A melléknév közép- és felsőfoka

	ALAPFOK	KÖZÉPFOK	FELSŐFOK
+ -er/-est Az egyszótagú melléknevek -er/-est végződést kapnak:	cheap long warm	cheaper longer warmer	the cheapest the longest the warmest
+ -r/-st -e-re végződő melléknevek:	late nice	later nicer	the latest the nicest
Az egyszótagú, rövid magánhangzót követő rövid mássalhangzóra végződő mellékneveknél (pl. <i>big</i>) ez a mássalhangzó írásban megkettőződik: -w-nél nincs kettőzés:	big hot wet few	bigger hotter wetter fewer	the biggest the hottest the wettest the fewest
more/the most Két vagy több szótagú mellékneveknél a more/the most szót használjuk:	beautiful expensive polluted	more beautiful more expensive more polluted	the most beautiful the most expensive the most polluted
-y → -ier/-iest A melléknév végén lévő -y (pl. <i>happy</i>) -i-re változik:	dirty easy happy lucky	dirtier easier happier luckier	the dirtiest the easiest the happiest the luckiest
Rendhagyó melléknevek:	good bad far little	better worse farther less	the best the worst the farthest the least
fewer és less A fewer alakot többes számú főnevekkel (pl. <i>shops</i>), a less alakot pedig megszámlálhatatlan (pl. <i>money</i>) főnevekkel használjuk:	<i>There are fewer shops in the centre of town than there used to be.</i> <i>John earns less money than Mary.</i>		

H táblázat Határozószók

	MELLÉKNÉV	HATÁROZÓSZÓ
+ -ly A legtöbb melléknévből -ly képzővel határozószót képezhetünk:	polite quick slow	politely quickly slowly
Megjegyzés: ► A melléknév végén lévő -y -i-re változik: ► A melléknév -ble végződéséből kiesik az -e :	easy happy lucky probable remarkable	easily happily luckily probably remarkably
Rendhagyó határozószók:	good fast hard late	well fast hard late

* Mássalhangzók: b c d f g h j k l m n p q r s t v w x y z

Magánhangzók: a e i o u

Szótagok: | *hit* | = 1 szótag | *vi* | *sit* | = 2 szótag | *re* | *mem* | *ber* | = 3 szótag

Tárgymutató

A számok nem oldalszámokat jelölnek, hanem a megfelelő fejezet számát adják meg.

- A**
- a few 79
 - a little 79
 - a lot
 - + közép fokú melléknév (a lot bigger) 88
 - a lot of 79
 - such a lot of 98
 - a/an 71, 73
 - + megszámlálható főnév 70–3
 - vagy the 71–2
 - able (végződés) 139
 - able to 49
 - above 99
 - abroad 96
 - absolutely 87
 - across
 - 'phrasal verbs'– igei kifejezések (come across) 67
 - mozgást jelölő elöljárószó 101
 - admit + -ing (admit doing) 113
 - advise
 - advise someone to do something 127
 - függő beszéd 127
 - afford to (do something) 114
 - afraid of 105
 - after
 - after that 96
 - + jövő idő (After the rain stops, we'll ...) 36
 - 'phrasal verbs'– igei kifejezések (look after, take after) 67–8
 - afterwards 96
 - ago 22, 132
 - agree
 - agree to do something 114
 - agree with someone 104
 - ahead 96
 - alany 40
 - személyes névmások 75
 - all 80
 - allow
 - allow someone to do something 118
 - be allowed to 50
 - almost 97
 - along 96, 101
 - already
 - a határozó helye a mondatban 97
 - Present Perfect + határozószó 19
 - also 97
 - although 130
 - always 8, 95
 - am 1–2
 - an (végződés) 139
 - an 71–2
 - ance/-ence (képző) 139
 - and 130
 - angry with 105
 - annoyed with 105
 - answer, elöljárószó nélkül
 - használt igék 104
 - any
 - any more 78
 - any vagy some 73
 - anybody 81
 - anyone 81
 - anything 81
 - anywhere 81
 - apologize
 - apologize for doing something 127
 - apologize for something 104
 - apply for (something) 104
 - are 1–2
 - argue about (something) 104
 - arrange (to do something) 114
 - arrive at/in 104
 - as
 - as + melléknév/határozószó + as (as big as) 91
 - as far as 96
 - as many/much as 91
 - as soon as, jövő idő 36
 - ask
 - ask for something 104
 - ask someone 104
 - ask someone to do something 118, 127
 - függő beszéd 127
 - függő kérdés (She asked if ...) 128
 - at
 - kifejezések (at best/worst) 106
 - at vagy to (at school) 96
 - 'phrasal verbs'– igei kifejezések (call at, laugh at) 67–8
 - hely 99
 - idő 100
 - sebesség (at 90 kilometres an hour) 106
 - at first 106
 - avoid + -ing (avoid doing) 113
 - away 96
 - 'phrasal verbs'– igei kifejezések (put away, throw away) 67–8
- B**
- back 96
 - 'phrasal verbs'– igei kifejezések (bring back, get back) 67
 - backward(s) 96
 - bad
 - worse (melléknév) 88
 - worst (melléknév) 89
 - badly
 - worse (határozószó) 90
 - be
 - + melléknév 39
 - am/is/are, állítás és tagadás 1, 40
 - am/is/are, kérdés 2, 40
 - am/is/are, Present Simple 1–2
 - been, Present Perfect 18
 - kérdés 40
 - was/were, Past Simple 12
 - be able to 49
 - be going to 31
 - vagy Present Continuous 34
 - vagy will 34
 - múlt idő (was/were going to) 37
 - szenvető szerkezet 109
- be used to + -ing 105**
- because 133**
- been vagy gone 18**
- befejezett melléknévi igenév 17**
- szenvető szerkezet 109**
- Past Perfect 26**
- Present Perfect 17**
- rendhagyó igék 363. old. F táblázat**
- szabályos igék 362. old. E táblázat**
- before**
- jövő idő 36**
- + Past Perfect 26**
- begin to do/begin doing 115**
- beginning: at the beginning of 106**
- behind 99**
- believe in (something) 104**
- belong to 68**
- beside 99**
- best 89**
- at best 106**
- better 88**
- between**
- hely 99**
- mozgás 101**
- birtokos névmások (my, your) 76**

bizonyosság (**She must be rich.**)
54
a múltban 55
tagadás 54–5
bored with 105
borrow és lend 65
both 130, 131
break into 67
bribe (someone to do something) 118
brilliant at 105
bring
bring back 67
bring something for someone 82
bring up 68
bring és take 65
busy
busy with 105
+ -ing (**busy working**) 105
but 130
buy (something for someone) 82
by
by accident/chance/mistake 106
by car/train 103, 106
by cheque 106
by email/post/fax/phone 106
by means of 106
by myself/by yourself 106
by the time 26
szenvető szerkezet 108
+ -ing (**by doing**) 103

C

call
call at 68
call for 67
call off 68
call on 68
call out 68
can 49
Can I?, Can you? 50
can't, lehetőség tagadása (**She can't be poor.**) 54
can't, múltbeli lehetőség tagadása (**He can't have been ...**) 55
can't/cannot 49
+ főnévi igenév 114
careless with 105
carry
carry out 68
carry és fetch 65
case, in case 133
catch
catch up on 48
catch up with 68
cause (someone to do something) 118

cél, rendeltetés 117
certainly 97
clean up 68
clear up 68
come
come across 67
come round 67
come up with 67
+ -ing (**come camping**) 113
complain
complain about something 104
complain that 127
consist of 68
continue to do/continue doing 115
cook (something for someone) 82
cost 66
could 49
could have, a feltételes mondat 3. típusa 122
Could I?, Could you? 50
could not/couldn't 49
függő beszéd 125
+ főnévi igenév 114
a feltételes mondat 2. típusa 120
valószínűség 54, 55
cruel to 105

D

dare (someone to do something) 118
date 86
deal with 68
decide to (do something) 114
definitely 97
deny + -ing (deny doing) 113
depend on (something) 104
deserve to do (something) 114
did/didn't 13
dis- (előtag) 138
discuss, igék előjárószo nélkül 104
dislike + -ing (dislike doing) 113
do
do/does és don't 4–5
vagy make 62
down
irány 96
'phrasal verbs'– igei kifejezések (**turn down**) 67
mozgás 101
downstairs 96
dress up 68

E

each other 83
-ed
melléknév (**frightened**) 93
vagy -ing, mellékevek (**frightened** vagy **frightening**) 93
befejezett melléknévi igenév 17,
362. old. E táblázat
363. old. F táblázat
Past Simple (egyszerű múlt) 13
either
either (... or) 97, 131
I'm not either 48
előjárószo 39
melléknév + előjárószo (**angry with, afraid of**) 105
kérdésben 104
kifejezések előjárószókkal (**in a suit**) 103
hely 99
mozgás és hely (**into/out of**) 101
idő 100
ige + előjárószo (**wait for, listen to**) 104
előtagok (**dis-, un-**) 138
else 81
enable (someone to do something) 118
-ence, -ist (képző) 139
encourage (someone to do something) 118
end, at the end of 106
enjoy
enjoy myself/themselves 83
+ -ing (**enjoy doing**) 113
enough 94
-er (képző) 139
értelmező jelzői mellékmondat (**London, which has over 6 million inhabitants, ...**) 136
even 97
eventually 97
ever
hardly ever 95
+ Present Perfect 18
felsőfok után (**best film ever**) 89
every (every day/week) 42, 95, 100
everybody 81
everyone 81
everything 81
everywhere 81
except 106
expect (someone to do something) 118
extremely 87

F

fairly 87
 famous for 105
 far
 középfok **farther/further** 88
 felsőfok **the farthest/the furthest** 89
 as far as 96
 How far? 42
 fast 90, 362. old. H táblázat
 fed up with 105
 feel
 + melléknév 39
 feel something move/moving 118
 'statikus' ige 66
 felsőfok 89
 felszólítás (**Go/Don't go**) 11
 feltételes mondat
 általános feltétel (**If I am ...**) 119
 a feltételes mondat 1. típusa (**If I am ...**) 119
 a feltételes mondat 2. típusa (**If he was ...**) 120
 a feltételes mondat 3. típusa (**If he had been ...**) 122
 feltételezés (**They must earn a lot.**) 54
 fetch
 és carry 65
 fetch something for someone 82
 few, a few 79
 fewer és less 364. old. G táblázat
 fill in 67
 finally 96
 find out 68
 finish + -ing (finish doing) 113
 first
 first/last 132
 fit, 'statikus' ige 66
 fond of 105
 for
 for ever 106
 for example 106
 for her sake 106
 'phrasal verbs'– igei kifejezések (call for, stand for) 67–8
 for sale 106
 cél (**What's it for?**) 117
 idő (**for four years**) 22, 132
 forbid
 függő beszéd 127
 forbid someone to do something 127
 force (someone to do something) 118
 forget
 forget doing 115

forget to do something 114, 115
 'statikus' ige 66
 forward(s) 96
 look forward to 67
 főnevek 39
 névelővel és névelő nélkül 71–2
 megszámlálhatatlan főnevek 70, 360. old B táblázat
 megszámlálható főnevek 70
 a főnév többes száma 69, 360. old A táblázat
 tulajdonnevek 39
 jelzőként használt főnevek (a **cardboard box**) 85, 87
 az értelmező jelzői mellékmondat 136
 főnévi igenév
 to-val vagy **to** nélkül 114
 szenvedő szerkezet + **to** + főnévi igenév 110
 ige + **to**, célhatározó (**He's gone to buy some fruit.**) 117
 ige + **to** vagy -ing 115
 ige + tárgy + (**to**) + főnévi igenév (**I asked her to come.**) 118
 frightened 93
 frightened of 105
 from
 távolság (**from ... to**) 42
 mozgás 101
 idő (**from ... to**) 22, 42, 100, 132
 front, in front of 99
 -ful (képző) 139
 full of 105
 Future Continuous (folyamatos jövő) 37
 Future Perfect Continuous 37
 Future Perfect 37
 függő beszéd 125–8
 függő kérdés (**She asked if ...**) 128
 névmások és határozószók 126
 kérés, utasítás, stb. 127
 say/said és **tell/told** igével 125

G

get 62
 + melléknév 62
 get at 67
 get away 67
 get away with 68
 get back 67
 get off 67
 get on 67
 get on with 67
 get over 68

get someone to do something 118
 get something done 111
 get something for someone 82
 get through 68
 get to 62
 get up 67
 have got 61, 66
 have got to 52
 szenvedő szerkezet + **get/got** (**it got stolen**) 110

give
 give in 68
 give something to someone 82
 give up + -ing (give up doing) 113

go
 go off 67
 go on 67
 go out 67
 go out with 68
 go over 68
 go with 67
 + -ing (go shopping) 113
 going to ld. be going to
 gone
 vagy been 18
 Present Perfect 18

go + -ing (go skiing) 113

gone vagy been 18

good
 középfok **better** 88
 felsőfok **best** 89
 good at 105
 no good 105

got ld. get
 grateful for 105
 grow up 68

H

had
 had better 57
 had to do 59
 Past Perfect 26
 had better 57
 hand in 67
 hard 90, 364. old. H táblázat
 hardly ever 95
 has ld. have
 határozatlan névmások 81
 határozószók 39
 + melléknév (**very hot**) 87
 határozószók és melléknevek (**quick, quickly**) 90
 mértéket jelölő határozószók 97
 összehasonlítás határozószóval (**more carefully**) 90
 alapfokú összehasonlítás határozószóval (**as quickly as**) 91

irányt jelölő határozószók (**up, down**) 96
határozószók függő beszédben 126
kételyt vagy meggyőződést kifejező határozószók 97
határozószó képzése melléknévből 90, 362. old. H táblázat
gyakoriságot jelölő határozószók (**always, never**) 4, 95, 97
rendhagyó határozószók 364. old. H táblázat
helyet jelölő határozószók (**here, there**) 96
módhatározók 97
a határozók sorrendje 90, 97
sorrendet jelölő határozószók (**first, second**) 96
időt jelölő határozószók 97
hate
hate to do 115
+ **-ing (hate doing)** 113, 115
'statikus' ige 66
would hate to + főnévi igenév 115
have
didn't have to 59
have és have got 61
have got to 52
have something done 111
have to do vagy **must do** 53
have to/ don't have to 52
Present Perfect 17
'statikus' ige 66
have got 61
have got to 52
he 75
head for 68
hear
hear a car crash/ the children singing 118
hear about something 104
'statikus' ige 66
help (someone to do something) 118
her 75, 76
here 96
hers 76
herself 83
him 75
himself 83
his 76
hold on 67
hope 123
hope to do something 114
how
+ melléknév 42
+ határozószó 42
How? 41, 44
How far? 42

How is ...? 44
How long? 24, 42
How many? 42, 78
How much? 42, 78
How often? 42
How old? 42
however 130
I
I (személyes névmás) 75
-ian (végződés) 139
-ible (végződés) 139
if
if only 123
függő kérdés (**She asked if ...**) 128
általános feltétel (**If I am ...**) 119
a feltételes mondat 1. típusa (**If I am ...**) 119
a feltételes mondat 2. típusa (**If he was ...**) 120
a feltételes mondat 3. típusa (**If he had been ...**) 122
ige + tárgy + (**to**) + főnévi igenév (**I asked her to come.**) 118
ige + **to** vagy **-ing** 115, 118
igeidők
jövő idő 31–4, 37, 109
Past Continuous (folyamatos múlt) 15, 16, 109
Past Perfect 26, 27, 29, 109
Past Simple (egyszerű múlt) 12–13, 16, 21–2, 27, 108, 109,
'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések,
363. old. F táblázat
Present Continuous (folyamatos jelen) 7–8, 10, 34, 109
Present Perfect 17–19, 21–2, 25, 109
Present Perfect Continuous 24, 25
Present Simple (egyszerű jelen) 1–5, 10, 33, 108, 109, 361. old. C táblázat
igék 39
segédigék 39
cselekvést jelentő igék 66
+ tárgy + (**to**) + főnévi igenév (**I asked her to come.**) 118
ige + részeshatározó + tárgy 82
függő beszéd 125–8
kérdés 41–5
szenvető szerkezet 108–10
felszólítás 11
+ **-ing (I like dancing)** 113, 361. old. D táblázat
rendhagyó igék 363. old. F táblázat

módbeli segédigék (**can, could, may, stb.**) 49–59, 114
+ **to** + főnévi igenév 114–15
+ **to** vagy **-ing** 115
szórend 40
'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések 67–8
+ elöljárószó (**wait for, listen to**) 104
Szabályos igék 'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések
to nélküli + főnévi igenév 114
'statikus' igék 66
jövő idő 31–8
múlt idő 12–30, 'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések, 363. old. F táblázat
Jelen idő 1–10, 361. old. C táblázat
im- (előtag) 138
imagine + -ing (imagine doing) 113
immediately 97
in
kifejezések (**in a suit**) 103
hely jelölése 106
'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések (**join in, give in**) 67–8
helyet jelölő elöljárószó 99
időt jelölő elöljárószó 100
in- (előtag) 138
in case 133
in front of 99
include, 'statikus' ige 66
-ing
melléknév (**frightening**) 93
melléknév + **-ing (busy working)** 105
am/ is/ are -ing, Present Continuous 7–8
come + -ing (come camping) 113
a mondat alanyaként (**Smoking is bad for you.**) 113
go + -ing (go skiing) 113
have/ has been + -ing, Present Perfect Continuous 24
is used to + -ing (is used to working) 105
feliratok (**NO PARKING**) 113
vagy **-ed, melléknév (frightened vagy frightening)** 93
elöljárószó + **-ing (by/ without doing)** 103
ige + **to** vagy **-ing** 115, 118
ige + **-ing (enjoy doing)** 113, 361. old. D táblázat
was/ were -ing, Past Continuous 15

inside 96
 instead of 106
 intend to do/intend doing 115
 interested in 105
 into
 'phrasal verbs' – igei
 kifejezések (**break into**) 67
 mozgás jelölése 101
 invite (someone to do something) 118
 irány meghatározása 96
 is 1–2
 -ist (képző) 139
 it rains/snows 84
 it takes an hour 84
 it 75
 it's (= it is) 76
 its 76
 itself 83
 -ive (végződés) 139

J

jelen idejű ige + **when, as soon as, until**, stb. 36
 jelen ld. Present Continuous;
 Present Simple
 jelzői mellékmondat
 kijelölő 134–5
 értelmező 136
 jelzők sorrendje 85
 join in 67
 jövő
 Future Continuous (folyamatos jövő) 37
 Future Perfect 37
 szenvedő szerkezet 109
 Future Perfect Continuous 37
 jövő
 egyéb szerkezetek 37
be going to 31
be going to, szenvedő szerkezet 109
 szenvedő szerkezet 109
 Present Continuous
 (folyamatos jelen) a jövőre vonatkozó jelentéssel 33
 Present Continuous vagy **be going to** 34
 Present Simple (egyszerű jelen)
 a jövőre vonatkozó jelentéssel 33
 jelen idejű ige + **when, as soon as, until**, stb. 36
will és **shall** 32
will vagy **be going to** 34
 just
 a határozó helye a mondatban 97
 + Present Perfect 19

K

keen on 105
 keep
 + -ing (**keep doing**) 113
 keep off 68
 képzők (-ence, -ist) 139
 kérdő mondat
 be (Am I?, Are you?) 2
 függő beszédben 128
How? 41
How far? 42
How long? 42
How many? 42
How much? 42
How often? 42
How old? 42
 függő kérdés (She asked if ...) 128
 szórend 40–1, 43
 előjárósó a kérdés végén 104
 Present Simple (egyszerű jelen) 5
 a kérdőnévmás tárgyi alakja 43
 'question tags' – utókérdés (It's ..., isn't it?) 47
What? 41, 43
What ... like? (What's she like?) 44
When? 41
Where? 41
Which? 41
Who? 41, 43
Whose? 41
Why? 41
 kérdő mondatok 41–4
 kérdés függő beszédben 127
 kifejezések előjárósókkal 106
 kijelölő jelzői mellékmondat 134–5
 kind to 105
 know
 'statikus' ige 66
 want to know 128

L

'll ld. **will**
 last
 first/last 132
 at last 106
 last weekend 100
 last/lastly 96
 late 90, 364. old. G táblázat
 laugh at 68
 lead to 68
 learn (to do something) 114
 least
 a melléknév felsőfoka (**least expensive**) 89
 at least 106

leave (someone to do something) 118
 left (left/right) 96
 lehetőség, valószínűség (She **may/might be out.**) 54
 a múltban 55
 lend
 és **borrow** 65
 lend something to someone 82
 less
 a melléknév fokozása (**less expensive**) 89, 364. old. G táblázat
 és **fewer** 364. old. G táblázat
 -less (fosztóképző) 139
 let
 let's 32
 let vagy **make** 63
 like
 + -ing (**like doing**) 113, 115
 like someone to do something 118
 like to do 115
 'statikus' ige 66
What ... like? (What's she like?) 44
 would like to + főnévi igenév 115
 listen to (something) 104
 little, a little 79
 live 25
 live up to 68
 long, **How long?** 42
 look
 + melléknév 39, 85
 look after 67
 look at/for 104
 look forward to 67
 look into 67
 look through 68
 look up/up to 67
 'statikus' ige 66
 What ... look like? 44
 look forward to 67
 lot
 + a melléknév középfoka (**a lot bigger**) 88
 a lot of/lots of 79
 such a lot of 98
 love
 + -ing (**love doing**) 113, 115
 love someone to do something 118
 love to do 115
 'statikus' ige 66
 would love to + főnévi igenév 115
 lucky at 105

M

make

make for 68

vagy **do** 62

vagy **let** 63

manage to (do something) 114

many 78

How many? 42, 78

as many as 91

so many 98

too many 94

matter, 'statikus' ige 66

may

+ főnévi igenév 114

May I? 50

lehetőség, valószínűség (**She may be out.**) 54

lehetőség a múltban (**she may have gone out.**) 55

me 75

mean

to do something 114

'statikus' ige 66

melléknevek 39, 85

a melléknév középfoka (**older, more famous**) 88, 364. old. G táblázat

a rendhagyó középfoka 88, 364. old. G táblázat

összehasonlítás alapfokon (**as strong as**) 91

-ed vagy **-ing** (**frightened** vagy **frightening**) 93

get + melléknév 62

melléknévként használt

főnevek (**a cardboard box**) 85, 87

sorszámnevek 86

a főnév előtt álló jelzők

sorrendje 85

+ elöljárószó (**angry with, afraid of**) 105

a melléknév felsőfoka (**the oldest, the most famous**) 89, 364. old. G táblázat

a rendhagyó felsőfoka 88, 364. old. G táblázat

-ment (képző) 139

might

+ főnévi igenév 114

might have a feltételes mondat 3. típusa 122

a feltételes mondat 1. típusa 119

a feltételes mondat 2. típusa 120

lehetőség, esetlegesség a múltban (**She might have gone out.**) 55

esetlegesség (**She might be out.**) 54

mind + -ing (**mind doing**) 113

mine 76

módbeli segédigék a múltban 55

ld. még: Past Continuous, Past Perfect, Past Perfect

Continuous, Past Simple,

Present Perfect

módbeli segédigék 49–59

mondat

feltételes mondat 119–22

szórend 40

kijelölő jelzői mellékmondat

(**... the girl who won.**) 134–5

értelmező jelzői mellékmondat

(**London, which has over 6 million inhabitants, ...**) 136

more

a melléknév középfoka (**more famous**) 88, 364. old. G

táblázat

any more 78

a határozószó középfoka

(**more carefully**) 90

more food 78

some more 78

most

a melléknév felsőfoka (**the**

most famous) 89, 364. old. G

táblázat

at most 106

most of 80

most people 80

much 78

+ a melléknév középfoka

(**much bigger**) 88

How much? 42, 78

as much as 91

so much 98

too much 94

must

bizonyosság (**She must be rich.**) 54

bizonyosság a múltban (**He must have been ...**) 55

+ főnévi igenév 114

must do vagy **have to do** 53

must/mustn't 51

feltételezés (**They must earn a lot.**) 54

mutató névmások 77

my 76

myself 83

by myself 106

N

near 99

nearby 96

nearly 97

need

need someone to do

something 118

need/needn't 58

'statikus' ige 66

neither

neither (... nor) 131

neither am I 48

nemzetiség 85

-ness (képző) 139

névelők (**a/an, the**) 71–2

a névelő elhagyása 72

never 95

+ Present Perfect 18

next

next to, helyre utaló

elöljárószó 99

sorrend 96

idő (**next Wednesday**) 100

no (**no food**) 73

no good + -ing (**no good**

worrying) 105

no one 81

nobody 81

none 73

none of 80

nor

(**neither ...**) **nor** 131

nor am I 48

normally 95

not worth + -ing (**not worth taking**) 105

nothing 81

notice

notice something

move/moving 118

'statikus' ige 66

nowhere 81

O

of 76

'phrasal verbs' – igei

kifejezések (**consist of**) 68

off

off work/school 96

'phrasal verbs' – igei

kifejezések (**go off, put off**) 67–8

irány jelölése 101

offer

+ két tárgy 110

offer something to someone 82

offer to do something 114

often 95
 How often? 42
 old, How old? 42
 on
 kifejezések előjárósóval 106
 'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések
 (call on, put on) 67–8
 hely 99
 mozgás/irány 101
 idő 100
 once
 once a day/week 95
 a határozó helye a mondatban
 97
 one
 no one 81
 és ones 69
 Which one/ones? 69
 only 97
 onto 101
 opposite 99
 -or (végződés) 139
 or, either ... or 97
 order
 függő beszéd 127
 order someone to do
 something 127
 ought to 57
 our 76
 ours 76
 ourselves 83
 -ous (képző) 139
 out 96
 out of (kifejezés előjárósóval)
 106
 out of (mozgást jelölő
 előjárósó) 101
 'phrasal verbs' – igei
 kifejezések (work out, sort
 out) 67–8
 outside
 helyhatározó 96
 helyet jelölő előjárósó 99
 over
 over here/there 96
 'phrasal verbs' – igei
 kifejezések (get over, go
 over) 68
 mozgás jelölése 101
 over- (előtag) 138
 own
 on my own/on your own 106
 'statikus' ige 66
 önálló birtokos névmások (mine,
 yours) 76
 összehasonlítás
 melléknév 88, 364. old. G
 táblázat
 határozósó 90
 alapfokú hasonlítás (as strong
 as) 91

P

Past Continuous (I was doing)
 15
 vagy Past Simple 16
 szenvedő szerkezet 109
 Past Perfect (I had finished) 26,
 'phrasal verbs' – igei
 kifejezések 362. old. E
 táblázat
 vagy Past Perfect Continuous
 29
 vagy Past Simple 27
 szenvedő szerkezet 109
 Past Perfect Continuous
 vagy Past Perfect Simple 29
 Past Simple (egyszerű múlt) 13
 Past Simple (I did) 13,
 'phrasal verbs' – igei
 kifejezések,
 363. old. F táblázat
 be 12
 vagy Past Continuous 16
 vagy Past Perfect 27
 vagy Present Perfect 21–2
 vagy used to 28
 szenvedő szerkezet 108, 109
 past, mozgást jelölő előjárósó
 101
 pay
 + két tárgy 110
 pay someone 104
 pay someone for something
 68, 104
 persuade
 függő beszéd 127
 persuade someone to do
 something 127
 phone, ige előjárósó nélkül 104
 'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések
 (get up, put on) 67–8
 pick up 68
 plan (to do something) 114
 please 11
 pleased with 105
 prefer
 prefer someone to do
 something 118
 prefer to do/prefer doing 115
 'statikus' ige 66
 would prefer to + főnévi
 igenév 115
 Present Continuous (folyamatos
 jelen – I am doing)
 állítás és tagadás 7
 jövőre vonatkozó jelentés 33
 kérdés 8
 vagy be going to 34
 vagy Present Simple 10
 szenvedő szerkezet 109
 Present Perfect (I have done) 17

+ ever, never, gone, been 18
 + just, already, yet 19
 vagy Past Simple 21–2
 vagy Present Perfect
 Continuous 25
 szenvedő szerkezet 109
 Present Perfect Continuous (I
 have been doing) 24
 vagy Present Perfect Simple 25
 Present Simple (I do) 1–2, 4–5,
 361. old. C táblázat
 állítás és tagadás 4
 be, állítás és tagadás 1
 be, kérdés 2
 jövőre vonatkozó jelentés 33
 kérdés 5
 vagy Present Continuous 10
 szenvedő szerkezet 108, 109
 pretend (to do something) 114
 probably 97
 promise
 + két tárgy 110
 promise to do something 114
 proud of 105
 put
 put away 67
 put off 68
 put on 67
 put up 68
 put up with 68

Q

'question tag' – utókérdés (It's
 ..., isn't it?) 47
 quite 97
 + melléknév 87

R

rarely 95
 rather, would rather 114
 re- (előtag) 138
 reach
 within reach 106
 ige előjárósó nélkül 104
 really 87
 recently 97
 recognize, 'statikus' ige 66
 refuse (to do something) 114
 relative clause – jelzői
 mellékmondat 134–6
 remember
 remember to do/remember
 doing 115
 'statikus' ige 66
 remind
 függő beszéd 127
 remind someone to do
 something 127
 rendeltetés, cél 117

right (right/left) 96
ring, ige előjárószo nélkül 104
round
 'phrasal verbs' – igei
 kifejezések (**come round**) 67
 mozgás/irány jelölése 101
 rövid válasz (**Yes, I am.**) 46
rub out 67
run away 68

S

's birtokos 76
say/said
 függő beszéd 125
 vagy **tell/told** 125
 sebesség kifejezése (**at 90 kilometres an hour**) 106
see
 see something move/moving 118
 see to 68
seem
 + melléknév 39, 85
 seem to do something 114
 segédigék, igék 39
sell/sold két tárggyal 82
send (something to someone) 82, 110
set off 68
shall és will 32
she 75
 short answer – rövid válasz (**Yes, I am.**) 46
should
 + főnévi igenév 114
 vagy **ought to** vagy **had better** 57
should have done 59
should/shouldn't 56
shout at (something) 104
show
 show something to someone 82
 to be shown something 110
shut up 68
sick of 105
sideways 96
since 22, 132
-sion (képző) 139
smell
 + melléknév 85
 'statikus' ige 66
so
 eredmény 130, 133
 cél 133
so am I 48
so many/much 98
so that 133
 és **such** 98
some 80
 + megszámlálható és

megszámlálhatatlan főnév 70
 vagy **any** 73
some more 78
some of 80
somebody 81
someone 81
something 81
sometimes 95, 97
somewhere 81
soon
 a határozó helye a mondatban 97
as soon as, utalás a jövőre 36
 sorrend 96
 sorszámnev 86, 96
 sorszámnevek (**first, third**) 86, 96
sort out 68
sound
 + melléknév 85
 'statikus' ige 66
speak és talk 65
stand for 68
start to do / start doing 115
stay in 68
still
 a határozó helye a mondatban 97
 + Present Perfect 19
stop + -ing (stop doing) 113, 115
straight on 96
such
 és **so** 98
such a lot of 98
suddenly 97
suggest + -ing (suggest doing) 113
sure about 105
surprised by 105
 számnevek
 tőszámnevek (**one, three**) 86
 sorszámnevek (**first, third**) 86, 96
twice a day/week 95
 személyes névmások 39
 tárgyi alak (**me, him**) 75
 függő beszéd 126
 kérdés alanyra és tárgyra 43
 önálló birtokos névmások (**mine, yours**) 76
 vonatkozó névmások (**who, that**) 134
 visszaható névmások (**myself, yourself**) 83
 alany (**I, he**) 75
 szenvedő szerkezet
 a **get** igével 110
 igeidők 109
 + **to** + főnévi igenév 110
 Past Simple 108
 Present Simple 108
 ige két tárggyal (**She was**

given a camera.) 110
 Szórend 40
 jelzők sorrendje 85
 határozószók sorrendje 90
 függő beszéd 127
 szórend 40

T

tagadás,
 szórend 40
 a létige (**be**) múlt idejű alakjai (**was not/were not**) 12
 Past Continuous (folyamatos múlt) 15
 Past Perfect 26
 Past Simple (egyszerű múlt) 13
 Present Continuous (folyamatos jelen) 7
 Present Perfect 17
 Present Perfect Continuous 24
 Present Simple (egyszerű jelen) 4
 a létige (**be**) jelen idejű alakjai (**am not, is not, are not**) 1, 40
take
 és **bring** 65
take after 68
take off 67
take something to someone 82
take up 68
talk
 vagy **speak** 65
talk to/about 104
 tárgy és részeshatározó (**She gave him a book.**) 82
 szórend 40
 szenvedő szerkezet tárggyal és részeshatározóval 110
 a személyes névmás tárgyi alakja (**me/him**) 75
 ige + tárgy + (**to**) + főnévi igenév (**I asked her to come.**) 118
taste
 + melléknév 85
 'statikus' ige 66
teach 25
 + két tárgy 110
teach someone to do something 118
tell
 függő beszéd 125, 127
 + két tárgy 110
tell someone to do something 127
tell/told vagy **say/said** 125
than (richer than) 88
that
after that 96
 függő beszéd (**She said that ...**) 125

jelzői mellékmondat 134–5
that car 77
the
 + megszámlálható és
 megszámlálhatatlan főnév 70
 vagy **a/an** 71–2
their 76
theirs 76
them 75
 four of **them** 84
themselves 83
then 96
there
 helyre utaló határozószó 96
 és **it/they** 84
there is/there are 2, 84
these 77
they 75, 84
think
 about (something) 104
 think of 68
 'statikus' ige 66
this
 idő jelölése (**this April**) 100
 this car 77
those 77
through
 'phrasal verbs' – igei
 kifejezések (**look through**) 68
 mozgás/irány jelölése 101
throw away 68
 tiltás 11, 51
 függő beszéd 127
times (three times a day) 95
 -tion/-sion (képző) 139
to
 távolság/irány (**from ... to**) 42
to + főnévi igenév, cél 117
 vagy **at (to school)** 96
 szenvedő szerkezet + **to** +
 főnévi igenév 110
 'phrasal verbs' – igei
 kifejezések (**look up to, live
 up to**) 67–8
 mozgás/irány jelölése 101
 idő jelölése 100
 ige + tárgy + (**to**) + főnévi
 igenév 118
 ige + **to** + főnévi igenév
 114–15
told ld. **tell**
too
I am too 48
 a határozó helye a mondatban
 97
too big 94
too much/many 94
towards 101
 tőszámnevek (**one, three**) 86
try
 + -ing (**try doing**) 115
try on 68

try to do something 114–115
turn
turn down/off 67
turn up/on 67
U
 ugye kérdés ('question tag') 47
un- (előtag) 138
under
 kifejezések előjárószókkal 106
 hely 99
 mozgás/irány 101
under- (előtag) 138
understand, 'statikus' ige 66
unless 119
until
 jövő idő 36
 idő jelölése 100
up 96
 'phrasal verbs' – igei
 kifejezések (**look up, take up**)
 67–8
 Mozgás/irány jelölése 101
up to 106
upstairs 96
us 75
 five of **us** 84
used to 28
**is used to + -ing (is used to
 working)** 105
usually 95
V
very 87
 visszaható névmások (**myself,
 yourself**) 83
W
wait for (something) 104
want
 'statikus' ige 66
**want someone to do
 something** 118
want to do something 114
wanted to know (függő
 kérdés) 128
warn
 függő beszéd 127
**warn someone not to do
 something** 127
was/were 12
 + -ing, Past Continuous 15
wash up 68
**watch (something
 move/moving)** 118
we 75
well
 közép fok better 90, 364. old. H
 táblázat

a határozó helye a mondatban
 97
as well as 91
were 12
If I were ... 120
 + -ing, Past Continuous 15
what
 függő kérdés 128
What? 41, 43
**What ... like? (What's she
 like?)** 44
What? kérdés alanyra és
 tárgyra 43
What ... for? 117
when
 jövő idővel (**When the rain
 stops, we'll ...**) 36
 + Past Continuous 15
 + Past Perfect 26
 + Past Simple 21
When? 41
where
 függő kérdés 128
 kijelölő jelzői mellékmondatok
 134
Where? 41
whether (He asked whether ...)
 128
which
 kijelölő jelzői mellékmondatok
 134–5
 értelmező jelzői
 mellékmondatok 136
Which? 41
Which one/ones? 69
while + Past Continuous 15
who
 függő kérdés 128
 kijelölő jelzői mellékmondatok
 134–5
 értelmező jelzői
 mellékmondatok 136
Who? 41
Who? kérdés alanyra és
 tárgyra 43
Who's she like? 44
whom 135
whose
 kijelölő jelzői mellékmondatok
 134
 értelmező jelzői
 mellékmondatok 136
Whose? 41
Why? 41
will
 + főnévi igenév 114
 vagy **be going to** 34
 feltételes mondat 119
 és **shall** 32
**wish (I wish I was/had been
 ...)** 123

with

kifejezések (**with red hair**) 103

'phrasal verbs' – igei kifejezések (**go with, catch up with**) 67–8

with regard/respect to 106

within (within reach) 106

without

+ **-ing (without doing)** 103

without delay/doubt/exception/fail 106

won't ld. **will**

wondered (függő kérdés) 128

word order – szórend 40

work 25

work out 67

worried about 105

worse (határozószó) 90

worse (melléknév) 88

worst

a melléknév felsőfoka 89

at worst 106

worst (melléknév) 89

worth (not worth) 105

would

függő beszéd 125

would a feltételes mondat 2. típusa 120

would hate/like/love/prefer + to + főnévi igenév
115

would have a feltételes mondat 3. típusa 122

would rather do something 114

Y

-y (végződés) 139

yet + Present Perfect 19

you 75

your 76

yours 76

yourself 83

by yourself 106

yourselves 83

Megoldókulcs

Unit 1

- A**
- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1 is | 5 is |
| 2 is not | 6 are not |
| 3 is | 7 are |
| 4 am | 8 is |

- B**
- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1 isn't | 6 's |
| 2 's | 7 're |
| 3 're | 8 aren't |
| 4 aren't | 9 aren't |
| 5 isn't | 10 'm |

- C**
- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1 You're | 6 I'm |
| 2 not | 7 aren't |
| 3 isn't | 8 not |
| 4 This | 9 isn't |
| 5 are | 10 We're |

- D**
- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 1 isn't, It's | 4 It's, We |
| 2 is, He's | 5 It's |
| 3 She's | 6 are |

Unit 2

- A**
- Is he cold?
 - Are they happy?
 - Is he afraid?
 - Is she bored?
 - Is he hungry?
 - Are they sad?
 - Are they tired?

- B**
- There isn't
 - There are
 - There aren't
 - There are
 - There's/There is
 - There isn't
 - There are
 - There's/There is

- C**
- Are you a teacher?
 - Are they bored?
 - Is he afraid?
 - Is she tired?
 - How are you?
 - Is it cold today?
 - Is she Spanish?
 - Are they from London?

- D**
- Are you a singer
 - Are your parents famous
 - Are they politicians
 - Is your father a film star
 - Is your mother a film star
 - Is she a singer
 - Is your father Kirk Douglas
 - Are you Michael Douglas

- E**
- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1 Are | 5 Is |
| 2 'm/am | 6 's/is |
| 3 'm/am | 7 's/is |
| 4 Are | |

Unit 3

- A**
- | | |
|---------|--------|
| 1 are | 6 'm |
| 2 I'm | 7 're |
| 3 is | 8 's |
| 4 are | 9 're |
| 5 We're | 10 are |

- B**
- No, I'm not hungry, but I'm thirsty.
 - I am too.
 - There's a coffee bar.
 - It's cold here.
 - Yes, but it's very cold in Budapest too.
 - Oh yes, January is a cold month at home.

- C**
- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1 Are | 7 there are |
| 2 It's | 8 I'm |
| 3 it isn't | 9 are |
| 4 is | 10 There's |
| 5 we're | 11 isn't |
| 6 there's | 12 are |

- D**
- And is that Tower Bridge?
 - Is it an old bridge?
 - Are we in the centre of London?
 - Are we near to your house?
 - Is it easy to travel in London?
 - Is it cheap to travel by taxi?
 - Is there a tube station near your house?

- E**
- The City and the West End are two important parts of London. The City is the business centre. The major banks, the Stock Exchange, and the insurance companies are all in the City, but there is also St. Paul's Cathedral. The City is always very busy. There are lots of department stores in the West End – Harrods, for example – and there are museums, cinemas, theatres, art galleries and a lot of restaurants: French, Italian, Japanese or Chinese. Buckingham Palace and the Houses of Parliament are also in the West End. But England is more than London! There are a lot of beautiful old cities and other

lovely places in England, Scotland, Wales and Ireland.

- F**
- It's in the east of Ireland.
 - They're in the south of England.
 - They're in the east of England.
 - It's in the north of Scotland.
 - It's in the north/east/north-east of England.
 - It's in the south of Wales.
 - It's in the east of Northern Ireland.
 - They're in the north of England.

Unit 4

- A**
- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 1 teaches | 5 finishes |
| 2 ✓ | 6 watches |
| 3 goes | 7 does |
| 4 walks | 8 ✓ |

- B**
- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 1 flies | 6 love |
| 2 visits | 7 eat |
| 3 live | 8 do |
| 4 tries | 9 drinks |
| 5 forgets | 10 play |

- C**
- doesn't eat
 - don't live
 - doesn't speak
 - don't get up
 - doesn't go

- D**
- plays, doesn't watch
 - go, don't play
 - plays, doesn't help
 - doesn't go
 - go, don't help
 - plays, doesn't go
 - doesn't play
 - doesn't play, watches
 - don't play, go

Unit 5

- A**
- Does ... have a swimming pool?
 - Do all the banks change tourists' money into pounds?
 - Does the number 38 bus stop at the railway station?
 - Do the restaurants serve typical English food?
 - Does the concert finish before eleven p.m.?
 - Does the sightseeing tour start here?

- 7 Does the museum sell souvenirs?

- B** 1 Do you speak any foreign languages?
2 Do you watch TV?
3 Does John listen to the radio?
4 Does John like dogs?
5 Do you like films?
6 Does John drink coffee?
7 Do you drive a car?
8 Does John play a musical instrument?
9 Do you like pop music?
10 Do you go to the theatre?
11 Do you read books?
12 Does John smoke?

- C** 1 likes coffee.
2 doesn't like films.
3 loves reading books.
4 hates dogs.
5 likes classical music.
6 doesn't like cigarettes.

- D** 1 Where does your cousin live?
2 Do they want a cup of tea?
3 Where does Ellen play tennis?
4 Why do cats like milk?
5 Does she play classical music?
6 Does he like his new CD?
7 When does she start work?
8 How often does Kate practise English?

Unit 6

- A** 1 rains
2 don't drive
3 has
4 doesn't earn
5 doesn't happen
6 flies
7 leave
8 don't do
9 reads
10 don't listen
11 arrives
12 go

- B** 1 Does Carol work
2 do you play
3 Do you take
4 do the shops close
5 Do you go
6 does he drive

- C** 1 What time do you have dinner? ~ We have dinner at eight o'clock.
2 Where do you have breakfast? ~ We have breakfast in the kitchen.

- 3 Do you drink coffee in the morning? ~ No, we don't drink coffee.
4 Does your son take the bus to work? ~ No, he doesn't take the bus to work.
5 What does your daughter do? ~ She teaches at the university.
6 Do the dogs sleep in the house? ~ No, they don't sleep in the house.

- D** 1 cycles, goes
2 says, does, catches
3 buys, does
4 likes, gets
5 lives, works
6 leave, finishes
7 rides, carries
8 eats

- E** 1 Do modern trains use coal? ~ No, they use electricity.
2 Does the Queen wear a crown? ~ No, she usually wears a hat.
3 Does wine come from oranges? ~ No, it comes from grapes.
4 Does Sri Lanka export coffee? ~ No, it exports tea.
5 Do potatoes grow on bushes? ~ No, they grow in the ground.

- F** 1 Modern trains don't use coal.
2 The Queen doesn't usually wear a crown.
3 Wine doesn't come from oranges.
4 Sri Lanka doesn't export coffee.
5 Potatoes don't grow on bushes.

- G** 1 Ice floats on water.
2 Lions don't live in the Arctic.
3 Winter doesn't come after spring.
4 Austrians speak German.
5 Cotton doesn't come from sheep.

- H** 1 eat 7 work
2 brush 8 like
3 go 9 stop
4 arrive 10 have/drink
5 drink/have 11 leave
6 start 12 watch

- I** 1 g 5 d
2 h 6 c
3 a 7 e
4 b

- J** 1 ☒ Do they go to bed after midnight?
2 ☒
3 ☒ Where does your sister work?
4 ☒ She plays tennis every Saturday.
5 ☒ Carlos and Maria work in Mexico City.
6 ☒
7 ☒
8 ☒ The shops close at five o'clock.
9 ☒ She doesn't come from France.

- K** 1 He's a doctor.
2 She's a photographer.
3 She's a dentist.
4 She's a pop star.
5 He's an artist.

- L** Robert is sixteen. He lives in Norwich with his parents. He gets up at half past seven every day. He has a bath, he gets dressed, and then he has breakfast. He (usually) drinks milk and eats some buttered toast and jam for breakfast. After breakfast he cleans his teeth. He leaves for school at half past eight. He meets his friends in front of the school. They don't have to wear a uniform. They (usually) wear jeans and trainers. They talk for a while, and they go into school. School starts at 8.50. They have six lessons every day. They have history, geography, and French today; they don't have maths or physics. The lunch break starts at half past twelve. Then Robert eats his sandwich. School finishes at 3.45. Robert goes home and prepares for the next day's lessons. His parents work until six, and they usually arrive home at about seven. Robert watches TV or plays computer games in the evening. He often goes out with his friends. He usually comes home at ten in the evening.

Unit 7

- A** 1 They're carrying
2 She's taking
3 They're sitting

- B** 1 'm working
2 'm not living
3 'm staying

- 4 'm looking
- 5 'm studying
- 6 'm not learning
- 7 aren't sleeping/ 're not
- 8 's growing

- C**
- 1 's playing
 - 2 are dancing
 - 3 'm talking
 - 4 'm staying
 - 5 'm enjoying
 - 6 'm eating
 - 7 'm listening
 - 8 'm drinking
 - 9 're taking
 - 10 's coming
 - 11 are wearing
 - 12 're throwing

- D**
- 1 is shining
 - 2 are sitting
 - 3 am drinking
 - 4 are not swimming
 - 5 are watching
 - 6 are travelling
 - 7 is reading
 - 8 am writing

Unit 8

- A**
- 1 Is she having lunch?
 - 2 Are you feeling sick?
 - 3 Are they playing football?
 - 4 Is the cat sleeping?
 - 5 Are you relaxing?
 - 6 Is the sun shining?
 - 7 Is he coming to the cinema?
 - 8 Are they listening?
 - 9 Is she eating at the moment?
 - 10 Is it raining hard?
 - 11 Am I getting better at tennis?
 - 12 Are we winning the match?

- B**
- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 i | 5 b |
| 2 d | 6 a |
| 3 h | 7 e |
| 4 f | 8 c |

- C**
- 1 are living
 - 2 are working
 - 3 are having
 - 4 is increasing
 - 5 are smoking
 - 6 are driving
 - 7 are building
 - 8 are breathing
 - 9 is getting
 - 10 are going

- D**
- 1 Because she's always asking me for money.
 - 2 Because they're always arguing in public.

- 3 Because she's always borrowing my CDs.
- 4 Because he's always phoning me late at night.

Unit 9

- A**
- 1 It's/It is running
 - 2 She's/She is painting
 - 3 He's/He is washing
 - 4 They're/They are eating
 - 5 They're/They are looking

- B**
- 1 's he/is he doing
 - 2 Are you listening
 - 3 are you going
 - 4 's he/is he cooking
 - 5 's she/is she staying
 - 6 Are you waiting
 - 7 Is it raining
 - 8 are you reading

- C**
- 1 I'm/I am shopping
 - 2 I'm/I am looking
 - 3 I'm/I am playing
 - 4 She's/She is working
 - 5 's she/is she doing
 - 6 She's/She is singing
 - 7 are they doing
 - 8 They're/They are studying
 - 9 We're/We are painting
 - 10 's/is helping

- D**
- 1 They aren't/They're not/They are not working.
They're/They are sitting in the garden.
 - 2 I'm not/I am not studying music.
I'm/I am learning Japanese.
 - 3 He's/He is playing tennis.
He isn't/He's not/He is not winning.
 - 4 We're/We are spending a day at the seaside.
The sun isn't/is not shining.

- E**
- 1 More women are becoming Members of Parliament.
 - 2 More professional people are studying part-time.
 - 3 More young people are going to university.
 - 4 More people are working at home.
 - 5 More young people aren't eating meat.
 - 6 More British people are learning foreign languages.
 - 7 More small British companies are using computers.

- F**
- 1 I'm staying
 - 2 Elaine's selling

- 3 We're decorating
- 4 Are you helping
- 5 I'm organizing
- 6 I'm not drinking
- 7 are you studying
- 8 I'm learning
- 9 She's working for
- 10 She's holding
- 11 he's smiling

- G**
- 1 Where are you working at the moment?
 - 2 What are you doing there?
 - 3 I'm/I am not working at the moment.
 - 4 we're/we are learning about opera.
 - 5 Are you enjoying the course?
 - 6 I'm/I am waiting for my wife.
 - 7 She's/She is working in a supermarket now.

- H**
- What do people do on an average morning in London? It's half past eight, and most people are hurrying to work. Steve is wearing a coat and a hat. Mary and Joseph are sitting on a bus. Both are reading newspapers. Leonard is driving his new car. Paul and Miriam are eating breakfast in a café. Chris is looking at his watch. A man is selling newspapers. A woman is buying sandwiches. Peter is already working in his office. David and Pauline are making phone calls.

Unit 10

- A**
- 1 does your sister travel, takes
 - 2 are you eating, love
 - 3 's/is snowing, snows

- B**
- 1 ~~are getting up~~ get up
 - 2 ✓
 - 3 ✓
 - 4 ~~am finishing~~ finish
 - 5 ✓
 - 6 ~~work~~ 'm/am working
 - 7 ~~eat~~ 'm/am eating
 - 8 ~~drinks~~ is/'s drinking
 - 9 ✓
 - 10 ~~am playing~~ play
 - 11 ✓
 - 12 ~~am watching~~ watch
 - 13 ~~'m not understanding~~ don't/do not understand
 - 14 ~~Are you liking~~ Do you like

- C**
- 1 You aren't/You're not/You are not eating very much at the moment. Are you ill?

- 2 She knows three words in Italian
- 3 I'm/I am taking the bus to work this week, but usually I walk.
- 4 I'm/I am studying Japanese this year. It's very difficult.
- 5 Are you watching the television at the moment?
- 6 I don't/do not remember the name of the hotel.
- 7 She speaks three languages.
- 8 The sun's/The sun is shining. It's a beautiful day.

- D**
- 1 I don't know. I'm/I am waiting for the 6.15 to Brussels. And you?
 - 2 Yes, me too. Do you live in Brussels?
 - 3 No. I come from Brussels, but I'm/I am studying at university in Paris at the moment.
 - 4 Oh yes? What course are you doing?
 - 5 I'm/I am doing a two-year course in business management.
 - 6 So why are you going to Brussels?
 - 7 All my friends live there, and I often go there at weekends.
 - 8 I don't know many people in Paris. What about you? Do you often go to Brussels?
 - 9 Yes, on business. I'm/I am going to a meeting there today.
 - 10 Oh yes. What kind of job do you do?
 - 11 I work in the Marketing Department of a small company, and I often travel to different towns and cities for meetings.
 - 12 What does your company sell?
 - 13 It makes clocks.
 - 14 Oh look! The train's/The train is coming.

- E**
- 1 works, 's/is doing
 - 2 washes
 - 3 tries, plays
 - 4 're/are sitting
 - 5 Do you listen
 - 6 'm/am writing
 - 7 do they drive
 - 8 doesn't/does not get
 - 9 rains, isn't's not/is not raining
 - 10 'm/am baking, are you smiling, Am I doing

- F**
- 1 Are you sitting
 - 2 know
 - 3 do you live
 - 4 live
 - 5 remembers
 - 6 has
 - 7 wants
 - 8 ask
 - 9 do you say
 - 10 tell
 - 11 see
 - 12 're/are staying
 - 13 Do you like
 - 14 Do you want
 - 15 'm/am staying
 - 16 love
 - 17 don't/do not like
 - 18 's/is always raining
 - 19 's/is shining
 - 20 doesn't/does not shine
 - 21 don't/do not want
 - 22 're/are you doing
 - 23 're/are studying
 - 24 speak
 - 25 understand
 - 26 Does your brother
 - 27 doesn't/does not speak
 - 28 's/is he doing
 - 29 Do you know
 - 30 's/is sitting
 - 31 're/are listening

Unit 11

- A**
- 1 Don't touch the lamp!
 - 2 Take an umbrella with you.
 - 3 Sit down for a moment.
 - 4 Don't stop now!
 - 5 Please don't forget about the books.
 - 6 Listen to this new CD.
 - 7 Open the window, please.
 - 8 Put the bag on the table, please.
 - 9 Write your name here.
 - 10 Don't close the door!

- B**
- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1 Don't forget | 5 don't wait |
| 2 turn | 6 Open |
| 3 Be | 7 make |
| 4 Bring | 8 Have |

- C**
- 1 Look out!
 - 2 Come in.
 - 3 Don't touch it!
 - 4 Have an orange juice.
 - 5 Don't forget your umbrella.
 - 6 Turn right.
 - 7 Listen to me!
 - 8 Pass the milk, please.

Unit 12

- A**
- | | |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1 they were | 5 it was |
| 2 it was | 6 they were |
| 3 there were | 7 there was |
| 4 it was | |

- B**
- 1 Was your room comfortable?
 - 2 Was the weather nice?
 - 3 Were the streets full of people?
 - 4 Were the shops expensive?
 - 5 Was the city exciting at night?
 - 6 Were the museums interesting?
 - 7 Were the people friendly?
 - 8 Was your flight OK?

- C**
- 1 wasn't small, it was big.
 - 2 weren't French, they were Italian.
 - 3 wasn't red, it was green.
 - 4 weren't expensive, they were cheap.
 - 5 wasn't old, it was new.
 - 6 weren't good, they were bad.

- D**
- | | |
|-----------|--------|
| 1 wasn't | 6 were |
| 2 Were | 7 was |
| 3 was | 8 Were |
| 4 were | 9 were |
| 5 weren't | |

Unit 13

- A**
- | | |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1 studied | 6 discovered |
| 2 ✓ | 7 ✓ |
| 3 met | 8 travelled |
| 4 ✓ | 9 ✓ |
| 5 ✓ | 10 ✓ |

- B**
- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 1 arrived | 6 saw |
| 2 drove | 7 went |
| 3 decided | 8 listened |
| 4 didn't like | 9 took |
| 5 visited | 10 met |

- C**
- 1 drove
 - 2 arrived
 - 3 opened
 - 4 Did you find
 - 5 didn't eat
 - 6 heard
 - 7 Did you go
 - 8 didn't see
 - 9 didn't sleep
 - 10 Did you stay

Unit 14

- A**
- 1 didn't live
 - 2 lived
 - 3 were you

- 4 was born
- 5 started
- 6 didn't end
- 7 lasted
- 8 didn't understand
- 9 didn't know
- 10 did you do
- 11 was
- 12 were
- 13 fought
- 14 didn't know
- 15 were
- 16 didn't allow
- 17 did you do
- 18 worked
- 19 weren't
- 20 chose
- 21 looked
- 22 came
- 23 cared
- 24 were
- 25 was there
- 26 wasn't
- 27 wasn't
- 28 weren't
- 29 wasn't
- 30 didn't get
- 31 got
- 32 stayed

- B**
- 1 went
 - 2 Was it
 - 3 bought
 - 4 was
 - 5 Did you go
 - 6 came
 - 7 did you visit
 - 8 went
 - 9 had
 - 10 loved
 - 11 did you like
 - 12 was
 - 13 took
 - 14 did you arrive

- C**
- 1 He drank a cup of coffee.
 - 2 He cycled to the university.
 - 3 He didn't go to the morning lecture.
 - 4 He worked in the library.
 - 5 He didn't meet his friends.
 - 6 He didn't watch the football match.
 - 7 He went to the afternoon lecture.
 - 8 He didn't return to the library.

- D**
- 1 When Bob's sister was at university, she wrote a lot of poetry.
 - 2 When Fred was in the army, he went to many different countries.

- 3 When Jane and Michael were at school, they didn't/they did not do much homework.
- 4 When Anna was a teenager, she wore very long skirts.

- E**
- 1 What did Marie Curie discover in 1898? ~ She discovered radium.
 - 2 Where did Michelangelo live? ~ He lived in Florence.
 - 3 When did Thatcher become Prime Minister? ~ She became Prime Minister in 1979.
 - 4 What did Alexander Bell invent? ~ He invented the telephone.
 - 5 How many books did Agatha Christie write? ~ She wrote over a hundred books.
 - 6 When did Neil Armstrong walk on the moon? ~ He walked on the moon in 1969.

- F**
- 1 I **made** friends with a man called István.
 - 2 Sometimes we **talked** about our ideas for a holiday.
 - 3 We **decided** to go together to Sopron.
 - 4 We **went** by train, of course.
 - 5 The journey **lasted** over 12 hours.
 - 6 Of course, we **saw** all the famous buildings in Sopron. They were fascinating.
 - 7 But most of all, we **enjoyed** the delicious Hungarian food.
 - 8 In particular, we **ate** some mushrooms that **were** as big as plates.
 - 9 We **told** everyone about the size of the mushrooms when we **got** back home.
 - 10 But nobody **believed** us.

- G**
- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1 sailed | 6 won |
| 2 lived | 7 abolished |
| 3 declared | 8 went |
| 4 became | 9 was |
| 5 was | 10 said |

- H**
- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1 was | 8 became |
| 2 joined | 9 wanted |
| 3 fought | 10 lost |
| 4 became | 11 became |
| 5 sent | 12 won |
| 6 worked | 13 died |
| 7 lost | |

Unit 15

- A**
- 1 was writing
 - 2 was Jack doing
 - 3 He was typing
 - 4 were they doing
 - 5 were using
 - 6 was doing
 - 7 was preparing
 - 8 weren't playing
 - 9 was John working
 - 10 was having

- B**
- 1 was eating
 - 2 were playing
 - 3 was watching
 - 4 was sitting
 - 5 was writing
 - 6 was brushing
 - 7 was listening
 - 8 was painting

- C**
- 1 was living
 - 2 was studying
 - 3 was doing
 - 4 left, was working
 - 5 met, was working
 - 6 was working, met
 - 7 was running
 - 8 was running, married

Unit 16

- A**
- 1 The storm started while they were driving home.
 - 2 I saw an accident while I was waiting for the bus.
 - 3 Mary went to several concerts while she was staying in London.
 - 4 My father was cooking the dinner when he burnt his fingers.
 - 5 The soldiers were preparing to leave when the bomb exploded.

- B**
- 1 made, was making, arrived, helped
 - 2 designed, started, was working, died
 - 3 escaped, were taking, caught, locked
 - 4 were losing, won
 - 5 sang, played, recorded, was preparing, shot
 - 6 were coming, were hurrying, was standing, grabbed

- C**
- 1 did you do
 - 2 you were reading
 - 3 rang
 - 4 were you doing
 - 5 was drinking

- 6 drank
- 7 went
- 8 did you put
- 9 was raining

- D**
- 1 I was sitting in the garden when I heard the news.
 - 2 I was driving my car when I heard the news.
 - 3 I was cooking dinner when I heard the news.
 - 4 I was painting the living-room when I heard the news.
 - 5 We were eating spaghetti when we heard the news.
 - 6 We were playing tennis when we heard the news.

- E**
- 1 ✓
 - 2 ~~was phoning~~ phoned
 - 3 ✓
 - 4 ✓
 - 5 ✓
 - 6 ~~was~~ were
 - 7 ~~worked~~ were working
 - 8 ~~were coming~~ came
 - 9 ✓
 - 10 ~~were saying~~ said
 - 11 ✓
 - 12 ~~was arriving~~ arrived
 - 13 ✓
 - 14 ✓
 - 15 ✓
 - 16 ~~was stopping~~ stopped
 - 17 ✓
 - 18 ✓
 - 19 ~~was meeting~~ met
 - 20 ✓
 - 21 ~~was liking~~ liked
 - 22 ~~talked~~ were talking
 - 23 ✓
 - 24 ✓
 - 25 ~~were deciding~~ decided
 - 26 ✓
 - 27 ✓
 - 28 ✓
 - 29 ~~rained~~ was raining
 - 30 ~~were~~ was
 - 31 ✓
 - 32 ✓
 - 33 ✓
 - 34 ~~was making~~ made
 - 35 ✓

- F** I left my office at ten yesterday morning, and (I) went to Mary Harlow's hotel. While I was waiting near the hotel, I had a cup of coffee and (I) bought a newspaper. I saw Mary at eleven. She left the hotel and (she) turned right. She was walking fast and she was smoking (a cigarette). I followed her for ten minutes. She was going into Central Park when

she saw me. She looked at me for a moment, but (she) didn't stop. She bought a cup of coffee and (she) sat down. It was a beautiful day. Some people were eating hamburgers under the trees, others were listening to music. After ten minutes, a man sat down next to Mary and (he) began a conversation with her. While they were talking, she smoked three cigarettes. The man was not her husband.

Unit 17

- A**
- 1 've/have eaten some sandwiches
 - 2 's/has repaired her bike
 - 3 's/has given me some money
 - 4 have done their homework
 - 5 's/has broken the camera
 - 6 's/has started to rain
 - 7 's/has passed his driving test
 - 8 have arrived
 - 9 've/have closed the doors
 - 10 've/have drunk all the Coca-Cola

- B**
- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1 done | 9 written |
| 2 travelled | 10 eaten |
| 3 visited | 11 sung |
| 4 driven | 12 had |
| 5 flown | 13 lived |
| 6 worked | 14 made |
| 7 stayed | 15 met |
| 8 swum | 16 taken |

- C**
- 1 hasn't/has not flown
 - 2 has stayed
 - 3 hasn't/has not swum
 - 4 has eaten
 - 5 hasn't/has not made
 - 6 has had

Unit 18

- A**
- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 1 ever | 6 never |
| 2 - | 7 - |
| 3 ever | 8 never |
| 4 never | 9 - |
| 5 - | 10 never |

- B**
- 1 How many times has Tim played for the cricket team? ~ He's played eleven times for the cricket team.
 - 2 How many times has Connie played for the hockey team? ~ She's played eighteen times for the hockey team.

- 3 How many times has Melanie played for the tennis team? ~ She's played twelve times for the tennis team.
- 4 How many times has Connie played for the tennis team? ~ She's never played for the tennis team.

Unit 19

- A**
- 1 He's just made a phone call.
 - 2 He's just left the house.
 - 3 He's just met a friend.
 - 4 They've just entered the wood.
 - 5 They've just looked at a map.
 - 6 They've just found the money.
 - 7 They've just seen me!

- B**
- 1 When are you going on holiday? Have you decided yet?
 - 2 Don't you understand? I've/I have already explained this to you three times.
 - 3 The children can't go out. They still haven't cleaned their rooms.
 - 4 Is Jane coming? Have you phoned her yet?
 - 5 I don't know who won. The game hasn't/has not finished yet.
 - 6 No, I'm not hungry. I've/I have already had lunch.
 - 7 He was paid yesterday, but he still hasn't given me the money.

- C**
- 1 Have you visited the Art Gallery yet?
 - 2 I haven't/I have not done that yet
 - 3 Have you seen a play yet?
 - 4 I've/I have just booked a ticket
 - 5 I've/I have already seen that play.
 - 6 I've/I have just read
 - 7 They've/They have just made
 - 8 They haven't/They have not sold all the tickets yet.

Unit 20

- A**
- 1 I've/I have just come
 - 2 I've/I have just sold
 - 3 She's/She has just finished
 - 4 I've/I have just had
 - 5 they've/they have just moved
 - 6 I've/I have just bought

- 7 I've/I have just had
- B** 1 gone 4 been
2 gone 5 been
3 been 6 gone
- C** 1 Somebody has opened the garage door.
2 Somebody has eaten all the biscuits.
3 Somebody has broken the kitchen window.
4 Somebody has stolen Mary's watch.
- D** 1 He's/He has already made copies of the letter.
2 He hasn't/He has not put the copies in the envelopes yet.
3 He's/He has already written the text of the advertisement.
4 He hasn't/He has not sent the advertisement to the paper yet.
- E** 1 never, been 4 ever, never
2 yet 5 yet, just
3 gone
- F** 1 ve/have lost
2 's/has bought
3 've/have made
4 hasn't/has not happened
- G** 1 and Péter have walked along Hadrian's Wall.
2 and Péter haven't visited York.
3 and Péter have seen the Beatles Museum.
4 hasn't taken a boat trip on the River Thames, but Péter has.
5 and Péter have been to Shakespeare's birthplace.
6 has visited Canterbury Cathedral, but Péter hasn't.
- H** 1 A: How many times has Mary seen that film?
B: ✓
2 A: What has Ron done today?
B: ✓
3 A: ✓
B: Yes, she has.
4 A: Have you ever been to Paris?
B: No, I've never travelled outside Hungary.
5 A: Has it stopped raining yet?
B: Yes, it has already stopped.
- I** JENNY: Have you ever been to Jupiter?

- DIANA: No, I haven't been there yet. Have you?
JENNY: No, but my friend Dan was there in February.
DIANA: Has he told you anything about it?
JENNY: Yes. He says that Jupiter is boring.
DIANA: I've just returned from Mars. It was fantastic.
JENNY: I've never worked on Mars.
DIANA: Really? It's a beautiful planet. I've already been there six times.
JENNY: I like Saturn.
DIANA: I haven't been that far away yet. Why do you like it?
JENNY: I love the rings! Steve is so lucky. He's been there three times.
DIANA: Where else would you like to travel?
JENNY: To Pluto.
DIANA: Oh dear. I think I need a strong drink.

Unit 21

- A** 1 won 4 died
2 transmitted 5 divorced
3 went
- B** 1 I met Brian
2 I was in the garden
3 she loved swimming.
4 I bought these shoes
5 he had very long hair.
6 he smiled.
- C** 1 Don't know. 5 Yes.
2 Yes. 6 Don't know.
3 Yes. 7 Don't know.
4 Don't know. 8 Yes.
- D** 1 B: his wife's had/has had a baby boy.
A: When did she have the baby?
2 B: Alison's broken/has broken my camera.
A: How did she break it?
3 B: My bicycle's disappeared/has disappeared.
A: Where did you leave it?
4 B: He's lost/has lost his jacket.
A: When did he lose it?
5 B: I've passed/have passed my exam.
A: What mark did you get?
6 B: I've bought/have bought a new car.
A: Where did you get it?

- 7 B: I've sold/have sold/have sold my ticket.
A: When did you sell it?
- E** 1 Have you changed your hair?
2 it was blonde when I was at school.
3 You didn't wear glasses at school, did you?
4 You've forgotten.
5 You danced all night long!
6 you asked me to dance!
7 you said, 'No.'
8 I've travelled all over the world.
9 I've met interesting people.
10 I've learnt five languages!
11 I went to Italy two years ago.
12 I learnt to type last year.
13 I stopped dancing after school.
14 Have you eaten in that new Japanese restaurant?
- F** 1 When did you visit your sister?
2 Where did you go on holiday last year?
3 What have you made?
4 Why did you leave the restaurant?
5 Who did you write to?
6 How long have you been here?
- G** 1 happened
2 saw
3 took
4 thought
5 was
6 decided
7 Have you enjoyed
8 has been
9 has been
10 got
11 was
12 attracted
13 Have you had
14 've/have met
15 've/have said

Unit 22

- A** 1 won, 've/have won
2 's/has made, did not make
3 was, 's/has been
4 did not work, 's/has worked
5 've/have earned, earned
6 did not rain, has not rained
7 wrote, has not written
8 has not visited, visited
9 has not snowed, snowed

- B** 1 studied, wrote
2 has developed, has made
3 worked, spent
4 has won, has earned
5 has worked, has arrested
6 played, sang

- C** 1 Ben stopped smoking five years ago.
2 Jane has lived in Bristol since last year.
3 Anna got married three weeks ago.
4 Mary has had a car for six months.
5 Pat has been ill for 24 hours.
6 Charles started this job a/one month ago.
7 Kate has had a driving licence since last year.
8 Tom has been unemployed for two months.

- D** 1 ago 5 since
2 since 6 ago
3 for 7 since
4 since 8 for

- E** 1 met
2 took
3 've/have never seen
4 got
5 saw
6 had
7 was
8 saw
9 haven't/have not met
10 broke
11 've/have said
12 arrived
13 've/have already started

- F** 1 Jane Austen was born in 1775. She wrote novels, and lived in London and Bath. Her books, for example *Sense and Sensibility*, have also influenced today's literature.
2 Most English people have read books by Charles Dickens, for example *David Copperfield*. This novel describes life in London in the nineteenth century.
3 George Orwell wrote *Animal Farm* and 1984. He died in 1950. His books have changed people's ideas about society.
4 Sean Connery is an actor. He has made hundreds of films. He became famous as James Bond in the films of the 1960s.

- 5 Margaret Thatcher was Prime Minister from 1979 to 1990. She was the first British woman Prime Minister. When she left politics, she wrote her autobiography.
6 Andrew Lloyd Webber has written some very popular musicals, for example *Cats* and *Phantom of the Opera*. His first successful show was Jesus Christ Superstar.

Unit 23

- A** 1 I went
2 Did you like
3 I enjoyed
4 did you do
5 I visited
6 Have you been
7 I've booked

- B** 1 I didn't/did not recognize
2 you came
3 I've/have grown
4 you knew
5 you've/have grown
6 I grew
7 did we meet
8 It was
9 We talked
10 I stopped
11 What happened
12 We had
13 He wasn't/was not
14 Have you seen
15 I haven't/have not kept
16 I've/have seen
17 They got
18 I didn't/did not know
19 they kept
20 I asked
21 she said

- C** 1 started
2 built
3 went
4 pulled
5 have opened
6 opened
7 went
8 opened
9 began
10 have built

- D** 1 did you finish
2 came
3 have you lived
4 moved
5 've/have been
6 left
7 Have you seen
8 haven't/have not seen

- E** 1 How many shows have you done?
2 Which cities have you played in?
3 How many shows did you do in Atlanta?
4 How many people came to your Saturday night show in Atlanta?
5 Have you met any American singers since you arrived?
6 Where did you see Joe? In Chicago?
7 Did you play some music with Joe in Chicago?
8 How long have you been here in New York?

- F** Monica ~~has~~ arrived in New York three days ago. She has played in cities all over America. 20,000 people ~~have~~ attended her Saturday night show in Atlanta. She has spent time with several American singers. She ~~has~~ visited Joe Satino in Chicago two weeks ago. She ~~has~~ played and recorded music with him. Last week she ~~has~~ sold 10,000 copies of her new record. But she looks tired. She has had a busy time in New York. Today she has already talked to ten journalists, and it's only 4p.m.!

- G** 1 've/have phoned
2 had
3 didn't you leave
4 've/have done
5 've/have been
6 've/have never been
7 've/have done
8 Have you met?
9 Did you play
10 recorded
11 saw
12 've/have just bought

Unit 24

- A** 1 Louise has been studying
2 She's been/has been sitting
3 she's been/has been complaining
4 William's been/has been trying
5 He's been/has been looking
6 he's been/has been going
7 Mike's been/has been spending
8 he's been/he has been getting
9 I've been/have been getting
10 I've been/have been reading

- 11 I've been/have been buying
- 12 I've been/have been saving

- B**
- 1 has been tidying
 - 2 has been washing
 - 3 has been digging
 - 4 have been watching
 - 5 have been making
 - 6 has been reading
 - 7 have been using
 - 8 have been working

- C**
- 1 It's/has been raining since three o'clock.
 - 2 He's/has been playing chess since he was ten.
 - 3 I've/have been working since eight o'clock.
 - 4 Helen's/has been looking for another job for two months.
 - 5 We've/have been waiting (here) for two hours.

- D**
- 1 have been making a cake.
 - 2 has been wrapping presents.
 - 3 has been decorating the tree.
 - 4 has been shopping for food.
 - 5 has been writing cards.

- E**
- 1 British women have been voting in general elections since 1928.
 - 2 People have been using the London Underground since 1863.
 - 3 People have been watching TV for 50 years.
 - 4 Scientists have been exploring space since 1957.
 - 5 Audiences have been enjoying Shakespeare's plays for 300 years.
 - 6 People have been listening to rock and roll since the 1950s.
 - 7 People have been playing rugby for over 150 years.
 - 8 The British Royal Family have been living at Buckingham Palace since Victorian times.
 - 9 People have been paying by credit card since the 1970s.
 - 10 Oxford University has been educating students since the thirteenth century.

- F**
- 1 Why have you been running?
 - 2 What have you been eating?
 - 3 Where have you been sleeping?
 - 4 How long have you been studying physics?
 - 5 Have you been waiting long?
 - 6 What have you been reading?

- 7 Who have you been talking to?
- 8 Where have you been shopping?

Unit 25

- A**
- 1 have replied
 - 2 have said
 - 3 've been/have been thinking
 - 4 've/have decided
 - 5 haven't/have not seen
 - 6 've been/have been doing
 - 7 've/have heard
 - 8 have changed
 - 9 've/have moved
 - 10 've been/have been decorating
 - 11 haven't/have not finished
 - 12 's/has lost

- B**
- 1 've/have been doing the washing-up.
 - 2 's/has peeled
 - 3 've/have been cutting the grass.
 - 4 's/has swept
 - 5 've/have been peeling the onions.
 - 6 's/has done the washing-up.

- C**
- 1 I haven't/ have not spoken
 - 2 I've/have had
 - 3 I've/have been talking
 - 4 I've/have sold
 - 5 Have you seen
 - 6 I've/have just got
 - 7 I've/have been doing
 - 8 I've/have finished
 - 9 have you been watching
 - 10 I've/have just switched
 - 11 You have been watching
 - 12 I've/have helped
 - 13 I haven't/have not finished

Unit 26

- A**
- 1 hadn't/had not booked
 - 2 had spent
 - 3 had got up
 - 4 hadn't/had not done
 - 5 had won
 - 6 had forgotten
 - 7 had left
 - 8 hadn't/had not heard
 - 9 had disappeared
 - 10 hadn't/had not brought
 - 11 hadn't/had not rained

- B**
- 1 He had cleaned the flat.
 - 2 He hadn't/he had not bought anything to drink.
 - 3 He had had a shower.

- 4 He had changed his clothes.
- 5 He had started making dinner.
- 6 He hadn't/he had not finished making dinner.

- C**
- 1 I had done the course, I was able to speak the language well.
 - 2 he had done all his work, he went home.
 - 3 everyone had left, I went to bed.
 - 4 she had had a glass of water, she felt better.
 - 5 he had done the washing-up, he listened to some music.
 - 6 Steve had saved enough money, he bought a new motorbike.
 - 7 I had discussed the problem with a friend.
 - 8 she had finished speaking.
 - 9 the guests had left.

Unit 27

- A**
- 1 had never ridden a horse
 - 2 had already run in five marathons
 - 3 had never written a poem
 - 4 had never appeared on TV
 - 5 had already played tennis at Wimbledon four times
 - 6 had already written two novels

- B**
- 1 When the firemen arrived, we had already put the fire out.
 - 2 When the manager came back, Jim had already finished the work.
 - 3 When Philip telephoned, I had already gone to bed.
 - 4 When their children came home, Alice and Jack had already had lunch.
 - 5 When his wife got home from work, Ian had already made dinner.
 - 6 The thieves had already spent the money, when the police caught them.

- C**
- 1 had just gone out.
 - 2 had been to Cambridge.
 - 3 had made some sandwiches.
 - 4 had met her in Amsterdam.
 - 5 had ever been to Japan.
 - 6 had finished the job.
 - 7 had already found the problem.
 - 8 had sold.

- D**
- 1 She had never seen an opera before.
 - 2 He had never eaten in a Japanese restaurant before.
 - 3 She had never ridden a motorbike before.
 - 4 He had never read a Russian novel before.
 - 5 He had never been abroad before.
 - 6 She had never heard live classical music before.
 - 7 He had never driven a car before.
 - 8 She had never done anything so crazy before.

- E**
- 1 Had she ever been to Ireland before?
 - 2 Had he ever made a Christmas cake before?
 - 3 Had he ever taken her/Jenny out to dinner before?
 - 4 Had she ever swum in a national competition before?
 - 5 Had he ever tidied his room before?
 - 6 Had they ever won the World Cup before?

- F**
- 1 When my father came home, we had all had dinner.
 - 2 When the teacher walked in, Bob and Fred had stopped fighting.
 - 3 When Clare's friends arrived, she opened her birthday presents.
 - 4 When James came in, his sister went out.

- G**
- 1 had lived in the same house all her life.
 - 2 had finished our homework.
 - 3 had remembered to post his letters.
 - 4 had just seen a lovely dress she wanted to buy.
 - 5 had already seen the film.

- H** On the night of 13 November I saw Lisa Banks at the 'Mad Cow'. I had seen her before. She went to this pub quite often. That evening, she was with a man who I didn't know. I had never seen him before. I went to the bar and bought a drink. Then I sat down at a table and talked to some friends. When I had finished my drink, I went back to the bar. I looked for Lisa, but she had gone. The man had gone, too. It was about half past ten. That's all I can tell you.

Unit 28

- A**
- 1 used to eat, he eats
 - 2 used to drink, she drinks
 - 3 eats, she used to eat
 - 4 eats, she used to eat
 - 5 Did Robert use to eat
 - 6 Did Mary use to eat
 - 7 Did Pamela use to drink
 - 8 didn't use to eat
 - 9 didn't use to eat
 - 10 didn't use to drink

- B**
- 1 ✓
 - 2 ✓
 - 3 ~~Paul uses to go to the cinema almost every weekend.~~
 - 4 ~~Did Pamela used to go to the concert last night?~~
 - 5 ✓
 - 6 ~~John used to spend a lot of money on that now jacket he bought last week.~~
 - 7 ~~Kate didn't use to come to school yesterday because she was sick.~~
 - 8 ✓
 - 9 ✓
 - 10 ✓

- C**
- 1 Dan used to play the violin, but now he plays the guitar.
 - 2 Anna used to be best friends with Angela, but now she's/ she is best friends with Cathy.
 - 3 Susan used to have dancing lessons, but now she has riding lessons.

Unit 29

- A**
- 1 The children had cleaned the flat before their parents came home.
 - 2 Two young men had caught the thief before the police car appeared.
 - 3 Some volunteers had moved the car before the rescue truck arrived.

- B**
- 1 They'd been saving up to buy a flat for a year.
 - 2 They'd been planning the wedding day since January.
 - 3 Ian had been working as a teacher since 2003.
 - 4 Rosemarie had been running her own business for six months.
 - 5 They'd been organizing their honeymoon since April.
 - 6 They'd been talking about the wedding for ages!

- C**
- 1 I'd/had been singing in public for over ten years.
 - 2 How long had you been recording songs when you had your first hit?
 - 3 I'd been/had been recording songs for five years.
 - 4 How many records had you made?
 - 5 I'd/had made three CDs but none of them had sold very well.
 - 6 Had you given up hope that you would succeed?
 - 7 Well, I'd been/had been working hard for years and years but I hadn't/had not earned much money.
 - 8 So, I'd/had been thinking of giving up when I finally had a hit record.

Unit 30

- A**
- 1 didn't/did not go, was
 - 2 haven't/have not had
 - 3 was talking, rang
 - 4 Have you decided
 - 5 Did you see, did he say
 - 6 've been/have been trying

- B**
- 1 Where were you going when you met Jenny?
 - 2 Did our players play well?
 - 3 How long have you lived here?
 - 4 When did Einstein die?
 - 5 How long have you been waiting?
 - 6 What time did you go to bed last night?

- C**
- 1 Sally stopped eating meat five years ago.
 - 2 Mary has lived in Canada since 2000.
 - 3 They got married six years ago.
 - 4 My sister has had a driving licence for nine months.
 - 5 Peter has had flu for a week.
 - 6 Colin came to live here in 1999.

- D**
- 1 has been digging
 - 2 have you smoked
 - 3 Has he finished, has been writing
 - 4 have been mending
 - 5 has been eating
 - 6 have collected

- E** 1 interviewed
2 've/have talked
3 did you see
4 decided
5 started
6 's/has been
7 did he say
8 set
9 got
10 was driving
11 heard
12 died/had died
13 thought
14 got
15 has lived
16 did you talk
17 I was talking
18 phoned
19 've/have known
20 was
21 has kept
22 came
23 worked
24 has been working
25 has been doing
26 started
27 did he say
28 was driving

- F** 1 used to go
2 completed
3 used to live
4 plays
5 won
6 used to smoke

- G** 1 haven't forgotten
2 used to arrive
3 used to shout
4 was trying
5 happened
6 did
7 had been practising
8 had not been able
9 started
10 sounded
11 had finished
12 had never experienced
13 have been playing
14 haven't had
15 had become
16 was blowing
17 was happening
18 was getting
19 had put
20 had made

- H** 1 have you been getting on
2 has gone
3 has left
4 left
5 came
6 have spoken
7 went
8 spoke

- 9 have had
10 had

- I** 1 ~~was~~ were
2 ~~walked~~ walk
3 ~~have~~ had
4 ~~gone~~ been
5 ~~since~~ for
6 ~~being~~ been
7 ~~already~~ yet
8 ~~use~~ used
9 ~~has~~ had
10 ~~walk~~ walking

- J** 1 My grandfather was only thirteen when he started to work.
2 Our team didn't play very well last year but this year we've already won five matches.
3 What were the children doing when you got home?
4 The children have been at Lake Balaton since the beginning of the summer.
5 The workers are very tired because they've been working hard all day.
6 Susie phoned last night and she said she had passed the exam.
7 My mother was a simple shop-assistant but she's been the shop manager since 1999.
8 Sheila used to play tennis a lot, but she hasn't played for years.

Unit 31

- A** 1 'm going to travel
2 'm not going to work
3 'm going to marry
4 're going to have
5 're going to become
6 're going to win
7 'm going to play
8 're not going/aren't going to cook
9 're going to eat

- B** 1 'm going to travel
2 'm going to buy
3 'm going to visit
4 are you going to go
5 'm going to start
6 'm going to travel
7 are you going to see
8 'm not going to go
9 'm going to stop
10 are you going to stay
11 'm not going to stay
12 'm not going to have

- 13 'm going to sleep
14 'm going to find
15 are you going to find
16 'm going to buy
17 Are you going to take
18 'm going to write
19 'm going to describe
20 Are you going to let

- C** 1 They're going to watch a film.
2 She's going to have a swim.
3 He's going to play the piano.
4 They're going to eat a pizza.
5 She's not going/She isn't going to win the race.
6 It's going to rain.
7 They're not going/They aren't going to play tennis.

Unit 32

- A** 1 shall 4 will
2 won't 5 will, won't
3 Let's

- B** 1 I'll open a window.
2 I'll give you some money.
3 I'll make you a sandwich.
4 I'll phone for a taxi.
5 I'll ask her to phone you tonight.
6 I'll go with you.

- C** 1 Shall I 4 Shall I
2 Let's, shall we 5 Let's
3 Shall we

- D** 1 Will you help me to wash the car? ~ Yes, I'll help you.
2 Let's have a game of chess.
3 What shall I wear? Shall I wear my black dress?
4 Don't worry. I'll phone grandfather this afternoon.
5 Péter won't answer this question.
6 I'm tired. Let's go to bed.

Unit 33

- A** 1 I'm eating in a new restaurant tonight.
2 I'm going to a concert next Tuesday.
3 I'm going to the doctor tomorrow.
4 I'm flying to Florida in August.
5 I'm seeing Mary this weekend.

- B** 1 She's/She is going
2 She's/She is playing
3 She's/She is going
4 She's/She is having
5 She's/She is meeting
6 She's/She is seeing
7 are going/coming
8 She isn't/s not/is not doing

- C** 1 it takes place
2 does it start
3 the doors open
4 Who's/Who is playing
5 They're/They are singing
6 She's/She is playing
7 They're/They are singing
8 Is anyone else performing
9 They're/They are dancing
10 am I doing
11 You're/You are collecting
12 you're/you are introducing

Unit 34

- A** 1 's/is going to land
2 's/is going to take
3 's/is going to jump
4 's/is going to knock
5 's/is going to catch

- B** 1 I'll give you a lift.
2 I'll phone you tonight, I promise.
3 I'll buy the tickets for both of us, and I'll meet you at the concert hall.
4 I'll lend you my umbrella.

- C** 1 I'm/I am going to watch
2 are you going to eat, I'll cook
3 I'm/I am going to buy, are you going to get, I'm/I am going to look, I'll come
4 I'm/I am going to leave, I'll see
5 I'm/I am going to phone
6 I'm/I am going to travel

- D** 1 a You look hot, I'll open a window.
2 f Thursday is no good for me, I'm afraid. I'm going to meet the new manager of our Tokyo office.
3 b Next year, we're going to enter the Japanese market.
4 c Thanks, I'll have an orange juice.
5 d Have a rest, I'll do the photocopying.

- E** 1 Nothing much but I'm going to start a new job soon.
2 Thanks, I'll have a sandwich.
3 I'm going to do some shopping tomorrow and I'm going to go for a swim on Sunday.
4 She's going to sing, I'm afraid.
5 No, but I'm sure you'll enjoy it.
6 David is going to give me a lift.

- F** 1 ✓ 6 I'm going to
2 I'm going to 7 ✓
3 I'm going to 8 ✓
4 ✓ 9 ✓
5 I'll 10 ✓

- G** 1 is going to buy, is going to write
2 is taking
3 is going to tidy
4 is going to buy, is playing
5 is going to do
6 is going to wash, is meeting

Unit 35

- A** 1 will beat 4 will beat
2 will lose to 5 will lose to
3 will draw with

- B** 1 I'm/I am going
2 are you catching
3 I'm/I am meeting
4 are you meeting
5 we're/we are meeting
6 we're/we are going
7 I'm/I am having
8 are you doing
9 I'm/I am helping
10 are you coming
11 I'm/I am catching

- C** 1 A: Are you going to see the new James Bond film?
B: I'm going to buy a ticket this afternoon.
2 A: Are you going to clean the car?
B: Mum is going to take it to the car wash.
3 A: it's going to rain this afternoon.
B: I'm going to take my umbrella.
4 A: What are you going to study at university next year?
B: I'm going to study medicine.

- D** 1 'm going to see her
2 'll go to the hairdresser's
3 's going to have a shower
4 'll take it to the car wash

- E** 1 ✓
2 Shall we go
3 ✓
4 shall I come
5 Are you going (to go)
6 ✓ (VAGY I'm going to go)
7 does the train leave
8 'll give
9 ✓
10 ✓
11 ✓
12 I'm going
13 ✓
14 I'll meet

- F** 1 Mark is going to climb Mount Everest in March.
2 Mark is going to drive across the Sahara in May.
3 Mark is going to sail across the Pacific in July.
4 Mark is going to fly over the Amazon in September.
5 Mark is going to walk across the Antarctic in November.

- G** 1 We're/We are flying
2 We're/We are staying
3 We're/We are visiting
4 We're/We are taking
5 We're/We are having
6 We're/We are seeing
7 We're/We are leaving

- H** 1 there won't/will not be any shops.
2 they'll/will speak the language!
3 people won't/will not have to go abroad.
4 Will people get sick?
5 We won't/will not eat normal food

- I** Dear Carol,

I'm going to take a short holiday next week. I'm going to stay in a little hotel near Lake Wondermare. Of course, I haven't really got enough money to have a holiday but I'm going to take the train - it'll be cheaper than the car - and I'm sure they'll accept my credit card at the hotel. (But I won't have enough money to eat in restaurants.)

There's an important meeting on Monday, but of course, I won't be at work. I don't think anybody will miss me.

I'm coming back on Saturday. I think the train gets in at about five. I'll give you a ring then.

With best wishes/From/Love from etc.,

Philip

Unit 36

- A** 1 until
2 when
3 When
4 after/when
5 until
6 until
7 when
8 As soon as/When

- B** 1 'I'll wait, arrive
2 'I'll see, go
3 'I'll phone, know
4 'I'll do, have
5 'I'll enjoy, get
6 'I'll tell, see
7 'I'll wait, comes
8 'I'll book, go

- C** 1 'I'll come 11 go
2 'I'll drive 12 go
3 gets 13 'I'll find
4 will climb 14 've put
5 'I'll look 15 will be
6 see 16 've climbed
7 see 17 see
8 get 18 'I'll help
9 'I'll see 19 will be
10 've done 20 'I'll live

Unit 37

- A** 1 I will have been coming to this college for a year.
2 I will have been going out with my girlfriend for six months.
3 I will have been doing my part-time job for two weeks.
4 my brother will have been living in my flat for six months.
5 we will have been sitting here for three hours!

- B** 1 will have done
2 will have eaten
3 will have washed
4 will have doubled
5 will have installed
6 will have sold

- 7 will have corrected
8 will have read

- C** 1 will have been waiting
2 will have been working
3 will have been making
4 will have been doing
5 will have been standing
6 will have been dancing

- D** 1 were going to clean
2 was going to buy
3 was going to go
4 were going to watch
5 was going to visit
6 was going to have

Unit 38

- A** 1 The film is going to start.
2 She's going to have a shower.
3 The sun is going to come out.
4 They're going to order a meal.
5 They're not going to get home quickly.
6 He's going to make an omelette.
7 She's not going to talk to him.

- B** 1 I'm going / ~~I go~~
2 I'm staying / ~~I'll stay~~
3 ~~I hire~~ / I'm going to hire
4 ~~I'll drive~~ / I'm going to drive
5 does your flight leave / ~~will your flight have left~~
6 I'm going to get / ~~I'll get~~
7 The plane lands / ~~The plane will land~~
8 ~~is your trip ending~~ / does your trip end
9 I arrive / ~~I'll arrive~~
10 I'm not doing / ~~I won't do~~

- C** 1 I'm going to watch
2 he's going to go, we'll come
3 I'm going to buy, are you going to get, I'm going to spend, I'll come
4 He's going to meet, we'll try
5 I'm going to see, I'm going to paint, I'll phone

- D** 1 She'll phone me as soon as she gets to the station.
2 When you meet Philip, you will recognize him easily.
3 The guide will wait here until you come back.
4 We will call at granny's house before we go to the cinema.
5 After you take it, you'll feel a lot better.

- 6 The play will start as soon as everybody is quiet.
7 It will be very quiet when your cousins go home.
8 As soon as he finishes work, Brian will phone us.

- E** 1 I'm having supper with Ted on Friday evening. I'm going to make some cakes on Saturday afternoon.
2 I'm playing tennis with Sara on Saturday evening. I'm going to clean the flat on Sunday morning.
3 I'm having a piano lesson with Bob on Sunday afternoon. I'm going to go to bed early on Sunday evening.

- F** 1 'I'll be working
2 'I'll be having
3 'I'll be lying
4 'I'll be doing
5 'I'll be getting

- G** 1 will have installed
2 will have competed
3 will have taken
4 will you have finished, won't have finished

- H** 1 I will have been teaching for ten years.
2 I will have been lifting boxes all day.
3 she will have been working for the firm for forty years.
4 will have been sitting in front of the government building for two weeks.

- I** 1 was going to call
2 was going to have
3 were going to arrange
4 was going to suggest
5 was going to be
6 was going to tell
7 was going to invite

- J** 1 am going to work
2 am going to come
3 will be
4 will have been performing
5 will have heard
6 am going to study
7 is going to open
8 will be performing
9 will be
10 will study

Unit 39

A Főnév	Ige
Spain	lives
Mary	met
bag	swims
Segédige	Melléknév
must	wonderful
are	large
have	big
	old
Határozószó	Névmás
quickly	You
clearly	I
well	she
Előjárószó	
to	
on	
in	

- B**
- 1 find, on
 - 2 I, beautiful
 - 3 badly, match
 - 4 You, must
 - 5 pass, easily
 - 6 carefully, in
 - 7 Saturday, Do
 - 8 sick, at

- C**
- 1 bathroom
 - 2 toothbrush
 - 3 football
 - 4 businesswoman
 - 5 bookshop
 - 6 headache
 - 7 housewife
 - 8 newspaper
 - 9 skyscraper
 - 10 shellfish
 - 11 weekend
 - 12 raincoat
 - 13 railway
 - 14 teapot
 - 15 sunlight

- D**
- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 d | 5 d |
| 2 a | 6 f |
| 3 a | 7 d |
| 4 h | 8 d |

Unit 40

- A**
- 1 ✓
 - 2 The film was brilliant.
 - 3 Michael has not come.
 - 4 ✓
 - 5 Does Jack play the trombone?
 - 6 What languages can Margaret speak?
 - 7 ✓
 - 8 When did Alice go to Paris?

- B**
- 1 The children were not awake.
 - 2 Where have all the flowers gone?
 - 3 We did not see the film.
 - 4 What are those boys doing?
 - 5 Insects do not eat meat.
 - 6 Where do elephants live?
 - 7 Terry can play the piano.
 - 8 Does your sister study chemistry?

- C**
- 1 Cats are not good swimmers.
 - 2 Where can (VAGY did) we sit?
 - 3 The weather has not been good.
 - 4 When did they send the letter?
 - 5 ✓
 - 6 What is Philip watching?
 - 7 What time did you have lunch?
 - 8 ✓
 - 9 Which films have you seen?
 - 10 ✓

- D**
- 1 A: Will you eat the meat?
B: Yes, but I wouldn't like the eggs.
 - 2 A: Is your sister a teacher?
B: No, she works in an office.
 - 3 A: Where does Tibor live?
B: I don't know where he lives.
 - 4 A: Have you seen Marika?
B: No, I haven't seen her.
 - 5 A: What did that man say?
B: He didn't say a word.

Unit 41

- A**
- 1 When do you get up?
 - 2 Where does she come from?
 - 3 When are they leaving?
 - 4 Why is he waiting?
 - 5 How are you?
 - 6 Where is the town centre?
 - 7 Why does Paul drive so fast?
 - 8 When does the film start?
 - 9 How do you feel?
 - 10 Why is she running?

- B**
- 1 When did you arrive?
 - 2 Who did you come with?
 - 3 Who is/Who's that man over there?
 - 4 How did you get here?
 - 5 Who invited you?
 - 6 What would you like to eat?
 - 7 Which wine/drink do you prefer?
 - 8 Whose glass is this?/Which glass is yours?
 - 9 When are you leaving?
 - 10 How are you going home?

- C**
- 1 Where does she live?
 - 2 Who is the boy in the photo?
 - 3 Why is John going out?
 - 4 What does Jack drink in the morning?
 - 5 When are they going to the cinema?
 - 6 How did they cut the paper?
 - 7 Whose bicycle is it? (VAGY Whose is this bicycle?)
 - 8 Where do elephants live?
 - 9 When (VAGY What time) does Sara go to bed?
 - 10 What are they playing?

- D**
- 1 Here is an apple and a peach. Which would you like?
 - 2 Whose is this coat on the chair?
 - 3 Who is your favourite singer?
 - 4 Which picture do you prefer, this modern one or the old one?

Unit 42

- A**
- 1 How often does he read a newspaper?
 - 2 How much does a single room cost?
 - 3 How old were you when you went to live in Australia?
 - 4 How many exams are you going to take?
 - 5 How long will the course last?

- B**
- 1 How many languages do/can you speak?
 - 2 How far is it from here to the airport?
 - 3 How much did the meal cost?
 - 4 How long did you stay there?
 - 5 How often does the postman come?

- C**
- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1 How often | 5 How long |
| 2 How old | 6 How many |
| 3 How big | 7 How far |
| 4 How much | 8 How quickly |

- D**
- 1 How often do you travel abroad?
 - 2 How long have you been working for that company?
 - 3 How far is it to your office from your home?
 - 4 How much do you earn?
 - 5 How many people work in your department?
 - 6 How successful is your company?

Unit 43

- A**
- 1 Who wants some more coffee?
 - 2 What happened at the end of the story?
 - 3 Who is going to pay the bill?
 - 4 What did he have for breakfast?
 - 5 What did their letter say?
 - 6 Who knows the answer to my question?
 - 7 What did they see?
 - 8 Who is she phoning?

- B**
- 1 Who went on the trip?
 - 2 What's happening in this film?
 - 3 Who are you going to phone?
 - 4 What did you watch on TV last night?
 - 5 Who sent these flowers?
 - 6 What did you buy in that shop?

- C**
- 1 What happened?
 - 2 Who took his driving test?
 - 3 What did Robert fail?
 - 4 What did Robert say to Philip?
 - 5 Who met Linda for coffee?

- D**
- 1 won the Nobel Prize
 - 2 did Marconi invent
 - 3 climbed Everest
 - 4 did Prince Charles marry
 - 5 destroyed Hiroshima
 - 6 did Churchill smoke
 - 7 did France beat

Unit 44

- A**
- 1 What's/What is Peter like?
 - 2 What are Anna's parents like?
 - 3 What does Tom look like?
(VAGY What's/What is Tom like?)
 - 4 What does Eva look like?
(VAGY What's/What is Eva like?)
 - 5 What are Bob and Tom like?
 - 6 What does Susan look like?
(VAGY What's/What is Susan like?)

- B**
- 1 What does a double bass sound like?
 - 2 What do kiwis smell like?
 - 3 What do kiwis taste like?
 - 4 What does a double bass look like?
 - 5 What do kiwis feel like?

- C**
- 1 Who does your sister like?
 - 2 What are Paul's brothers like?
 - 3 What does Jane like for breakfast?
 - 4 Who are you like?
 - 5 What's/What is Mary's husband like?
 - 6 What sports do you like?

- D**
- 1 What's/What is John's flat like?
 - 2 How is your boss in the mornings?
 - 3 What's/What is a squash racket like?
 - 4 How's/How is your sister?
 - 5 What's/What is Portugal like?

Unit 45

- A**
- 1 Which of these books is Sally reading?
 - 2 What does Jane have for breakfast?
 - 3 Who did you see at the station?
 - 4 Which does Mary prefer, tea or coffee?
 - 5 What are you studying at university?
 - 6 Which of these two books are you buying?
 - 7 Who are they inviting to their party?

- B**
- 1 when are we going to go?
 - 2 What do we need to do next?
 - 3 Which hotel do you prefer?
 - 4 Why have you chosen that one?
 - 5 Who's/Who is going to make the booking?

- C**
- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 g | 5 h |
| 2 a | 6 c |
| 3 e | 7 f |
| 4 b | |

- D**
- 1 Where is Jack going (by car)?
 - 2 How is Jack going to Portsmouth?
 - 3 How is Jill's father?
 - 4 What did Ann buy?
 - 5 Why did Ann buy the small picture?
 - 6 Whose daughter is working in America?
 - 7 Where is Mary's daughter working?
 - 8 Who brought the drinks?
 - 9 What did Mary and Tom bring?

- E**
- 1 How did you find out about this job?
 - 2 Which paper was it?
 - 3 How often do you read the Guardian?
 - 4 When did you finish secondary school?
 - 5 What did you study at university?
 - 6 Why would you like to work for us?
 - 7 How many countries have you visited?

- F**
- 1 When's/When is Lucy going to come?
 - 2 Whose car did they borrow?
 - 3 How long did they live here (for)?
 - 4 How many compact discs has Michael got?
 - 5 How does Pam go to work?
 - 6 Why did they stop working?
 - 7 How far is the coast (from here)?

- G**
- 1 a Who's/Who is Jack going to help?
b Who's/Who is going to help Susan?
 - 2 a How many prizes did John win?
b Who won three prizes?
 - 3 a Which machine makes the boxes?
b What does the machine in the corner make?

- H**
- 1 a purse is this?
b lost this/a purse?
 - 2 a car is this?
b parked their car in my space?
 - 3 a ten pound note is this?
b dropped a ten pound note?

- I**
- 1 What does Martin look like?
He's small and muscular, and he has short dark hair.
What sport does he like?
He likes football.
 - 2 What does Sarah look like?
She's tall and slim/athletic, and she has short blonde hair.
What sport does she like?
She likes swimming.
 - 3 What does Tom look like?
He's tall and slim/athletic, and he has long dark hair.
What sport does he like?
He likes basketball.

J MR JONES: What's the house like?
 AGENT: It's a beautiful old house. I think you'll like it.
 MR JONES: How old is it?
 AGENT: About a hundred years old.
 MR JONES: Where is it?
 AGENT: It's in a small town near York.
 MR JONES: Who lives there now?
 AGENT: Mr Ryan, the owner of the house.
 MR JONES: Why does he want to sell it?
 AGENT: Because he's moving to Manchester. He's got a new job there.
 MR JONES: When is he moving?
 AGENT: Soon.
 MR JONES: When can we see the house?
 AGENT: Any time. I'll phone him now.
 MRS JONES: Wait a minute! I want to know a bit more. How many bedrooms are there?
 AGENT: There are two bedrooms. They're both quite large.
 MRS JONES: How far is the nearest shop?
 AGENT: There's a small shop and a bank very near here, but you have to take a bus to the nearest supermarket.
 MRS JONES: All right. Let's go and look at it. One more question. How much is it?

Unit 46

- A** 1 Yes, I will.
 2 No, I don't.
 3 Yes, I do.
 4 No, she didn't.
 5 Yes, I was.
 6 No, she can't.
 7 Yes, he did.
 8 Yes, she is.
 9 No, I don't.
 10 No, I'm not.
- B** 1 No, he doesn't.
 2 Yes, I do.
 3 No, they aren't.
 4 Yes, she did.
 5 No, she wasn't.
 6 Yes, I will.
 7 No, I can't.
 8 Yes, he did.

- C** 1 Yes, he does.
 No, he doesn't.
 2 Yes, he can.
 No, he can't.
 3 Yes, they will.
 No, they won't.
 4 Yes, I do.
 No, I don't.
 5 Yes, they are.
 No, they aren't.
 6 Yes, I did.
 No, I didn't.

- D** 1 it is.
 2 he/she does.
 3 there are.
 4 they don't.
 5 there was.
 6 they aren't.
 7 she does.
 8 they do.

Unit 47

- A** 1 didn't you?
 2 don't you?
 3 aren't you?
 4 isn't it?
 5 does it?
 6 can you?
 7 is there?
 8 is it?
- B** 1 can't I 4 did I
 2 will it 5 wasn't it
 3 was he 6 didn't they
- C** 1 isn't it? 4 don't they?
 2 haven't you? 5 won't I?
 3 can you?
- D** 1 speak French (very well),
 can't you?
 2 heard this story, have you?
 3 to Frank's party, didn't you?
 4 very far from here, is it?
 5 be angry, will she?

Unit 48

- A** 1 Neither 7 so
 2 Neither 8 neither
 3 So 9 too
 4 Neither 10 either
 5 too 11 so
 6 So 12 neither
- B** 1 So are we.
 2 Neither does mine.
 3 Neither have I
 4 So was mine.
 5 So has Frank.
 6 Neither did George.

- 7 Neither can I.
 8 Neither am I.
 9 So did John.
 10 So have I.
 11 So are we.
 12 So is mine.

- C** 1 neither does
 2 doesn't either
 3 so does
 4 does too
 5 neither can
 6 can't either
 7 can too
 8 neither can
 9 so has
 10 so does
 11 does too
 12 so does
 13 neither does

Unit 49

- A** 1 A: Can he see the hills?
 B: Yes, he can.
 A: Can he see the sea?
 B: No, he can't. He can see the hills, but he can't see the sea.
 2 A: Can they speak Japanese?
 B: No, they can't.
 A: Can they speak French?
 B: Yes, they can. They can't speak Japanese, but they can speak French.
 3 A: Can he eat the chips?
 B: Yes, he can.
 A: Can he eat the fish?
 B: No, he can't. He can eat the chips, but he can't eat the fish.
- B** 1 couldn't
 2 can't
 3 can't
 4 couldn't
 5 can
 6 can
 7 can't
 8 couldn't
 9 couldn't, couldn't
 10 couldn't
 11 could
 12 can
 13 can't
 14 could
 15 can
 16 can, can't

- C** 1 were able to
 2 were able to
 3 was able to

- 4 were able to
- 5 was able to
- 6 was able to

- D**
- 1 could type 15 words per minute, he can type 30 words per minute
 - 2 can lift 100 kilos, he'll be able to join a weightlifting team
 - 3 could speak only a little French, she can speak French quite well
 - 4 can cook quite well, she'll be able to work as a chef
 - 5 could only play the piano, he can play the piano and the violin, he'll be able to be play in an orchestra
 - 6 could only ride a bike, she can drive a car, she'll be able to drive a racing car
 - 7 can jump 7 metres, could jump only 5 metres, 'll be able to represent his club
 - 8 'll be able to teach skiing, could only ski down blue slopes, can ski down red slopes

- E**
- 1 Will he be able to pass all his exams?
 - 2 Will he be able to come home at weekends?
 - 3 Will he be able to keep his room tidy?
 - 4 Will he be able to do his own washing?
 - 5 Will I be able to find time to study?
 - 6 Will I be able to afford to go out?
 - 7 Will I be able to keep in touch with my old friends?
 - 8 Will I be able to understand the lectures?

- F**
- 1 could see
 - 2 couldn't move
 - 3 could send (VAGY was able to send)
 - 4 was able to contact
 - 5 couldn't swim
 - 6 was able to get into
 - 7 couldn't put
 - 8 were able to escape

- G** Carol's little brother is one year old. He couldn't walk last week, but today he stood up and he was able to walk a few paces. He was able to go to the bookshelf, and he was able to take one of the books.
Carol's sister is six years old. Last month she couldn't swim or

ride a bicycle. Now she's having swimming lessons, and she can swim a little. Carol is teaching her to ride a bicycle. She can ride her bicycle around the garden, and soon she'll be able to ride it to the shops with Carol.
Carol's grandfather is seventy. When he was young, he could run in marathons and play tennis. Now he can't run as much, but he can swim and he goes for long walks. He can exercise, too.

Unit 50

- A**
- 1 Can I have a glass of orange juice, please?
 - 2 Can we listen to your new CD?
 - 3 Can I use your phone, please?
 - 4 May I borrow your camera tomorrow?
 - 5 Could you pass the menu, please?
 - 6 Can you post this letter for me?

- B**
- 1 Can I have two melons, please?
 - 2 Can I have some fish and chips, please?
 - 3 Could I have a single room, please?
 - 4 Could I have a map of the town, please?

- C**
- 1 Can I borrow your pen?
 - 2 Can I turn on the TV, please?
 - 3 May I close the window?
 - 4 May I use your photocopier, please?

- D**
- 1 Could you carry one of these cases?
 - 2 Could you tell me the way to Buckingham Palace, please?
 - 3 Can you tell me the time?

Unit 51

- A**
- | | |
|-----------|------------|
| 1 must | 7 must |
| 2 must | 8 mustn't |
| 3 mustn't | 9 mustn't |
| 4 mustn't | 10 must |
| 5 must | 11 must |
| 6 must | 12 mustn't |

- B**
- 1 You must not take
 - 2 You must pay
 - 3 You must vacate
 - 4 You must not ask

- 5 You must return

- C**
- 1 I mustn't dance all night.
 - 2 I must run every morning.
 - 3 I mustn't sleep in the afternoon.
 - 4 I mustn't watch TV all day.
 - 5 I must visit my grandmother.
 - 6 I must study in the evening.

Unit 52

- A**
- 1 don't have to deal with
 - 2 don't have to work
 - 3 have to work
 - 4 have to work
 - 5 have to work
 - 6 don't have to work
 - 7 have to wear
 - 8 don't have to wear

- B**
- 1 I didn't have to work
 - 2 Do I have to do
 - 3 I had to run
 - 4 I had to go
 - 5 Did you have to show
 - 6 Do/Will I have to pay
 - 7 You don't/won't have to decide
 - 8 I had to wait

- C**
- 1 You have to fill in an application form.
 - 2 Do I have to give you a photograph?
 - 3 No, you don't have to give me anything, except the money!
 - 4 We had to do some English tests.
 - 5 How many questions did you have to answer?
 - 6 We had to answer about 40 grammar questions.
 - 7 Did you have to speak in English?
 - 8 No, but we'll have to/we have to do that next week.

Unit 53

- A**
- 1 mustn't park
 - 2 must obey
 - 3 mustn't play
 - 4 must be
 - 5 mustn't work

- B**
- 1 mustn't forget
 - 2 must ask
 - 3 must finish
 - 4 mustn't leave

- 5 must have
6 mustn't tell
7 must buy
- C** 1 You mustn't take
2 You mustn't make
3 You mustn't write
4 You must arrive
5 You must bring
- D** 1 Does Jim have to go to the doctor's? ~ Yes, he does.
2 Do we have to show our passports? ~ Yes, we do.
3 Does Linda have to pay? ~ No, she doesn't.
4 Do they have to do all this work today? ~ Yes, they do.

- E** 1 has 5 must
2 Does she 6 does she
3 have to 7 mustn't
4 she has

- F** 1 don't have to
2 mustn't
3 don't have to
4 mustn't
5 mustn't
6 don't have to
7 mustn't
8 don't have to
9 don't have to
10 mustn't

- G** 1 must, don't have to
2 don't have to, mustn't
3 mustn't, don't have to
4 must

- H** 1 You have to be sixteen (years old) to buy cigarettes. True.
2 If you fail/If you don't pass your school exams, you have to repeat the year. False.
3 When you go from London to Paris, you don't have to take your passport. False.
4 You have to be eighteen (years old) to buy a lottery ticket. False. you have to be sixteen.
5 You have to get a licence if you want to keep a dog. False.
6 You mustn't smoke in (any) pubs or restaurants. False. You mustn't smoke in some, but you can in others.
7 If you ride a motorbike you have to wear a crash helmet. True.

- 8 All adults have to vote at (general) elections. False.
9 You have to be eighteen (years old) to buy alcoholic drinks in a restaurant. True.
10 You mustn't ride a bicycle at night without lights. True.
11 If you are over seventeen (years old) and you want to get married, you don't have to ask your parents for permission. False.
12 You have to wear a seat belt if you drive a car, but if you are a passenger, you don't have to. False. The driver and any passengers have to wear seat belts.

Unit 54

- A** 1 must like
2 can't come
3 can't belong
4 can't live
5 must have
6 must remember
7 can't want
8 must spend

- B** 1 might buy
2 might be
3 might go
4 mightn't/might not go
5 mightn't/might not come
6 might stay
7 might be, might be
8 mightn't/might not be
9 mightn't/might not be
10 might find

- C** 1 it can't be, it could be
2 it can't be, it could be
3 it can't be, it could be
4 it could be, it can't be
5 it must be Smith.

- D** 1 may not/might not come.
2 can't live near here.
3 may/might be in the garage.
4 must take the train.
5 may/might pay for the concert tickets.
6 may not/might not be willing to help us.
7 may/might go abroad.

- E** 1 might go to Portugal
2 must cost a lot of money
3 may come this weekend
4 can't be very interested
5 must work long hours
6 might be at the gym, might also be at the shops

- 7 must earn £60,000 a year

- F** 1 The tennis racket could be for James or Susan. It can't be for anyone else.
2 The camera must be for Susan. It can't be for anyone else.
3 The paints and brushes must be for James. They can't be for anyone else.
4 The skiing clothes must be for Jill. They can't be for anyone else.
5 The books could be for Peter or Jill. They can't be for Susan or James.
6 The cricket bat must be for Peter. It can't be for anyone else.

- G** SERVANT: The prince says that I have to find the owner of this shoe. A beautiful girl lost it at the ball last night. If we find her, the prince will marry her. The lucky girl will be a princess. Do you want to try it on, ladies?
1ST STEPSISTER: It must be mine! Give it to me! Look! It's exactly my size!
2ND STEPSISTER: You must be mad! It can't be your shoe. Your feet are enormous, and this shoe is small, just like my feet. It must be my shoe. I'm sure I lost it at the ball.
SERVANT: Sorry, miss. This shoe can't be yours. Your feet are too big. Is there another girl in this house, or shall I (go and) ask your neighbours?
1ST STEPSISTER: Well, there's only Cinderella...
SERVANT: Cinderella? Where is she?
1ST STEPSISTER: Oh, I don't know. She must be in the kitchen.
2ND STEPSISTER: She may be in the garden.
SERVANT: Call her immediately. She must try on this shoe. She may be the girl that the prince is looking for. She might be the new princess!
STEPSISTERS: Oh no! She can't be the princess! There must be some mistake!

Unit 55

- A** 1 can't have been
2 must have bought
3 must have retired

- 4 must have spent
- 5 can't have studied
- 6 can't have visited
- 7 must have taken
- 8 can't have caught

- B**
- 1 can't have spoken
 - 2 might have taken
 - 3 can't have had
 - 4 must have rained
 - 5 might not have heard
 - 6 must have heard

- C**
- 1 can't have been, could have been
 - 2 could have been, can't have been
 - 3 can't have been, could have been
 - 4 can't have been, must have been

Unit 56

- A**
- 1 You shouldn't park
 - 2 should I cook
 - 3 You should wear
 - 4 You shouldn't smoke
 - 5 We should arrive
 - 6 Should I pay
 - 7 I should apply
 - 8 I should write
 - 9 I shouldn't eat
 - 10 We should complain
 - 11 I should buy

- B**
- 1 You should cut
 - 2 You should use
 - 3 You shouldn't put
 - 4 You should wait
 - 5 You should heat
 - 6 You should cut

- C**
- 1 Which papers should I get?
 - 2 I think you should buy the local newspapers.
 - 3 What do you think I should do before I buy a bike?
 - 4 I don't think you should decide too quickly.
 - 5 You should check the condition of the bike.
 - 6 You should ask somebody who knows about bikes to look at the bike for you.
 - 7 You shouldn't buy one just because it looks nice!
 - 8 You should be very careful.

Unit 57

- A**
- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1 ought to | 4 ought not to |
| 2 shouldn't | 5 had better |
| 3 had better not | |

- B**
- 1 shouldn't move the person yourself, should call an ambulance
 - 2 should give you a new cup
 - 3 shouldn't let him eat so much, should make him do lots of sport
 - 4 shouldn't touch anything, should leave everything where it is
 - 5 shouldn't drive home in her car, should ask someone to take her
 - 6 shouldn't borrow money

- C**
- 1 they'd/they had better clear everything away
 - 2 we'd/we had better take our umbrellas.
 - 3 I'd/I had better go to bed early too.

Unit 58

- A**
- 1 you need to take
 - 2 Do I need to take
 - 3 you don't need
 - 4 Everybody needs to buy
 - 5 do I need
 - 6 you don't need to take
 - 7 needs mending

- B**
- 1 We don't need a lot of paper.
 - 2 Mark needn't get everything ready today.
 - 3 Mary needn't leave at six o'clock.
 - 4 Ann doesn't need a new bag.

- C**
- 1 For football competitions, students needn't bring football shirts.
 - 2 For drawing exams, students needn't bring paper.
 - 3 For art exams, students need to bring brushes.
 - 4 For tennis competitions, students needn't bring balls.
 - 5 For football competitions, students need to bring shorts and boots.
 - 6 For drawing exams, students need to bring rulers and pencils.

- D**
- 1 needn't have paid
 - 2 didn't need to phone
 - 3 needn't have bought

- 4 needn't have worked
- 5 didn't need to take

Unit 59

- A**
- 1 didn't/did not have to, had to
 - 2 did you have to, had to
 - 3 Did you have to, had to
 - 4 did you have to, had to, didn't/did not have to
 - 5 Did they have to, didn't/did not have to, had to

- B**
- 1 should have got
 - 2 shouldn't have started
 - 3 shouldn't have got married
 - 4 should have

- C**
- 1 Colin had to work on Sunday.
 - 2 Joan didn't have to work on Sunday.
 - 3 Derek should have worked on Sunday
 - 4 Mary didn't have to work on Saturday.
 - 5 Brian should have worked on Saturday
 - 6 Daniel had to work on Saturday.
 - 7 Joan should have worked on Saturday
 - 8 Derek didn't have to work on Saturday.

Unit 60

- A**
- 1 must he stay
 - 2 does she have to leave
 - 3 should he see
 - 4 did he have to pay
 - 5 house might he have been at
 - 6 can she play the piano
 - 7 (of white paint) does she need
 - 8 should he have gone to the bank

- B**
- 1 can't, will be able to
 - 2 could, can't
 - 3 can, won't be able to
 - 4 can't, will be able to
 - 5 can, couldn't
 - 6 could, can

- C**
- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1 d, f | 5 b, e |
| 2 a, g, h | 6 a, g, h |
| 3 c, d | 7 b, e |
| 4 d, i | 8 d, f |

- D**
- 1 must
 - 2 don't have to
 - 3 mustn't
 - 4 mustn't

- 5 don't have to
- 6 must
- 7 must
- 8 mustn't
- 9 don't have to
- 10 must
- 11 mustn't
- 12 don't have to

- E**
- 1 should have bought
 - 2 had to get
 - 3 had to go
 - 4 should have taken
 - 5 should have phoned
 - 6 had to finish

- F**
- 1 can't live
 - 2 might have bought
 - 3 must have taken
 - 4 must know
 - 5 might give
 - 6 can't have spoken

- G**
- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1 should | 9 should have |
| 2 could | 10 couldn't |
| 3 might have | 11 ought |
| 4 had better | 12 could |
| 5 will have to | 13 need |
| 6 must have | 14 can |
| 7 have to | 15 need |
| 8 must | |

- H**
- 1 must be
 - 2 might do
 - 3 can we ask
 - 4 should we wait
 - 5 had better save
 - 6 might forget
 - 7 should be
 - 8 can't be
 - 9 mustn't be
 - 10 must work
 - 11 You can get
 - 12 should write down
 - 13 have to hand
 - 14 won't be able to

- I**
- 1 Anna has to work from eight a.m. to four p.m.
 - 2 Could you open the door for me please?
 - 3 You'd better not eat so much.
 - 4 If you're ill, you don't have to do gymnastics.
 - 5 You mustn't park here, let's take the other street.
 - 6 I think you should tell your mother that you've broken the cup.
 - 7 We needn't have hurried because the concert started later.
 - 8 Jack couldn't speak to the manager because he had left.

- 9 I didn't need to pay for anything: everything was free.
- 10 We needed more time to finish the work.

Unit 61

- A**
- 1 they've got
 - 2 have they got
 - 3 They've not got/They haven't got
 - 4 has the man got
 - 5 He's got
 - 6 has the woman got

- B**
- 1 have
 - 2 doesn't have
 - 3 have
 - 4 don't have
 - 5 has
 - 6 has
 - 7 have
 - 8 doesn't have

- C**
- 1 she's got a flat in Edinburgh.
 - 2 Have you got a headache?
 - 3 She hasn't got blonde hair.
 - 4 Do you have a holiday every year?
 - 5 I haven't got a car.
 - 6 Do you have dinner at seven?

- D**
- 1 ✓
 - 2 I don't have lunch every day.
 - 3 Do you have a shower every day?
 - 4 ✓
 - 5 ✓
 - 6 I have a holiday in Spain every year.
 - 7 ✓
 - 8 I have a bath at ten and I go to bed at eleven.
 - 9 They have dinner at eight o'clock.
 - 10 ✓
 - 11 Have a good weekend!
 - 12 ✓

Unit 62

- A**
- | | |
|---------|--------|
| 1 does | 5 make |
| 2 does | 6 do |
| 3 makes | 7 do |
| 4 makes | 8 do |

- B**
- 1 make (a) decision
 - 2 made (any) friends
 - 3 made (a) mistake
 - 4 do (all the boring) work
 - 5 make (much) difference

- 6 do (a boring) job
- 7 do (your) best
- 8 making (an) effort

- C**
- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1 arrive | 4 buy |
| 2 became | 5 receive |
| 3 buy | 6 becomes |

- D**
- 1 got engaged, got married, got divorced
 - 2 got stuck
 - 3 get lost
 - 4 get washed
 - 5 get drunk
 - 6 get confused

Unit 63

- A**
- 1 doesn't let her
 - 2 makes her
 - 3 doesn't let him
 - 4 let her
 - 5 don't make him
 - 6 doesn't let her

- B**
- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1 let | 7 let |
| 2 makes | 8 makes |
| 3 lets, makes | 9 let |
| 4 made | 10 made |
| 5 makes | 11 let, lets |
| 6 lets | 12 made |

- C**
- 1 She made him go and apologize to Mrs Rowland.
 - 2 She made him tidy his room.
 - 3 She made him finish his science homework.
 - 4 She made him do his music practice.
 - 5 She didn't let him watch any television.
 - 6 She made him show her his homework.
 - 7 She let him phone his friends.
 - 8 She didn't let him go out.
 - 9 She made him spend the evening in his room.
 - 10 She made him go to bed early.

Unit 64

- A**
- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 1 gets | 6 gets |
| 2 have | 7 make |
| 3 do | 8 make |
| 4 made | 9 had |
| 5 did | 10 got |

- B**
- | | |
|------------|--------|
| 1 had/made | 6 had |
| 2 had | 7 did |
| 3 got | 8 did |
| 4 did | 9 had |
| 5 had | 10 did |

- C** 1 do 5 made
2 made 6 have
3 got 7 do
4 had

- D** 1 d 5 h
2 f 6 e
3 g 7 a
4 b

- E** 1 Mary's got/has got a bad cough.
2 Tom's got/has got two older sisters.
3 Helen's got/has got a new CD player.
4 -
5 I haven't got/have not got time to read the newspaper.
6 -
7 Sam's got/has got a holiday home in France.
8 Have you got enough money for your train ticket?
9 -
10 -

- F** 1 did you get 8 did
2 did you have 9 made
3 made 10 didn't have
4 did you have 11 had
5 had 12 did
6 let 13 let
7 made 14 made

- G** 1 does 5 do
2 do 6 makes
3 make 7 does
4 does 8 makes

- H** 1 Did Amy get any letters this morning?
2 What time do you usually get to work?
3 Will you do me a favour?
4 When is Helen making a decision about moving to London?
5 Can your daughter get undressed without help?
6 Do you make a lot of international phone calls?
7 What did Sue get for her birthday?
8 Are Jill and Mick getting married soon?
9 When do you do the shopping?

- I** 1 make 6 let
2 lets 7 made
3 let 8 let
4 made 9 Make
5 lets 10 let

- J** Eva: It isn't fair! My parents don't let me do anything. They make me stay at home every evening and do homework. They don't let me go to discos, but they make me do ballet classes and extra French lessons. I hate it all! On Sundays they make me go to church and visit my aunt very often. They make me do housework, too. I have to do a lot of cleaning and cooking. It really makes me angry!

Roy: You're lucky! My parents never make me do anything. They let me stay out late, and they let me smoke and drink. I've got terrible parents! They don't worry about me at all!

Unit 65

- A** 1 talking 4 spoke
2 speak 5 talking
3 speak 6 talking

- B** 1 lend 4 lend
2 borrows 5 borrow
3 lent

- C** 1 j 6 c
2 f 7 d
3 h 8 e
4 i 9 k
5 a 10 g

- D** 1 bring 6 take
2 brought 7 took
3 fetching 8 take
4 carries 9 fetch
5 bring 10 carried

Unit 66

- A** 1 's/is sitting
2 's/is listening
3 's/is playing
4 think
5 like
6 understand
7 Do ... want
8 drink

- B** 1 're/are listening, is looking
2 likes, fit
3 is sitting, doesn't/does not matter
4 costs, includes

- C** 1 Adam: Do you recognize the woman in this photo?
Susan: Do you mean the woman who's/is looking straight at the camera?
2 Mark: Hello, David. Why are you standing here? Are you waiting for me?
David: Yes, I want to speak to you.
3 James: Listen to the engine. Do you think it's all right?
Fiona: It sounds all right, but it smells of oil.

- D** 1 is thinking 4 tastes
2 is tasting 5 thinks
3 feels

Unit 67

- A** 1 coming round
2 look after
3 calling for
4 go out
5 put on
6 get off
7 join in
8 get back

- B** 1 fill in
2 Hold on!
3 get at
4 went off
5 rubbed out
6 look up
7 brought back
8 put away

- C** 1 broke into it
2 turn them off
3 handed it in
4 work it out
5 goes with it
6 looks after them

- D** 1 -
2 -
3 Shall I turn the heating down?
4 Could you look 'trivial' up in your dictionary, please?
5 -
6 It's time to put your books away.
7 I think you should put a scarf on.
8 Rub that drawing out before the teacher comes in!
9 -
10 To open a bank account, you have to fill this form in.

- E** 1 looking forward to
2 came across
3 go out
4 Hold on
5 look up to
6 look after
7 joined in
8 looking into
9 put away
10 goes off

- F** 1 Sarah's brother Mark **looks up** to his sister. He admires her and thinks she's wonderful!
2 David **got back** very late from a party, and the next morning he couldn't **get up** in time.
3 When I **go away** for the weekend, my neighbours always **look after** my house.
4 Alice is **looking forward** to her sixteenth birthday. She has invited all her friends to her birthday party.
5 When I arrived, I **took** my shirt **off** and **put on** a T-shirt.

Unit 68

- A** 1 it up
2 after her
3 for the nearest village
4 it out
5 them up
6 it away
7 it up
8 it on
9 laughed at
10 deals with

- B** 1 Look out 5 check in
2 find out 6 put up with
3 stand for 7 pick up
4 took up 8 give out

- C** 1 put it off
2 cleared up
3 set off
4 headed for
5 called on
6 put them up
7 laughed at
8 found out
9 run away
10 catch up on

- D** 1 d 5 b
2 a 6 c
3 b 7 a
4 a 8 d

- E** 1 dress up
2 put them up
3 deal with that
4 pay for it
5 get away with
6 pick it up
7 shut up
8 call out
9 clear up
10 go over

- F** 1 Jack **called at** the post office to buy some stamps.
2 The new series **consists of** five episodes.
3 Have you **looked through** all the papers this morning?
4 Did you **grow up** in the country or in the town?
5 Tim can't **live up** to his parents' expectations.
6 Peter **threw away** all his old records.
7 Does this road **lead to** the coast?
8 My sister **goes out with** a well-known journalist.

Unit 69

- A** 1 people 7 sheep
2 bananas 8 chairs
3 mice 9 children
4 watches 10 buses
5 cars 11 feet
6 knives

- B** knives ✓ ~~teeth~~
matches ✓ ~~wishes~~
~~matchs~~ ~~citys~~
cities ✓ men ✓
countries ✓ potatoes ✓
teeth ✓ ~~families~~
wishes ✓ ~~tomatoes~~
~~mouses~~ ~~wifes~~
wives ✓ ~~potatoes~~
~~countrye~~ tomatoes ✓
~~mane~~ mice ✓
~~knifes~~ families ✓

- C** 1 Do you want one?
2 But the strawberry ones are nicer.
3 I like the one with the red door.
4 Emma has a green one (in hers/in her room).
5 There isn't an easy one.
6 Do you mean the ones of the wedding?

- D** 1 ones 7 one
2 ones 8 one
3 one 9 ones
4 one 10 one
5 one 11 ones
6 one 12 one

Unit 70

- A** 1 a holiday
2 a cinema
3 **some** luggage
4 **some** socks
5 a school
6 **some** homework
7 **some** information
8 **some** toast
9 a bird
10 **some** grass
11 **some** trains
12 a musician
13 **some** spaghetti
14 **some** ideas
15 **some** warm water
16 a big city
17 **some** good news
18 **some** Indian tea
19 a boring film
20 a thick book
21 **some** good advice
22 a tall woman

- B** 1 — 6 the
2 — 7 —
3 a 8 the
4 some 9 a
5 the 10 the

- C** 1 slice, some
2 pieces
3 cup
4 bottle, some
5 two
6 some, the
7 a, the
8 cartons, the
9 cup, slice
10 two, the

- D** 1 My luggage is in the car.
2 Can you give me a piece of paper and a pencil?
3 I'd like lemon and two spoonfuls of sugar in my tea.
4 We must buy some eggs and some cheese.
5 This books contains information about pop music.
6 I have bad news for you.
7 Did you get (any) homework for tomorrow?
8 There isn't much water on the table.
9 I won't take milk in my coffee.

- 10 Sally often drinks cola while she's doing her homework.

Unit 71

- A** 1 an 5 an
2 a 6 a
3 a 7 an
4 an 8 a

- B** 1 a Japanese city.
2 an English airport.
3 an Indian river.
4 a university town.
5 a German car.
6 a European country.

- C** 1 a 10 the
2 a 11 a
3 a 12 a
4 the 13 a
5 a 14 The
6 an 15 the
7 a 16 an
8 the 17 the
9 the 18 the

- D** 1 ✓ 5 ✓, a
2 the, the 6 a
3 a 7 the
4 a, ✓

Unit 72

- A** 1 - 9 -
2 a 10 the
3 the 11 an
4 the 12 -
5 - 13 -
6 the 14 a
7 - 15 an
8 a

- B** 1 leave the airport
2 ✓
3 ✓
4 pasta
5 ✓
6 have dinner
7 ✓
8 Number sixteen
9 from Mexico
10 ✓
11 ✓
12 ✓
13 ✓
14 And the steak

- C** 1 an 7 -
2 a 8 a
3 - 9 the
4 the 10 a
5 a 11 the
6 a 12 -

- D** 1 I've got a book about elephants.
2 Do they sell wine at the supermarket near the station?
3 Music is very important in the United States.
4 I'm afraid of dogs, especially big dogs.
5 They serve lunch in the dining room.
6 We have both fruit and vegetables in the garden; we eat the fruit but we sell the vegetables.
7 The film was fantastic, and the actors were wonderful.
8 Sally studies literature at university.
9 Hawaii is in the middle of the Pacific Ocean.
10 Paris, the capital of France, is on the River Seine.

Unit 73

- A** 1 some 10 a
2 no 11 a
3 some 12 no
4 some 13 a
5 a/some 14 any
6 a/some 15 some
7 some 16 any
8 none 17 a
9 a 18 a

- B** 1 I can't/cannot give you any advice.
2 There aren't/are not any good films at the cinema this week.
3 There isn't/is not any cake in the cupboard.
4 Miriam doesn't/does not have any heavy luggage to take to the airport.
5 There aren't/are not any letters for you today.
6 There isn't/is not any snow on the mountains this morning.

- C** 1 I'm thirsty. Give me some water, please.
2 Have you got any books on Africa?
3 There isn't any bread and there aren't any biscuits at home.

- 4 Have you got any brothers or sisters? ~ I've got three sisters but no brothers.
5 I like the boys in the class, but I don't like some of the girls.
6 You can have some of these photos.
7 There aren't any trains on Sunday.
8 I need some clean shirts, but there aren't any in the cupboard.
9 We haven't got any money in the house and we haven't got any in the bank.
10 I want to make some toast. Have we got any old bread?
11 Have you got any dictionaries? ~ Yes, I have some here.
12 We couldn't buy any stamps, but we bought some envelopes.

Unit 74

- A** 1 an, a
2 a, an, a
3 An, an

- B** 1 the, a 4 a, the
2 the, a 5 the, a
3 a, The 6 The, a

- C** 1 -, - 6 -, -, the
2 a, the 7 an, the
3 a 8 -, -
4 an 9 -, a, -
5 -, the 10 -, -

- D** 1 knives
2 countries
3 wishes
4 tomatoes, loaves
5 fish
6 teeth
7 buses
8 Cities, children
9 boxes, watches
10 men, women
11 matches, wives
12 feet

- E** 1 a, - 4 a
2 - 5 a
3 -

- F** 1 an, the, the
2 a, a, a, the, the
3 a, the, a
4 the, the, the, the, the

- G** 1 piece
2 some
3 piece
4 bottle
5 some
6 spoonful
7 some, cup
8 piece
9 glass
10 glass, piece/slice

- H** 1 any, some
2 some, no
3 any, some
4 any, no
5 some, any
6 any, no

- I** 1 a, the 5 a, The
2 a, the 6 the, the
3 a 7 the, the
4 a, the 8 the

- J** 1 ones 4 one
2 ones 5 ones
3 one 6 one

- K** 1 Some 13 a
2 ones 14 -
3 - 15 a
4 none 16 the
5 a 17 -
6 - 18 -
7 - 19 a
8 an 20 one
9 a 21 no
10 the 22 the
11 an 23 a
12 the 24 the

- L** 1 Some, feet
2 No
3 some
4 -
5 hairs
6 a, a
7 -, a
8 The, the
9 -, -
10 some, -
11 any, ones
12 some

Unit 75

- A** 1 He is the best student. A lot of people ask him for help.
2 They don't work as hard as me. I work a lot harder than them.
3 We have exams soon. Are you taking any?

- 4 We sometimes behave badly. The teacher sometimes gets angry with us.
5 It is quite hard. Some people won't finish it.

- B** 1 I, her, she, me
2 She, it, it, her
3 We, you, you, us
4 They, him, he, them
5 It, them, they, it
6 You, us, we, you
7 I, you, you, me

- C** 1 I 9 them
2 I 10 it
3 They 11 It
4 She 12 me
5 He 13 they
6 it 14 us
7 him 15 we
8 me 16 them

Unit 76

- A** 1 your, yours
2 her, hers
3 their, theirs
4 our, ours
5 his, his

- B** 1 hers 7 their
2 mine 8 yours
3 their 9 his
4 ours 10 my
5 hers 11 your
6 our

- C** 1 These are Peter's keys.
2 This is the boys' football.
3 This is my teacher's house.
4 These are my sisters' bikes.
5 This is the children's room.
6 This is the manager's chair.
7 These are Mark's suitcases.
8 These are the women's bags.
9 This is Joan's radio.

Unit 77

- A** 1 this 6 those
2 These 7 that
3 These 8 That
4 This 9 Those
5 These 10 That

- B** 1 How much are those pineapples?
2 How much are these pears?
3 How much are those lemons?
4 How much are these cabbages?

- 5 How much are those bananas?
6 How much are these potatoes?
7 How much are those tomatoes?
8 How much are these melons?

- C** 1 these 6 those
2 These 7 that
3 this 8 that
4 those 9 that
5 that 10 this

Unit 78

- A** 1 much 12 many
2 many 13 much
3 many 14 many
4 much 15 much
5 much 16 much
6 many 17 much
7 much 18 many
8 many 19 much
9 many 20 many
10 much 21 many
11 many

- B** 1 much, many
2 How much, much, more
3 much, many
4 How much, many, more
5 much, many
6 How much, How many, much
7 How many, much
8 many, much

- C** 1 much 7 more
2 more 8 much
3 many 9 many
4 much 10 more
5 many 11 many
6 many 12 more

- D** 1 x 5 x
2 ✓ 6 x
3 x 7 ✓
4 ✓ 8 x

Unit 79

- A** 1 Lots of things
2 a lot of messages
3 a few minutes
4 lots of jobs
5 a few days
6 a few problems

- B** 1 a lot of cheese
2 a little milk
3 a few apples
4 a lot of cars
5 a little bread
6 a few books
7 a little money

- C** 1 Can I get you a few biscuits?
2 Can I make you a few sandwiches?
3 Do you want a little more cheese?
4 Can I bring you a little more cake?
5 Do you want a little milk in your tea?
6 Would you like a little more sugar in your coffee?

- D** 1 travel 5 ✓
2 ✓ 6 a little
3 a few 7 ✓
4 is 8 ✓

Unit 80

- A** 1 Some of the, some of
2 some of the, all of
3 Most of the, some of
4 most of the, some of

- B** 1 all the
2 All the (VAGY Some of the)
3 Some
4 None of the
5 all
6 None of the
7 all
8 all
9 none of the
10 All the
11 Some
12 some of the

- C** 1 Most of the
2 Most of it
3 All of the
4 none of them
5 Most of them
6 none of it
7 all of it
8 none of the
9 all of them

Unit 81

- A** 1 somebody
2 anybody
3 somewhere
4 nothing
5 something

- 6 Nobody
7 anything
8 anywhere
9 everything
10 Everybody

- B** 1 knew
2 don't know
3 didn't eat
4 happens
5 is
6 didn't say

- C** 1 anything interesting
2 anywhere else
3 anywhere cheap
4 somewhere else
5 something hot

- D** 1 somebody/someone
2 somebody/someone
3 somewhere/everywhere
4 something
5 everything
6 anybody/anyone
7 anywhere
8 anything
9 something
10 Everybody/Everyone

Unit 82

- A** 1 She offered Jim a cigarette.
2 He showed Mary his holiday photographs.
3 Did you send them an invitation?
4 Did you buy her a birthday present?

- B** 1 She offered a cigarette to Jim.
2 He showed his holiday photographs to Mary.
3 Did you send an invitation to them?
4 Did you buy a birthday present for her?

- C** 1 They sent us an invitation.
2 Sheila gave a present to Mike.
3 I made her a sandwich.
4 Tom bought a newspaper for Sally.
5 My uncle sold me his camera.
6 She left a message for you.
7 Mary sent them some flowers.
8 Did you take the money to the bank?

- D** 1 The waiter fetched them some wine.
The waiter fetched some wine for them.
2 The waiter showed him the bottle.
The waiter showed the bottle to Tim.
3 The chef cooked them a special meal.
The chef cooked a special meal for them.
4 The waiter gave Tim the bill.
The waiter gave the bill to Tim.
5 Lucy lent Tim some money, because he didn't have enough to pay the bill.
Lucy lent some money to Tim, because he didn't have enough to pay the bill.
6 The waiter brought them their coats.
The waiter brought their coats for them.

Unit 83

- A** 1 herself 4 themselves
2 myself 5 yourself
3 ourselves 6 himself

- B** 1 enjoyed ourselves very much.
2 burnt myself
3 He taught himself.
4 I think I'm going to buy/I'll buy myself a new coat tomorrow.
5 She made herself a sandwich

- C** 1 myself 4 ourselves
2 herself 5 himself
3 themselves

- D** 1 You'll have to post it yourself.
2 we carried all our luggage ourselves.
3 Did you take it yourself?
4 she (had) made herself.
5 I chose it myself.
6 I invented the recipe myself.

- E** 1 each other
2 each other
3 yourself/yourselves
4 ourselves
5 each other
6 each other

Unit 84

- A** 1 There's, it's
2 There are, they are
3 There are, they are
4 There's, it's
- B** 1 There are six of them.
2 There are twenty of us.
3 There are twelve of them.
- C** 1 It rains a lot in April.
2 There's fog on the motorway this morning.
3 It's very cloudy in the mountains.
4 There's a lot of wind on the west coast.
- D** 1 Is there 11 there's
2 there are 12 It's
3 They're 13 It's
4 does it take 14 there are
5 There are 15 Is it
6 they're 16 there are
7 it will be 17 It's
8 There's 18 it takes
9 it takes 19 It's
10 is there 20 There are
- E** 1 there was
2 there will be
3 there used to be
4 there have been
5 There may be

Unit 85

- A** This modern picture is strange. It is like the old picture next to it, but in the new painting the sky is green and the trees are blue. It seems frightening. My favourite picture is one of a large, square room by a Dutch artist. An elegant man sits on a wooden bench in a corner. He has a small black dog at his feet. The dog looks sleepy. Through the open window you can see bright sunshine. When I look at this picture I feel warm and happy.
- B** 1 British 7 careful
2 enjoyable 8 busy
3 long 9 valuable
4 tall 10 good
5 old 11 late
6 free
- C** 1 sounds 5 feel
2 look 6 feel
3 smell 7 looks
4 looks 8 sounds
- D** 1 green cotton, ✓
2 modern Spanish
3 ✓, large black
4 young Polish
5 big new Japanese
6 ✓
- E** 1 a pleasant sunny day
2 a nice big smile
3 a large black coffee
4 a horrible old coat
5 a large white building
6 a big grey bird
7 a tall thin woman
8 a small blue car
9 a strange little story
- F** 1 good strong
2 light and spacious
3 cold and tired
4 beautiful young
5 nice and refreshing
6 lovely old
7 black and white
8 good hot
9 poor old
10 sweet little black and white
- G** 1 fantastic white silk
2 big old American
3 small brown leather
4 wonderful old black and white
5 friendly young Irish
6 strange prehistoric wooden
7 wonderful new diamond
8 funny short pink wedding
9 horrible old green nylon
10 beautiful new Japanese paper
- H** 1 A Volkswagen is a German car.
2 Salamanca is a Spanish city.
3 Macbeth was a Scottish king.
4 Il Trovatore is an Italian opera.
5 Vincent van Gogh was a Dutch artist.
6 The Taj Mahal is an Indian building.
7 Mykonos is a Greek island.
8 Vodka is a Russian drink.
9 Alfred Nobel was a Swedish chemist.
10 Gérard Depardieu is a French actor.
11 Sherlock Holmes was an English detective.
12 Chang is a Chinese surname.
- I** e.g.: Salamanca is a beautiful Spanish city.
Chang is a typical Chinese surname.

Unit 86

- A** 1 ~~fourty-nine~~ forty-nine ✓
2 six hundred ✓ ~~six hundreds~~
3 fourth ✓ ~~forth~~
4 ~~twelfth~~ twelfth ✓
5 two thousand dollars ✓ ~~two thousands dollars~~
6 ~~twenty-three~~ twenty-third ✓
7 ~~eighty-seven~~ seventy-eight ✓
8 ~~eighth~~ eighth ✓
9 seventeen ✓ ~~seventeenth~~
10 ~~fifth~~ fifth ✓
11 seven million ✓ ~~seven millions~~
12 ninth ✓ ~~ninth~~
13 ~~thirteenth~~ thirtieth ✓
14 three hundred and ninety-five ✓ ~~three hundred ninety-five~~
- B** 1 four hundred and sixty-two
2 twentieth
3 first
4 twelfth
5 nine million
6 three hundred and ten
7 eighth
8 a hundred and eleven
9 fourteen
10 second
11 five thousand
12 sixty-eight
13 thirty-fourth
14 a hundred and fifty
15 third
16 twenty-fifth
17 nineteenth
- C** 1 lives in flat twenty-three on the second floor.
2 lives in flat eleven on the first floor.
3 lives in flat thirty-seven on the third floor.
4 lives in flat fifty-four on the fifth floor.
5 lives in flat seventy-two on the seventh floor.
6 lives in flat twenty-five on the second floor.
7 lives in flat fifty-nine on the fifth floor.
8 lives in flat sixty-one on the sixth floor.
- D** 1 nineteen eighty-one
2 the sixteenth of June/June the sixteenth, nineteen eighty-eight
3 the twenty-ninth of September/September the twenty-ninth
4 nineteen ninety-two

- 5 the tenth of January/January the tenth, nineteen ninety-three
6 the ninth of March/March the ninth
7 nineteen ninety-five

Unit 87

- A** 1 quite 6 quite
2 quite 7 really
3 really 8 quite
4 really 9 really
5 quite 10 quite
- B** 1 really 4 really
2 absolutely 5 extremely
3 really 6 absolutely
- C** 1 a coffee pot
2 a photograph album
3 a tennis court
4 a road sign
5 a door handle
6 an air hostess
7 a music system
8 a telephone book
9 a coat hanger
10 a paper cup
11 a soup bowl
- D** 1 ✓
2 ~~It's very essential for you to take your passport with you when you fly to Athens.~~
3 ✓
4 ✓
5 ~~There was a fairly terrible accident on the M3 motorway late last night.~~

Unit 88

- A** 1 bigger
2 more careful
3 more expensive
4 better
5 fatter
6 more famous
7 newer
8 more modern
9 younger
10 cheaper
11 more delicious
12 richer
13 longer
14 hungrier
15 nicer
16 happier
17 more difficult
18 older
19 more beautiful
20 friendlier

- 21 hotter
22 more wonderful
23 worse
24 smaller
25 sadder
- B** 1 Alaska is colder than Spain.
2 Steve is hungrier than Jane.
3 Washington is smaller than New York.
4 Mary is happier than Mike.
5 I am younger than my brother.
6 Film stars are richer than teachers.
7 Peter is friendlier than Chris.

- C** 1 cheaper than
2 much/a lot smaller than
3 much/a lot faster than
4 much/a lot more expensive than
5 much/a lot bigger than
6 slower than
7 more expensive than
8 smaller than

Unit 89

- A** 1 the most interesting
2 the biggest
3 the deepest
4 longest
5 the most spectacular
6 the most popular
7 the highest
8 the most famous
9 The lowest
10 driest

- B** 1 smaller than
2 the smallest
3 colder than
4 the hottest
5 more expensive than
6 the most expensive
7 shorter than
8 the longest

- C** 1 It's the biggest ship I've ever seen.
2 He's the richest man I've ever met.
3 It's the most difficult exam I've ever done.
4 It's the saddest film I've ever seen.
5 She's the happiest person I've ever met.
6 It's the most beautiful flat I've ever seen.
7 It's the hottest country I've ever visited.

- 8 It's the smallest dog I've ever seen.

- D** 1 ~~biger~~ bigger
2 ~~most~~ more
3 ~~gooder~~ better
4 ~~happyer~~ happier
5 ~~famouser~~ more famous
6 a the

Unit 90

- A** 1 slowly 6 well
2 quickly 7 good
3 immediate 8 polite
4 bad 9 politely
5 badly
- B** 1 carefully 9 brilliantly
2 quietly 10 neatly
3 happily 11 perfectly
4 angrily 12 slowly
5 hard 13 fast
6 well 14 kindly
7 properly 15 badly
8 easily

- C** 1 dangerously.
2 fast.
3 Martin cooks well.
4 I write slowly.
5 She plays chess brilliantly.
6 Sheila works hard.
7 They don't learn quickly.

- D** 1 faster
2 better
3 more cheaply
4 more confidently
5 harder
6 more comfortably
7 worse
8 more slowly

Unit 91

- A** 1 as quickly as
2 as angry as
3 as expensive as
4 as big as
5 as good as
6 as hard as
- B** 1 as fast as
2 as tall as
3 as long as
4 as clean as
5 as fresh as
6 as full as
7 as strong as
8 as wide as
9 as big as

- C** 1 as much (money) as
2 as many countries as
3 as many jobs as
4 as much luggage as
5 as many questions as
6 as much (money) as

Unit 92

- A** 1 taller than
2 older than
3 richer than
4 lower than
5 bigger than
6 smaller than

- B** 1 easier than
2 better than
3 more successful than
4 luckier than
5 more powerful than
6 more useful than

- C** 1 the worst
2 the funniest
3 the tallest
4 the best
5 the most expensive
6 the most beautiful

- D** 1 the happiest
2 more famous than
3 worse than
4 the best
5 the most expensive
6 more difficult than
7 wetter than
8 more comfortable than

- E** 1 India is hotter than Scotland.
2 Physics is more difficult than geography. (or the opposite)
3 Living in a city is more stressful than living in the country.
4 A mile is longer than a kilometre.
5 London is bigger than Edinburgh.
6 American films are better than Italian films. (or the opposite)
7 Travelling by train is slower than travelling by plane.
8 Michael Jackson is more famous than Madonna. (or the opposite)

- F** 1 (the name of a band) the best
2 (the name of an actor) the most beautiful
3 (the title of a book) the worst

- 4 (the name of a place) the furthest/farthest
5 (the title of a film) the saddest
6 (the name of a subject) the most interesting

- G** 1 the happiest
2 fatter
3 the smallest
4 hungrier
5 cheaper, more comfortable
6 better
7 more interesting
8 the most expensive

- H** 1 longer 6 bigger
2 long 7 smaller
3 longest 8 closer
4 big 9 saltiest
5 bigger 10 best

- I** 1 harder
2 better
3 worse
4 more carefully
5 more slowly
6 more beautifully
7 later
8 more easily

- J** 1 as cold as
2 as rich as
3 as expensive as
4 as hard as
5 as amusing as
6 as old as

- K** 1 as much 4 as many
2 as much 5 as many
3 as many 6 as many

Unit 93

- A** 1 excited
2 surprised
3 interesting
4 tiring
5 surprised
6 bored
7 exciting
8 boring

- B** 1 amusing
2 boring
3 interested
4 confusing
5 bored
6 amused
7 confused
8 surprising
9 surprised

- C** 1 entertaining
2 interesting
3 confusing
4 frightened
5 bored
6 boring
7 surprising
8 convincing
9 disappointed
10 convinced
11 relaxed
12 surprised

Unit 94

- A** 1 too dark
2 enough information
3 too late
4 enough food
5 too nervous
6 too fast
7 good enough
8 enough clothes

- B** 1 I've got too many books to read.
2 It isn't warm enough to go for a walk.
3 There are too many people on those buses.
4 I haven't got enough money to buy the CD.
5 We haven't got enough players for the game.

- C** 1 I'm too tired to do any more work.
2 Judy hasn't worked hard enough to pass the exam.
3 Clive is too short to play basketball./Clive isn't tall enough to play basketball.
4 His girl-friend was too ill to go to the party./His girl-friend wasn't well enough to go to the party.
5 David didn't have enough money to pay the bill.
6 Is it hot enough to go to the beach?
7 I'm too busy to see you tonight.
8 It's too early to go home.
9 Chris didn't have enough tools to repair the car.
10 I didn't have enough time to visit all the museums.

Unit 95

- A** 1 You must always lock the front door when you leave.
2 Steve and Jill play tennis

- twice a month.
- 3 I usually eat a sandwich for lunch.
 - 4 I sometimes go to jazz concerts at the weekend.
 - 5 My teacher gives me a lot of homework every day.
 - 6 We hardly ever see our Mexican friends.
 - 7 They often go to Morocco for their holidays.
 - 8 Bill and Marie go to the theatre four times a year.
 - 9 They are rarely at home in the evening.

- B**
- 1 Liz rarely gets up early. Ken always gets up early.
 - 2 Liz often watches TV. Ken sometimes watches TV.
 - 3 Liz rarely takes a taxi. Ken never takes a taxi.
 - 4 Liz usually has supper at home. Ken often has supper at home.

- C**
- 1 He buys a newspaper every day/once a day.
 - 2 He phones his mother three times a month.
 - 3 He has a shower twice a day/two times a day.
 - 4 He goes abroad once a year.
 - 5 He visits his sister three times a year.
 - 6 He plays tennis four times a week.

Unit 96

- A**
- | | |
|----------|--------------|
| 1 abroad | 5 there |
| 2 there | 6 at work |
| 3 back | 7 off school |
| 4 here | 8 to work |

- B**
- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 ✓ | 5 ✓ |
| 2 ✓ | 6 ✓ |
| 3 ✗ | 7 ✗ |
| 4 ✗ | |

- C**
- 1 as far as
 - 2 on the left
 - 3 right
 - 4 on the left
 - 5 along this road
 - 6 as far as
 - 7 on the right
 - 8 right
 - 9 as far as
 - 10 on the right
 - 11 along
 - 12 on the left
 - 13 straight on
 - 14 as far as

- 15 on the right
- 16 left
- 17 ahead

Unit 97

- A**
- 1 definitely comes from
 - 2 was often in
 - 3 suddenly noticed that Timmy wasn't
 - 4 is certainly very
 - 5 have recently changed
 - 6 will eventually understand
 - 7 are just
 - 8 never take the car
 - 9 almost won
 - 10 were already

- B**
- 1 have worked well all day.
 - 2 swam in the sea after lunch.
 - 3 rained heavily during the night.
 - 4 did my homework in my room before supper.
 - 5 played better last week.
 - 6 do things differently in Scotland.
 - 7 waited patiently outside the cinema.
 - 8 was in the bathroom for half an hour.
 - 9 never have breakfast in the dining room.
 - 10 almost missed the train yesterday.

- C**
- 1 ~~in the summer~~ visit it / visit it in the summer
 - 2 will just visit / ~~will visit just~~
 - 3 will also take a look / ~~will take also a look~~
 - 4 ~~walk through slowly~~ / walk slowly through
 - 5 drink tea elegantly / ~~drink elegantly tea~~
 - 6 once lived in the centre / ~~lived in the centre once~~
 - 7 people sometimes buy / ~~people buy sometimes~~
 - 8 ~~just can drive~~ / can just drive
 - 9 ~~an important UK tourist attraction~~ definitely / definitely an important UK tourist attraction

- D**
- 1 Margaret is definitely from Dublin.
 - 2 We immediately phoned the doctor.
 - 3 Either they are still asleep or they have gone to the shops.
 - 4 Anna doesn't speak Spanish, and she doesn't speak French either.

- 5 István has been working in an office since August.
- 6 My cousins are never at home on Sunday.
- 7 Tracy can't sing, and she can't dance either.
- 8 We saw the animals clearly with the telescope.

Unit 98

- A**
- | | |
|--------|-----------|
| 1 such | 4 such a |
| 2 so | 5 Such an |
| 3 such | 6 so |

- B**
- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1 such | 4 such |
| 2 such an | 5 such a |
| 3 such a | 6 such an |

- C**
- 1 He's such a creative cook
 - 2 Those people are making so much noise.
 - 3 He was/is so lucky.
 - 4 She wears such pretty clothes.
 - 5 They were so delicious.
 - 6 It's such an unhealthy habit

- D**
- 1 so slowly that she didn't finish the exam.
 - 2 so expensive that we didn't buy it.
 - 3 so tired that he didn't go out.
 - 4 so small that Peter couldn't see them.
 - 5 so much food that I couldn't finish it.
 - 6 so many people that she couldn't interview everybody.

Unit 99

- A**
- 1 between
 - 2 above
 - 3 in
 - 4 in front of/outside
 - 5 under
 - 6 next to/beside
 - 7 behind
 - 8 in
 - 9 opposite

- B**
- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 1 on | 6 near |
| 2 above | 7 at |
| 3 on | 8 under |
| 4 at | 9 in front |
| 5 next | |

- C**
- | | |
|---------------|----------|
| 1 in front of | 5 behind |
| 2 near | 6 above |
| 3 ✓ | 7 on |
| 4 ✓ | 8 in |

Unit 100

- A**
- | | |
|------|------|
| 1 at | 6 at |
| 2 in | 7 in |
| 3 on | 8 on |
| 4 at | 9 at |
| 5 in | |
- B**
- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 1 winter | 4 two o'clock |
| 2 weekend | 5 1990 |
| 3 Saturday | 6 birthday |
- C**
- | | |
|--------|--------|
| 1 at | 5 last |
| 2 ✓ | 6 on |
| 3 this | 7 ✓ |
| 4 ✓ | 8 ✓ |
| | 9 next |
- D**
- I'm meeting Steve on Wednesday morning.
 - I'm going to the bank at 10 a.m. on Friday.
 - I'm going sailing at the weekend.
 - I'm starting a new job next Monday.
 - I'm visiting Egypt in December.
 - I'm getting married on January 10th.
 - I'm going to Mexico in the spring.
 - I'm learning to ski in April.
 - I'm buying a new boat next year.
- E**
- from June to August
 - from 10 o'clock
 - from March
 - from Monday to Friday
 - from 1991 to 1994
 - from January

Unit 101

- A**
- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 1 across | 6 over |
| 2 down | 7 between |
| 3 up | 8 through |
| 4 under | 9 out of |
| 5 into | 10 to |
- B**
- | | |
|----------|---------------|
| 1 from | 6 in front of |
| 2 across | 7 down |
| 3 along | 8 through |
| 4 past | 9 under |
| 5 up | |
- C**
- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1 to | 7 along |
| 2 on | 8 past |
| 3 past | 9 towards |
| 4 into | 10 off |
| 5 through | 11 round |
| 6 over | |

Unit 102

- A**
- | | |
|-----|-----|
| 1 8 | 5 6 |
| 2 4 | 6 7 |
| 3 2 | 7 1 |
| 4 5 | |
- B**
- | | |
|----------|--------------|
| 1 on | 4 in, on, in |
| 2 on, in | 5 in, on |
| 3 at | 6 in, in |
- C**
- into, out of, into
 - onto, into, off, onto
- D**
- on
 - behind
 - next to/beside
 - in front of
 - between
- E**
- | | |
|---------------|-----------|
| 1 in front of | 6 behind |
| 2 under | 7 on |
| 3 out of | 8 over |
| 4 next to | 9 outside |
| 5 through | |
- F**
- in April.
 - on 20th April.
 - on Monday.
 - in the morning.
 - at 10 a.m.
 - in the spring.
- G**
- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1 Frank | 4 Jane |
| 2 Jeff | 5 Nobody |
| 3 Nobody | 6 Tony |
- H**
- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| 1 – | 5 outside |
| 2 at | 6 in |
| 3 in | 7 from |
| 4 opposite | 8 from |
- I**
- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1 Igaz | 6 Igaz |
| 2 Igaz | 7 Hamis |
| 3 Hamis | 8 Hamis |
| 4 Igaz | 9 Igaz |
| 5 Hamis | |
- J**
- We can see some tables in front of the bar
 - A child is jumping into the pool.
 - A man is walking out of the hotel.
 - A waiter is taking drinks to the table.
- K**
- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1 outside | 6 through |
| 2 at | 7 ✓ |
| 3 ✓ | 8 off, to |
| 4 in, ✓ | 9 on, at |
| 5 ✓, in | 10 ✓, ✓ |

- L**
- Let's meet at the football stadium before the match.
 - Do you live next to the church?
 - The bank is opposite the post office.
 - I'll arrive on Thursday at eight o'clock in the evening.
 - The shops are open from 9 a.m. to 8 p.m. in this town.
 - Do you usually stay/Are you usually at home at weekends?
 - Judy took a trip to the seaside on her birthday.
 - The postman is standing outside the door.
 - At the end of the concert, somebody fell off the stage.
 - If you want to get to the kitchen, go through this room.

Unit 103

- A**
- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 1 with | 8 in |
| 2 with | 9 in |
| 3 in | 10 with |
| 4 with | 11 with |
| 5 in | 12 in |
| 6 with | 13 with |
| 7 with | 14 in |
- B**
- | | |
|------------|----------------|
| 1 with (l) | 8 with (a) |
| 2 with (m) | 9 by (h) |
| 3 with (k) | 10 in (j) |
| 4 with (i) | 11 with (o) |
| 5 with (d) | 12 by (b) |
| 6 by (c) | 13 without (n) |
| 7 in (f) | 14 with (e) |
- C**
- He repaired the car by changing some of the parts.
 - She answered the question without reading it carefully.
 - He left without saying thank you.
 - She got the money by selling her car.
 - I threw the letter away without opening it.
 - We worked all day without eating anything.
 - He lost weight by going on a strict diet.
 - I went out without locking the door.

Unit 104

- A** 1 for 7 –
2 to 8 on
3 for 9 –
4 – 10 with
5 – 11 for
6 –
- B** 1 for 5 for
2 – 6 about
3 about 7 with
4 –
- C** 1 What are they talking about?
2 How much is she asking for?
3 How many jobs has she applied for?
4 What are you listening to?
- D** 1 at 5 for
2 – 6 at
3 for 7 –
4 to 8 –
- E** 1 The officer is shouting at the soldiers.
2 The tourists are listening to the guide.
3 Laura is asking for a glass of water.
4 The policeman is looking for two men.
5 Connie is phoning Peter.
6 Mrs Thomson is paying the electricity bill.
- F** 1 argue about (f)
2 phone (e)
3 look for (a)
4 talk about (g)
5 ask (b)
6 believe in (d)
- G** 1 There are people who don't believe in the theory of evolution.
2 Which waiter did you complain about?
3 I'm sorry for making a mistake.
4 It was snowing when we arrived in Scotland.
5 Who were you talking to when we met?
6 I discussed the problem with the teacher.
7 Jim asked something but nobody answered him.
8 We reached the border at eight.
9 Who's going to pay the doctor?
10 Fred is always thinking /always thinks about eating.

- 11 Tina asked her brother for some money.
12 What radio station do you listen to / are you listening to?

Unit 105

- A** 1 for 5 of
2 with 6 at
3 of 7 of
4 in 8 on
- B** 1 A: Is their daughter good at school work?
B: Yes, in fact she is brilliant at everything.
2 A: Why is Mr Bell's dog afraid of him?
B: Because he is often cruel to it.
3 A: Is Laura fond of classical music?
B: Yes, she is very keen on Bach, for example.
4 A: Are you pleased with Peter's exam results?
B: Yes, we are very proud of him.
- C** 1 famous for
2 busy
3 full of
4 good at
5 used to
6 interested in
7 sick of
8 worried about
9 no good
10 worth

Unit 106

- A** 1 by, except, on 6 With, in
2 in, by 7 in, on
3 in, without 8 in, out of
4 In, on 9 on, for
5 by, out of 10 In, by
- B** 1 f 5 b
2 a 6 d
3 i 7 h
4 g 8 c
- C** 1 at once
2 For example
3 in charge
4 by mistake
5 At first
6 on holiday
7 for ever

Unit 107

- A** 1 by, on 8 with, in
2 –, for 9 on
3 in 10 by
4 by 11 –, –
5 by 12 on
6 On 13 in, with, by
7 in
- B** 1 through 5 on
2 at 6 in
3 by 7 without
4 at 8 across
- C** 1 on strike
2 on their own
3 busy with
4 in pain
5 afraid of, believe in
6 grateful for
7 out of order
8 without delay
9 on the contrary
10 in fact
11 in favour
12 instead of
- D** 1 with dark hair
2 in a beautiful dress
3 in fashion
4 At first
5 full of
6 talked to
7 except me
8 in the end
9 in Africa
10 asked about
11 annoyed with
12 proud of
13 wait for
14 talking about
15 interested in
16 At the end
17 asked for
18 by taxi
19 on Sunday
20 in love
21 think about
- E** 1 shouted at, under some trees
2 on holiday, on a tropical beach
3 by herself, along a country road
4 out of reach, the ladder
5 out of control, in danger
6 in the garage, with a cloth
7 across the bridge, at over ninety kilometres an hour
8 by cheque, in cash
9 listening to, on the radio
10 arrived at, in time
11 in order, out of place
12 in Italy, on business

- F** 1 on purpose
2 in a hurry
3 out of work
4 lucky at
5 used to
6 apologize for
7 for example
8 in public
9 in advance
10 under age
11 in my car
12 at least
13 bored with
14 brilliant at

- G** 1 Philip always talks about cars and I'm not interested in them.
2 Jack (has) applied for a job in the local supermarket.
3 There was a red letter box at the gate, with some letters in it.
4 At dinner we decided who would pay the bill.
5 I'm fed up with Péter. I'm not going to listen to his stupid stories.

Unit 108

- A** 1 are held
2 is spoken
3 was written
4 are checked
5 was built
6 are sold
7 were produced
8 was founded

- B** 1 are the Olympic Games held?
2 is English spoken?
3 was 'Yesterday' written by?
4 are car speeds checked?
5 was the Channel Tunnel built?
6 are souvenirs sold?
7 were the first Volkswagen Beetles produced?
8 was the Times newspaper founded?

- C** 1 The electric light bulb was invented by Thomas Edison.
2 The office was painted last week.
3 The accident was seen by several people.
4 Where are these video recorders made?
5 The agreement was signed by six countries.

- D** 1 produced
2 were exported
3 started
4 were tested
5 launched
6 was called
7 exported
8 are sold

Unit 109

- A** 1 are made
2 was being built
3 must be typed
4 have been cleaned
5 were broken
6 has been stolen

- B** 1 was Mary examined (by the doctor)?
2 will the food be prepared?
3 has this window been broken?

- C** 1 was not examined (by the doctor) this morning.
2 will not be prepared on Friday.
3 has not been broken three times.

- D** 1 has been won by the French team.
2 were being trained by a woman.
3 can be played by people of all ages.
4 was sent by the secretary.
5 have been marked by two different teachers.
6 is being followed by a police car.

- E** 1 be finished
2 has been ... taken
3 be posted
4 be made
5 were being loaded
6 are being typed
7 had ... been sold
8 have been taken
9 be finished
10 have been painted
11 be delivered
12 have ... been caught

- F** 1 were appointed to carry out the work.
2 was completed last week.
3 were delivered last Monday.
4 have been stored in Office 23.
5 have been ordered.

- 6 is being written in both English and Japanese.
7 will be decorated next Wednesday.
8 will be decorated on Thursday.
9 will have been decorated before the big day.
10 must be prepared during the morning.
11 must be stopped at 12.30.
12 will be served at one o'clock.

- G** 1 How many people were appointed to carry out the work?
2 When was the first stage completed?
3 When were the decorations delivered?
4 Where have the boxes been stored?
5 Who is the main speech being written by?
6 When will the Sales Department be decorated?
7 When must the dining room be prepared?
8 What time will lunch be served?
9 Who will lunch be served by?

- H** 1 is being redesigned.
2 is being turned
3 are being planted
4 are being installed
5 is (also) being extended
6 is being built

- I** 1 The restoration of the museum has been finished.
2 When was your car repaired?
3 A lot of workers died while the Panama Canal was being constructed.
4 These clothes mustn't be washed in hot water.
5 Who were these poems written by?
6 The books weren't / haven't been packed in boxes.
7 I can't wear my black shoes because they are being repaired.
8 Which architect was this building designed by?
9 This door must be locked every evening.
10 Were all these photos taken by your sister?
11 Where were the exam results displayed?
12 When the waiter came over, the bill had been paid by my uncle.

Unit 110

- A**
- 1 will be paid eight pounds an hour.
 - 2 has been offered a better job.
 - 3 will be asked ten questions.
 - 4 were told their results.
 - 5 were shown the house where Shakespeare was born.
 - 6 was promised a rise in salary.

- B**
- 1 We were given life jackets.
 - 2 We were shown how to raise the sail.
 - 3 We were taught the basics of windsurfing.
 - 4 We were told the rules of the game.
 - 5 We were given rackets and balls.
 - 6 We were shown how to serve correctly.
 - 7 We were taught how to do a back-handed return.

- C**
- 1 Jane was advised to go to the dentist's.
 - 2 Mr Bridges was asked to come back later.
 - 3 The pupils were allowed to do the exercise in pairs.
 - 4 The boys were warned not to go near the dogs.
 - 5 I was reminded to confirm my reservation.

- D**
- 1 got stolen at the airport.
 - 2 glasses got broken so he couldn't read.
 - 3 got soaked in a rainstorm.
 - 4 got stung by a bee.

Unit 111

- A**
- 1 has her food delivered.
 - 2 had his holiday photos developed
 - 3 has her hair cut
 - 4 had his eyes checked.
 - 5 will have her blood pressure checked.
 - 6 had her car serviced.
 - 7 are going to have the roof mended

- B**
- 1 They have their carpets cleaned there.
 - 2 I must have the tyres on my car checked.
 - 3 I ought to have a new key made for the front door.
 - 4 I don't think I can afford to have our flat painted.

- 5 I had my watch mended there last week.
- 6 My husband had his eyes tested there last winter.
- 7 have that coffee stain removed.

- C**
- 1 did you have the house decorated
 - 2 do you get your photos developed
 - 3 did you have your suit cleaned
 - 4 did you get your passport photos taken

- D**
- 1 We should have the flat painted.
 - 2 Mary had her eyes checked at the hospital.
 - 3 Where did you have your hair cut?
 - 4 The king and the queen had their portraits painted.
 - 5 Will we have the flat wall-papered next summer?
 - 6 Mr Jones had flowers planted in his garden.
 - 7 We had our photos taken for our new passports.

Unit 112

- A**
- 1 The planet Pluto was discovered in 1930.
 - 2 Two atomic bombs were dropped on Japan in 1945.
 - 3 Slavery was abolished in the United States in 1863.
 - 4 The first Apple computers were produced in the 1970s.
 - 5 The Eiffel Tower was built a hundred years ago.
 - 6 The first jet planes were made in Germany.
 - 7 The Taj Mahal was built in the 17th century.
 - 8 In 1957 millions of pounds were stolen from a train in England.
 - 9 Queen Elizabeth was crowned in 1953.
 - 10 In the old days, horses were used for transport.
 - 11 The first books were printed in the 15th century.
 - 12 London was destroyed by fire in 1666.

- B**
- 1 Penicillin was discovered by Alexander Fleming.
 - 2 The detective Hercule Poirot was created by Agatha Christie.

- 3 La Traviata was composed by Verdi.
- 4 The James Bond books were written by Ian Fleming.
- 5 The telephone was invented by Alexander Bell.
- 6 The jet engine was designed by Frank Whittle.
- 7 Jurassic Park was directed by Stephen Spielberg.
- 8 The Mona Lisa was painted by Leonardo da Vinci.

- C**
- 1 was being swept
 - 2 was being painted
 - 3 were being tested
 - 4 was being erected
 - 5 was being put down
 - 6 were being arranged

- D**
- 1 was given some flowers.
 - 2 was offered a wonderful job.
 - 3 will be given a present.
 - 4 was sent a strange letter.
 - 5 will be paid over five hundred pounds.
 - 6 has been promised a bicycle for her birthday.
 - 7 was given the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1938.
 - 8 weren't told the truth.

- E**
- 1 Four bridges have been destroyed in floods.
 - 2 A discotheque has been closed by (the) police.
 - 3 Three Picasso paintings have been sold for two million dollars.
 - 4 A film star has been hurt in a car crash.
 - 5 Some bones have been discovered in a London cellar.
 - 6 A drug dealer has been sent to prison.
 - 7 Two singers have been accused of stealing.
 - 8 The Tower of Pisa has been struck by lightning.
 - 9 A girl has been attacked by a savage dog.

- F**
- 1 am going to have them mended
 - 2 had it made
 - 3 am going to have it checked
 - 4 had it painted
 - 5 had it repaired
 - 6 am going to have them tested

- G**
- 1 was given a cup of coffee
 - 2 was interviewed by two managers.
 - 3 was asked a lot of questions.
 - 4 was made to do a test

- 5 was allowed to ask questions about the job and conditions.
- 6 was told that there were over 100 applicants for the job.
- 7 was offered the money for my travel expenses

- H**
- 1 was organized
 - 2 are being searched
 - 3 has been interviewed
 - 4 were started, were finished
 - 5 will be/is going to be published
 - 6 can't be opened
 - 7 was broken/had been broken
 - 8 were written
 - 9 will be accompanied
 - 10 will/might/may have been elected

- I**
- 1 was designed
 - 2 was intended
 - 3 was not changed
 - 4 were improved
 - 5 were sold
 - 6 was completely redesigned
 - 7 was first seen
 - 8 are now counted
 - 9 is still considered
 - 10 is in fact produced
 - 11 is built

- J**
- 1 How often are the animals fed on this farm?
 - 2 These letters must be posted today.
 - 3 The gun had been removed before the police arrived.
 - 4 The winners' names will be announced tomorrow.
 - 5 You will be shown how to handle poisonous snakes.
 - 6 Weren't you told to bring your trainers?
 - 7 (The) tourists are asked not to take photos in the museum.
 - 8 Why was Peter fired from his job?
 - 9 Was it expensive to have the invitations printed/made?
 - 10 I had the clock repaired last week.

Unit 113

- A**
- 1 stop running
 - 2 don't mind listening
 - 3 keeps losing
 - 4 enjoys going, likes meeting
 - 5 admitted robbing
 - 6 finish eating
 - 7 suggested going
 - 8 gave up studying

- B**
- 1 he went dancing.
 - 2 he went cycling.
 - 3 he went swimming.
 - 4 he went skiing.
 - 5 he went sailing.

- C**
- 1 like living
 - 2 don't/do not like getting up
 - 3 don't/do not like watching
 - 4 likes lying
 - 5 likes going
 - 6 doesn't/does not like cooking

- D**
- 1 loved acting
 - 2 finished growing
 - 3 disliked being
 - 4 avoid thinking
 - 5 mind reading
 - 6 hate living
 - 7 keep telling
 - 8 denies having
 - 9 enjoyed listening
 - 10 like putting

Unit 114

- A**
- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1 to phone | 6 to eat |
| 2 be | 7 reply |
| 3 to break | 8 go |
| 4 enjoy | 9 to save |
| 5 to wait | 10 receive |

- B**
- 1 come to the meeting on Friday.
 - 2 to meet some friends tonight.
 - 3 to be asleep.
 - 4 to lock the door when you go out.
 - 5 go out for a meal this evening.
 - 6 to lend me the money.
 - 7 to do a course in Art History.
 - 8 to pay the bill.
 - 9 to win (the) first prize.
 - 10 to help me.
 - 11 phone you tomorrow.
 - 12 be angry with you.
 - 13 listen to music

- C**
- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1 do | 6 to take |
| 2 to go | 7 to reach |
| 3 to come | 8 meet |
| 4 to leave | 9 be |
| 5 to start | |

Unit 115

- A**
- 1 to go
 - 2 playing
 - 3 to buy
 - 4 to take
 - 5 repairing/to repair
 - 6 to visit

- 7 talking
- 8 to help
- 9 to pay
- 10 to live

- B**
- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 1 to buy | 8 washing |
| 2 to open | 9 to finish |
| 3 to check | 10 to feed |
| 4 meeting | 11 to invite |
| 5 to phone | 12 working |
| 6 taking | 13 to look |
| 7 talking | |

- C**
- 1 Mary likes working abroad.
 - 2 We tried opening the windows, but the air didn't get (any) fresher.
 - 3 On warm evenings my parents prefer to sit in the garden.
 - 4 Bill stopped smoking a year ago.
 - 5 I'll never forget travelling across the Sahara.
 - 6 We haven't got anything for supper. I forgot / didn't remember to go shopping.
 - 7 My brother would love to travel to Finland.
 - 8 Try to come to the concert. It'll be wonderful.
 - 9 I haven't got my key but I can't remember leaving them anywhere.
 - 10 Jim likes playing football but he doesn't like watching other people play.
 - 11 Don't forget to write a letter to your uncle.
 - 12 I love walking in the centre and looking at shop windows.

Unit 116

- A**
- 1 taking the money.
 - 2 to lend Jim five pounds.
 - 3 meeting the King when he was young.
 - 4 wearing glasses.
 - 5 to accept the job.
 - 6 to buy some butter.
 - 7 smoking (a year ago).
 - 8 arguing with his colleagues.
 - 9 to move house.
 - 10 to move all the furniture

- B**
- 1 gave up studying
 - 2 enjoy doing
 - 3 deserve to pass
 - 4 refuses to listen
 - 5 keep studying
 - 6 offered to help
 - 7 promised to study
 - 8 want to talk

- 9 stop asking
- 10 dislike listening
- 11 seem to think
- 12 need to study
- 13 have to find

- C**
- 1 Pam has suggested going to the theatre but I was hoping not to spend any money this weekend.
 - 2 Saul keeps complaining about his cough but has he tried drinking hot lemon?
 - 3 I'd rather not do the shopping today; I don't mind doing it tomorrow on my own.
 - 4 Betty has arranged to see the doctor; she wants to ask about her headaches.
 - 5 I plan to go alone because I don't like visiting museums with other people.
 - 6 She admits telling him what had happened, but she didn't mean to hurt him.
 - 7 Phil didn't deserve to pass the exam so he shouldn't complain.
 - 8 When you've finished doing your homework, we'll go shopping.
 - 9 Can you imagine living in the middle of the desert?
 - 10 We'll be able to go skiing if we manage to save some money.

- D**
- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1 asking | 7 go |
| 2 to go | 8 sitting |
| 3 walking | 9 to spend |
| 4 to lend | 10 arguing |
| 5 talking | 11 to think |
| 6 promising | |

- E**
- 1 promised to come
 - 2 keeps making
 - 3 forgot to write
 - 4 stopped driving
 - 5 may phone
 - 6 offered to make
 - 7 admitted breaking
 - 8 go skiing
 - 9 should sit
 - 10 tried drinking

- F**
- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1 to pay | 5 crossing |
| 2 to have | 6 looking |
| 3 meeting | 7 to post |
| 4 talking | 8 to get in |

- G**
- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1 washing | 7 to get |
| 2 drive | 8 Jogging |
| 3 to learn | 9 jogging |
| 4 smoking | 10 cycling |
| 5 tell | 11 eating |
| 6 dancing | 12 hear |

- H**
- 1 My parents keep telling me that I should go on to university.
 - 2 Has your sister given up smoking?
 - 3 Last summer we went swimming almost every day.
 - 4 How old were you when you learnt to ski?
 - 5 The doorman pretended to be asleep.
 - 6 We mustn't forget to buy some bread.
 - 7 Could you stop working for a moment, please?
 - 8 If you can't fall asleep, try counting sheep.
 - 9 I remember putting my passport somewhere, but I can't find it now.
 - 10 We avoided speaking about his/her mother's illness.

- I**
- On her sixteenth birthday Anna decided to leave school. She enjoyed studying; that wasn't the problem. She disliked asking her parents for money all the time. When she told them about her decision, at first they refused to listen. They said that they didn't have much money, but they lived relatively well, and they hoped that Anna would go on to university.

Then Anna's mother went on, 'You don't have to worry about our paying for your education. We have everything (that) we need.'

Anna said, 'I don't mean to be ungrateful, but I'd like to avoid depending on you for anything. I want to earn money. Don't worry. I'll find a job that will make it possible for me to study in the evenings. I want to go on studying.'

In the end Anna's parents realised why she wanted to leave school, they accepted her decision and promised to help her (to) find a suitable job.

Unit 117

- A**
- 1 A key is a thing for locking doors.
 - 2 A thermometer is an instrument for measuring temperature.

- 3 A telescope is an instrument for looking at the stars.
- 4 A drill is a tool for making holes.
- 5 An answerphone is a machine for recording telephone messages.
- 6 A cashpoint is a machine for getting money.

- B**
- 1 A: What does Mary want the money for?
B: She wants the money for a train ticket.
 - 2 A: What does Philip want the flour for?
B: He wants the flour for a cake.
 - 3 A: What did Bill go to the butcher's for?
B: He went to the butcher's for some sausages.
 - 4 A: What does Helen want the polish for?
B: She wants it for her shoes.
 - 5 A: What did Alison go to the library for?
B: She went to the library for a book on India.
 - 6 A: What did Jane buy a newspaper for?
B: She bought a newspaper for the football results.

- C**
- 1 wants the money to buy a train ticket.
 - 2 wants the flour to make a cake.
 - 3 went to the butcher's to buy some sausages.
 - 4 wants the polish to clean her shoes.
 - 5 went to the library to borrow a book.
 - 6 bought a newspaper to see the football results.

- D**
- 1 What did he come for?
 - 2 A bus is for carrying passengers.
 - 3 She went to the post office to buy some stamps.
 - 4 The mayor came to give the prizes.
 - 5 The woman jumped into the river to save the child.
 - 6 I'm training hard to get fit.
 - 7 This is a computer program for making three-dimensional drawings.
 - 8 Can I use your pen to sign this letter?

Unit 118

- A** 1 I left him to think about the details.
2 I want them to work harder.
3 the terrible weather forced us to cancel it.
4 I'll get my mother to teach you.
5 but they persuaded me to take it.

- B** 1 taught us to play
2 needed someone to teach
3 wanted us to go
4 preferred a teacher to come
5 helped her to learn
6 expect us to practise
7 allow us to watch
8 encourage us to go
9 get us to play
10 loves people to say
11 bribe him to play

- C** 1 the leaves falling from the trees.
2 the ground shake once.
3 Tom sign his name.
4 the water running down the road.
5 the door open.
6 a policeman guarding the Prime Minister's house.
7 the lightening strike a tree.
8 the workers repairing the road.

Unit 119

- A** 1 If you're a vegetarian, you don't eat meat.
2 If you live in a hot country, you don't like cold weather.
3 If you're a teacher, you have to work very hard.
4 If you do a lot of exercise, you stay fit and healthy.
5 If you're a mechanic, you understand engines.

- B** 1 pass 6 will want
2 will be 7 will get
3 will get 8 want
4 go 9 get
5 get 10 will be

- C** 1 I don't pass 6 won't want
2 won't be 7 won't get
3 won't get 8 don't want
4 don't go 9 don't get
5 don't get 10 won't be

- D** 1 will 3 will
2 might 4 might, might

- E** 1 unless you telephone first.
2 if they don't/do not invite you.
3 if you can't swim.
4 unless we win on Saturday.

Unit 120

- A** 1 she'd/she would go
2 she lived
3 he didn't/did not eat
4 he'd/he would have
5 she got
6 he wouldn't/would not smoke

- B** 1 they discovered oil in Ireland
2 doctors found a cure for cancer
3 young people stopped listening to pop music
4 astronauts visited Mars

- C** 1 were fewer cars
2 drove more slowly
3 would have more time for reading.
4 ate fewer sweets.
5 more people travelled by bus

- D** 1 d If chameleons **couldn't** change colour, they **couldn't** protect themselves.
2 f Life on earth **would** disappear if the sun **didn't** exist.
3 b People **wouldn't use** their cars so much if there **was** more public transport.
4 g If everybody **lived** a healthier life, we **wouldn't need** so many hospitals.
5 a The police **wouldn't have committed** any crimes.

Unit 121

- A** 1 would 10 wouldn't
2 — 11 is
3 unless 12 might
4 would 13 could
5 were 14 are
6 was/were 15 won't
7 unless 16 didn't
8 were 17 were
9 — 18 —

- B** 1 will be able to come.
2 might be able to come.
3 won't/will not be able to come.
4 won't/will not be able to come.
5 might be able to come.

- C** 1 I'll/I will buy, I go
2 he doesn't/does not phone, I'll/I will phone
3 you want, I'll/I will give
4 he'll/he will fail, he doesn't/does not work
5 you fill in, I'll/I will send

- D** 1 would you say
2 would think
3 would be
4 study
5 was/were
6 don't have
7 went
8 didn't have
9 would be
10 could I
11 would help
12 will have
13 think
14 'll/will give

- E** 1 might see Peter.
2 might let you stay the night.
3 won't/will not let you into that club.
4 will give us a discount (on these books).
5 will (definitely) get into university.

- F** 1 If I met Tom Cruise, I'd ask him for his autograph.
2 If I became a film director, I'd live in Hollywood.
3 If I saw a UFO, I'd sell my story to a newspaper.
4 If I grew to be two metres tall, I'd be a basketball player.
5 If I was/were a famous film star, I'd like to make a film with Robert de Niro.
6 If I married somebody very rich, I'd give up my job.

- G** 1 will get stomach ache if you eat too many apples.
2 would fall off the earth if there was/were no gravity.
3 'll walk out if I don't like the concert this evening.
4 do a lot of exercise, you get hungry.
5 can't drive a taxi unless you have a special licence.
6 lived in the USA, I wouldn't have a flat in New York.
7 do the lottery this week, we might become millionaires.
8 were French, where would you like to live?
9 didn't live in Italy, where would you live?

- H** 1 will solve, follows
2 accepts, will discover
3 will win, fights
4 investigates, will bring
5 finds, will return
6 will be, solves

- I** 1 England won't have enough water if it doesn't rain a lot next winter.
2 Jim can't come to the cinema with us unless we lend him some money / if we don't lend him some money.
3 Unless you apologize, I won't speak to you again.
4 My mum says that if I save, I might have enough money for a holiday.
5 If there were trips to the moon, I'd travel there, too.
6 If I were you, I wouldn't tell anyone/anybody what's happened/what happened.
7 We could have a picnic if the weather was/were better.
8 If you asked him nicely, Dad might lend you/ us his car.
9 If people didn't drive so fast, there wouldn't be so many accidents.

Unit 122

- A** 1 If she had spoken German very well, she'd have/she would have applied for the job.
2 If her friend hadn't/had not phoned, she wouldn't/would not have heard about the teaching jobs.
3 If she hadn't/had not contacted the company, they wouldn't/would not have asked her to go for an interview.
4 If the interview had gone badly, the director wouldn't/ would not have offered Ellen a job.
5 If Ellen had known some Spanish, she'd have/she would have started at once.
6 If she hadn't/had not been good at languages, she wouldn't/she would not have made rapid progress.

- B** 1 hadn't/had not lost, would have phoned
2 hadn't/had not broken, would have gone

- 3 would have made, hadn't/had not forgotten

- C** 1 would have gone to the concert (last night) if she hadn't had a lot of homework.
2 would have got some new trainers if the shop hadn't been closed.
3 would have come home early if there hadn't been a bus strike.
4 would have had volleyball practice if the coach hadn't been ill.
5 would have sent the letter if he'd had a stamp.
6 would have bought some new books if she hadn't lent all her money to Terry.

Unit 123

- A** 1 I had good eyesight.
2 I could speak German.
3 I had a degree.
4 I was/were eighteen.

- B** 1 I wish you would listen more carefully.
2 I wish they would play more quietly.
3 I wish you would take it off.
4 I wish they would go to bed.

- C** 1 had told
2 could afford
3 didn't bite
4 hadn't stayed
5 didn't live
6 had bought
7 danced
8 hadn't invited

- D** 1 she hadn't spent all her money.
2 listened to what I say.
3 she had a better job.
4 he hadn't eaten so much ice-cream.
5 had taken an umbrella.

Unit 124

- A** 1 wasn't/weren't
2 lived, would have
3 wouldn't have known, hadn't met
4 won't be, pay
5 wouldn't have got, had taken
6 floats, are
7 didn't live, wouldn't have
8 were, wouldn't touch

- B** 1 If Philip didn't do a lot of sport, he wouldn't be very fit.
2 Angie would eat fish if she wasn't allergic to it.
3 If Sally didn't read the newspaper, she wouldn't know the latest news.
4 We could go out if it wasn't so cold.
5 Peter wouldn't like French films if he didn't understand the language.
6 If Kate didn't have a lot of headaches, she wouldn't buy a lot of aspirins.
7 Colin could go to the cinema if he had a lot of spare time.
8 If the US wasn't a powerful country, people wouldn't know the President's name.

- C** 1 wouldn't have asked, had had
2 hadn't had, wouldn't have been able
3 wouldn't have played, hadn't been
4 hadn't saved, wouldn't have won
5 wouldn't have asked, had played
6 wouldn't have been, hadn't finished
7 hadn't been, wouldn't have given
8 wouldn't have offered, hadn't been pleased

- D** 1 had gone
2 could afford
3 didn't live
4 hadn't lent
5 could play
6 had waited
7 hadn't changed
8 spoke

- E** 1 would complain
2 put
3 were
4 found
5 would have
6 had
7 would improve
8 bought
9 wouldn't/would not have
10 would get
11 might find
12 asked
13 could find
14 found
15 would enjoy
16 didn't open
17 would care
18 would save

- 19 could open
- 20 would be
- 21 stayed

- F**
- 1 wouldn't see
 - 2 stay
 - 3 don't get
 - 4 are
 - 5 would have phoned
 - 6 hadn't passed
 - 7 have
 - 8 won't get
 - 9 has
 - 10 will get
 - 11 have
 - 12 will always be
 - 13 didn't go
 - 14 had spoken
 - 15 wouldn't have let
 - 16 wouldn't have given
 - 17 was/were
 - 18 would ask
 - 19 don't stop
 - 20 will get

- G**
- 1 If you are in the countryside, you can see more stars in the sky.
 - 2 Tom will help if you ask him.
 - 3 If I were you, I'd take an aspirin.
 - 4 Our rivers would be cleaner if we took more care of them.
 - 5 If the weather had been better at the weekend, we would have gone to the beach.
 - 6 If Sally could speak foreign languages, she could be a travel guide.
 - 7 I wish my parents weren't so strict.
 - 8 If only my brothers/ sisters hadn't moved away.
 - 9 If Peter had been more careful, he wouldn't have had an accident.
 - 10 My sister would have given us money if we'd asked her.

Unit 125

- A**
- | | |
|--------|---------------|
| 1 told | 6 told |
| 2 said | 7 said |
| 3 told | 8 said |
| 4 told | 9 told |
| 5 told | 10 told, told |

- B**
- 1 (that) she was enjoying
 - 2 (that) she'd/she had been
 - 3 (that) she was
 - 4 (that) she was staying
 - 5 (that) they/her friends had
 - 6 (that) she was leaving

- 7 (that) she couldn't speak
- 8 (that) she was going to have
- 9 (that) she'd/she would teach

- C**
- 1 (that) she was going to a conference.
 - 2 (that) he'd/he had lost his passport.
 - 3 (that) they'd/they had been on holiday.
 - 4 (that) she didn't understand.
 - 5 (that) they were staying for three weeks.

Unit 126

- A**
- | | |
|------|--------|
| 1 us | 10 I |
| 2 he | 11 him |
| 3 me | 12 me |
| 4 he | 13 she |
| 5 I | 14 me |
| 6 he | 15 I |
| 7 me | 16 her |
| 8 he | 17 she |
| 9 me | 18 she |

- B**
- 1 they were leaving the next/following day.
 - 2 she couldn't marry him.
 - 3 he would write to her every day.
 - 4 she often went there.
 - 5 her brother was going to visit her.
 - 6 they'd/they had arrived there the day before/the previous day.
 - 7 he'd/he had been there for a week and that he was staying at the Dickens Hotel.

Unit 127

- A**
- 1 ~~cleaning~~ / to clean
 - 2 ~~to break~~ / breaking
 - 3 to bring / ~~bringing~~
 - 4 to speak / ~~speaking~~
 - 5 ~~letting~~ / to let
 - 6 to eat / ~~eating~~
 - 7 ~~apologizing~~ / to apologize

- B**
- 1 Yes, and I told him not to be late.
 - 2 Yes, and she warned her not to go outside the house.
 - 3 Yes, and I told him not to forget the stamps.
 - 4 Yes, and he told them not to go near the windows.

- C**
- 1 I reminded John to phone Sally.

- 2 Anna offered to help Barbara with her homework.
- 3 Paul apologized for breaking the window.
- 4 She warned the children to stay away from the water.
- 5 Mark suggested going out for a pizza.
- 6 I promised to phone as soon as I arrived.

- D**
- 1 warned them not to touch
 - 2 advised her to take
 - 3 reminded him to bring
 - 4 ordered them to leave
 - 5 asked him to come

Unit 128

- A**
- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 if/whether, . | 6 What, ? |
| 2 Why, ? | 7 when, . |
| 3 how many, . | 8 why, . |
| 4 if/whether, . | 9 where, . |
| 5 if/whether, . | 10 if/whether, . |

- B**
- 1 Does Jim often play football? I wondered if Jim often played football.
 - 2 What have the children eaten? She wanted to know what the children had eaten.
 - 3 Where is Mark going? I wondered where Mark was going.
 - 4 When is the next bus? I asked when the next bus was.
 - 5 How many students will come on the trip? Sara wondered how many students would come on the trip.
 - 6 Can Mary speak French? I wondered if Mary could speak French.
 - 7 Why did Vicky buy a new bicycle? I asked why Vicky had bought a new bicycle.
 - 8 Where does Peter work? I wondered where Peter worked.

- C**
- 1 if/whether he had worked since then
 - 2 if/whether his sister gave him money
 - 3 who else gave him money
 - 4 if/whether he knew Steven Ellis
 - 5 how long he had known him
 - 6 if/whether he had seen Steven recently

Unit 129

- A** 1 Ruth said (that) she went jogging every morning.
 2 Anna said (that) Jenny wasn't studying for her exams.
 3 Jim said (that) he couldn't swim.
 4 Jane said (that) Mary worked in a bank.
 5 Jim said (that) he was staying with some friends.
 6 Mike said (that) he had never been to Russia.
 7 Ella said (that) Tom couldn't use a computer.
 8 Jill said (that) everybody had to try to do their best.
 9 Rachel said (that) Jane might move to a new flat.
 10 Bill said (that) he would stay at home on Sunday.

- B** 1 I could rely on her.
 2 you had been very kind.
 3 you were staying with her.
 4 we were making too much noise.
 5 you might come to my party.

- C** 1 She told him (that) she liked his paintings
 2 You told me (that) you liked that film.
 3 Tom told Ann (that) he felt ill.
 4 She told Bill (that) she was leaving.
 5 I told you (that) I couldn't find it.
 6 Mary told him (that) she would send the letter.
 7 We told them (that) we would arrive at six.

- D** 1 advised, to leave
 2 reminded, to collect
 3 asked, to take
 4 offered to drive
 5 apologized for dropping
 6 told, he lived
 7 promised to send
 8 warned, not to touch

- E** 1 asked, where he worked, he worked in Bradford.
 2 asked, what she would do, him that she would go to the police.
 3 asked, when he had written the letter, her that he couldn't remember.
 4 asked, what had happened to his hand, him that a dog had bitten him.

- F** 1 I wanted
 2 (that) I had a friend who was going to be
 3 to fill in
 4 if I could speak
 5 (that) I had studied it
 6 if I had any
 7 (that) I had done
 8 (that) she would probably be able to get
 9 couldn't guarantee me
 10 (that) she would phone me
 11 to ask about
 12 not to go to

- G** 1 Jim said (that) he couldn't buy a new car.
 2 Why did you tell the ticket inspector (that) you had no ticket?
 3 The doctor advised my father not to work so much.
 4 Pamela asked me to go to the bank.
 5 The firemen said (that) everyone/everybody had left the building.
 6 Let's ask Tony to help.
 7 Jack asked when I had sent the letter.
 8 Some of my friends said they would come to see me the following week.
 9 Kati asked if anybody had phoned.
 10 I asked the policeman where the museum was.

Unit 130

- A** 1 This restaurant is both cheap and good.
 2 Christine bought both a dress and a jumper.
 3 They play both volleyball and tennis.
 4 The film was both funny and exciting.

- B** 1 so 4 though
 2 Although 5 However
 3 However 6 though

- C** 1 good train service. However, Victor
 2 Although we read the instructions carefully, we didn't
 3 Although the police searched all day, they didn't
 4 had a lot of money. However, she didn't

- D** 1 but, so 4 so, but
 2 so, but 5 but, so
 3 so, but

- E** 1 but 4 both
 2 so 5 However
 3 Although 6 so

Unit 131

- A** 1 either
 2 Neither
 3 Neither, either
 4 either
 5 neither
 6 either, neither
 7 either
 8 neither
 9 either
 10 either
 11 neither
 12 either

- B** 1 Both of them
 2 Neither of them
 3 Both of them
 4 Neither of them
 5 Both of them
 6 Neither of them

- C** 1 either of them
 2 both of them
 3 neither of them
 4 both of us
 5 neither of us
 6 neither of us
 7 either of them
 8 Both of us
 9 both of them

Unit 132

- A** 1 from 1980 to 1989/for three years
 2 from 1980 to 1989/for three years
 3 for three years/since 1996/since the war
 4 for three years/since 1996/since the war
 5 for three years/since 1996/since the war
 6 six months ago/in 1999
 7 six months ago/in 1999

- B** 1 for 6 first
 2 from 7 ago
 3 to 8 for
 4 first 9 ago
 5 for

- C** 1 We haven't spoken to Jane for two weeks.
We last spoke to Jane two weeks ago.
- 2 Helen hasn't visited Rome for twenty years.
Helen hasn't visited Rome since she was a student.
- 3 We last saw Mary two years ago.
We haven't seen Mary for two years.
We haven't seen her since she got married.
- D** 1 When did, first met
2 How long, took, from
3 did, last, met
4 How long, has been, since

Unit 133

- A** 1 Mary was tired so she went to bed.
2 I couldn't sleep because of the heat.
3 Jill doesn't eat apples because she doesn't like them.
4 The streets were crowded because.
5 I'll give Jane a key in case she gets home before me.
- B** 1 in case she's at home.
2 because I want to lose weight.
3 because his passport was out of date.
4 so I'll take a book to read.
5 in case there is a power cut this weekend.
- C** 1 Because
2 to
3 so that
4 so
5 why
6 Because of
7 to
8 because
9 since
10 so
11 in case
- D** 1 ~~that~~
2 ✓
3 ~~so~~ because
4 ✓, for to, ~~so~~

Unit 134

- A** 1 She spoke to the man who was standing next to her.
2 I read the letters which came in the morning post.
3 He likes the other people who work in his office.
4 She's that singer who was on television last night.
5 Next week there is a festival which takes place in the village every summer.
- B** 1 who 4 who
2 who 5 where
3 where 6 who
- C** 1 The bus which goes to the airport leaves every twenty minutes.
2 The picture which was hanging near the door was horrible.
3 The instructor who taught me how to drive was very patient.
4 The girl who was sitting next to me started talking to me.
5 The children who sang in the choir were very good.
6 The racing car which went over some oil on the track crashed.
- D** 1 which belongs to the Queen.
2 where many famous poets are buried.
3 who wrote Hamlet and many other plays.
4 where Shakespeare was born.
5 who was married to Prince Charles.
6 which is famous for its street market.
7 who led Britain in the Second World War.
8 where there is a lot of street entertainment.

Unit 135

- A** 1 We ate the sandwiches which/that Jack made.
2 I'm doing some work which/that I have to finish today.
3 She's an old woman who/that I often see when I go to the shops.
4 He's an actor who/that a lot of people like.
5 It's a magazine which/that I read sometimes.

- 6 She was wearing a red dress which/that she wears for parties.

- B** 1 that I had seen on TV
2 that Jane made.
3 that I was waiting for
4 that my sister wrote.
5 that I was talking to
6 that Mary sent me

- C** 1 – 5 that
2 – 6 who/that
3 who/that 7 –
4 that

- D** 1 who 4 who
2 that 5 that
3 who

Unit 136

- A** 1 The sun, which is really a star, is 93 million miles from the earth.
2 John F. Kennedy, who died in 1963, was one of the youngest American Presidents.
3 Mel Gibson, who is from Australia, is a famous Hollywood actor.
4 The 1996 Olympics were held in Atlanta, which is in the southern state of Georgia, USA.
- B** 1 Football, which first started in Britain, is now one of the most popular sports worldwide.
2 Margaret Thatcher, who was the Prime Minister of Britain for 11 years, studied science at Oxford University.
3 Michelangelo, who lived until he was ninety, was one of Italy's greatest artists.
4 Michael Jackson, whose brothers and sisters were also singers, is now one of the richest solo artists in the world.
5 The Nile, which runs through several countries, is the longest river in Africa.
6 Gandhi, who helped secure India's independence, was assassinated in 1948.
7 Elephants, which are found in Africa and India, are hunted for their ivory.
8 Bill Clinton, whose wife is a brilliant lawyer, became president of the USA in 1993.

- 9 The Beatles, whose music is still popular, were probably the most famous pop group in the world.
- 10 Brands Hatch, which is not far from London, is famous for its motor races.

- C** 1 whose 4 which
2 who 5 which
3 whose 6 who

Unit 137

- A** 1 get the job he applied for
2 the girl who's talking to your brother?
3 like the joke the boys laughed at.
4 the man who was looking for his dog.
5 the stranger who paid for the drinks.
6 have the CD I asked for.

- B** 1 f which is used to make champagne.
2 h who had six wives.
3 b whose first name was Audrey.
4 a who started the famous prizes.
5 d which was made in black and white.
6 i who wrote The Three Musketeers.
7 g which is used for racing.
8 c who became a film star.

- C** 1 person who sells meat.
2 place where people eat.
3 place where you can see animals.
4 person who makes people laugh.
5 thing which you can use anywhere.
6 place where people go to dance.
7 thing which allows you to see distant objects.
8 person who writes newspaper articles.
9 place where you can buy almost anything.
10 thing which tells you the time.

- D** 1 ~~who's~~ whose
2 ~~which~~ where
3 ~~it~~
4 ~~him~~
5 ~~it~~
6 ~~his~~ whose
7 ~~them~~

- 8 ~~which~~ who
9 ~~her~~ whose
10 ~~which~~ where

- E** 1 whose 5 whose
2 where 6 who
3 who 7 which
4 which

- F** 1 Many Scots speak Gaelic, which is very different from English.
2 John Lennon, who was a pacifist, was killed when he was forty years old.
3 Joseph Conrad, whose first language was Polish, wrote dozens of novels in English.
4 The Atlantic and the Pacific are joined by the Panama Canal, which was opened in 1914.
5 The British Prime Minister in the 1980s was Margaret Thatcher, who was known as The Iron Lady.
6 Loch Ness, which is very deep, is famous for its monster.
7 Pelé, whose real name is Edson Arantes, was a famous Brazilian football player.
8 Mark Spitz, who won seven Olympic gold medals in 1972, acted in several films.
9 Jules Verne wrote Around the World in Eighty Days, which was made into a famous film.
10 Hillary Clinton, whose husband was the US President, became a US Senator in 2000.

- G** 1 They gave us a bedroom where Shakespeare had slept.
2 The house my grandmother was born in has been sold.
3 Lots of people visit the club where the Beatles sang.
4 What's the name of the road where they live?
5 Is Leicester one of the places the coach stops at?
6 This is the cupboard where we keep the glasses.

- H** 1 We had to call at the chemist's, which is opposite the bank.
2 My cousins didn't say thank you, which annoyed my father.

- 3 We asked for the restaurant's speciality, which is fish cooked in wine.
4 The story has many characters, which makes it difficult to follow.
5 Dr Talbot is an expert on malaria, which has no real cure.
6 Dr Talbot is an expert on malaria, which is why she was invited.

- I** 1 The shop where John worked is going to close.
2 The dog who won the prize died a week later.
3 The house where Napoleon was born doesn't exist any more.
4 The letter I sent arrived the following week.
5 The man whose wife died is going to remarry.
6 The woman I spoke to was very helpful.

- J** 1 At school I have a friend whose mother works for the BBC.
2 The people who live in the flat above don't know their neighbours yet.
3 Ibiza is a place where a lot of British people take their holidays.
4 Motorbikes that make a lot of noise are not allowed to drive down this street.
5 My brother, who is a car mechanic, doesn't like modern cars.
6 Terry failed the exam, which surprised everybody.
7 Kilimanjaro, which is in Tanzania, is the highest mountain in Africa.
8 The house where we live is on the beach.
9 People who drink and drive are very dangerous.
10 The man who is standing at the door has brought a letter.
11 What's the title of the book (that) you are looking for?
12 The girl (that) you met yesterday is my sister.

Unit 138

- A**
- 1 disorganized, incapable
 - 2 underdeveloped, unfair
 - 3 overbooked, impersonal
 - 4 uncommon, undergraduates
 - 5 unhappy, unpleasant
 - 6 unable, overnight

- B**
- 1 undergraduate
 - 2 overnight
 - 3 underground
 - 4 overslept
 - 5 underline
 - 6 overcharged
 - 7 overtime

- C**
- 1 repeat
 - 2 replace
 - 3 repay
 - 4 rebuilt

- D**
- 1 f **overtake**
 - 2 e **dishonest**
 - 3 g **refreshing**
 - 4 b **disappeared**
 - 5 a **undercooked**
 - 6 c **impatient**

- E**
- 1 **unpleasant**
 - 2 **uncertain/unsure**
 - 3 **impersonal**
 - 4 **immature**

Unit 139

- A**
- 1 Italian opera singer.
 - 2 Indian pacifist.
 - 3 Italian scientist.
 - 4 South African politician.
 - 5 Argentinian footballer.
 - 6 Russian writer.

- B**
- 1 Pollution, development
 - 2 baby-sitter, patience
 - 3 observation, artist
 - 4 worker, manager
 - 5 translation, correspondence
 - 6 Government, Declaration
 - 7 discussion, insurance

- C**
- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1 dangerous | b rainy |
| 2 hungry | e wonderful |
| 3 lucky | d successful |
| 4 enjoyable | a sandy |
| 5 sensible | f poisonous |

- D**
- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1 careless | 5 useful |
| 2 cheerful | 6 hopeless |
| 3 harmless | 7 helpful |
| 4 successful | 8 painless |